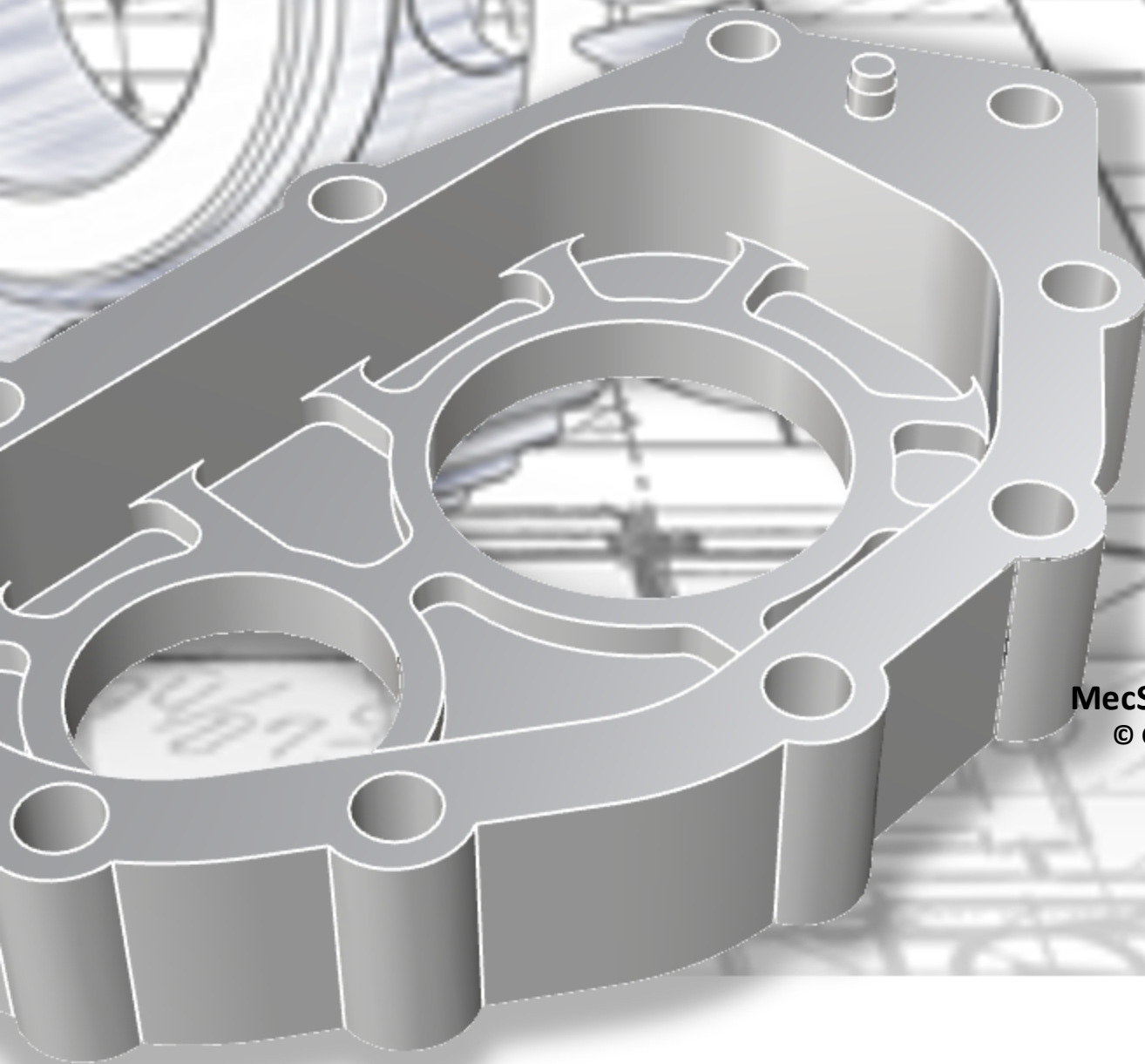


VisualCAD Companion 2025

Monday, February 24, 2025



MecSoft Corporation
© Copyright 1998-2025

Table of Contents

Welcome to VisualCAD!	11
1 Features Overview.....	11
2 Screen Layout.....	14
3 Quick Access Toolbar.....	15
4 Default Shortcut Keys.....	16
5 Options.....	18
System	20
Display	24
Color	29
Grid	30
Lighting	33
Dimension	36
Tolerance and Units	37
6 View Toolbar.....	38
3D Mouse	41
7 Customize VisualCAD.....	42
Customize Quick Access Toolbar	42
Minimize Ribbon Bar	46
Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys	46
Customize Dialog	50
Customize the Keyboard	53
Styles Menu	55
Quick Start	60
Resource Guide	61
VisualCAD Menu	62
1 New	63
2 Open	63
3 Browse	65
4 Import	65
5 Save.....	68
6 Save As	68
7 Save As Template.....	69
8 Export	69
9 Print Menu.....	71
Print	73
Print Preview ..	73
Print Setup ...	75

10 Options.....	76
System	77
Display	82
Color	87
Grid	88
Lighting	91
Dimension	94
Tol. & Units	95
11 Help & Info Menu.....	96
Help Topics	98
Check for Updates	98
Go To Website	99
About VisualCAD	99
12 Exit.....	100

The Ribbon Bar 101

1 Home	101
File	102
New	102
Open	103
Browse	105
Import	105
Save	108
Save As	108
Save As Template.....	109
Export	109
Export Selected.....	111
Print Preview	111
Print	113
Plugins	114
Application Plug-ins	114
Translator Plug-ins	115
Options	116
System	118
Display	122
Color	127
Grid	128
Lighting	131
Dimension.....	134
Tol. & Units.....	135
2 Display.....	136
View Modify	137
Dynamic Pan View	137
Dynamic Rotate View	138
Dynamic Zoom.....	138
Fit View	138
Zoom Out.....	138
Zoom In	139
Zoom Box	139
Orient	139
Top View	139
Bottom View	140

Front View	140
Back View	140
Left View	140
Right View	141
Iso View 1-4.....	141
Modes	143
Perspective / Parallel.....	144
Toggle Shading + Edges.....	145
Shaded Display.....	145
Wireframe Display	146
Hidden Line Display.....	147
Ghosted Display	147
Visibility	148
Hide/Show Grid.....	148
Hide/Show WCS.....	148
Viewport	149
View port Layouts.....	149
View port Menu.....	150
Split View port.....	151
Delete View port.....	152
Rename View port.....	152
Save View port.....	152
Load View port.....	153
3 Modeling Aids.....	153
Clipboard	154
Cut Selection.....	154
Copy Selection.....	154
Paste Selection.....	155
Selections	155
Select Menu.....	157
Select Points	157
Select Lines/Polylines.....	157
Select Arcs/Circles	158
Select Arcs/Circles	158
Select Nurbs Curves.....	159
Select Polycurves	159
Select Point Clouds.....	159
Select Shells	159
Select Meshes	160
Select Dimensions.....	160
Select Open Curves.....	160
Select All.....	161
Select None.....	162
Invert Selections.....	162
Select Previous.....	162
Select Last.....	162
Select Duplicated.....	162
Select by Name.....	163
Select By Color.....	163
Select By Type	163
Select By Layer	164
Selection Mask	165
Other Selection Techniques	167
Select Chain	167

Highlights	167
Multi-Selections	168
from Solid	169
Commands	169
Undo	170
Redo	170
Undo Multiple.....	170
Redo Multiple.....	171
Command Recall.....	172
Continuous Command Recall.....	172
Objects	172
Lock Selection.....	173
Unlock All.....	173
Hide Selection.....	173
Hide Non-Selected.....	173
Show All.....	174
C-Plane	174
Set to View.....	175
Set to Top View.....	175
Set to Bottom View.....	175
Set to Front View.....	175
Set to Back View.....	176
Set to Left View.....	176
Set to Right View.....	176
Set Origin.....	176
Set Elevation.....	176
Rotate	177
Set by 3 Pts.....	177
C-Plane to 3D Face.....	178
C-Plane to Planar Curve.....	178
Set by X Axis.....	178
Set to WCS.....	179
Save	179
Load	180
Background Image	180
Place Image.....	181
Move Image.....	182
Scale Image.....	184
Toggle Image On/Off.....	185
Gray Scale Image.....	186
Image Transparency.....	188
Delete Image.....	189
4 Curve Modeling.....	190
Curves	190
Point	192
Point, Mid.....	193
Point, Center.....	194
Point, Grid.....	195
Point, Polar Grid.....	197
Point, On Curve.....	198
Line	199
Rectangle, 2 Points.....	200
Rectangle, Center.....	202
Rectangle, 2 Points 2.....	203

Rectangle, 3 Points.....	205
Rectangle, Vertical.....	206
Polyline	208
Rounded Rectangle.....	210
Line at Angle.....	212
Line, from Mid-Point.....	213
Line, Normal to.....	214
Line, Normal to 2.....	215
Line, Normal & Tangent.....	217
Line, Tangent to.....	218
Line, Tangent to 2.....	219
Circle, Center, On Pt.....	220
Circle, Start, Diameter Pt.....	221
Circle, 3 Pts.....	222
Circle, Tangent to 3.....	223
Arc, Center, Start, Angle Pts.....	225
Arc, 3 Pts.....	226
Arc, Start, End, On.....	227
Ellipse, Center, Diameter, End Pt.....	228
Ellipse, Diameter, End Pt.....	230
Ellipse, Foci.....	231
Nurbs Curve.....	232
Text Curves.....	233
Text on Curve.....	235
Curve, Spiral.....	238
Curve, Helix.....	239
Curve, Flat Area.....	241
Curve, All Flat Areas.....	242
Silhouette Curves.....	243
Curve, Surface Boundary.....	244
Curve, Bounding Rect.....	245
Section Curves.....	246
Extract Curve.....	247
Edit Curves	248
Fillet	249
Offset	251
Trim	252
Extend	253
Merge	253
Change Start.....	255
Boolean	255
Split by Curve.....	258
Close Curve.....	260
Chamfer	260
Extend by Dist.....	262
Reverse	263
Auto Fillet.....	263
Arc Fit	264
Smooth	265
Project to CPlane.....	266
Chain	268
Split	269
Break	270
Explode	272

Reduce	272
Wrap	273
5 Surface Modeling.....	276
Surfaces	276
Rectangular Plane.....	277
Plane from Curves.....	278
Surface by 4.....	279
Surface by 2.....	280
Surface of Extrusion.....	281
Surface of Revolution.....	282
Bi-linear Surface from 4 Points.....	284
Parting Plane.....	285
Edit Surfaces	287
Trim	287
Delete Holes.....	289
Project Curves.....	290
Reverse Normals.....	291
Wrap	292
6 Solid Modeling.....	294
Solid Modeling	295
Solid Box.....	296
Solid Sphere.....	297
Solid Cylinder.....	299
Solid Cone.....	300
Solid Torus.....	302
Solid Extrusion.....	304
Solid Revolve.....	305
Solid Rectangular Tube.....	306
Solid Circular Tube.....	308
Solid Bounding Box.....	309
Edit Solids	311
Unify Normals	311
Explode	312
Stitch	313
7 Mesh Modeling.....	315
Meshes	316
Box	316
Sphere	317
Cylinder	318
Cone	319
Torus	320
Rectangular Tube.....	321
Circular Tube.....	324
Extrude	325
Revolve	326
Bounding Box	327
Edit Meshes	329
Unite	329
Subtract	330
Intersect	332
8 Dimensions.....	333
Linear Dimensions	334
Horizontal Dimension.....	334

Vertical Dimension.....	337
Oblique Dimension.....	339
Radial Dimensions	341
Arc/Circle Diameter.....	341
Arc/Circle Radius.....	342
3 Pt Circle Dia.....	343
3 Pt Circle Rad.....	345
3 Pt Arc Diameter.....	347
3 Pt Arc Radius.....	348
Angular Dimensions	350
Angle	350
3 Pt Angle.....	352
Annotations	354
Leader Line.....	354
Annotation.....	357
Dot Annotation.....	359
9 Analyze.....	360
Measure	360
Vertex	361
Distance	361
3 Vertex Diameter.....	362
Arc Diameter.....	364
Angle	364
Analyze	366
Part Info.....	366
Bounding Box.....	368
Part Center.....	369
Show Surface Normals.....	369
10 Transform.....	370
Move by Mouse	372
Rotate 2D	373
Rotate 3D	375
Scale	376
Rectangular Scale	379
Move	381
Rotate	383
Part Orient	384
Orient by 3 Pts	386
Scale	387
Mirror	389
Array	391
Polar Array	392
Along Path	394
Graphical Manipulator	397
11 Print Preview.....	403

Status Toolbar

404

1 Coordinate input.....	404
2 Current Position.....	406
3 Part Units.....	406
4 Object Snap Control.....	407

Grid Snap	407
Ortho Snap	408
Origin Point Snap	408
End Point Snap	408
Near Point Snap	409
Mid Point Snap	409
Center Point Snap	409
Quad Point Snap	409
Intersection Point Snap	410
Vertex Point Snap	410
Project to C-Plane Snap	410
5 Visual Aids.....	411
6 Properties	412
Edit Mode	413
7 Layer Manager.....	418
Layer Visibility	419
Lock Layer	420
New Layer	420
Delete Layer	421
Duplicate Layer	421
Duplicate Layer and Objects	421
Reorder Layers	421
8 Background Properties.....	422

Exercises

423

1 #1: VisualCAD Preferences.....	423
Accessing the Online Help	423
Set the Display Style	423
Set the Units to Inches	424
Set Systems Options	424
Set to Quad Viewports	429
The Quick Access Toolbar	431
Viewing the Command Prompts	432
The Status Bar	433
2 #2: 2D Drawing & Dimensioning.....	434
Create Layers	435
Curve Drawing	437
Using Visual Aids	443
More Drawing Tools	445
Dimensioning	452
3 #3: Model a Spanner Plate.....	458
Set to the Top View	459
Create Reference Points	459
Create Inner Cutouts	460
Trim Curves	463
Offset, Extend & Trim Curves	464
Fillet Curves	469
Mirror Curves	474
Merge Curves	477
Extrude Curves	479
4 #4: Model a Base Plate.....	481

	Draw the Base Plate Profile	481
	Extrude the Base Plate	485
	Model the Tube	487
	Create a New Layer	493
	Edit Geometry Properties	495
5	#5: Model a Mold Insert.....	497
	Extrude the Body	498
	Extrude the Flange	501
	Extrude the Upper Pocket	505
	Extrude the Lower Pocket	509
	Revolve the Center Bosses	515
	Extrude the Connection Bar	520
	Extrude the Connection Wall	523
	Extrude Ejector Pin Holes	528
	Change Geometry Layer	533
	Create Section Curves	536
6	#6: Model a Connector Block.....	538
	Model the Body	539
	Model the Front Access	541
	Model the Top Access	547
	Model the Mounting Holes	553
	Modify the Top Access	562
	Create Section Curves	565
7	#7: Model a Daisy Decor.....	570
	Create new Layers	570
	Model & Scale the Body	573
	Model & Scale the Pedal	576
	Ghosted Display Mode	579
	Polar Array the Pedal	580
	Additional Spheres	583
	Create & Trim Section Curves	585
	Create Offset Curves	589
	Create the Stock Boundary	591
8	#8: Using Construction Planes.....	593
	Orient the C-Plane	593
	Text on a Part Face	600
	Other C-Plane Commands	607
	Orient the Part	609

Find More Resources **620**

Index **621**

Welcome to VisualCAD!



VisualCAD 2025

[Prefer Printed Documentation? Click Here!](#)

[What's New](#) | [Quick Start Play List](#)

VisualCAD is a CAD platform that can be used to design a part file. A detailed description of the product features, [User Interface](#), [File Translators](#), [CAD Features](#), [Selection](#) and [Transformation](#) tools is described in the sections below.



Related Topics

[The VisualCAD Screen Layout](#)

[VisualCAD Features Overview](#)

[Default Shortcut Keys](#)

[Customize VisualCAD Display](#)

1.1 Features Overview

Here is an overview of the features you will find in [VisualCAD](#):



General Features

- Ribbon-based menu interface
- Multiple viewport layouts.
- [Create](#), [Split](#), [Save](#), [Load](#) and [Delete](#) Viewports
- Large display icons for context sensitive toolbars
- Rearrange and dock multiple toolbars inside each other
- (lockable Toolbars - Command Bar, Layer Manager, Property Page, Plug-in browsers - MOPS Browser, Machining Objects Browser)
- Auto Hide control for all lockable toolbars
- Print Preview and [File > Print](#)

- [File > Open ...](#) (Browse for [VisualCAD](#) part files)
- Translators include:
 - [VisualCAD Part Files \(*.vcp\)](#)
 - [VisualMILL Part Files \(*.vmp\)](#)
 - [VisualTurn Part Files \(*.vct\)](#)
 - [3D Studio Files \(*.3ds\)](#)
 - [Adobe Illustrator Files \(*.ai\)](#)
 - [AMF Files \(*.amf\)](#)
 - [AutoCAD \(*.dxf;*.dwg\)](#)
 - [IGES Files \(*.igs;*.iges\)](#)
 - [LightWave Files \(*.lwo\)](#)
 - [MecSoft Region Files \(*.mrg\)](#)
 - [OBJ Files \(*.obj\)](#)
 - [Parasolid Files \(*.x_t;*.x_b\)](#)
 - [Point Cloud Files \(*.cvs;*.txt;*.asc\)](#)
 - [RAW Triangle Files \(*.raw\)](#)
 - [RHINO 3DM Files \(*.3dm\)](#)
 - [SAT Files \(*.sat\)](#)
 - [SketchUP Files \(*.skp\)](#)
 - [SLC Files \(*.slc\)](#)
 - [STEP Files \(*.stp;*.step\)](#)
 - [Stereo-lithography files \(*.sla;*.stl\)](#)
 - [Universal 3D Files \(*.u3d\)](#)
 - [VRML Files \(*.wrl\)](#)
- Save and load C-planes
- Construction Plane (C-Plane) tools - [C-Plane](#) to a [3D Face](#), [C-Plane](#) by [X-axis](#), [WCS](#) and more.
- Supports 3D mouse devices from 3Dconnexion
- Auto file save with an option to set the time interval for auto save
- Recovery of file in the event of application crash
- Dynamic view rotates with animation
- [Save Viewport](#) layout in the part file
- Assign hot keys for CAD tools on ribbon bar
- [Crash Recovery](#) support



Selection Tools

- Selections made easy. Users can select by dragging a window across the geometry in any of the viewports
- Select by [Layer](#), [Color](#), [Type](#) and [Name](#)

- Invert [Selection](#)
- Select [Last Created](#) and [Previous](#)
- Select by geometry types ([Points](#), [Lines/Polylines](#), [Arcs/Circles](#), [Polycurves](#), [Dimensions](#), [Surfaces](#))
- [Rectangular Select](#)
- [Selection Mask](#) – To select only certain types of geometries from the viewport
- Selection command to select duplicate objects



Transformation Tools

- Dynamic [Move](#), [Rotate](#)
- Array Geometry - [Rectangular](#) and [Polar](#)
- [Scaling](#) part geometry on units change
- Graphical transformation of objects using [Graphical Manipulator](#)
- Allow graphical scaling of geometry.
- Scaling using fit to rectangle



CAD Tools

- Coordinate input for geometry creation in [World](#) and [Construction](#) planes
- Create [Points](#), [Lines](#), [Arcs](#), [Curves](#) and curve editing tools
- [Point](#) cloud objects
- Create [NURBS](#) curves
- Create [Text](#) and [Text](#) on a [Curve](#)
- Curve creation visual aids
- Curve editing tools
- Surface creation tools.
- Surface Edit Tools ([Trim](#), [Project](#) curves to surface, [Wrap](#), [Reverse Normal](#), [Unify Normals](#), [Explode](#))
- Mesh creation Tools ([box](#), [sphere](#), [cylinder](#), [cone](#), [tubes](#), [extrude](#), [revolve](#))
- Mesh Boolean Tools ([Unite](#), [Subtract](#) and [Intersect](#))
- Solid creation tools ([box](#), [sphere](#), [cylinder](#) cone, [torus](#), [extrude](#), [revolve](#), [rectangular/circular tube](#))
- Solid editing tools ([Unify Normals](#), [Explode](#), [Stitch](#))

- Curve extraction tools – [Flat area regions](#), [Create Surface Boundary](#) and [section curves](#).
- Dimensioning tools ([Horizontal](#), [Vertical](#), [Oblique](#), [Radius](#), [Diameter](#), [Angular](#), [Leader](#) and [Annotation](#) text)
- Delete holes/cap holes
- Tool to detect open loops in curve
- Multiple line text input in create Text dialog
- Spell check in text edit box
- Project to C-plane
- Auto Fillet
- Creation of boundary curve when a topologically connected set of surfaces are selected
- Extend Curve using a distance
- Arc fits on a poly-line
- Corner rounding of a poly-line
- Create silhouette curve around a part or selected geometries parallel to the c-plane
- Lock layers in layer manager
- Copy one layer to another including all geometry
- Reorder layers
- Hide and un hide objects using [Ctrl H](#) and [Ctrl Alt H](#)
- Lock and unlock objects using [Ctrl L](#) and [Ctrl Alt L](#)



Related Topics

[Welcome to VisualCAD](#)

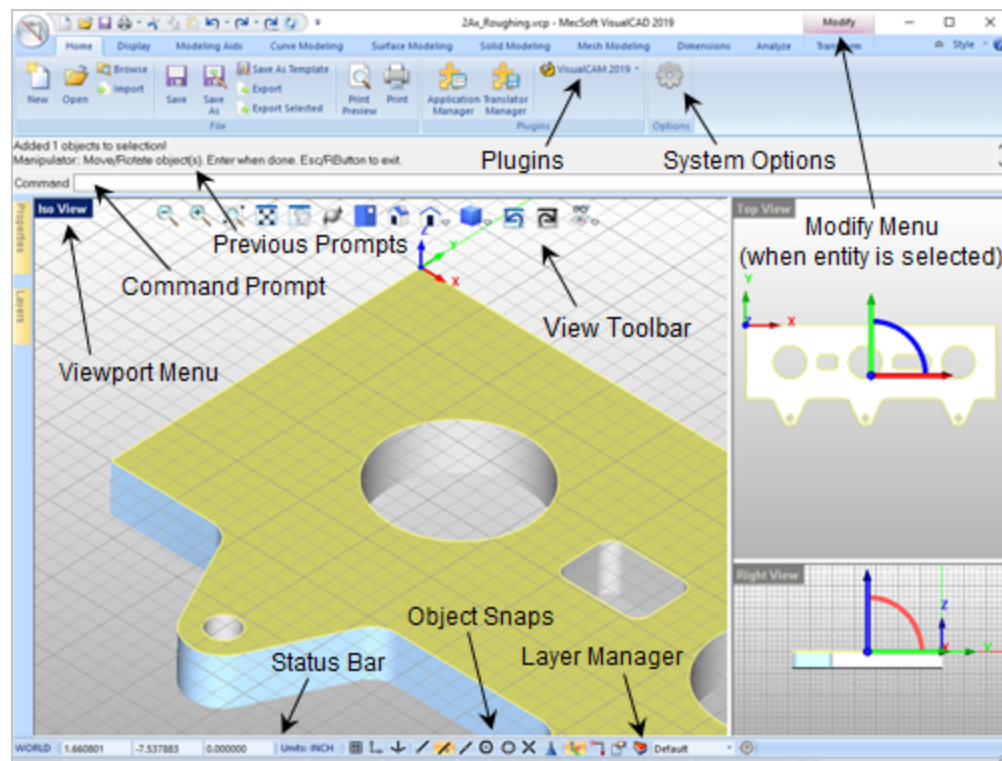
[The VisualCAD Screen Layout](#)

[Default Shortcut Keys](#)

[Customize VisualCAD Display](#)

1.2 Screen Layout

The VisualCAD screen layout is shown below. For high resolution displays (4K) the icons are automatically scaled to match the screen resolution.



VisualCAD Screen Layout



Related Topics

[Welcome to VisualCAD](#)

[VisualCAD Features Overview](#)

[Default Shortcut Keys](#)

[Customize VisualCAD Display](#)

1.3 Quick Access Toolbar

The **Quick Access Toolbar** is located at the top of the **VisualCAD** display. It contains commands that you use on a regular basis. You can add and remove commands to the toolbar to suite your drawing needs.



The Quick Access Toolbar



Quick Access Toolbar's Default Commands

[File New](#) / Ctrl+N[File Open](#) / Ctrl+O[File Save](#) / Ctrl+S[Print...](#) / Ctrl+P[Print Preview](#)[Print Setup](#)[Cut](#) / Ctrl+X[Copy](#) / Ctrl+C[Paste](#) / Ctrl+V[Undo](#) / Ctrl+Z[Undo Multiple](#)[Redo](#) / Ctrl+Y[Redo Multiple](#)[Command Recall](#)[Toggle Continuous Command Recall](#)[Customize the Quick Access Toolbar](#)

Related Topics

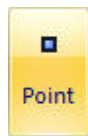
[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)[VisualCAD Features Overview](#)[Default Shortcut Keys](#)[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)[Customize VisualCAD Display](#)

1.4 Default Shortcut Keys

VisualCAD installs with the following keyboard shortcuts preset. You can customize your keyboard to quickly execute many other VisualCAD commands using the [Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#) and [Customize Keyboard](#) dialogs.



Default Keyboard Shortcuts



[Point](#) / Ctrl+Alt+P



[New](#) / Ctrl+N



[Open](#) / Ctrl+O



[Save](#) / Ctrl+S



[Print...](#) / Ctrl+P



[Undo](#) / Ctrl+Z



[Redo](#) / Ctrl+Y



[Cut](#) / Ctrl+X



[Copy](#) / Ctrl+C



[Paste](#) / Ctrl+V



[Lock](#) / Ctrl+L



[Unlock](#) / Ctrl+Alt+L



[Hide](#)

[Hide Non-Selected](#) / Ctrl+Shift+H



[Show](#) / Ctrl+Alt+H



[Select All](#) / Ctrl+A



[Select None](#) / Ctrl+D

[Chain Select](#) / Shift + 



Related Topics

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Keyboard](#)

[Customize the Display](#)

[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)

[The VisualCAD Screen Layout](#)

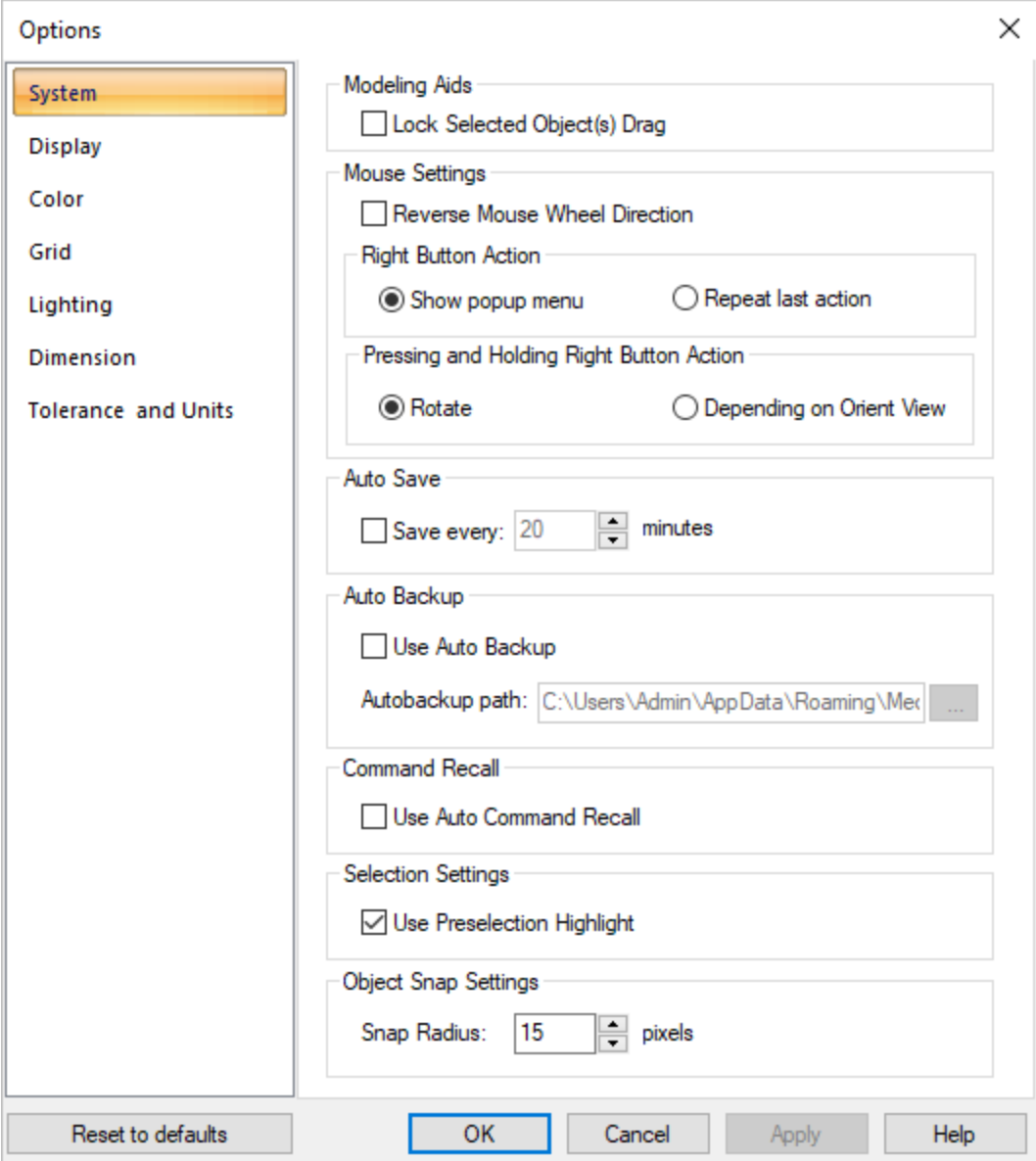
1.5 Options



The [Home Ribbon Bar](#) contains the [Options](#) pane. Selecting the icon will display the [Options](#) dialog shown below. This dialog allows you to set global parameters which include [System](#), [Display](#), [Color](#), [Grid](#), [Lighting](#), [Dimension](#), [Tolerance](#) and [Units](#) preferences. This dialog can also be accessed from the [Status Toolbar](#).



Dialog Box: Options



The Options dialog box is shown with the 'System' category selected in the left-hand list. The right-hand pane contains several sections of settings:

- Modeling Aids**: ☐ Lock Selected Object(s) Drag
- Mouse Settings**:
 - ☐ Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction
 - Right Button Action**: ☒ Show popup menu, ☐ Repeat last action
 - Pressing and Holding Right Button Action**: ☒ Rotate, ☐ Depending on Orient View
- Auto Save**: ☐ Save every: 20 minutes
- Auto Backup**: ☐ Use Auto Backup; Autobackup path: C:\Users\Admin\AppData\Roaming\Mec...
- Command Recall**: ☐ Use Auto Command Recall
- Selection Settings**: ☒ Use Preselection Highlight
- Object Snap Settings**: Snap Radius: 15 pixels

At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Reset to defaults', 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

Dialog Box: Options

**Related Topics**[System](#)[Display](#)[Color](#)[Grid](#)[Lighting](#)[Dimension](#)[Tolerance and Units](#)

[Home Ribbon Bar](#)

1.5.1 System



Allows user to set preferences for modeling aids, mouse settings, auto save and command recall.



Dialog Box: Options > System

The screenshot shows the 'Options' dialog box with the 'System' tab selected. The left-hand list contains the following categories: System, Display, Color, Grid, Lighting, Dimension, and Tolerance and Units. The right-hand pane is divided into several sections:

- Modeling Aids:** A checkbox for 'Lock Selected Object(s) Drag' is currently unchecked.
- Mouse Settings:**
 - A checkbox for 'Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction' is unchecked.
 - Right Button Action:** Two radio buttons are present: 'Show popup menu' (selected) and 'Repeat last action'.
 - Pressing and Holding Right Button Action:** Two radio buttons are present: 'Rotate' (selected) and 'Depending on Orient View'.
- Auto Save:** A checkbox for 'Save every: 20 minutes' is unchecked.
- Auto Backup:**
 - A checkbox for 'Use Auto Backup' is unchecked.
 - The 'Autobackup path' is set to 'C:\Users\Admin\AppData\Roaming\Mec...' with a browse button.
- Command Recall:** A checkbox for 'Use Auto Command Recall' is unchecked.
- Selection Settings:** A checkbox for 'Use Preselection Highlight' is checked.
- Object Snap Settings:** The 'Snap Radius' is set to '15 pixels'.

At the bottom of the dialog are five buttons: 'Reset to defaults', 'OK' (highlighted with a blue border), 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

Dialog Box: Options > System



Lock Selected Object(s) Drag

If the box is not checked, you can select a geometry object and drag it around the C-Plane. When the box is checked, the objects cannot be dragged.

Mouse Settings

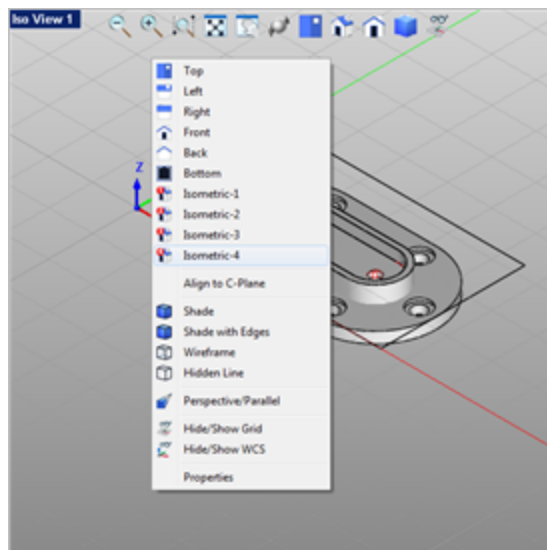
The following Mouse options are supported:

Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction

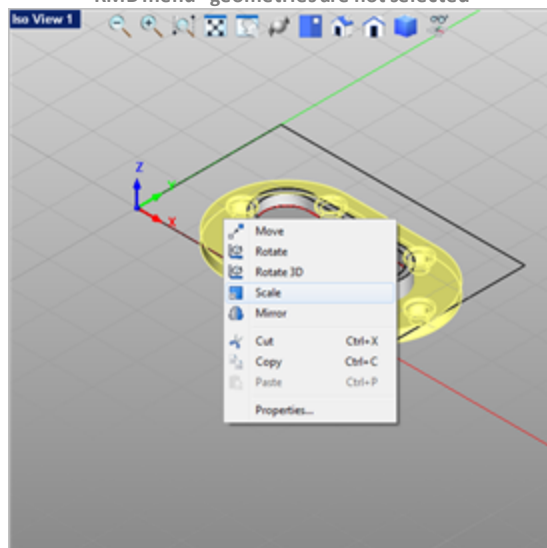
Reverses the direction of view zooming when using the mouse wheel.

Right Button Action

When [Show pop-up menu](#) is selected, performing a right mouse button click in the view port displays the commands in the pop-up menu.



RMB menu - geometries are not selected



RMB menu - geometries are selected

When [Repeat last action](#) is selected, this recalls the previous command.

Pressing and Holding Right Button Action

This option tells **VisualCAD** what to do when the right mouse button is pressed and held.

- **Rotate**
When selected, pressing and holding down the right mouse button from all views performs a **Rotate** on the display.
- **Depending on Orient View**
When depending on orient view is selected, pressing & holding down the right mouse button from **Top**, **Front**, **Right**, **Left**, **Back**, **Bottom** views does a **Dynamic Pan** of the geometries instead of rotate. For **Iso** views (**Iso1,2,3 & 4**) it performs a **Rotate** when pressing and holding down right mouse button down.



AutoSave

The **AutoSave** function can be used to automatically save your active part file at user-specified time intervals. **AutoSave** always saves to the current file name. This saved file is removed when you successfully close your model.



NOTE: Once you activate **AutoSave**, you will need to **Exit VisualCAD** and then launch **VisualCAD** again before **AutoSave** will begin saving your part files!

Under the **AutoSave** function, check the box next to '**Save every xx minutes**' to activate the **AutoSave** function. The time interval can be entered in minutes.

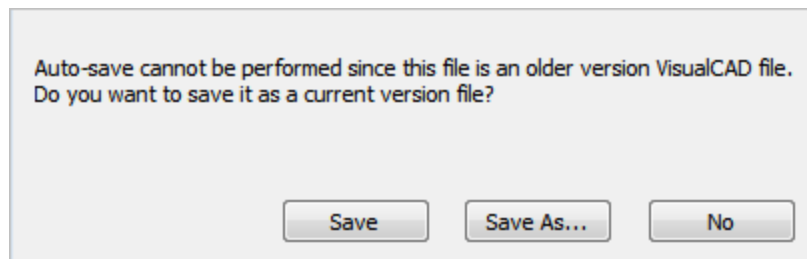


AutoSave saves the file under:
<APPDATA>\MecSoft\VisualCAD 2018\AutoSave where **APPDATA** is a logical pointing to a folder set up by your system administrator. By default it points to:
C:\Users\<username>\AppData\Roaming.



Opening an Older Version *.vcp File

Opening an older version vcp file, displays the following dialog allowing you the opportunity to save the file to the current version.



AutoSave Message



When does AutoSave Prompt me to Save a File?

Under the following conditions **VisualCAD** will prompt you to save your file:

1. When you have opened a non-native **VisualCAD** file.
2. When you have imported a file.
3. When you have created a new part and has not saved the file yet.



When is the AutoSave File Deleted?

Auto save file is deleted under the following scenarios:

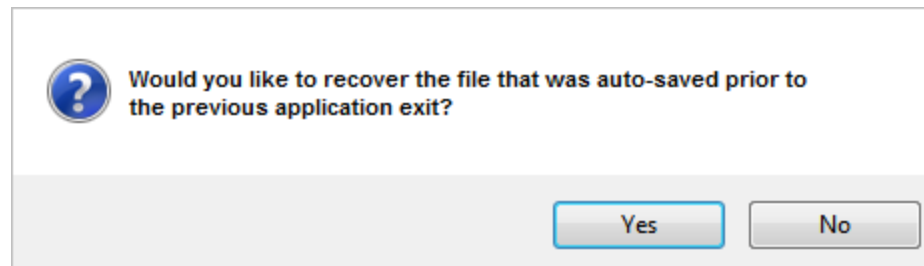
1. When the application closes normally.
2. When you close the file either explicitly or by opening another file.
3. When you select not to recover an **AutoSave** file that was detected on startup



File Recovery

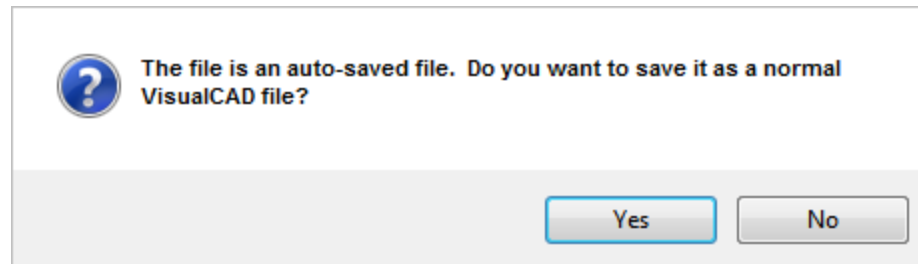
In the event of a computer crash or if **VisualCAD** is terminated abruptly by ending the process from task manager, **VisualCAD** will recover your file if **AutoSave** was active and your part file was automatically saved at least once.

If an **AutoSave** file has been created prior to the crash or termination, **VisualCAD** will detect the file located in the **AutoSave** folder the next time it is loaded. You are then prompted with the following dialog:



AutoSave Message

Selecting **Yes**, displays the following dialog, prompting you to save your file:



AutoSave Message



This is the only opportunity to recover the part file. If you choose not to recover it, the **AutoSave** file will be removed.



Use Auto Backup

Use this option to back up your [VisualCAD](#) files automatically. You can change the [Auto Backup Path](#) destination directory by selecting the 'browse' button.

If you have the check box checked, then the file is saved ONCE (as soon as the file is loaded) to the [Auto Backup](#) path with the same name as the original path file. This file is not deleted on exit so it can be recovered later if necessary. By default the check box to [Auto Backup](#) is unchecked.



Use Auto Command Recall

When this option is selected, [VisualCAD](#) automatically repeats the last command without having to go back & reselect the command from the toolbar or use the right mouse button click or enter option to repeat the previous command.



Use Preselection Highlight

When this option is selected, [VisualCAD](#) automatically highlights selections as the cursor moves over them. See [Pre-Selection Highlight](#) for more information.



Object Snap Settings

You can control the pixel radius of the object snaps located on the [Status Toolbar](#). Enter the [Snap Radius](#) desired.



Related Topics

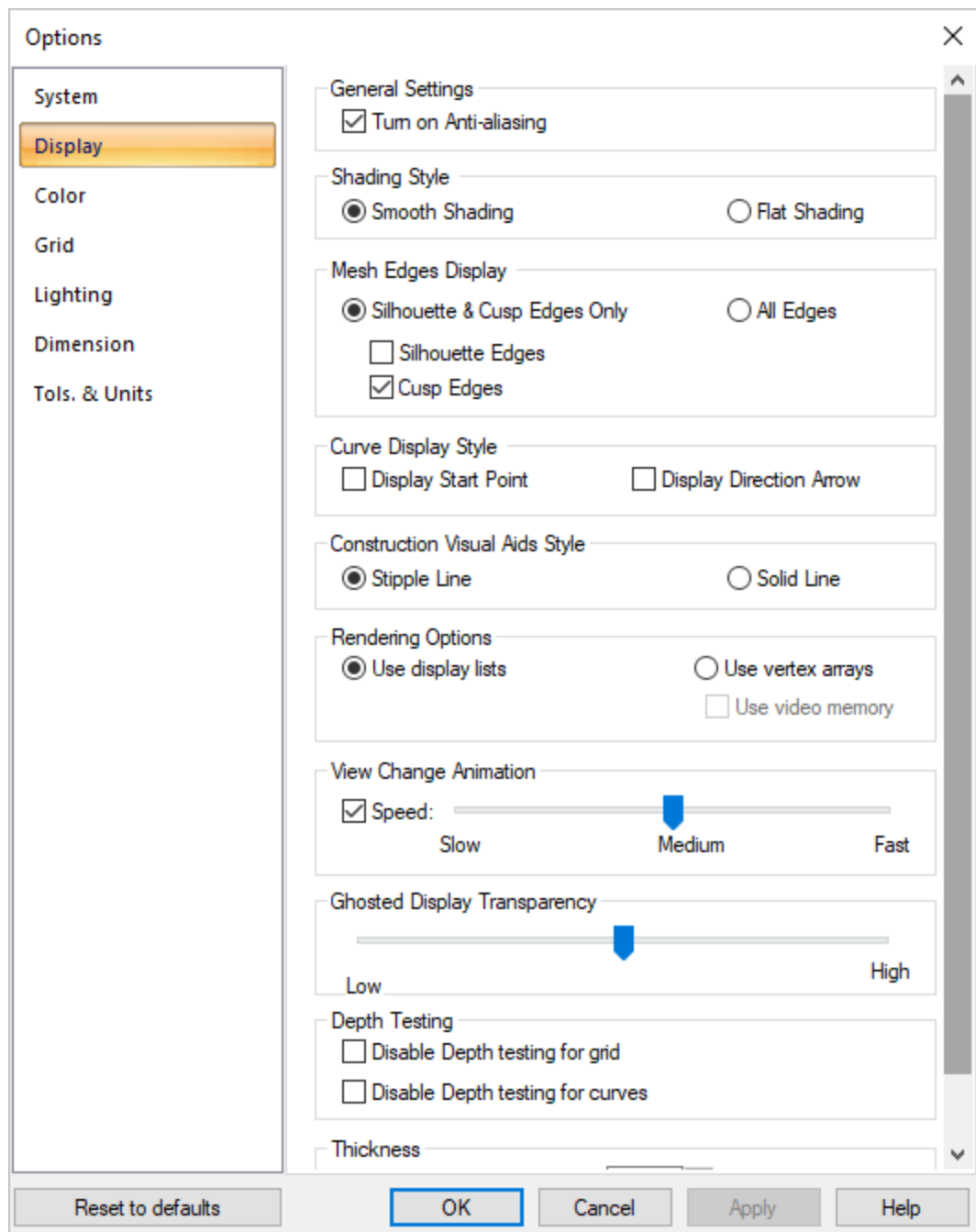
[Options](#)

1.5.2 Display

Controls how geometry is displayed. Select from the following:



Dialog Box: Options > Display



Dialog Box: Options > Display



General Settings

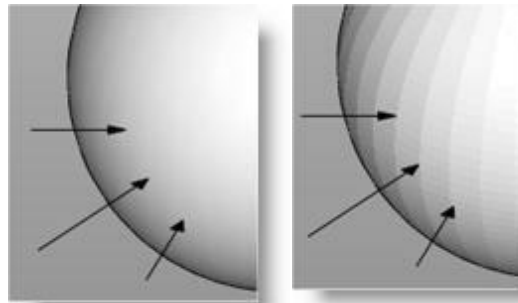
Turn on Anti-aliasing

A method of smoothing the jagged edges along the lines and curves of text or graphics. Aliasing is caused by limited display resolution. Selecting this option turns on [Anti-aliasing](#).



Shading Style

This controls how smooth surfaces are shaded.



Smooth Shading

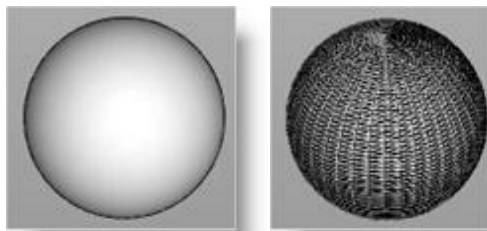
Flat Shading

The pictures demonstrate the difference between smooth and flat shading. The left picture smoothly changes the amount of shading as the surface curves. The right picture just displays the shading for a flat facet on the surface. Since all surfaces (including smooth ones) are internally represented as flat facets, flat shading can affect any surface. The default is smooth shading.



Mesh Edges Display Style

This changes how smooth surfaces are displayed. Since all surfaces are internally represented as flat facets, these facets join up along edges. On smooth surfaces, these edges are not sharp and are not normally displayed. An example of a sharp edge is the edge of a cube.

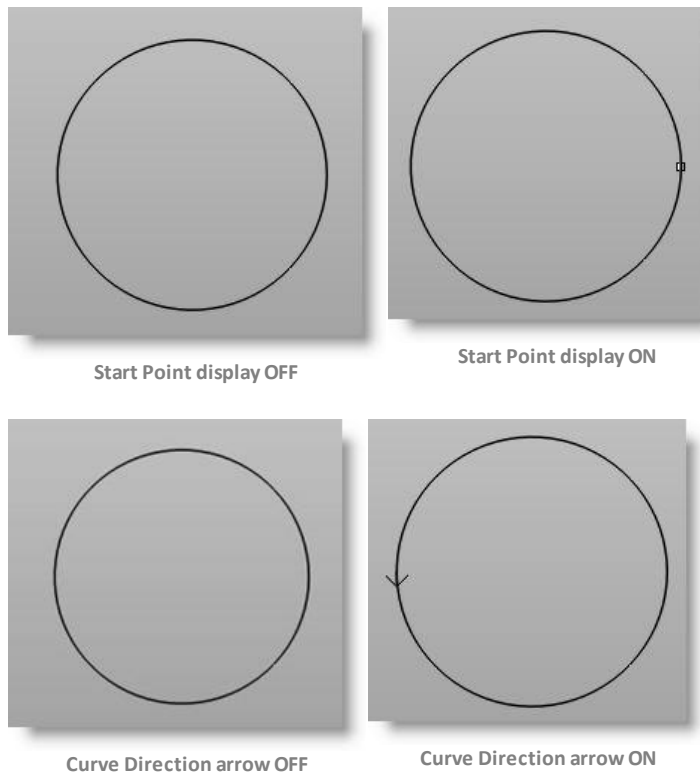


The pictures demonstrate the difference between silhouette & cusp edges only and all edge display. The left picture displays only sharp edges (there are none on a sphere); meanwhile, the right picture displays all the edges. The default is [Silhouette & Cusp Edges Only](#). When selected, this allows you to select [Silhouette Edges](#), [Cusp Edges](#) or [All Edges](#) to display.



Curve Display Style

This provides an option to turn on or off display of curve start point and direction arrow.

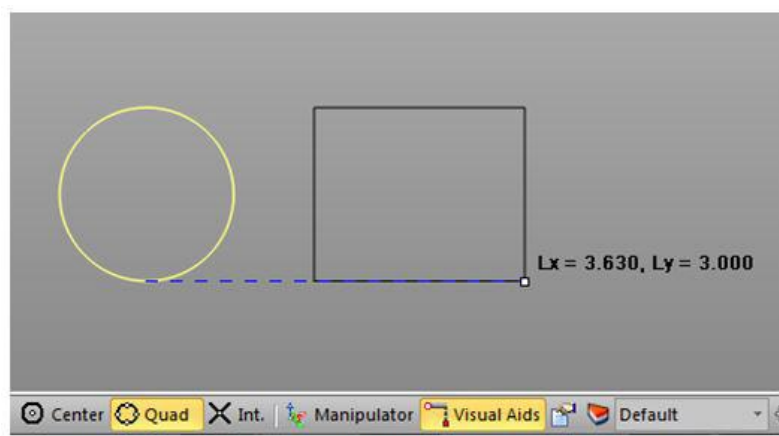


Selecting **Start Point** and **Curve Direction** arrow display under options displays both start point and curve direction arrow.

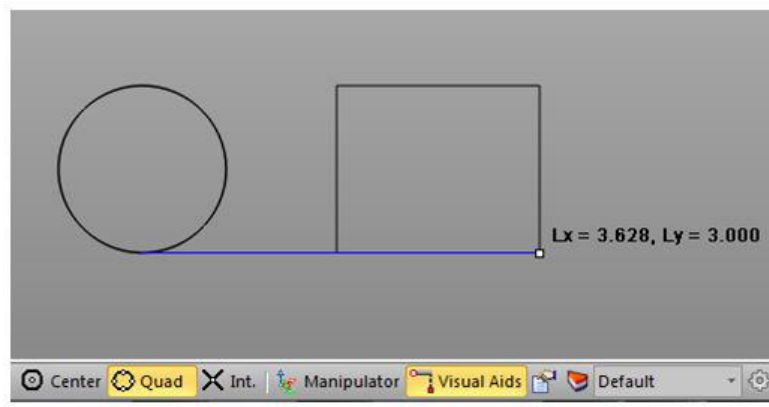


Construction Visual Aids Style

This provides an option to choose the display style between **Stipple line** and **Solid line** for visual aids when the **Visual Aids** is set to active under the status bar.



Stipple line display



Solid line display



Rendering Options

This can be set to [Use Display Lists](#) or [Vertex Arrays](#). The [Vertex Arrays](#) option also provides the option to [Use Video Memory](#) from the video card that is installed on the computer. The speed and performance varies depending on the operating system type and video card installed.



View Change Animation

Whenever the view orientation is changed within the active viewport, [VisualCAD](#) can make that orientation change instantly or through smooth animation. If animation is used, the speed of the animation can be set.

Under the [View Change Animation](#) function, check the box next to [Speed](#) to activate the animation. The animation speed can be controlled using the slider bar.



Ghosted Display Transparency

Whenever the view mode is set to [Ghosted Display](#), you can use this slider to control the transparency level of the hidden (ghosted) geometry.



Depth Testing

These options allow you to fully display certain objects regardless of the view mode. For example, checking the box to [Disable Depth Testing for curves](#), will display all curves even if the view is set to shaded model. You can also [Disable Depth testing for grid](#). If enabled, the grid lines will always display.



Thickness

Use this parameter to set the display line thickness for all wireframe geometry. Set this to 1 for the default line thickness. Higher for thicker lines.



Related Topics

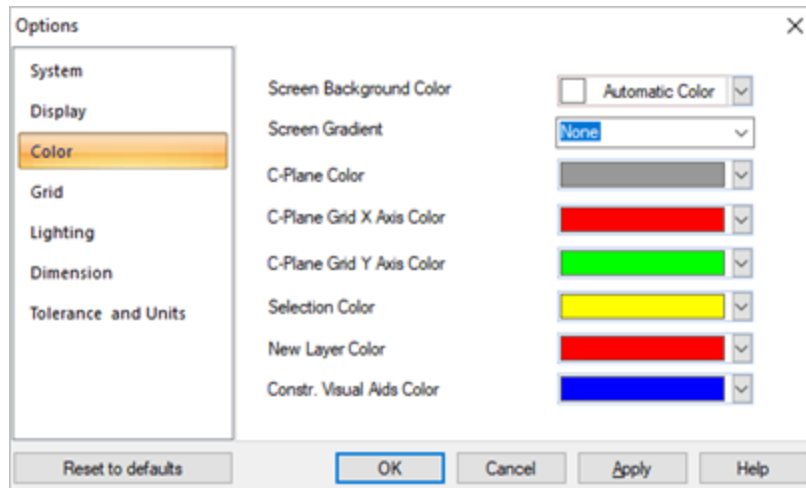
[Options](#)

1.5.3 Color

The default colors are set using this dialog.



Dialog Box: Options > Color



Dialog Box: Options > Color

- [Screen Background Color](#)
This allows user to set the viewport background color. This is the color displayed when no objects are at that position.
- [Screen Gradient](#)
This is a smooth change of lighting. The direction specified is the lighter side. It starts slightly darker on the opposite side of the screen and gradually gets lighter until it reaches the specified side.
- [C-Plane Color](#)
This changes the color of the construction plane grid.
- [C-Plane Grid X Axis Color](#)
This changes the horizontal axis line of the construction plane.
- [C-Plane Grid Y Axis Color](#)
This changes the vertical axis line of the construction plane.
- [Selection Color](#)
This is the highlight color of objects that have been selected.
- [New Layer Color](#)
This is the default color of objects created on new (not Default) layers.

- [Constr. Visual Aids Color](#)

This is the default color of construction aids when [Visual Aids](#) is set to active in the status bar.



Related Topics

[Options](#)

1.5.4 Grid

This controls how the construction plane grid is displayed.



Dialog Box: Options > Grid

Options

System
Display
Color
Grid
Lighting
Dimension
Tols. & Units

Position of Grid Origin

☒ Center ☐ Lower Left ☐ Lower Right
☐ Upper Left ☐ Upper Right

Pick Point

Grid Extents in X Direction: 800

Grid Extents in Y Direction: 800

Distance between each Minor Grid Line: 5

of Divisions between Each Major Line: 6

Reset to defaults OK Cancel Apply Help

Dialog Box: Options > Grid



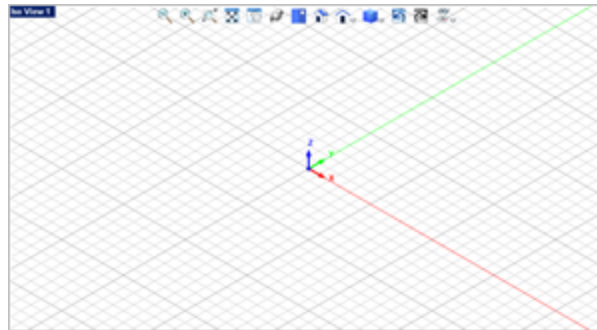
Position of Grid Origin

These options will control where the grid is positioned relative to the World Coordinate System (WCS).

The grid orientation also carries over to whichever view is active, making construction easier.

Center

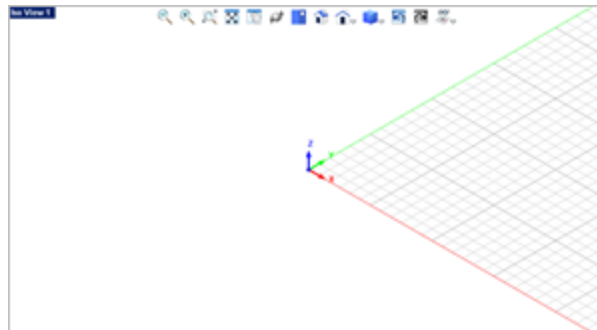
Move the center of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the center of the grid to the WCS.

Lower Left

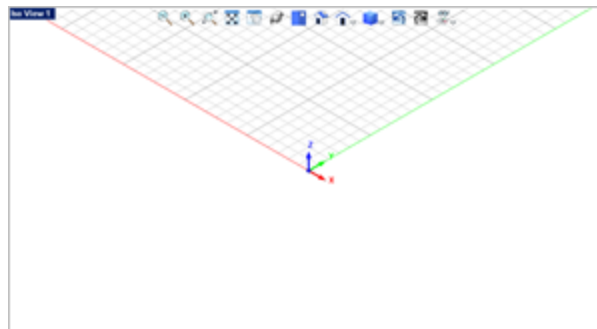
Move the lower left corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the lower left corner of the grid to the WCS.

Lower Right

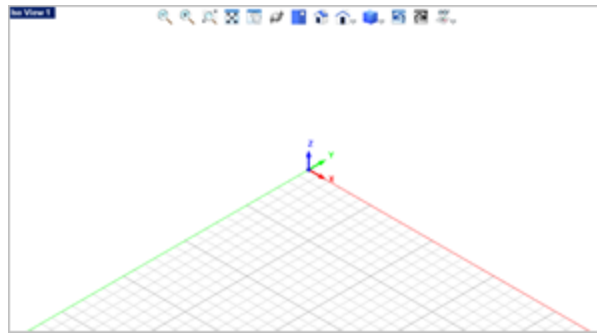
Move the lower right corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the lower right corner of the grid to the WCS.

Upper Left

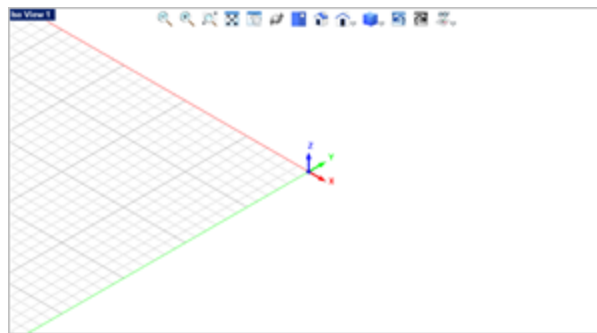
Move the upper left corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the upper left corner of the grid to the WCS.

Upper Right

Move the upper right corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the upper right corner of the grid to the WCS.

Pick

Use the button to pick a point on the screen and the origin of the grid will move to this location.

Notes:

- The point you pick is always on the default [XY plane](#).
- If you use the [Upper/Lower](#) options above after using this [Pick](#) option, the offset distance between the [WCS](#) and the new origin of the grid remains in effect.



Move the the origin of the grid to this location.



Other Grid Options

Grid Extents in X Direction

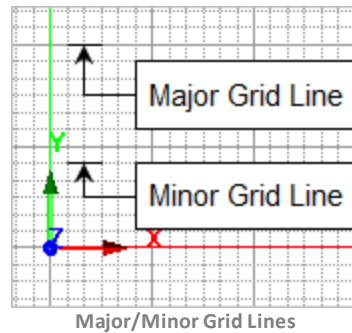
This controls how many major divisions are displayed along the X axis direction.

Grid Extents in Y Direction

This controls how many major divisions are displayed along the Y axis direction.

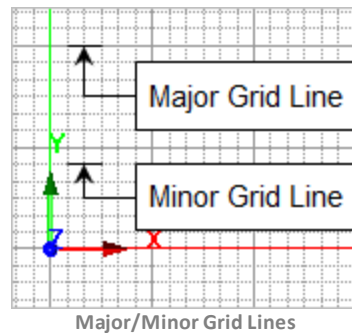
Distance between each Minor Grid Line

This controls the distance between each minor grid line.



of Divisions between Each Major Line

This controls the distance between each major grid line. the number of minor grid line multiplied by the number of major grid lines will determine the overall extent of the grid.



Related Topics

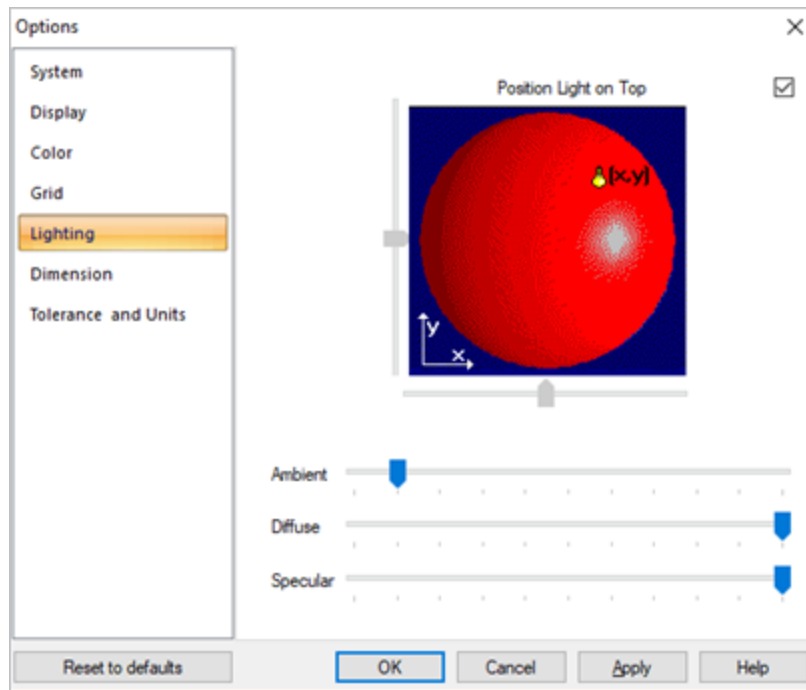
[Options](#)

1.5.5 Lighting

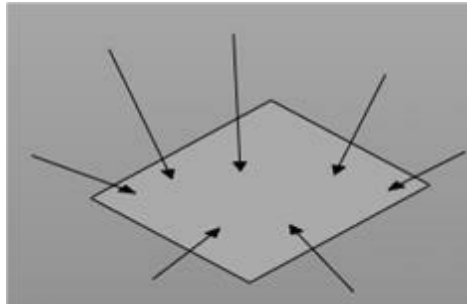
This controls the characteristics of lighting for the model.



Dialog Box: Options > Lighting



There are three types of lighting: ambient, diffuse, and specular.

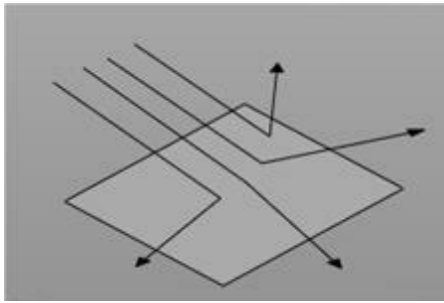


Position Light on Top

The scene has a single light source and there are controls for setting its position. Not all lighting in the model comes directly from that one source; there is some ambient light coming in from all over. The **Position Light on Top** checkbox must be unchecked to be able to move the light source.

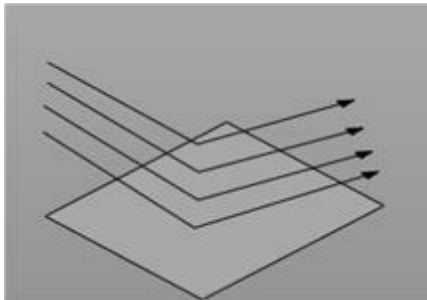
Ambient

Ambient light comes in from all different directions equally. Light sources have no effect on ambient light. Shadows don't appear with only ambient light.



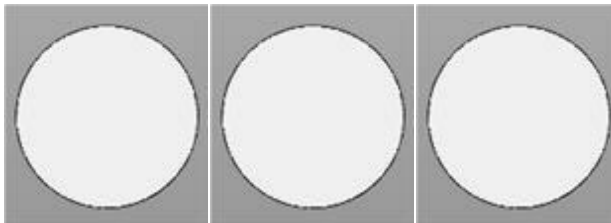
Diffuse

Diffuse light comes from a single source but is scattered in all directions. Shadows appear, but there are no “shiny” spots.

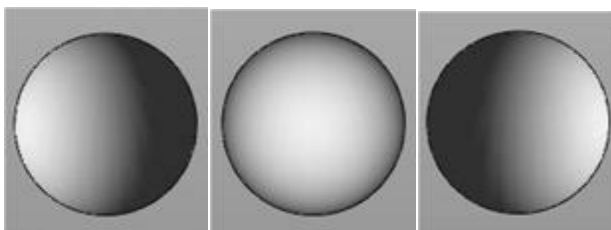


Specular

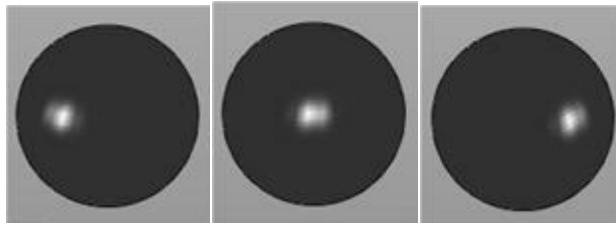
Specular light comes from a single source and is scattered in a single direction. It is reflective light. Shiny metal objects demonstrate good specular reflection. Shading is not a significant consideration with specular light.



The three pictures above demonstrate ambient light as the light source moves from left to right. There is no effect since ambient light comes from all sides equally.



The pictures above show the effects of the motion of the light source using only diffuse lighting. There are no “shiny” spots but yet there is a direction from the light.



The last set of pictures uses only specular lighting. As the light source moves from left to right, the “shiny” spot follows it. However, there is nothing else lit up, so the effect is not just reflective metal.



Related Topics

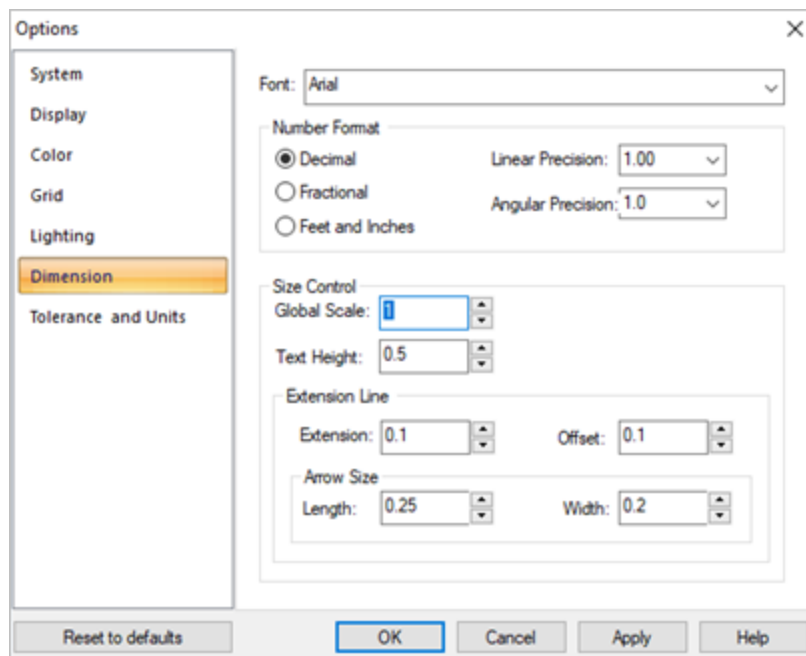
[Options](#)

1.5.6 Dimension

This controls the appearance of dimensioning labels, arrows, and leader lines.



Dialog Box: Options > Dimension



Dialog Box: Options > Dimension



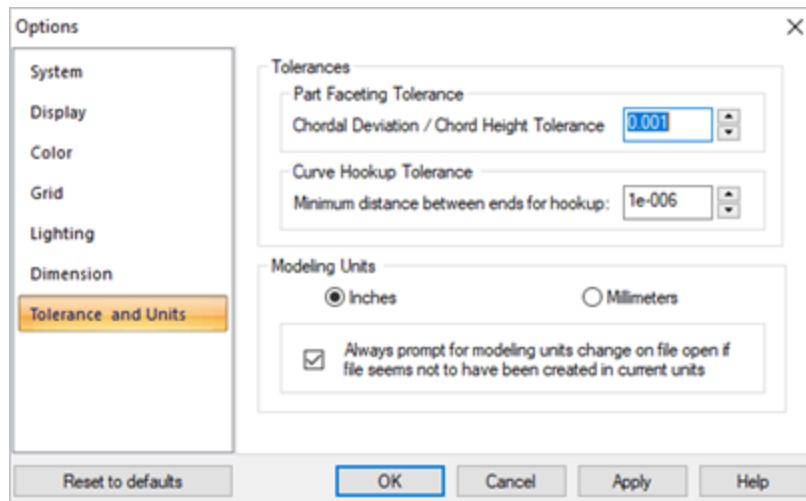
Related Topics

[Options](#)

1.5.7 Tolerance and Units

This controls the accuracy of the model and part units.

Dialog Box: Options > Tolerance and Units



Dialog Box: Options > Tolerance and Units

Tolerances

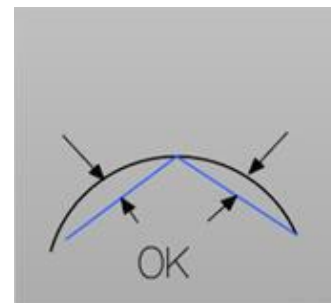
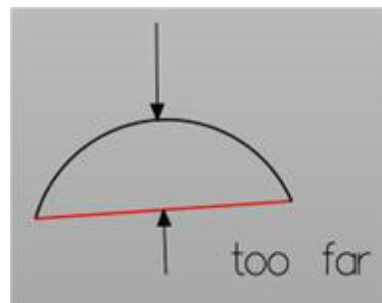
This controls the accuracy of the models. Smaller tolerance numbers often result in significantly big files and slower processing time but are more accurate.

The tolerances are set in a dialog.

Part Faceting Tolerance

Chordal Deviation/Chord Height Tolerance

The chord height tolerance is used in commands that require approximation of smooth curves and surfaces.

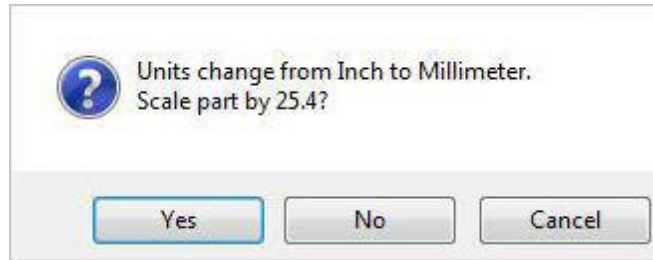


Curve Hookup Tolerance

This specifies maximum separation between the endpoints of different curves when joining them into a single curve.

 Units

This converts units from inches to millimeters or from millimeters to inches. If there are existing objects, a dialog will appear confirming if you really want to convert the units.



The objects remain the original size but the coordinate values change.

You can check the box to always prompt you to change the units when files are opened if they appear not to be in the correct units. For example, if the system sees a coordinate value that is quite large such as 500.5, then this dialog will display giving you the opportunity to change the units to Millimeters.

 Related Topics

Options

1.6 View Toolbar

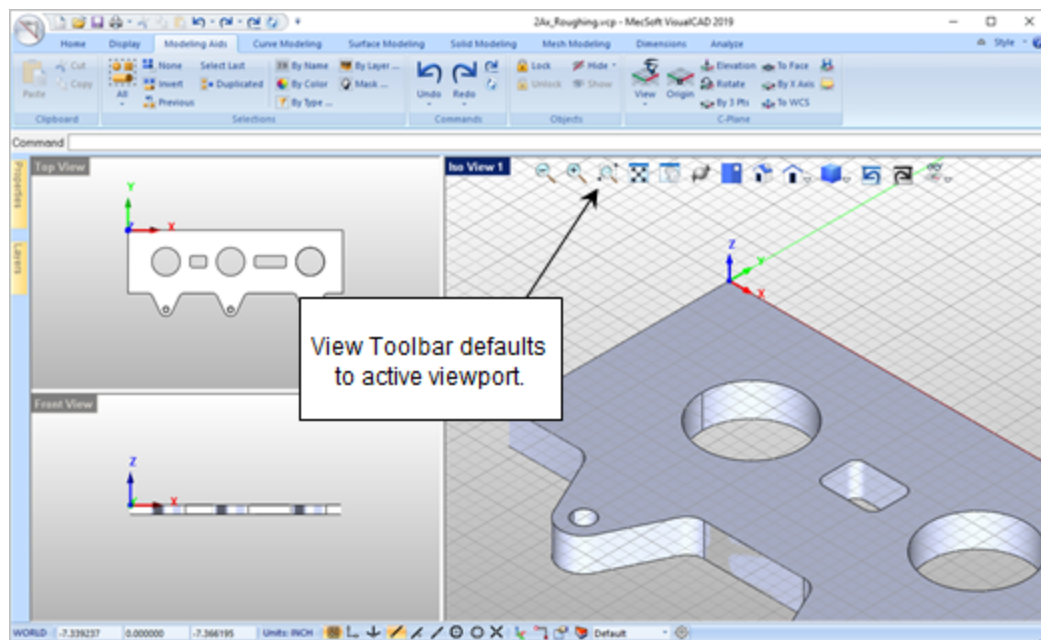
The **View Toolbar** contains easily accessible commands that control the appearance of the currently active view. This includes motion of the camera as well as how objects are displayed. When a view change is invoked from the **View Toolbar** toolbar, the existing view magnification factor is maintained. The **View Toolbar** is displayed in the currently active **Viewport**.

The View Toolbar



The View Toolbar

The View Toolbar Displayed in the Active Viewport

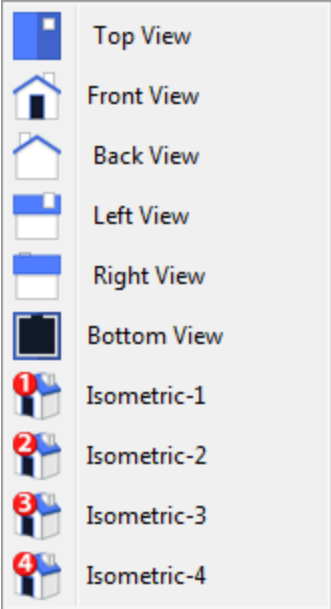
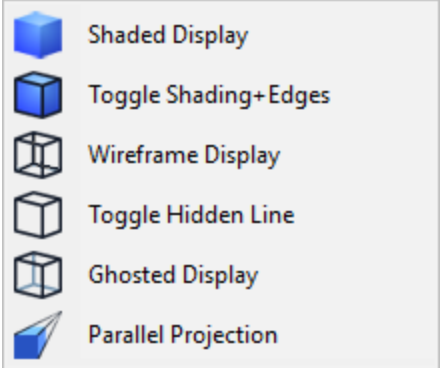


View Toolbar Displays in the Active Viewport by Default



The View Toolbar Commands

Icon	Command/Menu	Command
	Zoom Out	
	Zoom In	
	Zoom Box	
	Fit View	
	Dynamic Pan	
	Dynamic Rotate	
	Top View	
	Iso View	

	 View Menu	Top View
		Front View
		Back View
		Left View
		Right View
		Bottom View
		Isometric-1,2,3,4
	 Display Menu	Shaded Display
		Toggle Shaded+Edges
		Wireframe Display
		Toggle Hidden Lines
		Ghosted Display
		Toggle Parallel/Perspective Projection
	Previous View	These are Undo/Redo View commands.
	Next View	
	 Show/Hide Menu	Hide/Show Grid
		Hide/Show WCS



Related Topics

[Zoom Out](#)
[Zoom In](#)
[Zoom Box](#)
[Fit View](#)
[Dynamic Pan View](#)
[Dynamic Rotate View](#)
[Top View](#)
[Iso View](#)
[Front View](#)
[Back View](#)
[Left View](#)
[Right View](#)
[Bottom View](#)
[Shaded Display](#)
[Toggle Shading + Edges](#)
[Wireframe Display](#)
[Hidden Line Display](#)
[Ghosted Display](#)
[Toggle Parallel/Perspective Projection](#)
[Hide/Show Grid](#)
[Hide/Show WCS](#)

1.6.1 3D Mouse



VisualCAD supports 3D devices from 3Dconnexion®. It can be customized in the 3Dconnexion® Properties dialog by selecting the Button Configuration tab. Button configurations can be set for either the Left mouse button, the Right mouse button, or both and other buttons depending on the type of 3D device you are using.

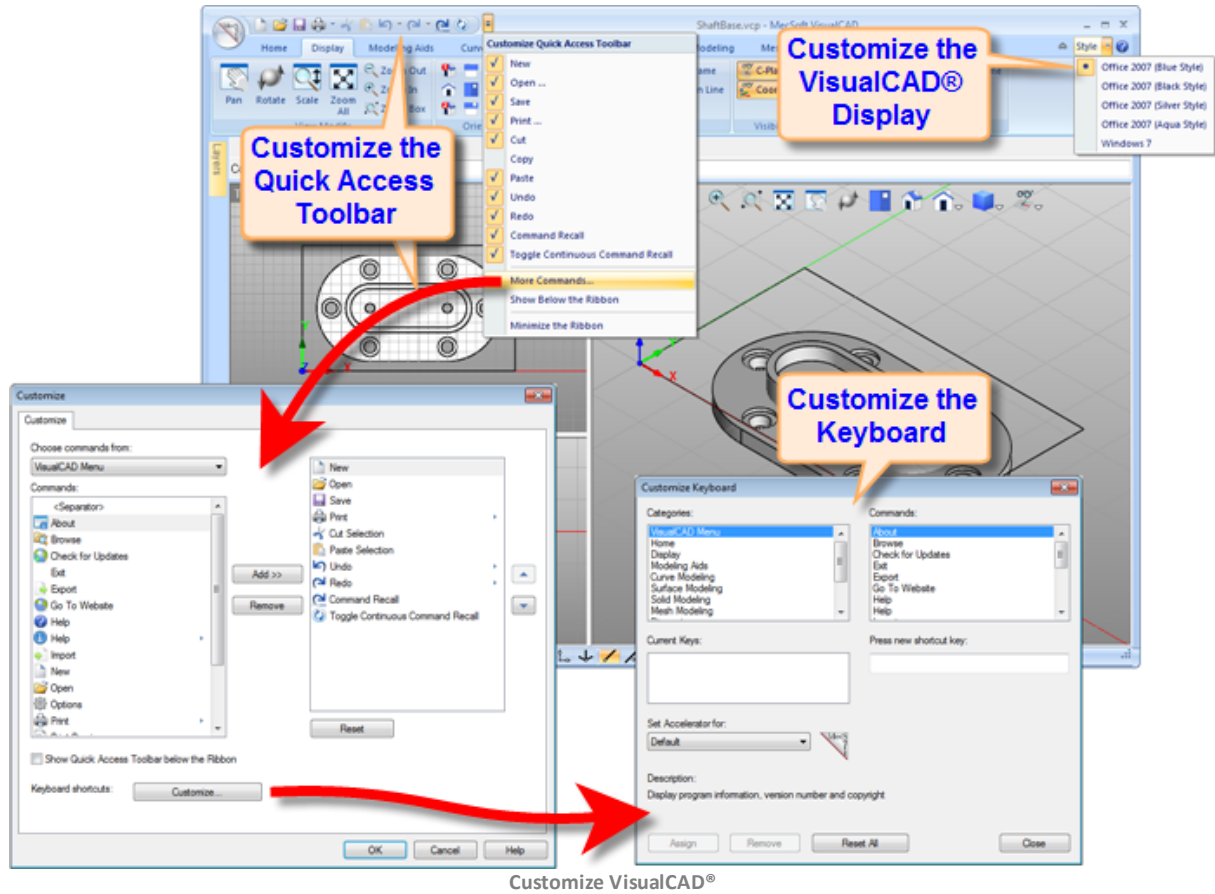


Related Topics

[View Tool Bar](#)

1.7 Customize VisualCAD

The VisualCAD display can be easily customized to suit your drawing needs.



Customize VisualCAD®



Related Topics

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Minimize Ribbon Bar](#)

[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[Customize the Keyboard](#)

[Styles Menu](#)

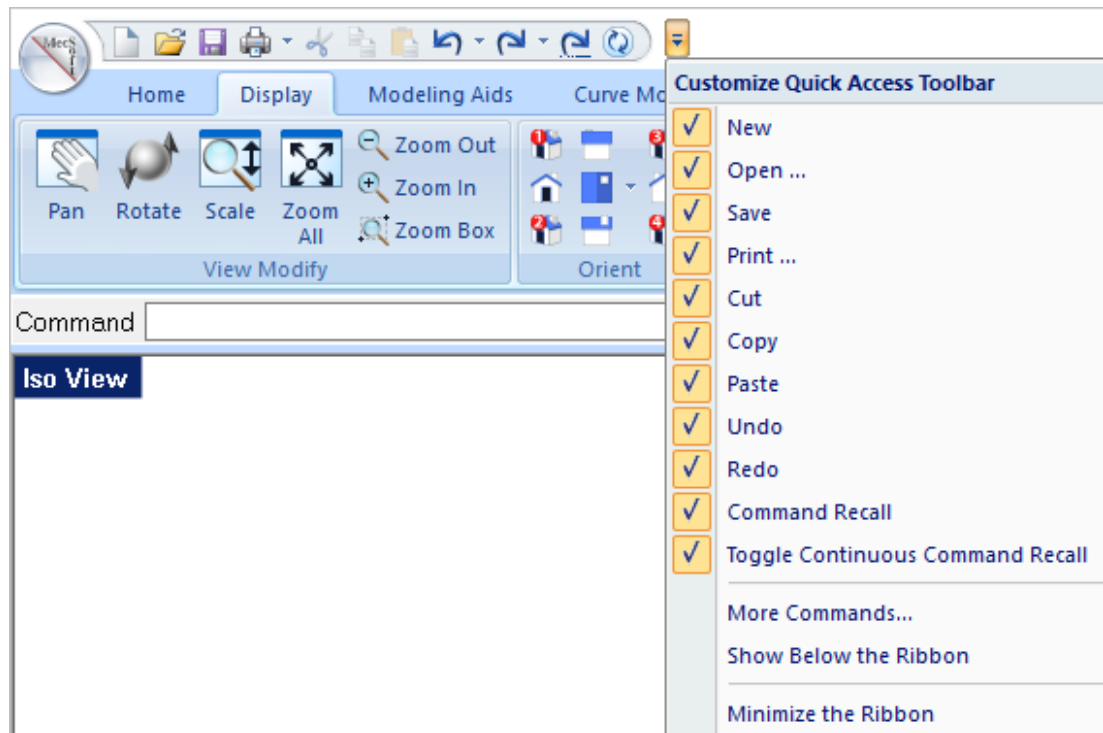
1.7.1 Customize Quick Access Toolbar



You can add/remove commands to the Quick Access Toolbar and perform other User Interface customization from the Customize Quick Access Toolbar menu.

Menu: Customize Quick Access Toolbar

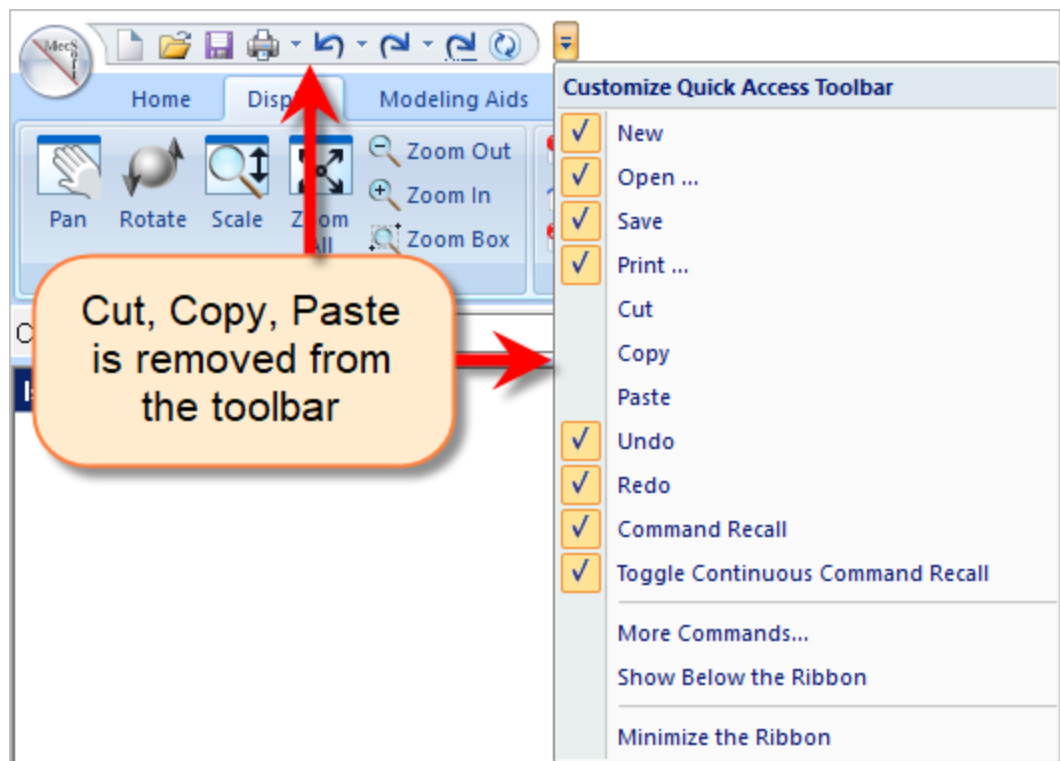
Select the indicator  to the right of the [Quick Access Toolbar](#) to display the menu:



Displaying the Quick Access Toolbar Menu

Quickly Turn Commands On/Off

Select a command from the menu to "uncheck" it and remove it from the Quick Access Toolbar. Selecting it again will add it back to the toolbar.



Quickly Turn Commands On/Off from the Quick Access Toolbar



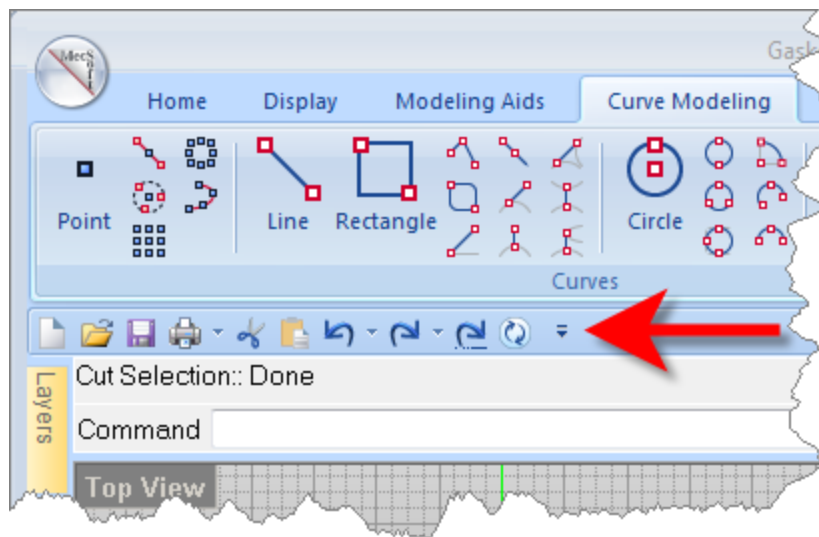
More Commands...

You can add more commands to the toolbar by selecting [More Commands ...](#) from the [Quick Access Toolbar Menu](#). This will display the [Customize](#) dialog. From this dialog you can also [Customize the Keyboard](#).



Show below the Ribbon

You can move the [Quick Access Toolbar](#) to reside below the [Ribbon](#) bar by selecting [Show Below Ribbon](#) from the [Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#) menu. You can also do this by selecting appropriate check box in the [Customize](#) dialog.

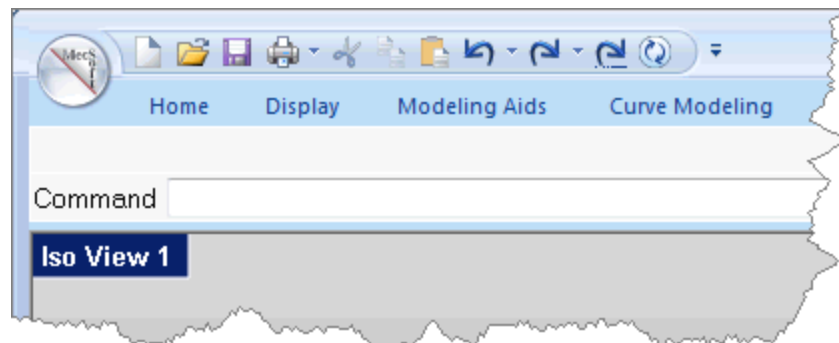


Show the Quick Access Toolbar below the Ribbon Bar



Minimize the Ribbon Bar

You can minimize the [Ribbon Bar](#) by selecting [Minimize the Ribbon](#) from the [Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#) menu. You can then select one of the tabs to show the [Ribbon Bar](#) as needed.



The Ribbon Bar is shown Minimized



Related Topics

[Customize VisualCAD](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)

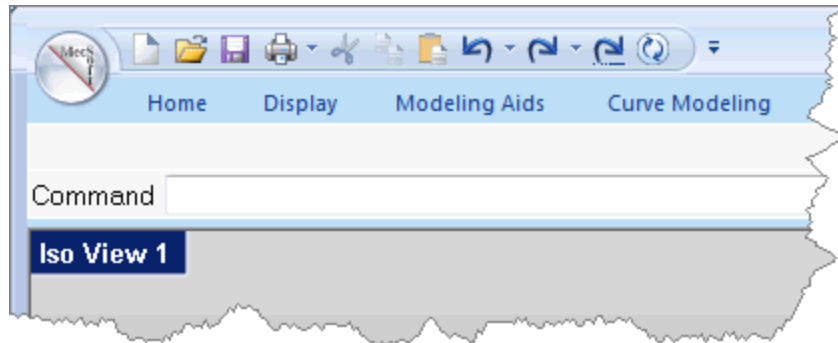
[Customize Dialog](#)

[Customize the Keyboard](#)

[Styles Menu](#)

1.7.2 Minimize Ribbon Bar

You can minimize the [Ribbon Bar](#) by selecting [Minimize the Ribbon](#) from the [Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#) menu. You can then select one of the tabs to show the [Ribbon Bar](#) as needed.



The Ribbon Bar is shown Minimized



Related Topics

[Customize VisualCAD](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[Customize the Keyboard](#)

[Styles Menu](#)

1.7.3 Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys

[VisualCAD](#) installs with [Preset <Alt> Key](#) combinations that you can use to quickly execute the various commands located on each [Ribbon Bar](#). Refer to topic below for more information.



Using the Preset <Alt> Keys

1. Press the <Alt> key on your keyboard and [VisualCAD](#) will display (and activate) <Alt> key assignments for the [VisualCAD Menu](#), [Quick Access Toolbar](#) and each [Ribbon Bar](#).
2. With the <Alt> key pressed, you can then press one of the assigned keys to execute the command or display the menu or [Ribbon Bar](#).
3. To display (and activate) the <Alt> keys assigned to commands on one of the [Ribbon Bars](#), first press the <Alt> key combination for the desired [Ribbon Bar](#) and then with the <Alt> key still pressed, press the key assigned to the desired command.

- For example, to execute the **Single Line** command, press **<Alt+C>** to display the **Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar** and then press **<LS>** with the **<Alt>** key still pressed.

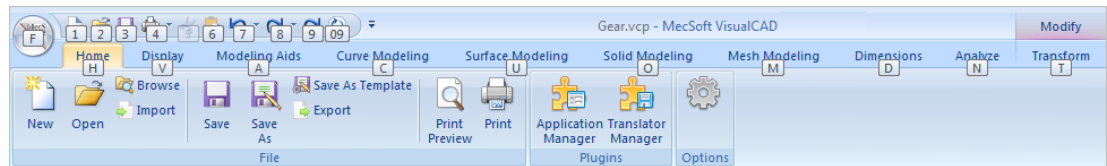
The preset **<Alt>** key assignments for each menu and command are shown below.



Preset **<Alt>** Keys: Menus

The following preset **<Alt>** Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the **VisualCAD Menu**, **Quick Access Toolbar** and **Ribbon Bars** as shown below. These can be displayed in **VisualCAD** by pressing the **<Alt>** key.

For example, pressing **<Alt+A>** will automatically display the **Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar**.

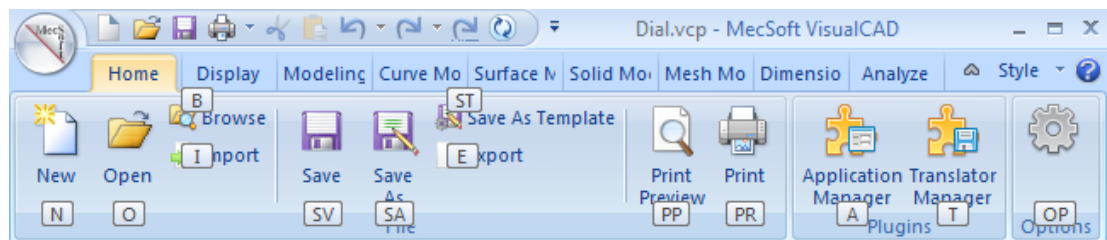


Preset **<Alt>** Keys: Menus



Preset **<Alt>** Keys: Home Ribbon Bar

The following preset **<Alt>** Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the **Home Ribbon Bar**.

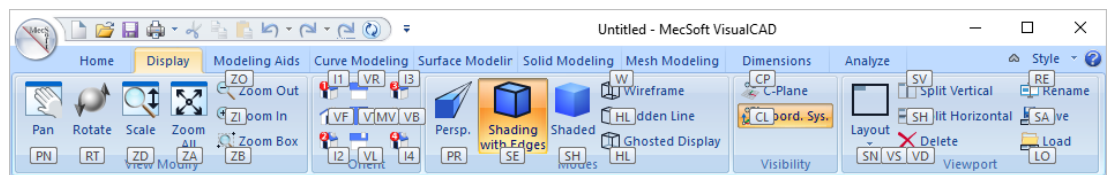


Preset **<Alt>** Keys: Home Ribbon Bar



Preset **<Alt>** Keys: Display Ribbon Bar

The following preset **<Alt>** Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the **Display Ribbon Bar**.

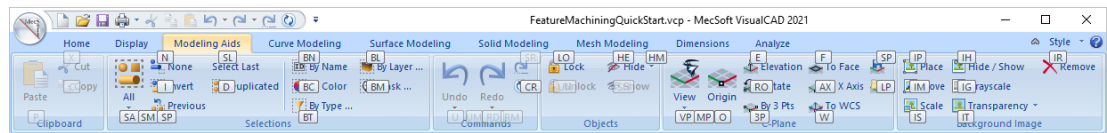


Preset **<Alt>** Keys: Display Ribbon Bar



Preset **<Alt>** Keys: Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar

The following preset **<Alt>** Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the **Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar**.

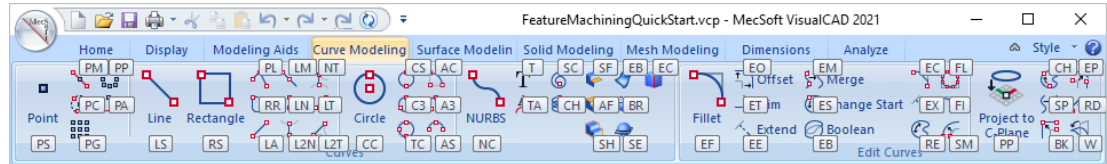


Preset <Alt> Keys: Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar



Preset <Alt> Keys: Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar

The following preset <Alt> Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar.

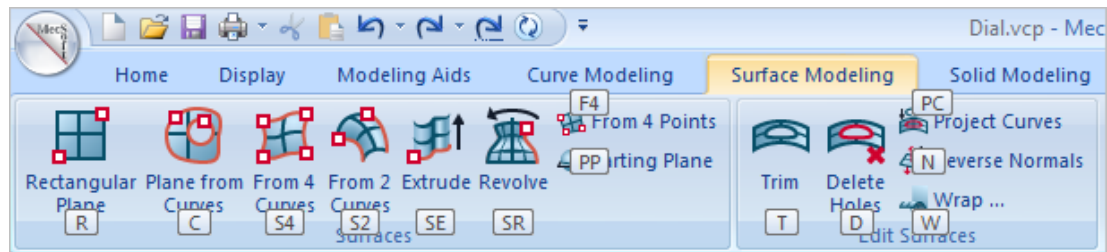


Preset <Alt> Keys: Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar



Preset <Alt> Keys: Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar

The following preset <Alt> Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar.

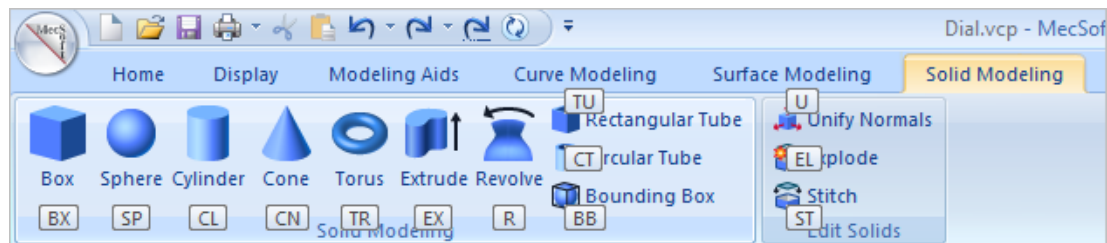


Preset <Alt> Keys: Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar



Preset <Alt> Keys: Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar

The following preset <Alt> Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar.

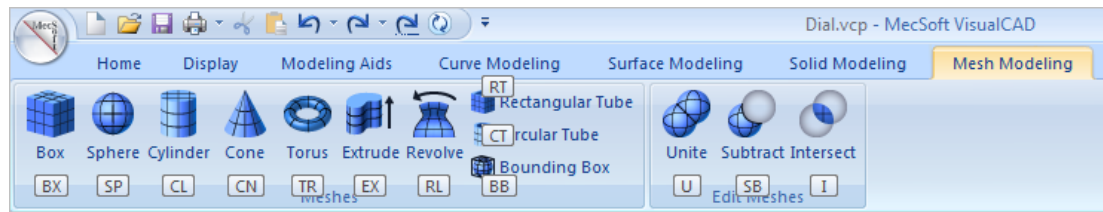


Preset <Alt> Keys: Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar



Preset <Alt> Keys: Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar

The following preset <Alt> Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar.

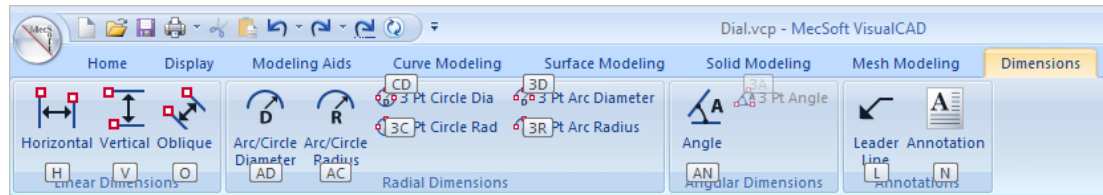


Preset <Alt> Keys: Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar



Preset <Alt> Keys: Dimensions Ribbon Bar

The following preset <Alt> Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the Dimensions Ribbon Bar.

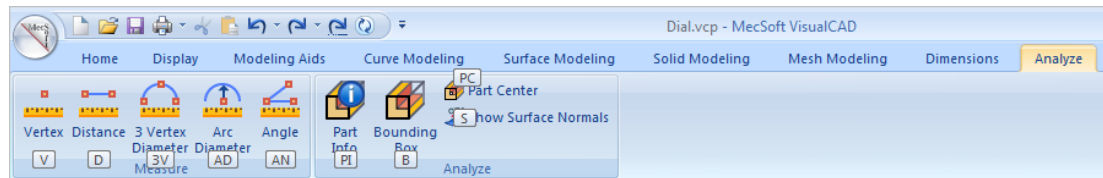


Preset <Alt> Keys: Dimensions Modeling Ribbon Bar



Preset <Alt> Keys: Analyze Ribbon Bar

The following preset <Alt> Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the Analyze Ribbon Bar.

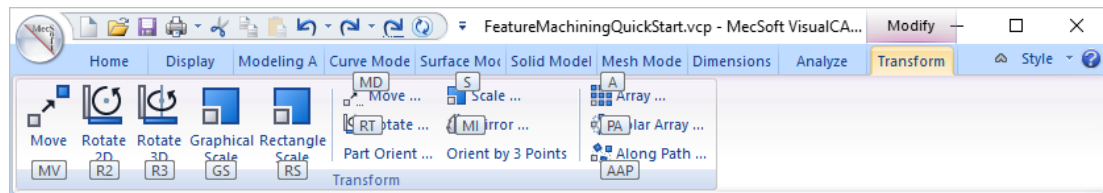


Preset <Alt> Keys: Analyze Ribbon Bar



Preset <Alt> Keys: Transform Ribbon Bar

The following preset <Alt> Accelerator key combinations are assigned to commands on the Transform Ribbon Bar.



Preset <Alt> Keys: Transform Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Customize VisualCAD](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Minimize Ribbon Bar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[Customize the Keyboard](#)

[Styles Menu](#)

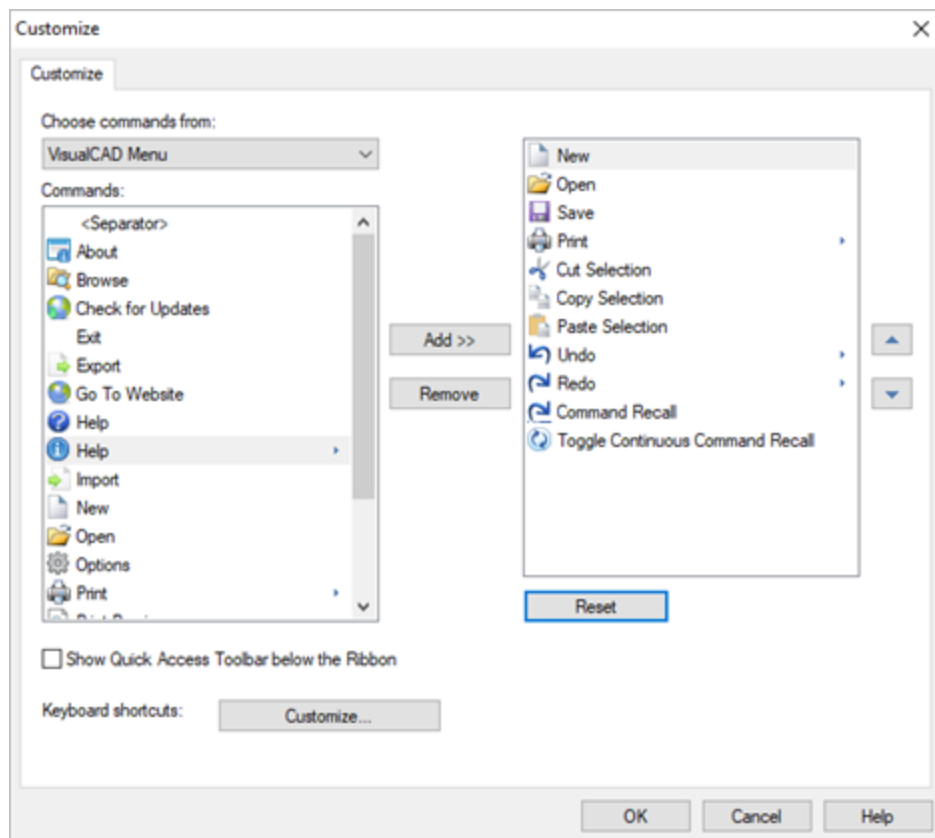
1.7.4 Customize Dialog

The [Customize](#) dialog shown below allows you to add new command icons to the [Quick Access Toolbar](#). From this dialog you can also [Customize the Keyboard](#) to execute [VisualCAD](#) commands quickly. Refer to the following topics for information.



Dialog Box: Customize

In the dialog shown below, the command icons currently assigned to the [Quick Access Toolbar](#) are listed on the right. The command icons from the [VisualCAD Menu](#) and each [Ribbon bar](#) are shown on the left.



Dialog Box: Customize



Choose commands from:

Select a [Ribbon bar](#) from the drop-down list. The commands on the selected Ribbon will be listed in the [Commands:](#) window.



Commands:

This window lists all of the commands on the [Ribbon bar](#) selected from the [Choose commands from:](#) list. Select a command from the list and then pick the [Add >>](#) button to add it to the list on the right.



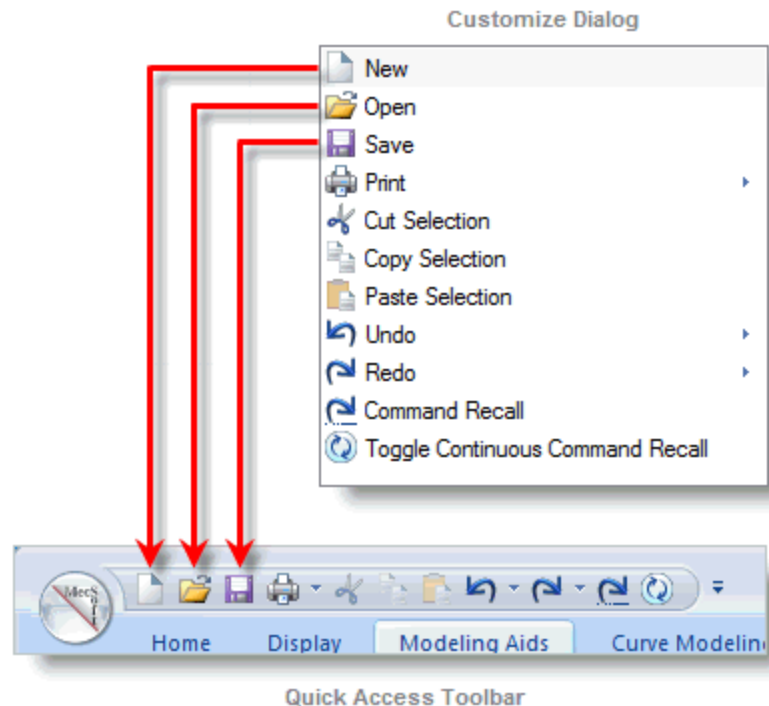
Add >> / Remove

The [Add >>](#) button adds a selected command from the [Commands:](#) list on the left to the list on the right. The [Remove](#) button removes a selected command from the list on the right.

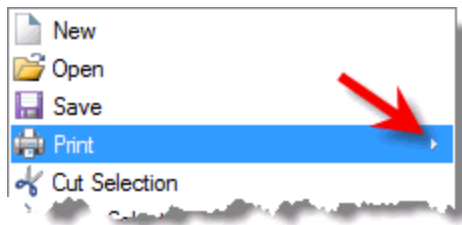


Selected Commands List

The list on the right shows all of the commands that are currently being displayed on the [Quick Access Toolbar](#). The order of the commands in the list determines the order of the command icons in on the [Quick Access Toolbar](#).



The icon ▶ to the left of a command in the list indicates that this command has a sub menu that will also be included on the [Quick Access Toolbar](#).



Submenu Indicator



Pick the **Up** or **Down** buttons to move a selected command higher (to the left) or lower (to the right) on the [Quick Access Toolbar](#).



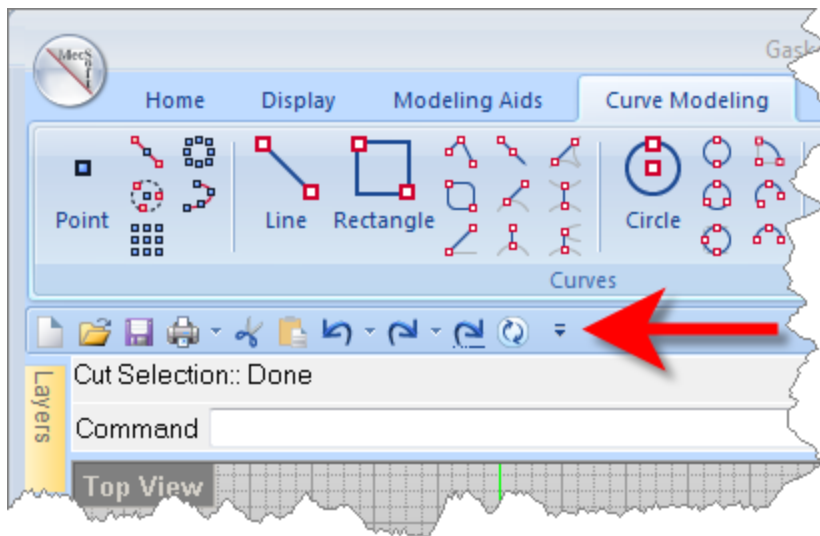
Reset

Select the [Reset](#) button to return the list on the right to the [Quick Access Toolbar's](#) default list of commands.



Show Quick Access Toolbar below Ribbon

Checking this box will force the [Quick Access Toolbar](#) to display below the [Ribbon bar](#). You can also do this by selecting [Show Below the Ribbon](#) from the [Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#) menu.



Show the Quick Access Toolbat below the Ribbon Bar



Keyboard Shortcuts / Customize

Select the [Customize...](#) button to display the [Customize Keyboard](#) dialog. From this dialog you can then reassign shortcut keys to any command on the various [Ribbon bars](#).



Related Topics

[Customize VisualCAD](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Minimize Ribbon Bar](#)

[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[Styles Menu](#)

1.7.5 Customize the Keyboard

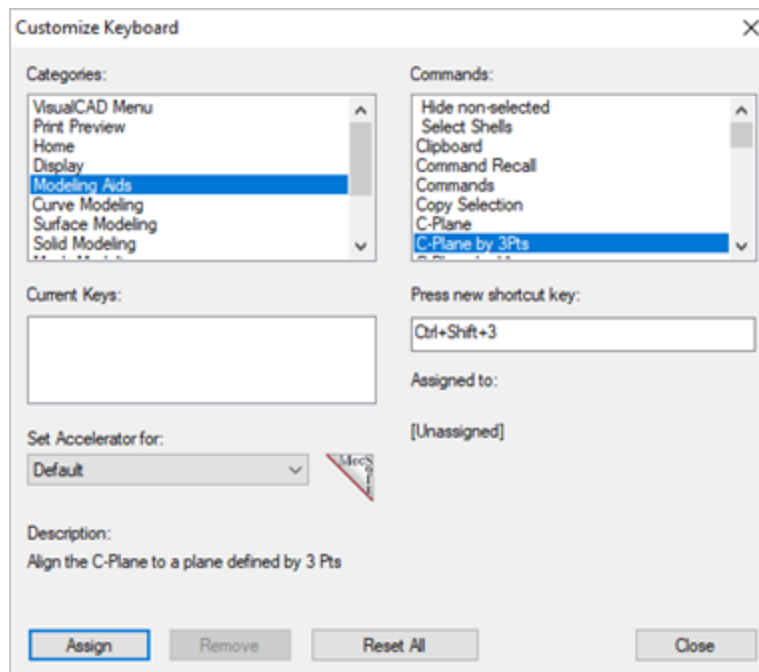
Invoked by the [Customize dialog](#), the [Customize Keyboard](#) dialog shown below allows you to redefine the [Default Shortcut Keys](#) assigned to your keyboard. Keyboard shortcuts are combinations of keys that can be pressed to execute a [VisualCAD](#) command. Pressing the shortcut keys does the same thing as moving the cursor to the toolbar / menu item and selecting the command, thus saving time and promotes the continuous flow of your work.

Keyboard shortcuts are also called hot-keys.



Dialog Box: Customize Keyboard

In the dialog shown below, the [C-Plane by 3 Points](#) command located on the [Modeling Aids Ribbon bar](#) is being assigned to the keyboard short keys **Ctrl+Shift+3**. The dialog also informs you that those keyboard shortcut keys have not previously been assigned. Each section of the dialog is described in detail below.



Dialog Box: Customize Keyboard



Categories:

This section lists all of the individual panes on each ribbon bars as well as each ribbon bar. Select a category and the commands located on that ribbon bar/pane will be listed on the right within the [Commands](#) list.



Commands:

This section lists all of the commands located on the [Ribbon bar or Pane](#) selected from the [Categories](#) section on the left. Select a command from the list to assign a new shortcut keys or to reassign its current shortcut keys.



Current Keys:

If the command selected from the [Commands](#) list has a shortcut key assigned to it, it will be displayed in the [Current Keys:](#) windows. This window is for information purposes and cannot be edited.



Press new shortcut key:

After selecting a command from the [Commands:](#), place the mouse cursor in this field to activate it. Then from the keyboard, press the shortcut keys that you want to assign to the command.



If the keyboard shortcut keys are currently assigned to another command, that command is listed under the [Assigned to:](#) section directly below this field. * If you pick the [Assign](#) button, the shortcut keys will be reassigned!



Assigned to:

If the keyboard shortcut keys you entered in the [Press new shortcut key:](#) fields are currently assigned to another command, that command is listed under the [Assigned to:](#) section.



Set Accelerator for:

This sets the keyboard accelerator. Currently only [Default](#) is available on the list which sets the accelerator for [VisualCAD](#).



Description:

After you select a command from the [Commands:](#) list a description of the command is shown under this section. Refer to the example dialog shown above as a reference.



Assign / Remove / Reset All

Once you are certain about the selected command and the new shortcut keys, pick the [Assign](#) button to associate them. [VisualCAD](#) will then execute the command

when those shortcut keys are pressed.



Related Topics

[Customize VisualCAD](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Minimize Ribbon Bar](#)

[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

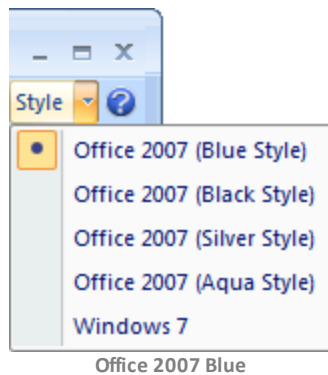
[Styles Menu](#)

1.7.6 Styles Menu

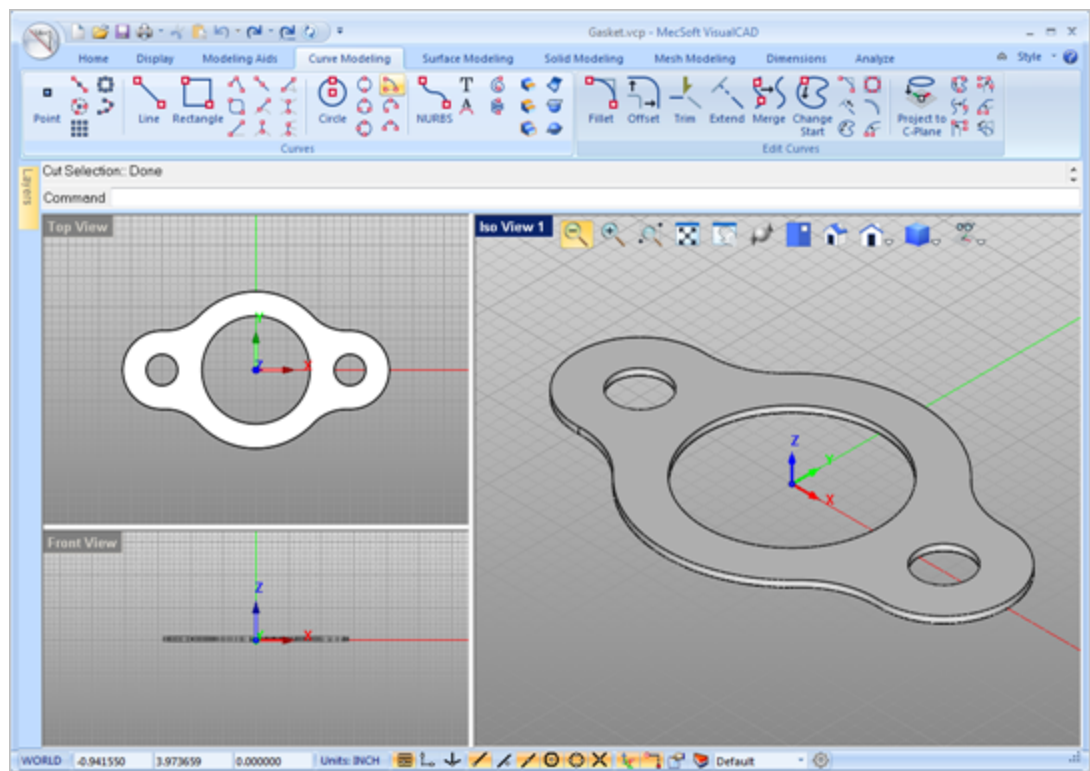
You can select different themes to change how the windows appear. The borders, colors, highlighting, and shadowing of standard buttons, dialogs, and windows are controlled by which theme is selected.



The Styles Menu



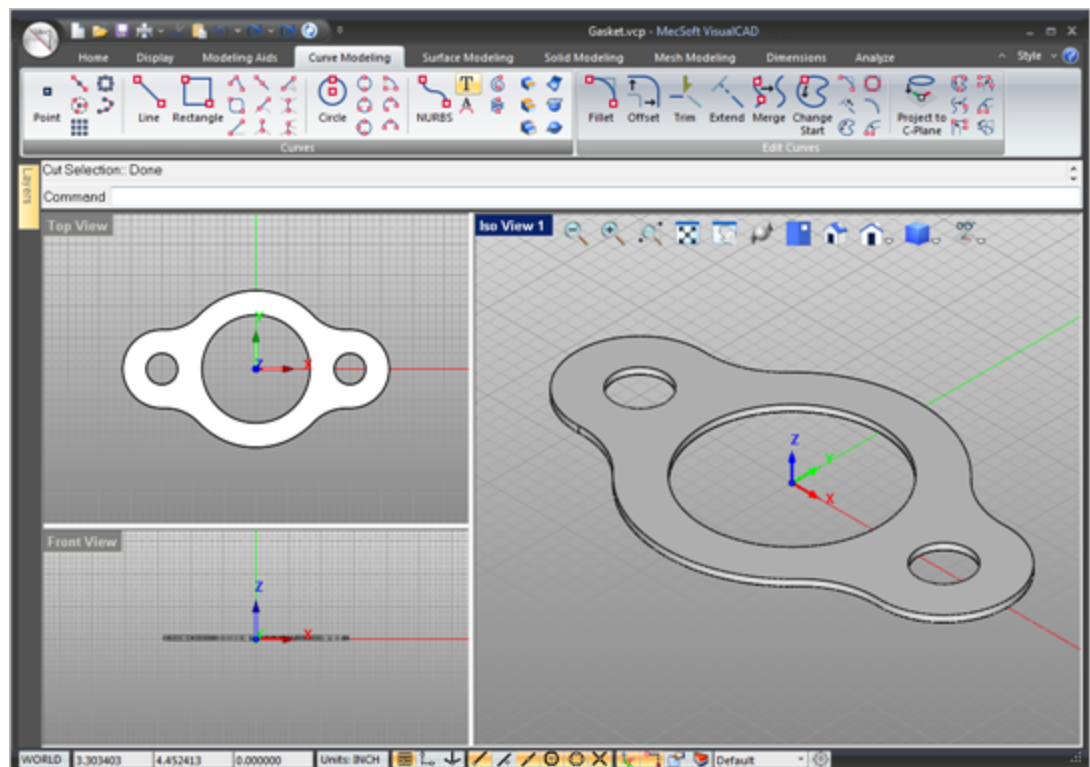
Office 2007 (Blue Style)



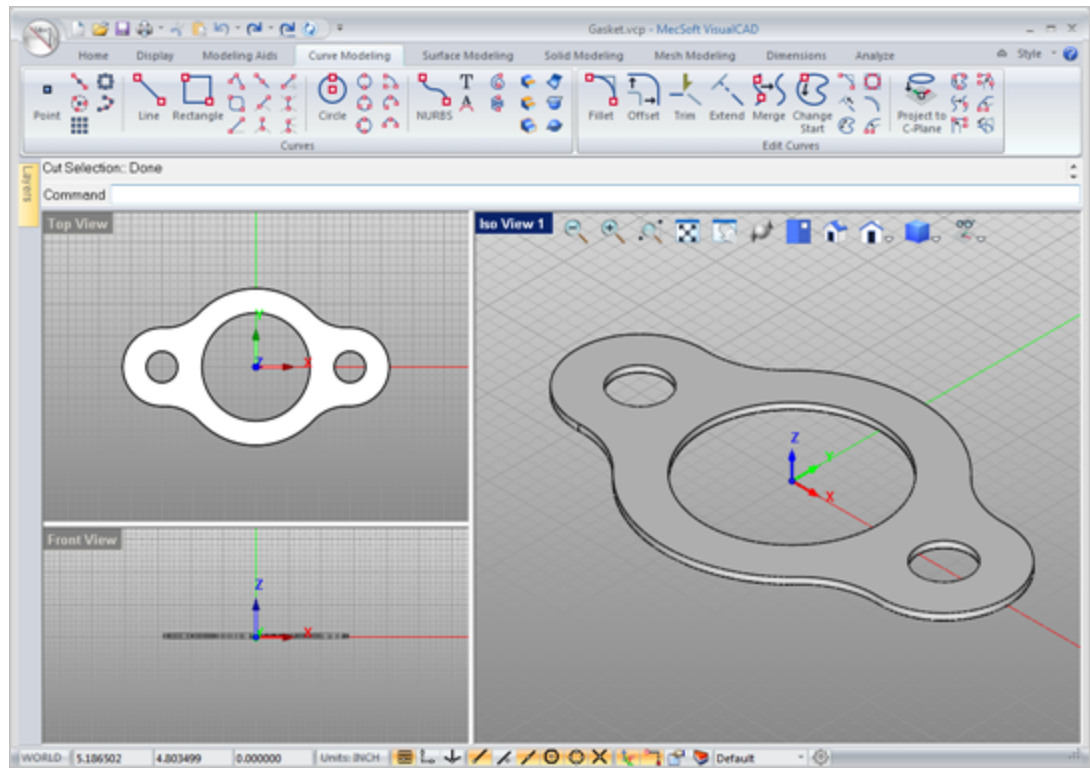
Office 2007 (Blue Style)



Office 2007 (Black Style)

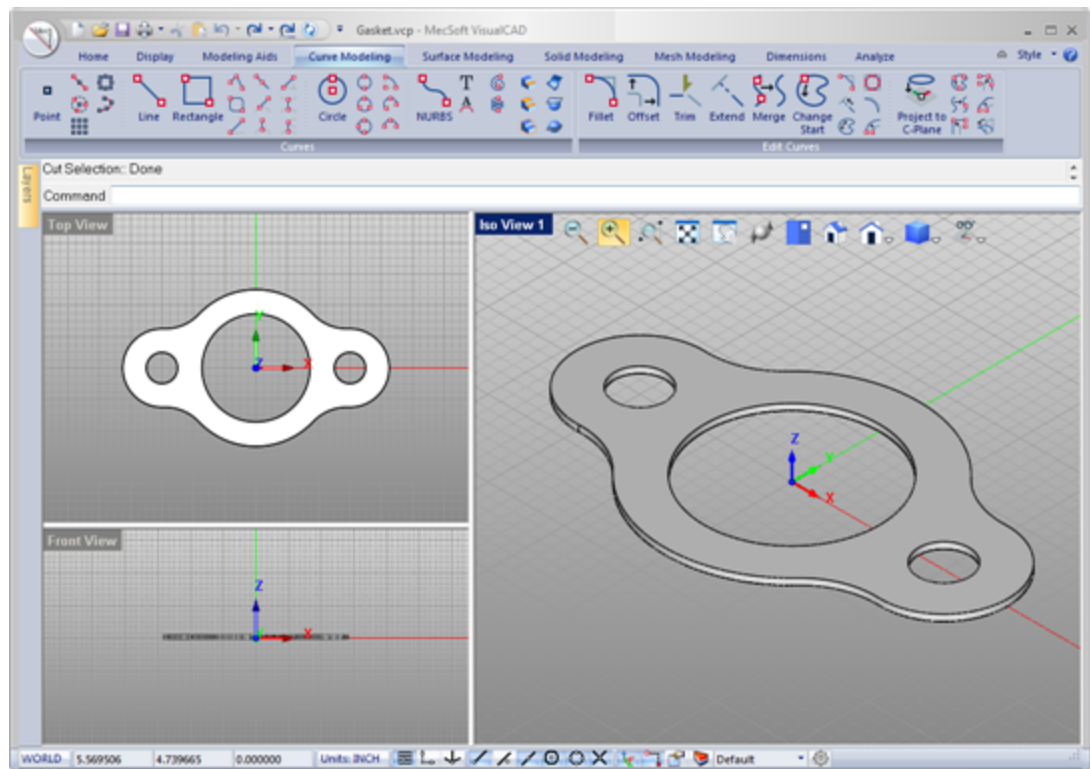


Office 2007 (Black Style)

 Office 2007 (Silver Style)

Office 2007 (Silver Style)

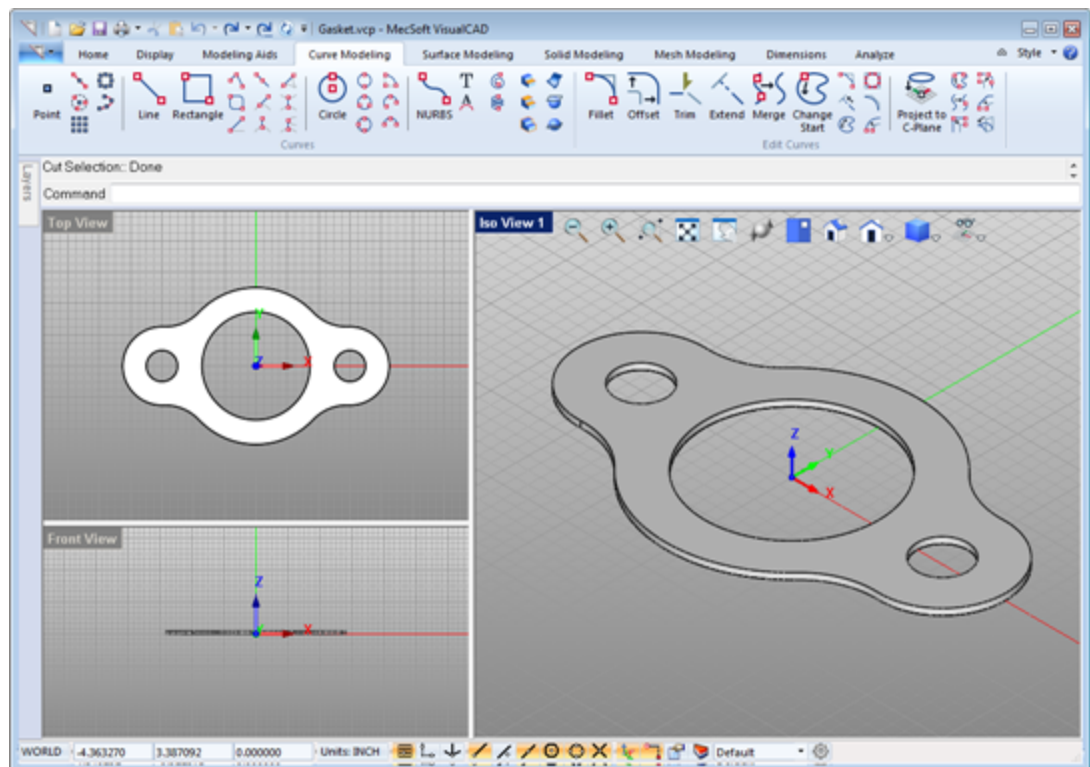
 Office 2007 (Aqua Style)



Office 2007 (Aqua Style)



Windows 7



Windows 7



Related Topics

[Customize VisualCAD](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Minimize Ribbon Bar](#)

[Preset <Alt> Accelerator Keys](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[Customize the Keyboard](#)

Quick Start



VisualCAD 2025

[Prefer Printed Documentation? Click Here!](#)

[What's New](#) | [Quick Start Play List](#)

[Quick Start Guides](#) for each [VisualCAD](#) module are available in both PDF and Video format. Refer to the following information to access these resources:



Training Guides (Click on Image to Download)



Related Topics

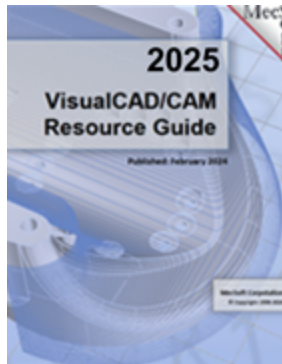
[Find More Resources](#)

Resource Guide

Download this PDF Guide for a list of the available [VisualCAD Resources](#).



2025 VisualCAD Resource Guide



The 2025 VisualCAD Resource Guide!

18 Pages

Lists PDF downloads and Online resources including [Quick Start Guides](#), [Reference Guides](#), [Exercise Guides](#), [Tutorials](#) and [More](#).

[Prefer Printed Documentation? Click Here!](#)

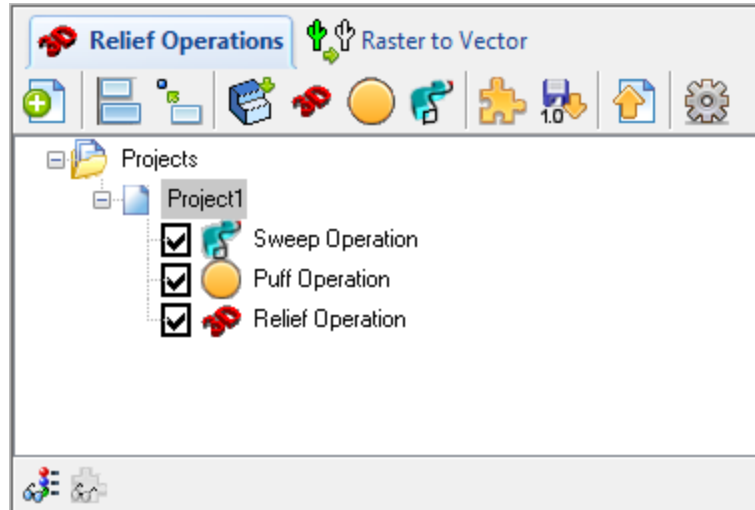
[What's New](#) | [Quick Start Play List](#)

VisualCAD Menu

The [VisualCAD Menu](#) controls for manipulating files, printing, and exiting the program. The most recently opened [VCP](#) file names are listed for easy access. If one of those names is selected, that file will be loaded. All current work will be overwritten by the loaded file.



Show me the File Menu



File Menu



Related Topics

[New](#)

[Open ...](#)

[Browse ...](#)

[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Export ...](#)

[Print ...](#)

[Print Preview](#)

[Print Setup ...](#)

[Options ...](#)

[Help & Info](#)

[Help Topics](#)

[Check for Updates](#)

[Go To Website](#)

[About VisualCAD](#)

[Exit](#)

4.1 New



Create a new **VCP (VisualCAD Part)** file. The file holds the geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences. If there are unsaved objects, a dialog will ask you if they want to save them before creating the new **VCP** file. All current work will be overwritten by the new file.



Related Topics

[File](#)

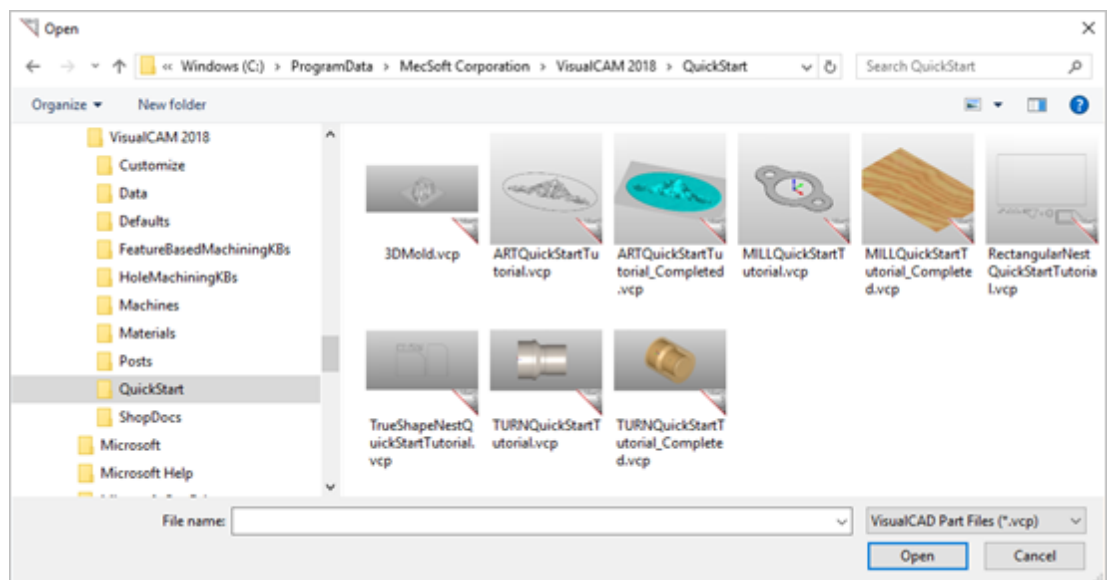
4.2 Open ...



Open an existing **VCP (VisualCAD Part)** file or one of the [supported file types](#). The file holds the geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences. If there are existing unsaved objects, a dialog will ask you if you want to save them before opening the **VCP** file. All current work will be overwritten by the loaded file.



Dialog Box: Open



Dialog Box: Open

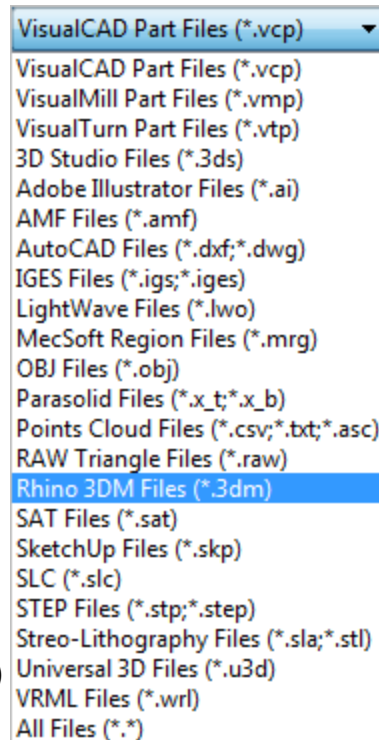
Standard Windows® [File Browser](#) supports preview of **VisualCAD *.vcp** drawings and models.



Files of Type Supported

The following file types are supported by VisualCAD. See [File Open](#) and [File Import](#) for more information

- VisualCAD Part Files (*.vcp)
- VisualMILL Part Files (*.vmp)
- VisualTurn Part Files (*.vct)
- 3D Studio Files (*.3ds)
- Adobe Illustrator Files (*.ai)
- AMF Files (*.amf)
- AutoCAD (*.dxf;*.dwg)
- IGES Files (*.igs;*.iges)
- LightWave Files (*.lwo)
- MecSoft Region Files (*.mrg)
- OBJ Files (*.obj)
- Parasolid Files (*.x_t;*.x_b)
- Point Cloud Files (*.cvs;*.txt;*.asc)
- RAW Triangle Files (*.raw)
- RHINO 3DM Files (*.3dm)
- SAT Files (*.sat)
- SketchUP Files (*.skp)
- SLC Files (*.slc)
- STEP Files (*.stp;*.step)
- Stereo-lithography files (*.sla;*.stl)
- Universal 3D Files (*.u3d)
- VRML Files (*.wrl)



File Types Supported



Related Topics

[File](#)

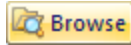
[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Browse...](#)

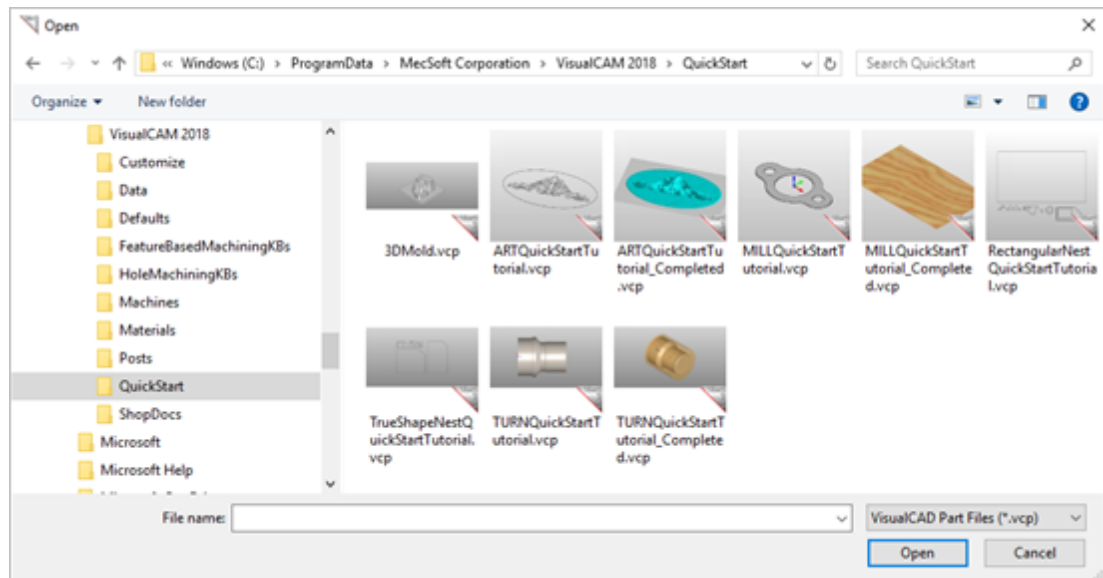
4.3 Browse ...



Visually browse files on the computer. **VCP** files can be opened. A preview window will show the last view displayed when the original file was saved.



Dialog Box: VisualCAD® File Browser



Dialog Box: VisualCAD® File Browser



Related Topics

[File Menu](#)

[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

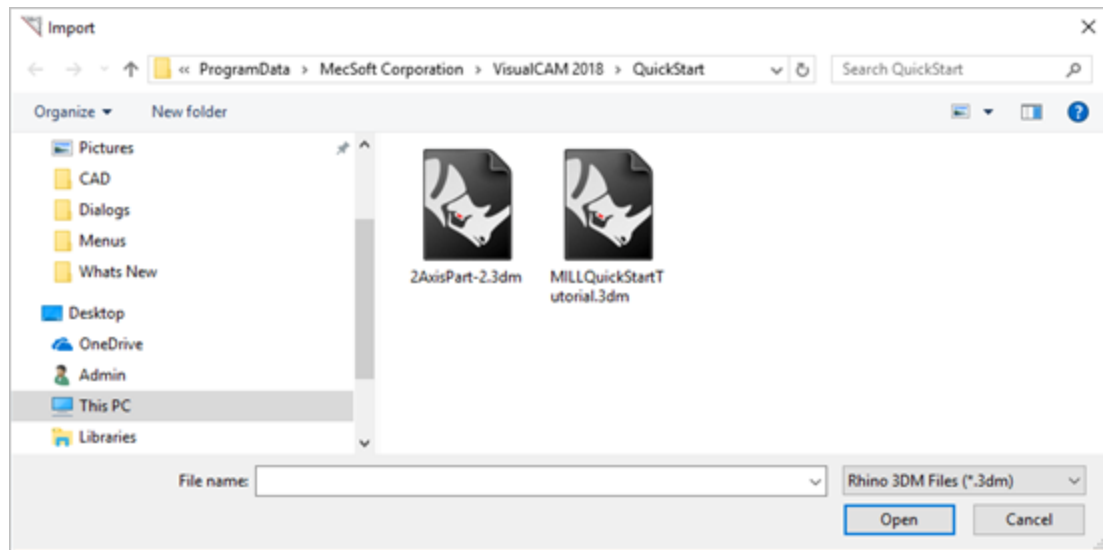
4.4 Import ...



Open existing files made by other programs. This is used to transfer information, normally geometric models. Currently, **VisualCAD** can import the following formats:



Dialog Box: Import



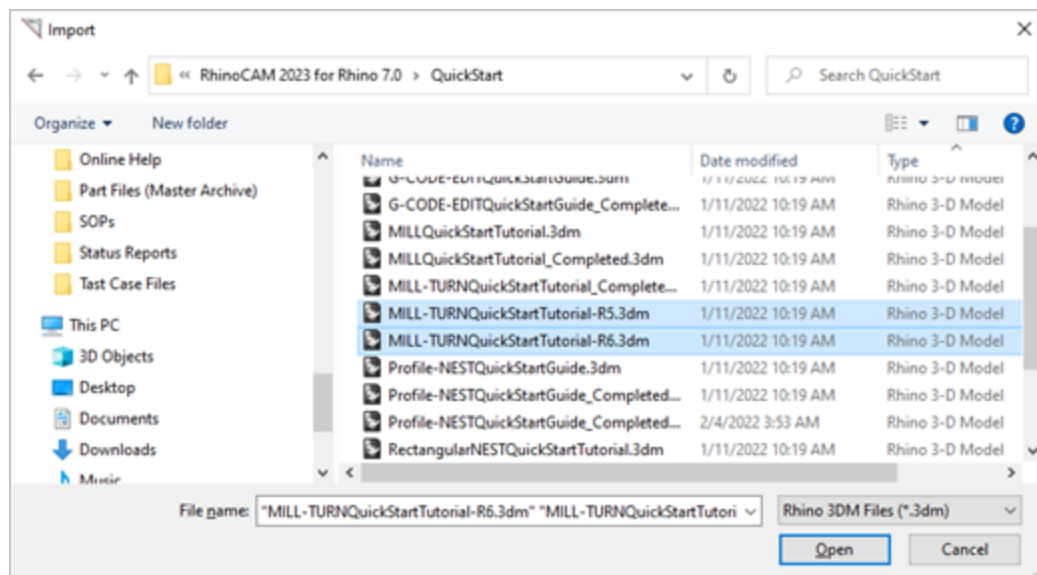
Dialog Box: Import

Standard Windows® [File Browser](#) supports preview of [VisualCAD](#) *.vcp drawings and models.



Import Multiple Files

You can [Import](#) multiple files at the same time. To do so, first press and hold the [<Ctrl>](#) key while selecting the files from the Import dialog. Each file will highlight and also be listed together in the [File name](#) field at the bottom of the dialog. When done selecting files, pick the [Open](#) button.



Dialog Box: Import (When importing multiple files at once)

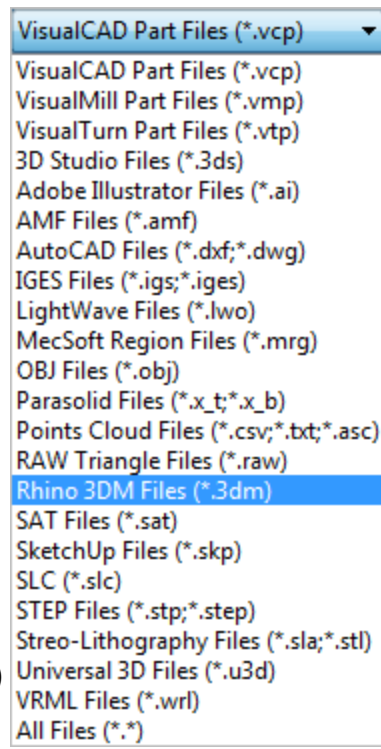
Standard Windows® [File Browser](#) supports preview of [VisualCAD](#) *.vcp drawings and models.



Files of Type Supported

The following file types are supported by VisualCAD. See [File Open](#) and [File Import](#) for more information

- VisualCAD Part Files (*.vcp)
- VisualMILL Part Files (*.vmp)
- VisualTurn Part Files (*.vct)
- 3D Studio Files (*.3ds)
- Adobe Illustrator Files (*.ai)
- AMF Files (*.amf)
- AutoCAD (*.dxf;*.dwg)
- IGES Files (*.igs;*.iges)
- LightWave Files (*.lwo)
- MecSoft Region Files (*.mrg)
- OBJ Files (*.obj)
- Parasolid Files (*.x_t;*.x_b)
- Point Cloud Files (*.cvs;*.txt;*.asc)
- RAW Triangle Files (*.raw)
- RHINO 3DM Files (*.3dm)
- SAT Files (*.sat)
- SketchUP Files (*.skp)
- SLC Files (*.slc)
- STEP Files (*.stp;*.step)
- Stereo-lithography files (*.sla;*.stl)
- Universal 3D Files (*.u3d)
- VRML Files (*.wrl)



File Types Supported



Related Topics

[File](#)

[Export](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As](#)

[Browse...](#)

4.5 Save



Save geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences in a [VCP](#) file. If saving for the first time, you can name the file and select where on the computer to save the file. If the file had been saved previously, the current information overwrites the original information.



Related Topics

[File](#)

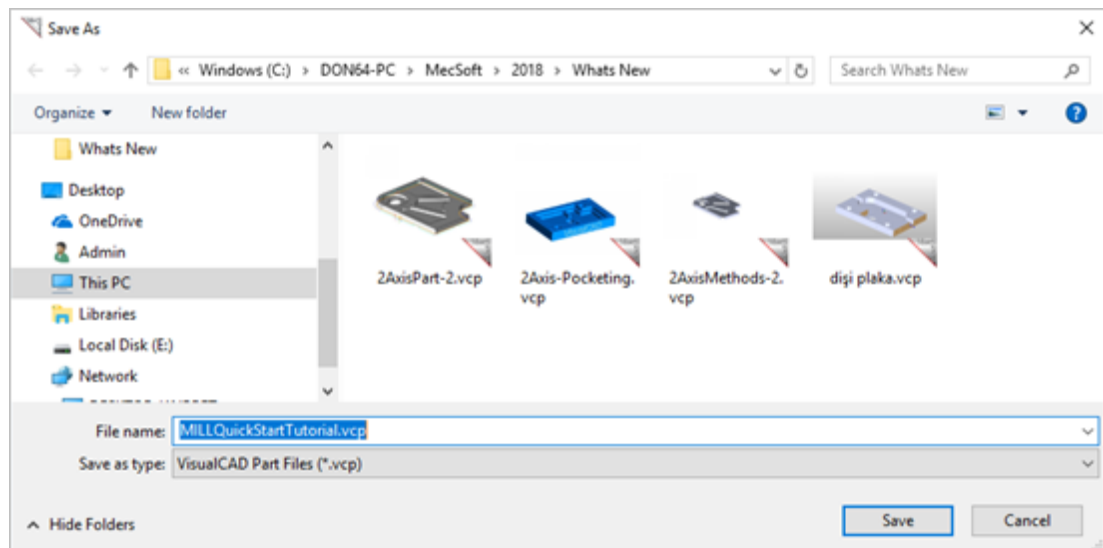
4.6 Save As ...



Save geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences in a [VCP](#) file. Name the file and select where on the computer to save it. If selecting an existing file, the current information will overwrite the original information. See [Export ...](#) to save as different file types.



File Save As dialog box



File Save As dialog box



Save as Files Types Supported

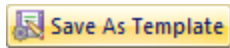
- [VisualCAD](#) Part Files (*.vcp)



Related Topics

[File](#)

4.7 Save As Template



Use this to save VisualCAD® preferences ([System](#), [Display](#), [Color](#), [Grid](#), [Lighting](#), [Dimension](#), [Tolerance and Units](#)) in the *.vcp file. This template file can then be used to begin new VisualCAD drawings.

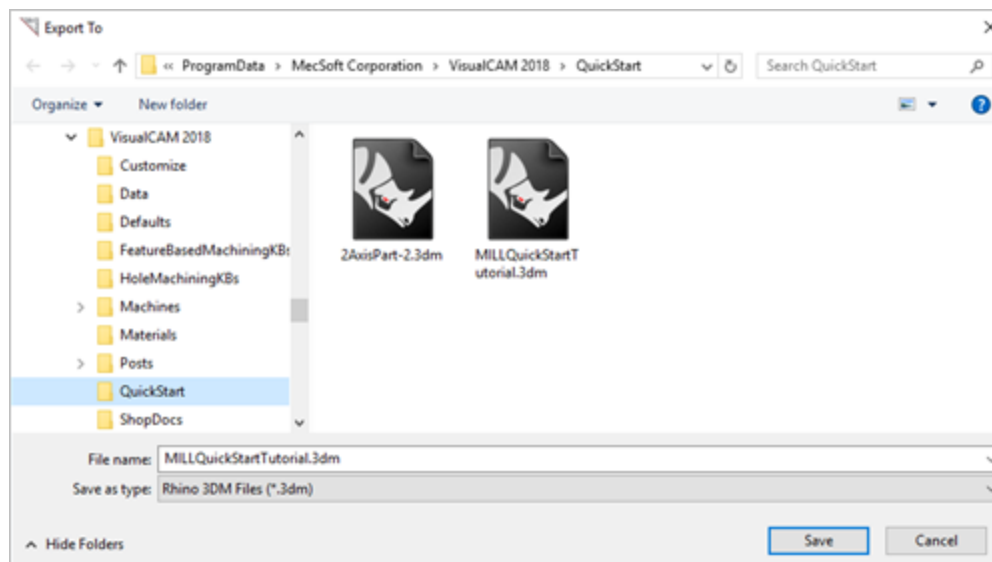
4.8 Export ...



Save geometry in a neutral file format (can be read by many different programs). The following export translators are available. Binary formats are usually much smaller in size, but ASCII formats are more easily read. Ordinary text programs can read the ASCII files.



Dialog Box: Export To

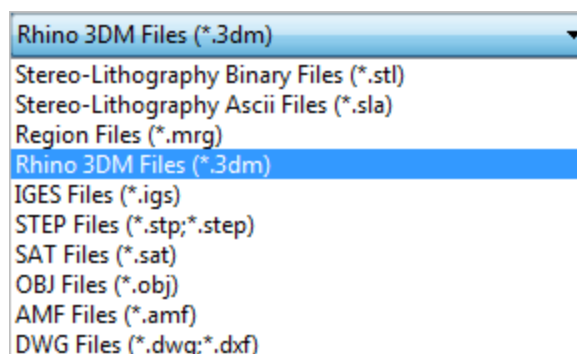


Dialog Box: Export To



Export File Types Supported

The following file types are supported by VisualCAD during Export:



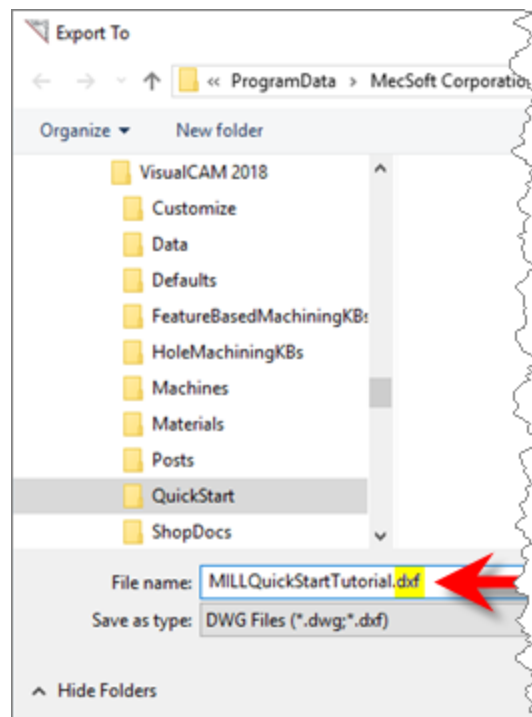
File Types Supported during Export

- Stereo-Lithography Binary (*.stl)
- Stereo-Lithography ASCII (*.sla)
- Region Files (*.mrg)
- Rhino (*.3dm)
- IGES (*.igs)
- STEP Files (*.stp; *.step)
- SAT Files (*.sat)
- OBJ Files (*.obj)
- AMF Files (*.amf)
- DWG Files (*.dxf; *.dwg)



Exporting to Dwg/Dxf formats

When you select the [Dwg/Dxf](#) export [File Type](#), the file is exported to *.dwg format by default. If you would like to export the file in *.dxf format, you will need to enter the file extension to the end of the file name (i.e., [Example.dxf](#)).



Exporting to the *.dxf File Type



Related Topics

[File](#)

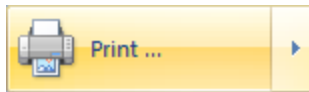
[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Browse...](#)

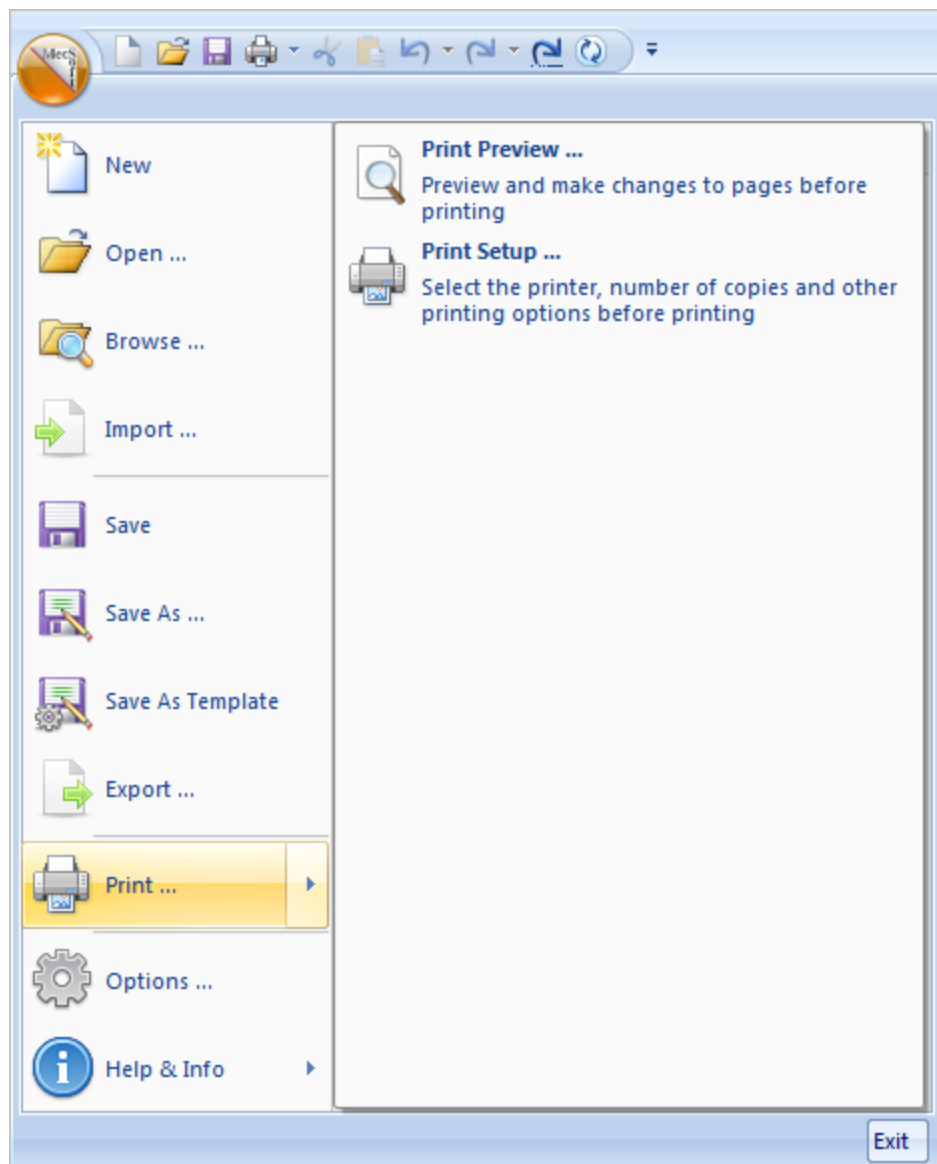
4.9 Print Menu



Moving the mouse cursor over the [Print ...](#) button from the [VisualCAD Menu](#) will display additional print options. You can also select (left-click) on this button to execute the [Print](#) command.



[VisualCAD Menu > Print ...](#)



VisualCAD® Menu > Print ...



Related Topics

[VisualCAD Menu](#)

[Print ...](#)

[Print Preview ...](#)

[Print Setup ...](#)

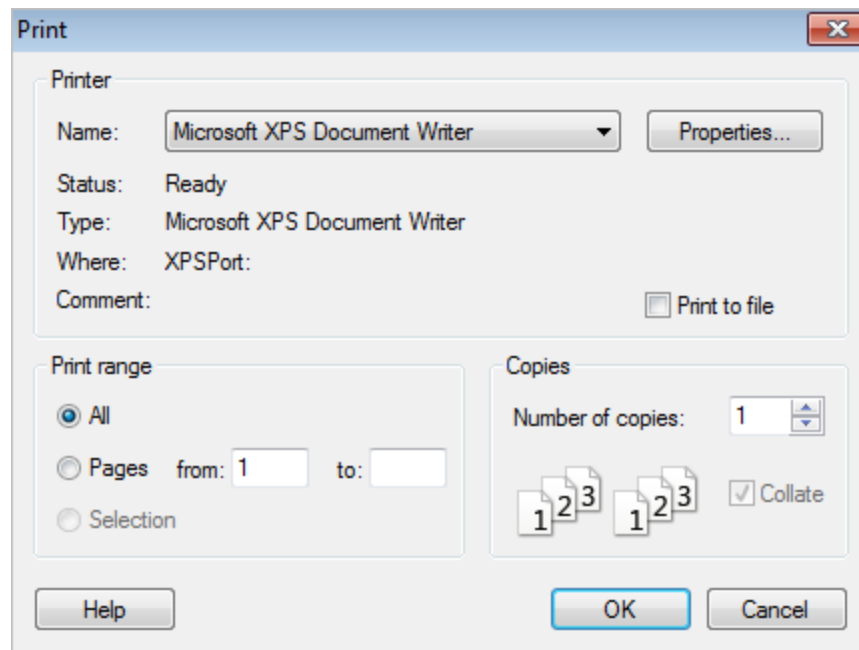
4.9.1 Print



Prints the objects displayed. If multiple views are displayed, the currently selected view will be printed. The standard Windows® Print dialog box is displayed.



The standard Windows® Print dialog



The standard Windows® Print dialog



Related Topics

[VisualCAD Menu](#)

[Print Menu](#)

[Print Setup ...](#)

[Print Preview ...](#)

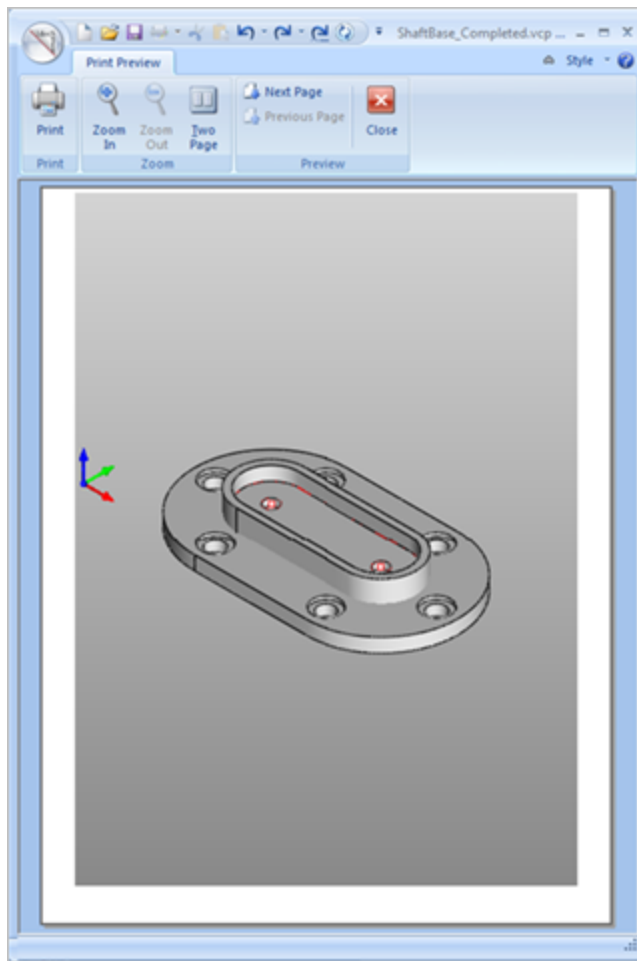
4.9.2 Print Preview ...



This shows a picture of what will be printed. The picture can be printed from here along with the additional controls listed below.



Print Preview Display

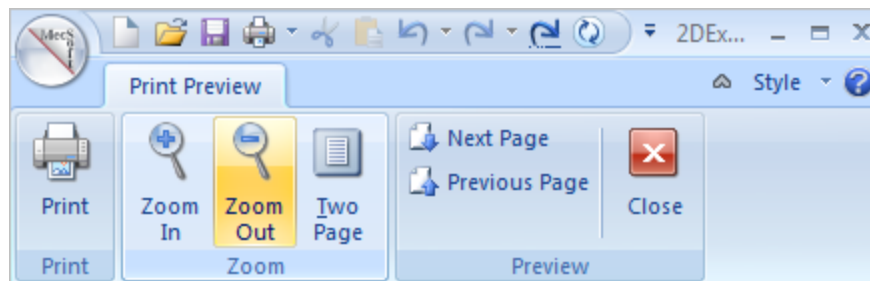


File > Print Preview Display



Print Preview Controls

The following controls are available from the [Print Preview](#) ribbon bar:



Print Preview Ribbon Bar

- [Print](#)
- [Zoom In/Out](#)
- [Two Page](#)
- [Next Page](#)

- [Prev Page](#)
- [Close](#)

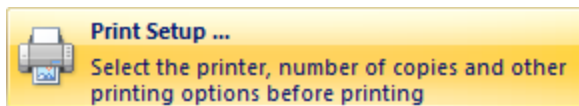


Related Topics

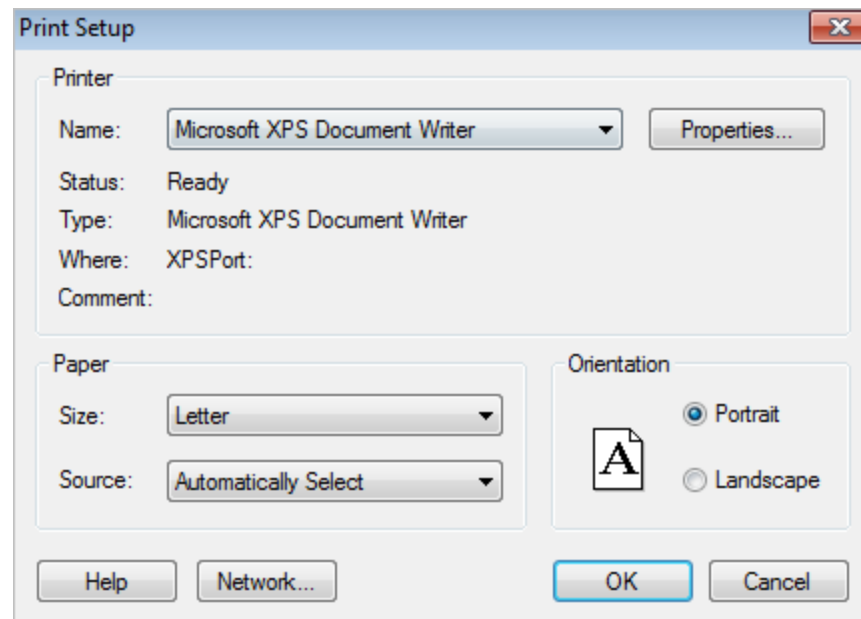
[File](#)

4.9.3 Print Setup ...

From the [VisualCAD Menu](#) moving the mouse cursor over the [Print ...](#) option will display the [Print Menu](#) with this [Print Setup ...](#) option available. Use this to select the printer used to print. The orientation (landscape or portrait), paper size and additional printer properties can be specified. The standard [Windows® Print Setup](#) dialog box is displayed.



The standard Windows® Print Setup dialog



The standard Windows® Print Setup dialog



Related Topics

[VisualCAD Menu](#)

[Print Menu](#)

[Print ...](#)

[Print Preview ...](#)

4.10 Options



The [Home Ribbon Bar](#) contains the [Options](#) pane. Selecting the icon will display the [Options](#) dialog shown below. This dialog allows you to set global parameters which include [System](#), [Display](#), [Color](#), [Grid](#), [Lighting](#), [Dimension](#), [Tolerance](#) and [Units](#) preferences. This dialog can also be accessed from the [Status Toolbar](#).



Dialog Box: Options

The Options dialog box is shown with the 'System' tab selected. The left pane lists the following categories: System, Display, Color, Grid, Lighting, Dimension, and Tolerance and Units. The right pane contains the following settings:

- Modeling Aids**
 - ☐ Lock Selected Object(s) Drag
- Mouse Settings**
 - ☐ Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction
 - Right Button Action**
 - ☒ Show popup menu
 - ☐ Repeat last action
 - Pressing and Holding Right Button Action**
 - ☒ Rotate
 - ☐ Depending on Orient View
- Auto Save**
 - ☐ Save every: 20 minutes
- Auto Backup**
 - ☐ Use Auto Backup
 - Autobackup path: C:\Users\Admin\AppData\Roaming\Mex
- Command Recall**
 - ☐ Use Auto Command Recall
- Selection Settings**
 - ☒ Use Preselection Highlight
- Object Snap Settings**
 - Snap Radius: 15 pixels

At the bottom of the dialog are the following buttons: Reset to defaults, OK, Cancel, Apply, and Help.

Dialog Box: Options



Related Topics

[System](#)

[Display](#)

[Color](#)

[Grid](#)

[Lighting](#)

[Dimension](#)

[Tolerance and Units](#)

[Home Ribbon Bar](#)

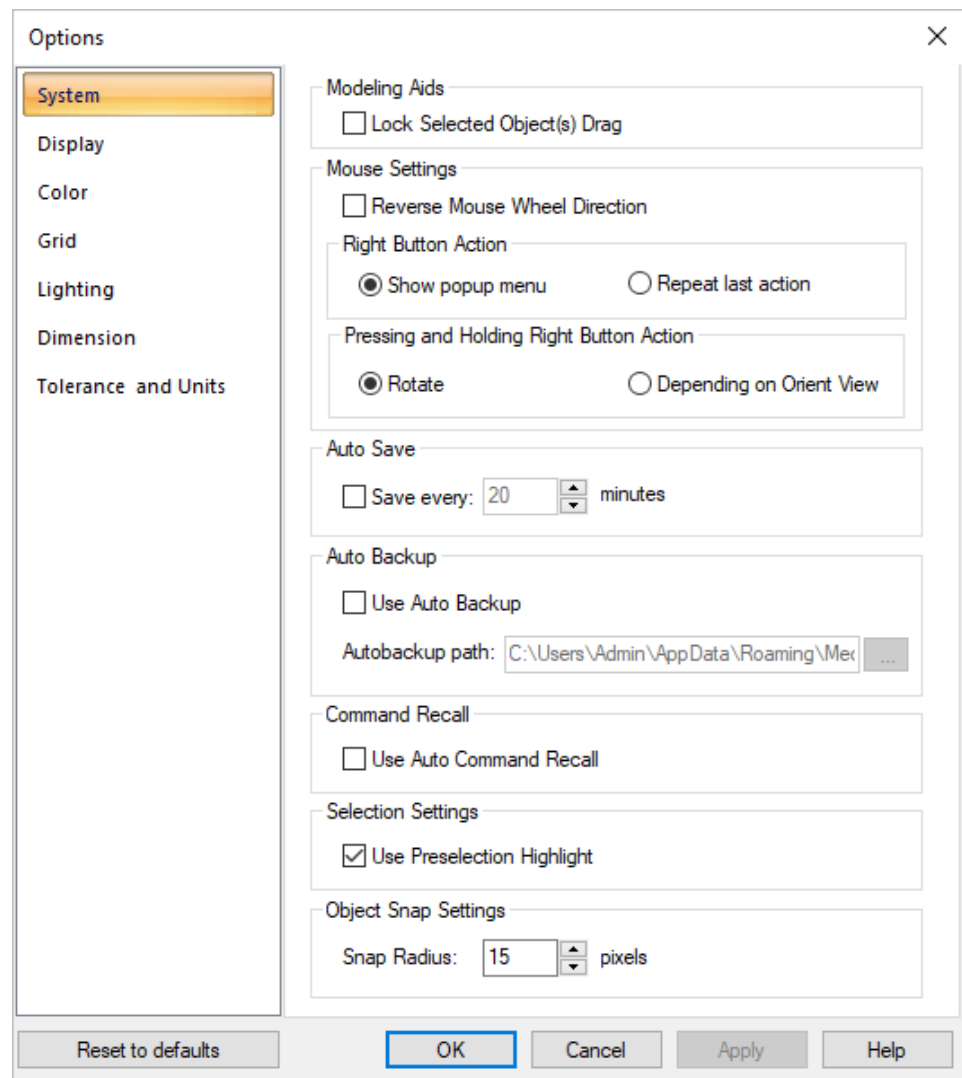
4.10.1 System



Allows user to set preferences for modeling aids, mouse settings, auto save and command recall.



Dialog Box: Options > System



Dialog Box: Options > System

Lock Selected Object(s) Drag

If the box is not checked, you can select a geometry object and drag it around the **C-Plane**. When the box is checked, the objects cannot be dragged.

Mouse Settings

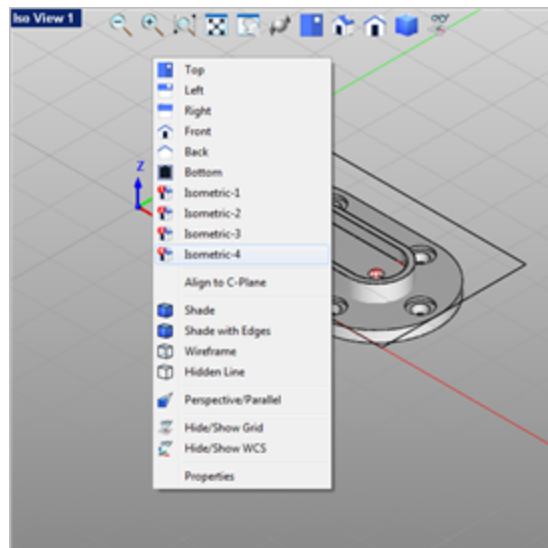
The following Mouse options are supported:

Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction

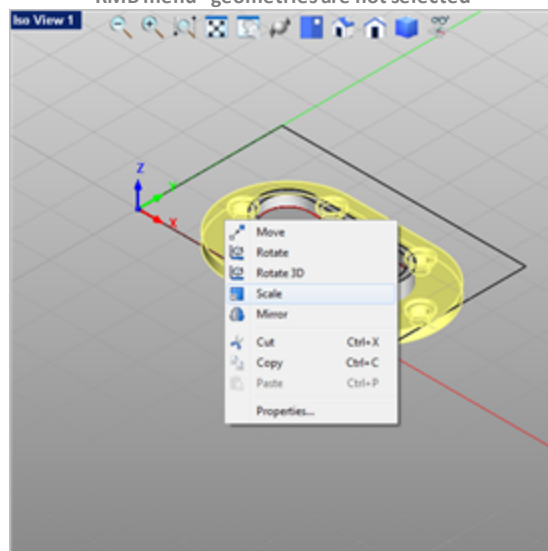
Reverses the direction of view zooming when using the mouse wheel.

Right Button Action

When [Show pop-up menu](#) is selected, performing a right mouse button click in the view port displays the commands in the pop-up menu.



RMB menu - geometries are not selected



RMB menu - geometries are selected

When [Repeat last action](#) is selected, this recalls the previous command.



Pressing and Holding Right Button Action

This option tells [VisualCAD](#) what to do when the right mouse button is pressed and held.

- [Rotate](#)

When selected, pressing and holding down the right mouse button from all views performs a [Rotate](#) on the display.

- **Depending on Orient View**

When depending on orient view is selected, pressing & holding down the right mouse button from **Top**, **Front**, **Right**, **Left**, **Back**, **Bottom** views does a **Dynamic Pan** of the geometries instead of rotate. For **Iso** views (**Iso1,2,3 & 4**) it performs a **Rotate** when pressing and holding down right mouse button down.



AutoSave

The **AutoSave** function can be used to automatically save your active part file at user-specified time intervals. **AutoSave** always saves to the current file name. This saved file is removed when you successfully close your model.



NOTE: Once you activate **AutoSave**, you will need to **Exit VisualCAD** and then launch **VisualCAD** again before **AutoSave** will begin saving your part files!

Under the **AutoSave** function, check the box next to '**Save every xx minutes**' to activate the **AutoSave** function. The time interval can be entered in minutes.

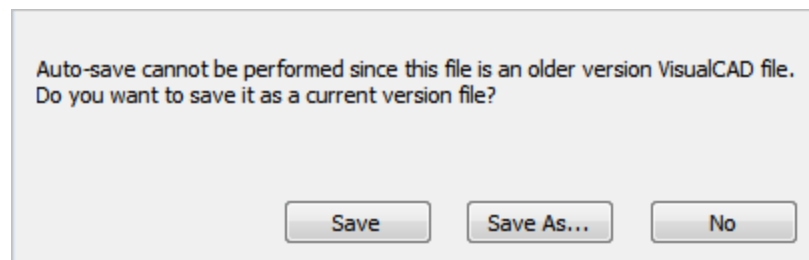


AutoSave saves the file under:
`<APPDATA>\MecSoft\VisualCAD 2018\AutoSave` where **APPDATA** is a logical pointing to a folder set up by your system administrator. By default it points to:
`C:\Users\<username>\AppData\Roaming\`.



Opening an Older Version *.vcp File

Opening an older version vcp file, displays the following dialog allowing you the opportunity to save the file to the current version.



AutoSave Message



When does AutoSave Prompt me to Save a File?

Under the following conditions **VisualCAD** will prompt you to save your file:

1. When you have opened a non-native **VisualCAD** file.
2. When you have imported a file.

3. When you have created a new part and has not saved the file yet.



When is the AutoSave File Deleted?

Auto save file is deleted under the following scenarios:

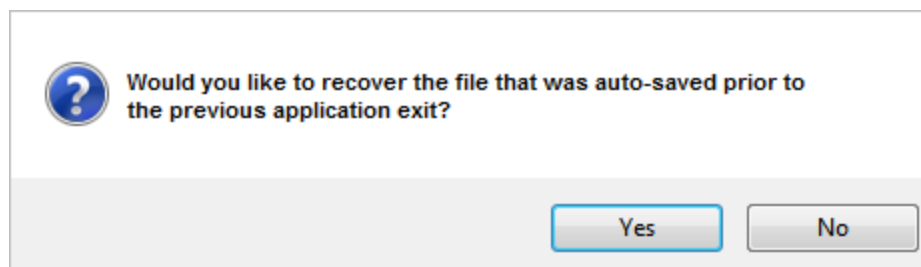
1. When the application closes normally.
2. When you close the file either explicitly or by opening another file.
3. When you select not to recover an [AutoSave](#) file that was detected on startup



File Recovery

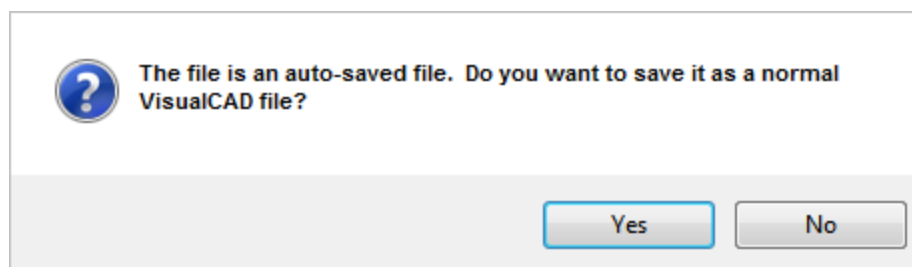
In the event of a computer crash or if [VisualCAD](#) is terminated abruptly by ending the process from task manager, [VisualCAD](#) will recover your file if [AutoSave](#) was active and your part file was automatically saved at least once.

If an [AutoSave](#) file has been created prior to the crash or termination, [VisualCAD](#) will detect the file located in the [AutoSave](#) folder the next time it is loaded. You are then prompted with the following dialog:



AutoSave Message

Selecting [Yes](#), displays the following dialog, prompting you to save your file:



AutoSave Message



This is the only opportunity to recover the part file. If you choose not to recover it, the [AutoSave](#) file will be removed.



Use Auto Backup

Use this option to back up your [VisualCAD](#) files automatically. You can change the [Auto Backup Path](#) destination directory by selecting the 'browse' button.

If you have the check box checked, then the file is saved ONCE (as soon as the file is loaded) to the [Auto Backup](#) path with the same name as the original path file. This file is not deleted on exit so it can be recovered later if necessary. By default the check box to [Auto Backup](#) is unchecked.



Use Auto Command Recall

When this option is selected, [VisualCAD](#) automatically repeats the last command without having to go back & reselect the command from the toolbar or use the right mouse button click or enter option to repeat the previous command.



Use Preselection Highlight

When this option is selected, [VisualCAD](#) automatically highlights selections as the cursor moves over them. See [Pre-Selection Highlight](#) for more information.



Object Snap Settings

You can control the pixel radius of the object snaps located on the [Status Toolbar](#). Enter the [Snap Radius](#) desired.



Related Topics

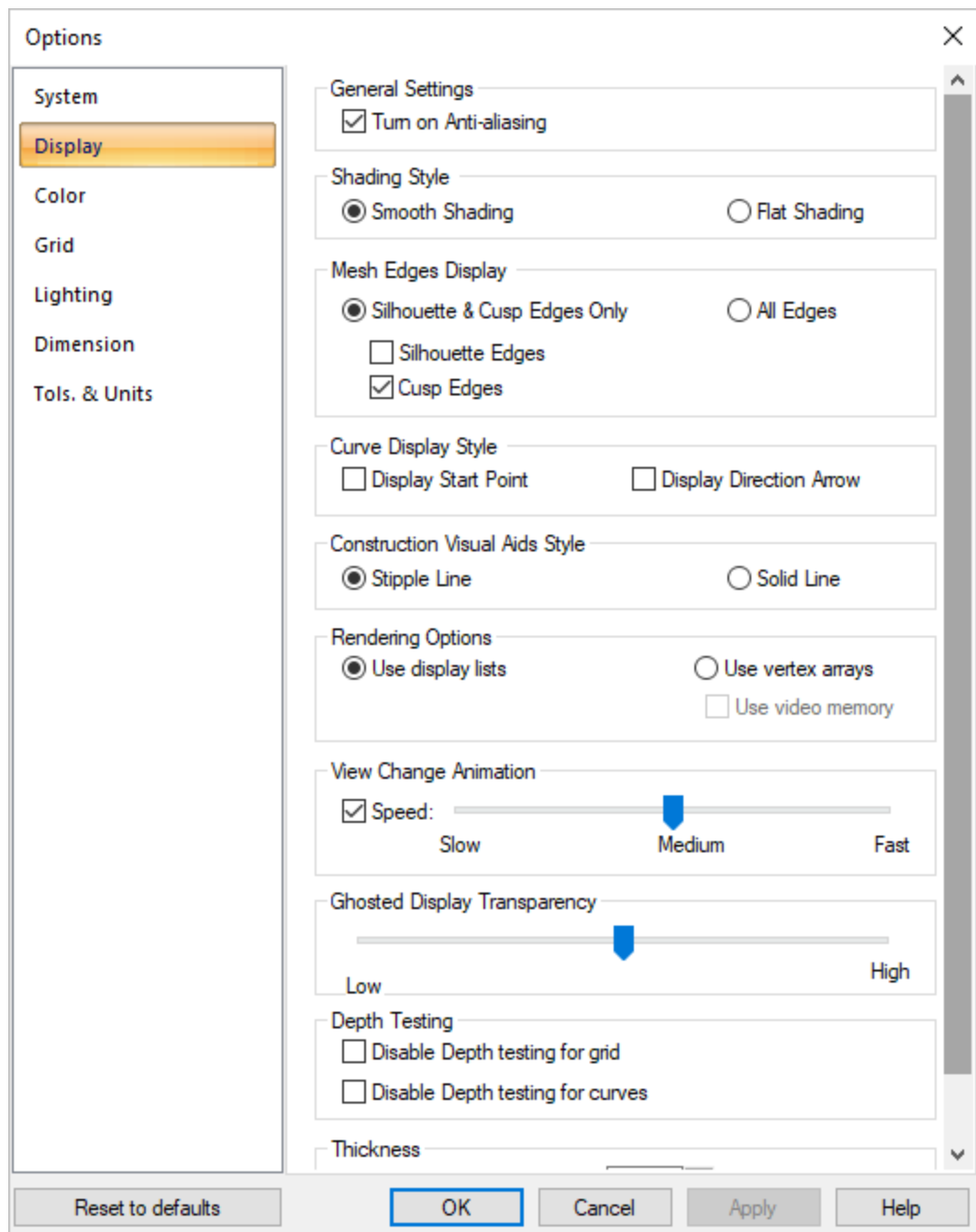
[Options](#)

4.10.2 Display

Controls how geometry is displayed. Select from the following:



Dialog Box: Options > Display



Dialog Box: Options > Display



General Settings

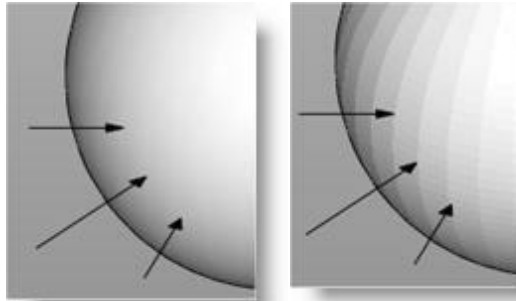
Turn on Anti-aliasing

A method of smoothing the jagged edges along the lines and curves of text or graphics. Aliasing is caused by limited display resolution. Selecting this option turns on [Anti-aliasing](#).



Shading Style

This controls how smooth surfaces are shaded.



Smooth Shading

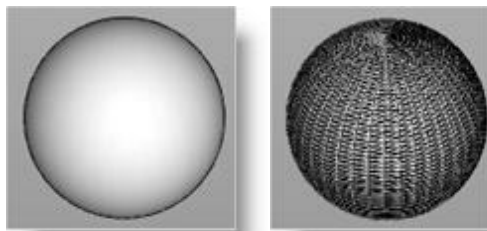
Flat Shading

The pictures demonstrate the difference between smooth and flat shading. The left picture smoothly changes the amount of shading as the surface curves. The right picture just displays the shading for a flat facet on the surface. Since all surfaces (including smooth ones) are internally represented as flat facets, flat shading can affect any surface. The default is smooth shading.



Mesh Edges Display Style

This changes how smooth surfaces are displayed. Since all surfaces are internally represented as flat facets, these facets join up along edges. On smooth surfaces, these edges are not sharp and are not normally displayed. An example of a sharp edge is the edge of a cube.

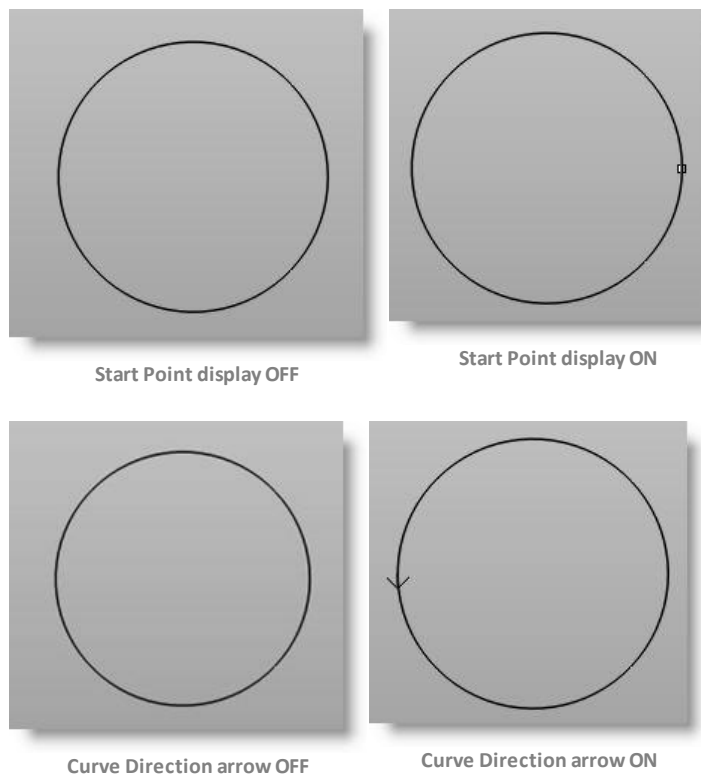


The pictures demonstrate the difference between silhouette & cusp edges only and all edge display. The left picture displays only sharp edges (there are none on a sphere); meanwhile, the right picture displays all the edges. The default is [Silhouette & Cusp Edges Only](#). When selected, this allows you to select [Silhouette Edges](#), [Cusp Edges](#) or [All Edges](#) to display.



Curve Display Style

This provides an option to turn on or off display of curve start point and direction arrow.

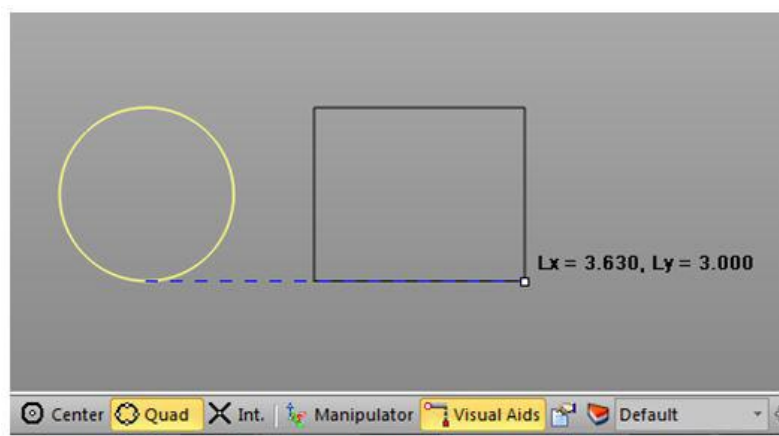


Selecting **Start Point** and **Curve Direction** arrow display under options displays both start point and curve direction arrow.

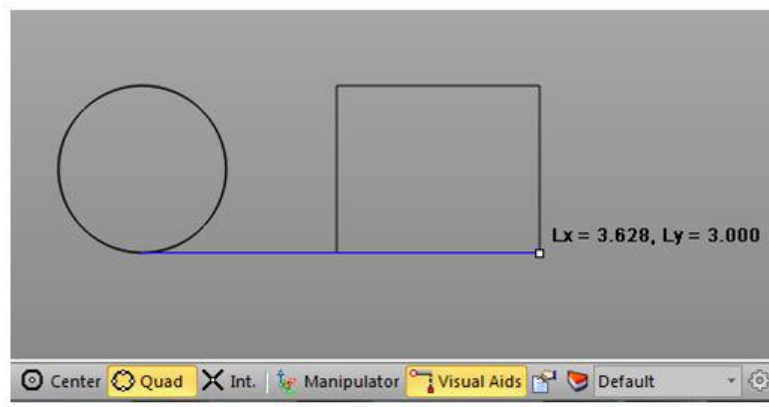


Construction Visual Aids Style

This provides an option to choose the display style between **Stipple line** and **Solid line** for visual aids when the **Visual Aids** is set to active under the status bar.



Stipple line display



Solid line display



Rendering Options

This can be set to [Use Display Lists](#) or [Vertex Arrays](#). The [Vertex Arrays](#) option also provides the option to [Use Video Memory](#) from the video card that is installed on the computer. The speed and performance varies depending on the operating system type and video card installed.



View Change Animation

Whenever the view orientation is changed within the active viewport, [VisualCAD](#) can make that orientation change instantly or through smooth animation. If animation is used, the speed of the animation can be set.

Under the [View Change Animation](#) function, check the box next to [Speed](#) to activate the animation. The animation speed can be controlled using the slider bar.



Ghosted Display Transparency

Whenever the view mode is set to [Ghosted Display](#), you can use this slider to control the transparency level of the hidden (ghosted) geometry.



Depth Testing

These options allow you to fully display certain objects regardless of the view mode. For example, checking the box to [Disable Depth Testing for curves](#), will display all curves even if the view is set to shaded model. You can also [Disable Depth testing for grid](#). If enabled, the grid lines will always display.



Thickness

Use this parameter to set the display line thickness for all wireframe geometry. Set this to 1 for the default line thickness. Higher for thicker lines.



Related Topics

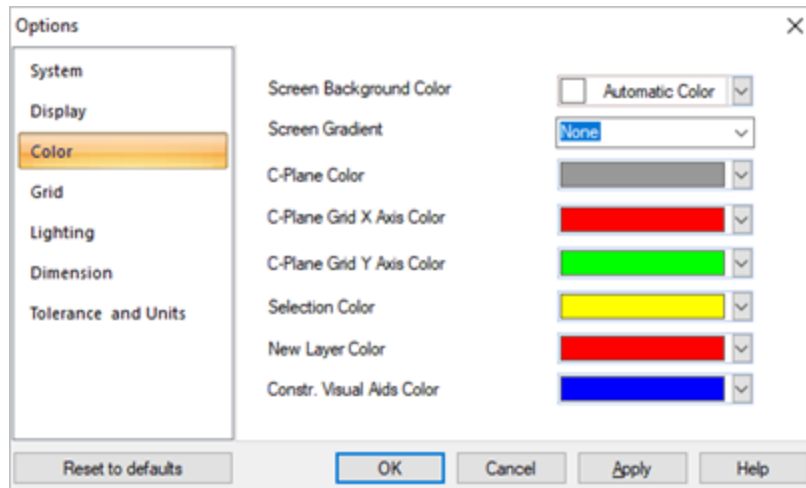
[Options](#)

4.10.3 Color

The default colors are set using this dialog.



Dialog Box: Options > Color



Dialog Box: Options > Color

- [Screen Background Color](#)
This allows user to set the viewport background color. This is the color displayed when no objects are at that position.
- [Screen Gradient](#)
This is a smooth change of lighting. The direction specified is the lighter side. It starts slightly darker on the opposite side of the screen and gradually gets lighter until it reaches the specified side.
- [C-Plane Color](#)
This changes the color of the construction plane grid.
- [C-Plane Grid X Axis Color](#)
This changes the horizontal axis line of the construction plane.
- [C-Plane Grid Y Axis Color](#)
This changes the vertical axis line of the construction plane.
- [Selection Color](#)
This is the highlight color of objects that have been selected.
- [New Layer Color](#)
This is the default color of objects created on new (not Default) layers.

- [Constr. Visual Aids Color](#)

This is the default color of construction aids when [Visual Aids](#) is set to active in the status bar.



Related Topics

[Options](#)

4.10.4 Grid

This controls how the construction plane grid is displayed.



Dialog Box: Options > Grid

The screenshot shows the 'Options' dialog box with the 'Grid' tab selected. The left sidebar lists various options: System, Display, Color, Grid (highlighted), Lighting, Dimension, and Tols. & Units. The main area contains the following settings:

- Position of Grid Origin:** Radio buttons for Center (selected), Lower Left, Lower Right, Upper Left, and Upper Right. A 'Pick Point' button is also present.
- Grid Extents in X Direction:** A text box with the value 800.
- Grid Extents in Y Direction:** A text box with the value 800.
- Distance between each Minor Grid Line:** A text box with the value 5.
- # of Divisions between Each Major Line:** A text box with the value 6.

At the bottom of the dialog are buttons for 'Reset to defaults', 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

Dialog Box: Options > Grid



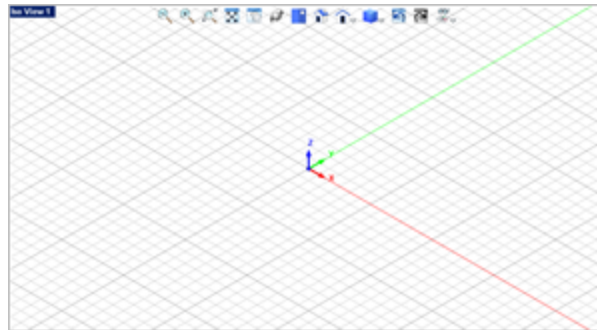
Position of Grid Origin

These options will control where the grid is positioned relative to the World Coordinate System (WCS).

The grid orientation also carries over to whichever view is active, making construction easier.

Center

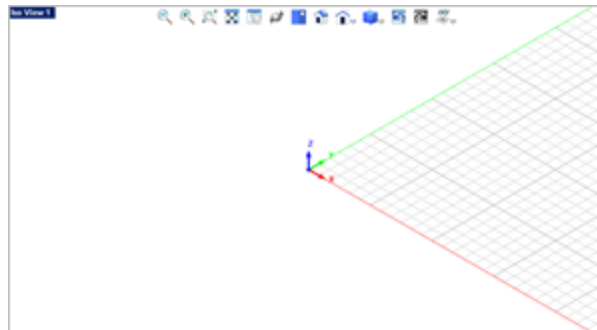
Move the center of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the center of the grid to the WCS.

Lower Left

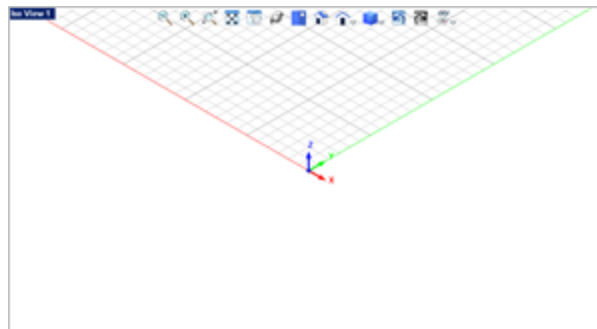
Move the lower left corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the lower left corner of the grid to the WCS.

Lower Right

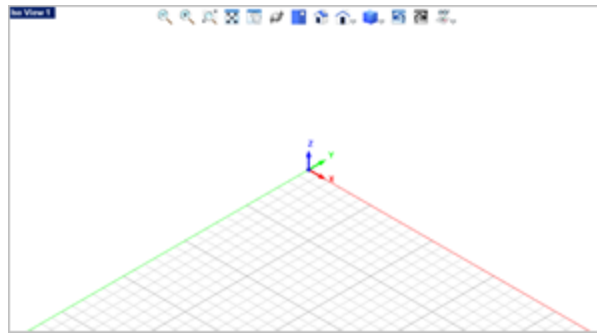
Move the lower right corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the lower right corner of the grid to the WCS.

Upper Left

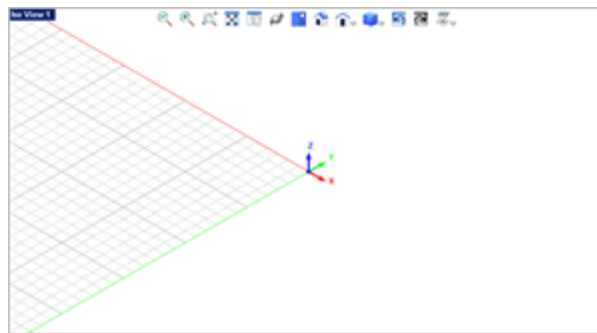
Move the upper left corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the upper left corner of the grid to the WCS.

Upper Right

Move the upper right corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the upper right corner of the grid to the WCS.

Pick

Use the button to pick a point on the screen and the origin of the grid will move to this location.

Notes:

- The point you pick is always on the default [XY plane](#).
- If you use the [Upper/Lower](#) options above after using this [Pick](#) option, the offset distance between the [WCS](#) and the new origin of the grid remains in effect.



Move the the origin of the grid to this location.



Other Grid Options

Grid Extents in X Direction

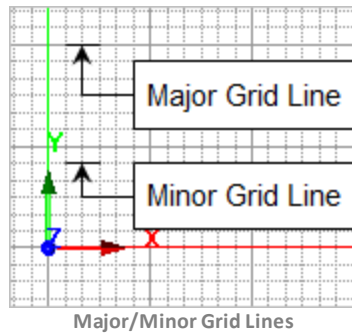
This controls how many major divisions are displayed along the X axis direction.

Grid Extents in Y Direction

This controls how many major divisions are displayed along the Y axis direction.

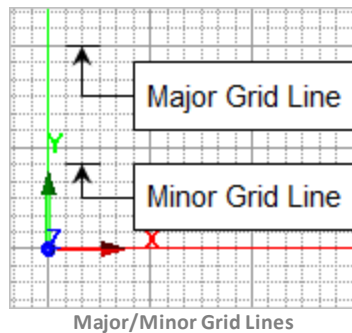
Distance between each Minor Grid Line

This controls the distance between each minor grid line.



of Divisions between Each Major Line

This controls the distance between each major grid line. the number of minor grid line multiplied by the number of major grid lines will determine the overall extent of the grid.



Related Topics

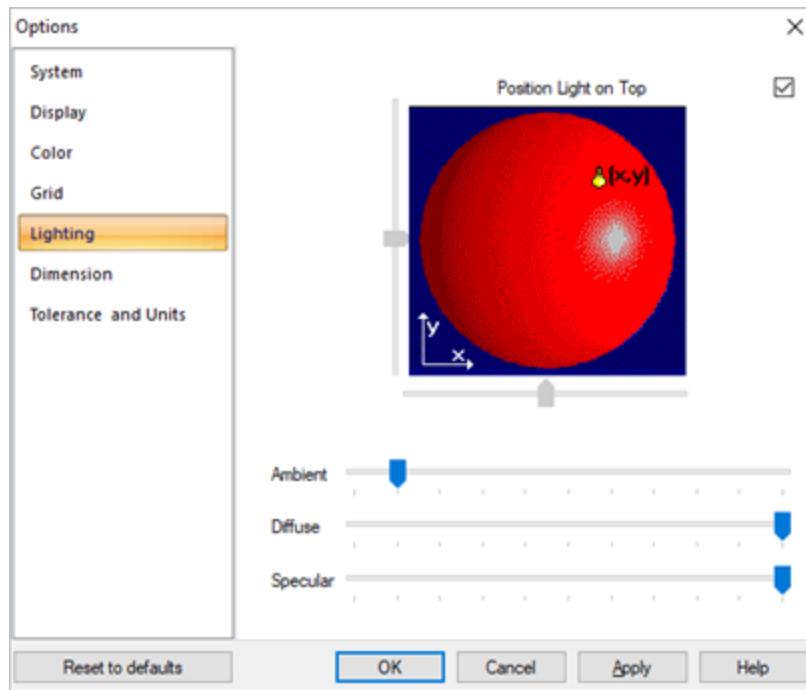
[Options](#)

4.10.5 Lighting

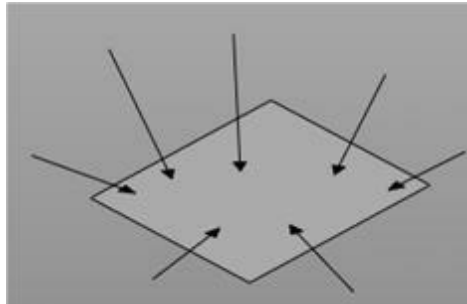
This controls the characteristics of lighting for the model.



Dialog Box: Options > Lighting



There are three types of lighting: ambient, diffuse, and specular.

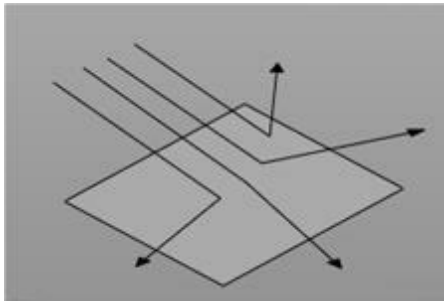


Position Light on Top

The scene has a single light source and there are controls for setting its position. Not all lighting in the model comes directly from that one source; there is some ambient light coming in from all over. The **Position Light on Top** checkbox must be unchecked to be able to move the light source.

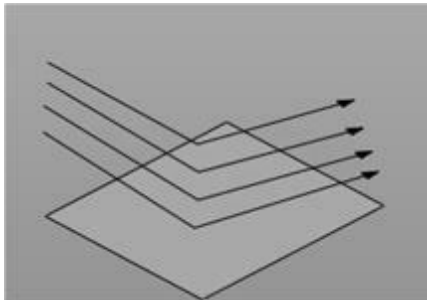
Ambient

Ambient light comes in from all different directions equally. Light sources have no effect on ambient light. Shadows don't appear with only ambient light.



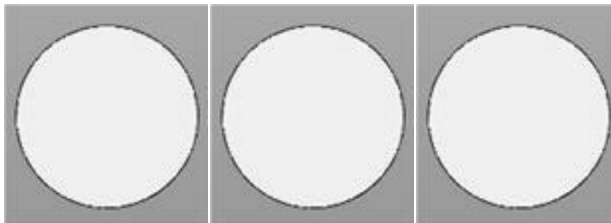
Diffuse

Diffuse light comes from a single source but is scattered in all directions. Shadows appear, but there are no “shiny” spots.

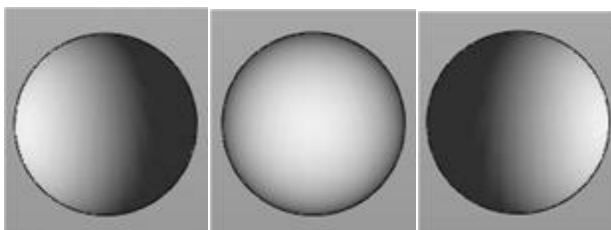


Specular

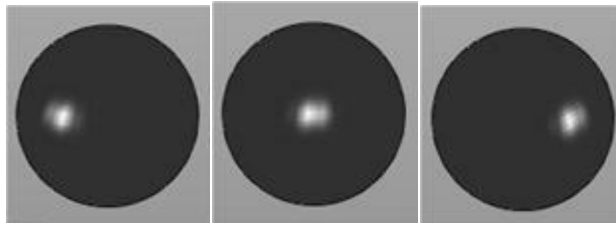
Specular light comes from a single source and is scattered in a single direction. It is reflective light. Shiny metal objects demonstrate good specular reflection. Shading is not a significant consideration with specular light.



The three pictures above demonstrate ambient light as the light source moves from left to right. There is no effect since ambient light comes from all sides equally.



The pictures above show the effects of the motion of the light source using only diffuse lighting. There are no “shiny” spots but yet there is a direction from the light.



The last set of pictures uses only specular lighting. As the light source moves from left to right, the “shiny” spot follows it. However, there is nothing else lit up, so the effect is not just reflective metal.



Related Topics

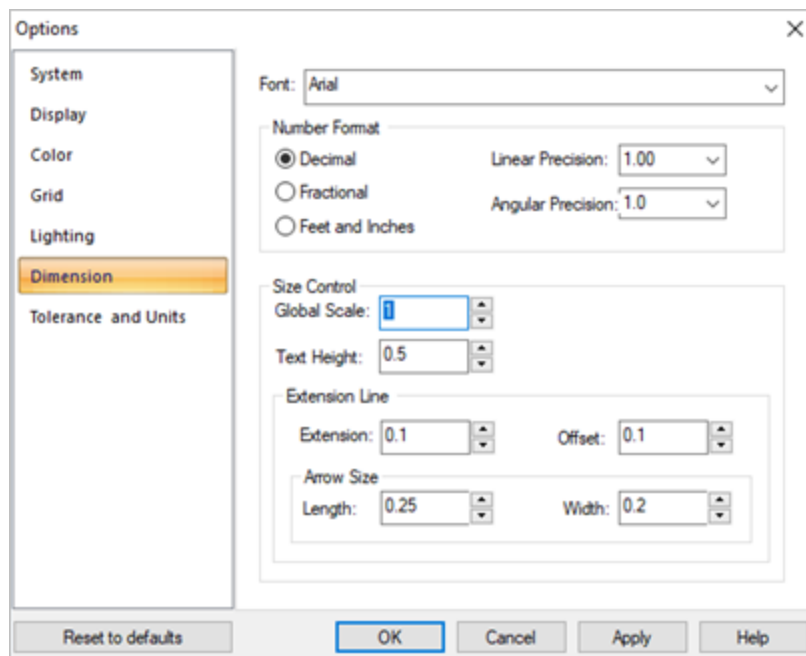
[Options](#)

4.10.6 Dimension

This controls the appearance of dimensioning labels, arrows, and leader lines.



Dialog Box: Options > Dimension



Dialog Box: Options > Dimension



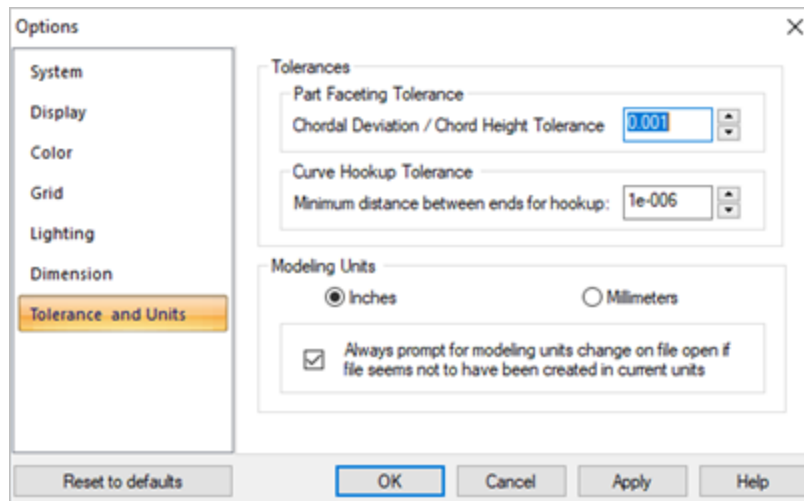
Related Topics

[Options](#)

4.10.7 Tol. & Units

This controls the accuracy of the model and part units.

Dialog Box: Options > Tolerance and Units



Dialog Box: Options > Tolerance and Units

Tolerances

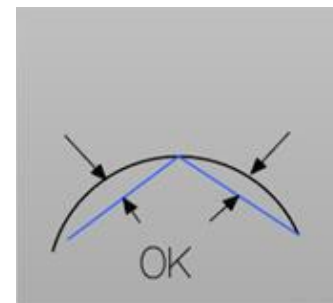
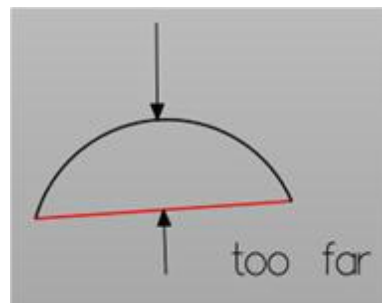
This controls the accuracy of the models. Smaller tolerance numbers often result in significantly big files and slower processing time but are more accurate.

The tolerances are set in a dialog.

Part Faceting Tolerance

Chordal Deviation/Chord Height Tolerance

The chord height tolerance is used in commands that require approximation of smooth curves and surfaces.



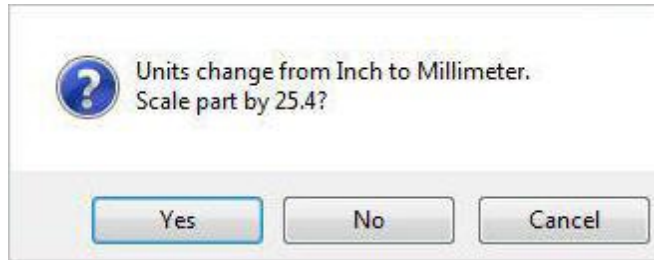
Curve Hookup Tolerance

This specifies maximum separation between the endpoints of different curves when joining them into a single curve.



Units

This converts units from inches to millimeters or from millimeters to inches. If there are existing objects, a dialog will appear confirming if you really want to convert the units.



The objects remain the original size but the coordinate values change.

You can check the box to always prompt you to change the units when files are opened if they appear not to be in the correct units. For example, if the system sees a coordinate value that is quite large such as 500.5, then this dialog will display giving you the opportunity to change the units to Millimeters.



Related Topics

[Options](#)

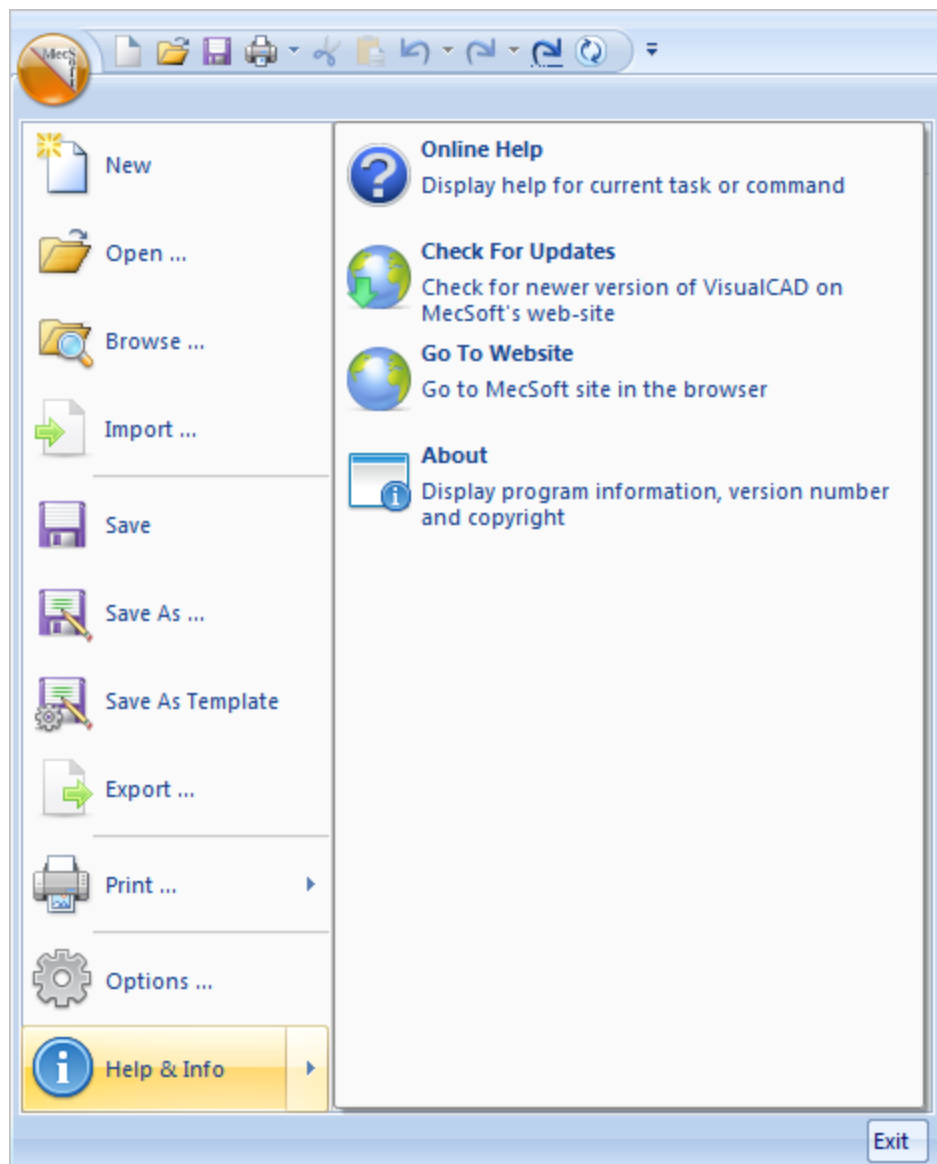
4.11 Help & Info Menu



Select [Help & Info](#) from the [VisualCAD Menu](#) to access information about [VisualCAD](#) and how to use it. You can also select (left-click) on this button to display the [VisualCAD Online Help](#).



The Help & Info Menu



VisualCAD® Menu > Help & Info



Related Topics

[Online Help](#)

[Check for Updates](#)

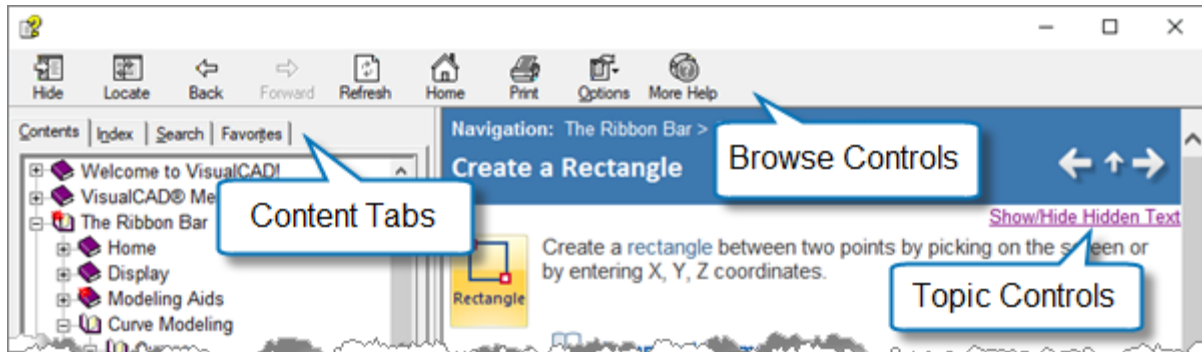
[Go To Website](#)

[About](#)

4.11.1 Help Topics ...



VisualCAD is accompanied with a comprehensive online help system. When a command is active you can press the <F1> key to display context-sensitive help for that command. Many dialogs also have a [Help](#) button that you can click to display help for that dialog. Whenever you see the [Help](#) "?" icon, select it to display the [Online Help](#) system.



VisualCAD Online Help Browser Controls



Related Topics

[Help](#)

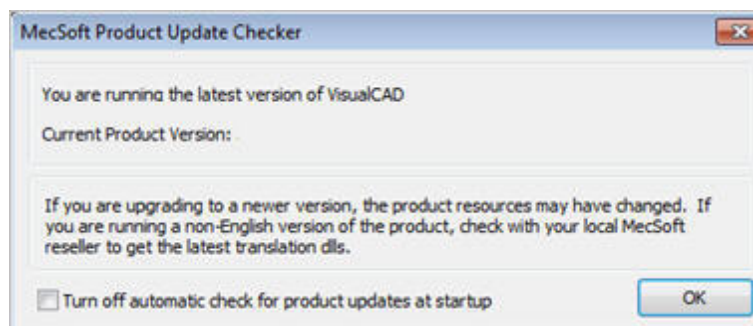
4.11.2 Check for Updates ...



This checks for product updates. Internet connection is required to perform this task.



Dialog Box: Check for Updates



Dialog Box: Check for Updates

- [Turn off automatic check for product updates at startup](#)
Check this box if do not want [VisualCAD](#) to check for updates automatically.



Related Topics

[Help](#)

4.11.3 Go To Website



Selecting this option displays the MecSoft.com website in your default web browser. Note that an Internet connection is required. From the website you can access free downloads, videos, tutorials and keep up to date on the latest innovations from MecSoft Corporation.

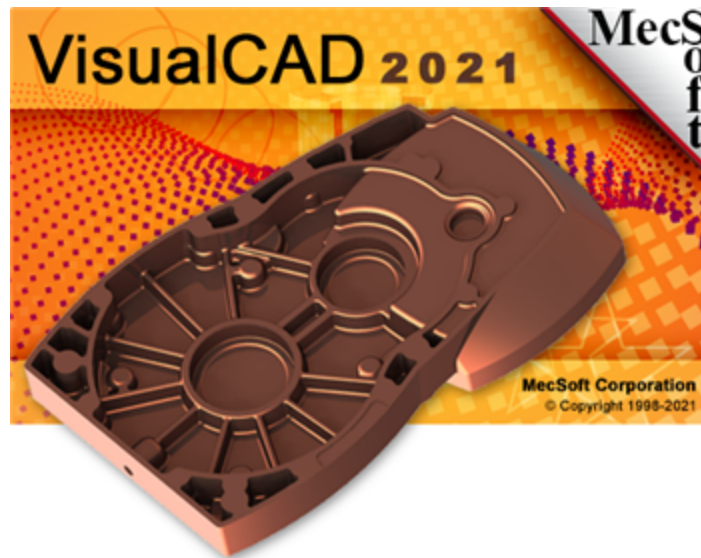


[Go to the MecSoft.com Website](http://MecSoft.com)

4.11.4 About VisualCAD



This brings up a dialog, which shows the product version number.



Dialog Box: About VisualCAD



Related Topics

[Help](#)

[Help Topics ...](#)

[Check for Updates ...](#)

4.12 Exit



Quits **VisualCAD**. If there is unsaved work, you will be asked if you want to save it before quitting. If the unsaved work is not saved, it will be lost.

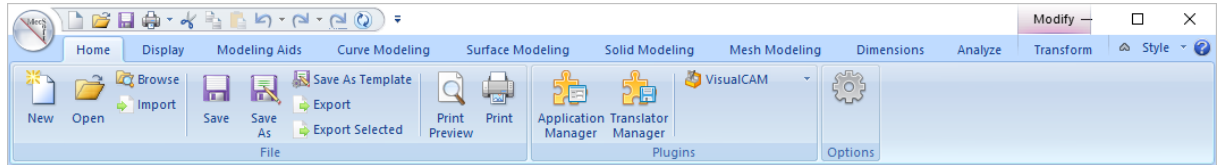


Related Topics

[File](#)

The Ribbon Bar

The [Ribbon Bar](#) displays all of the features available in [VisualCAD](#). It conforms to the standard for [Ribbon Bars](#) set by Microsoft® Corp.



VisualCAD® Ribbon Bar

[Tabs](#) along the top of the [Ribbon Bar](#) allow selection of major categories of functionality, such as creation, modification, analysis, dimensioning, etc. Within each tab are subordinate [panes](#) of related functionality that are labeled along the bottom of the group. The [Home Ribbon bar](#) shown above has three sub panes of commands labeled [File](#), [Plugins](#) and [Options](#).



Ribbon Bars

[Home](#)

[Display](#)

[Modeling Aids](#)

[Curve Modeling](#)

[Surface Modeling](#)

[Solid Modeling](#)

[Mesh Modeling](#)

[Dimensions](#)

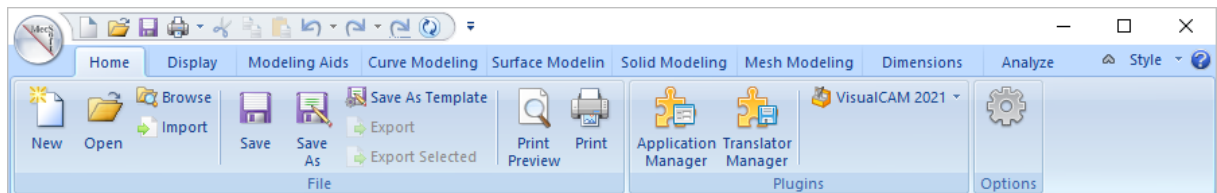
[Analyze](#)

[Transform](#)

[Print Preview](#)

5.1 Home

The [Home Ribbon Bar](#) contains [File](#), [Plugins](#), and [Options](#) panes and associated functions.



The Home Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[File Pane, Home Ribbon Bar](#)

[Plugins Pane, Home Ribbon Bar](#)

[Options Pane, Home Ribbon Bar](#)

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.1.1 File

The [Home Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [File](#) pane with associated functions.



Home Ribbon Bar
File Pane



Related Topics

[New](#)

[Open ...](#)

[Browse ...](#)

[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Save As Template](#)

[Export ...](#)

[Print Preview ...](#)

[Print ...](#)

[Home Ribbon Bar](#)

5.1.1.1 New



Create a new [VCP](#) ([VisualCAD Part](#)) file. The file holds the geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences. If there are unsaved objects, a dialog will ask you if they want to save them before creating the new [VCP](#) file. All current work will be overwritten by the new file.



Related Topics

[File](#)

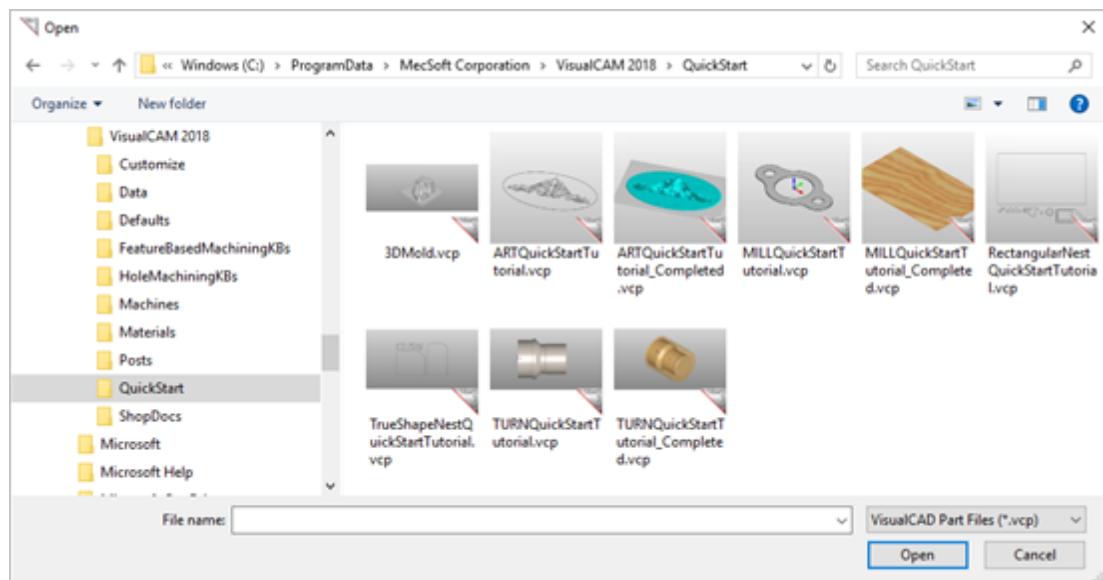
5.1.1.2 Open ...



Open an existing **VCP (VisualCAD Part)** file or one of the [supported file types](#). The file holds the geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences. If there are existing unsaved objects, a dialog will ask you if you want to save them before opening the **VCP** file. All current work will be overwritten by the loaded file.



Dialog Box: Open



Dialog Box: Open

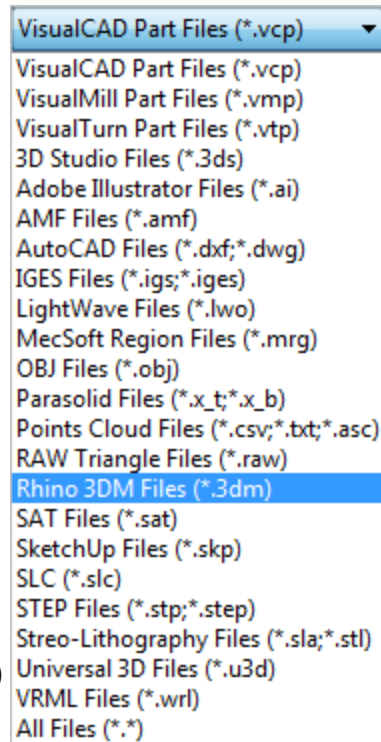
Standard Windows® **File Browser** supports preview of **VisualCAD** *.vcp drawings and models.



Files of Type Supported

The following file types are supported by **VisualCAD**. See [File Open](#) and [File Import](#) for more information

- VisualCAD Part Files (*.vcp)
- VisualMILL Part Files (*.vmp)
- VisualTurn Part Files (*.vct)
- 3D Studio Files (*.3ds)
- Adobe Illustrator Files (*.ai)
- AMF Files (*.amf)
- AutoCAD (*.dxf;*.dwg)
- IGES Files (*.igs;*.iges)
- LightWave Files (*.lwo)
- MecSoft Region Files (*.mrg)
- OBJ Files (*.obj)
- Parasolid Files (*.x_t;*.x_b)
- Point Cloud Files (*.csv;*.txt;*.asc)
- RAW Triangle Files (*.raw)
- RHINO 3DM Files (*.3dm)
- SAT Files (*.sat)
- SketchUP Files (*.skp)
- SLC Files (*.slc)
- STEP Files (*.stp;*.step)
- Stereo-lithography files (*.sla;*.stl)
- Universal 3D Files (*.u3d)
- VRML Files (*.wrl)



File Types Supported



Related Topics

[File](#)

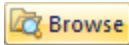
[Import...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Browse...](#)

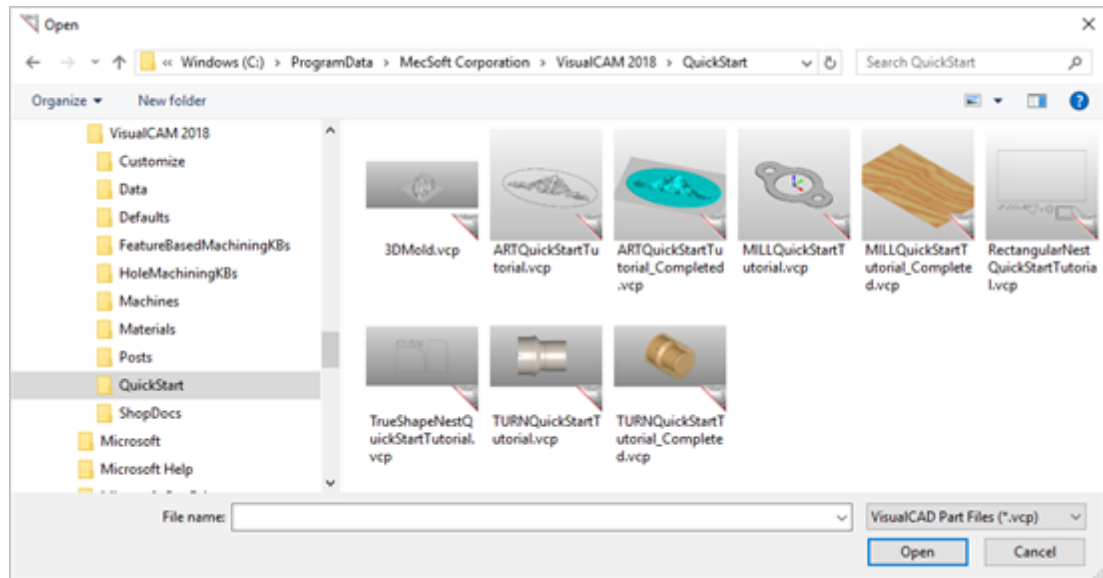
5.1.1.3 Browse ...



Visually browse files on the computer. **VCP** files can be opened. A preview window will show the last view displayed when the original file was saved.



Dialog Box: VisualCAD® File Browser



Dialog Box: VisualCAD® File Browser



Related Topics

[File Menu](#)

[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

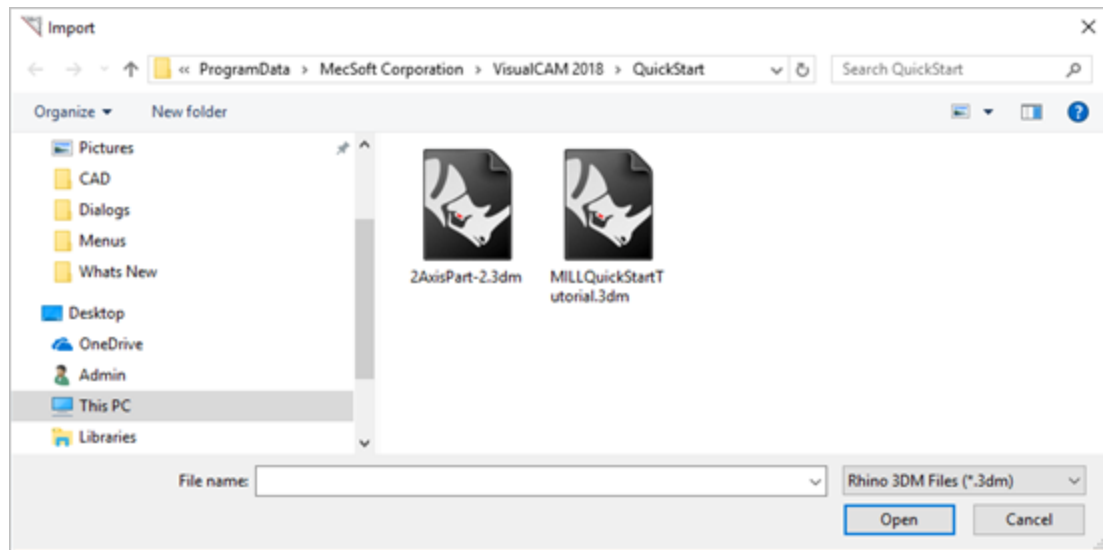
5.1.1.4 Import ...



Open existing files made by other programs. This is used to transfer information, normally geometric models. Currently, **VisualCAD** can import the following formats:



Dialog Box: Import



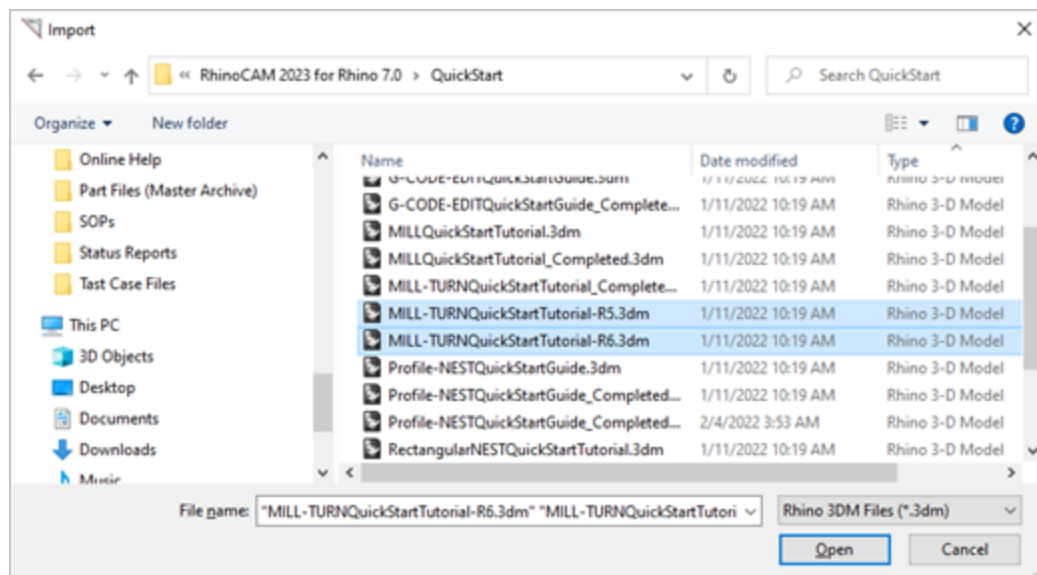
Dialog Box: Import

Standard Windows® [File Browser](#) supports preview of [VisualCAD](#) *.vcp drawings and models.



Import Multiple Files

You can [Import](#) multiple files at the same time. To do so, first press and hold the [<Ctrl>](#) key while selecting the files from the Import dialog. Each file will highlight and also be listed together in the [File name](#) field at the bottom of the dialog. When done selecting files, pick the [Open](#) button.



Dialog Box: Import (When importing multiple files at once)

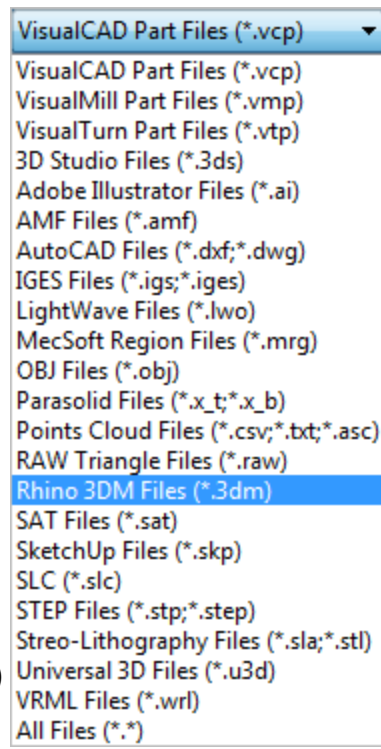
Standard Windows® [File Browser](#) supports preview of [VisualCAD](#) *.vcp drawings and models.



Files of Type Supported

The following file types are supported by VisualCAD. See [File Open](#) and [File Import](#) for more information

- VisualCAD Part Files (*.vcp)
- VisualMILL Part Files (*.vmp)
- VisualTurn Part Files (*.vct)
- 3D Studio Files (*.3ds)
- Adobe Illustrator Files (*.ai)
- AMF Files (*.amf)
- AutoCAD (*.dxf;*.dwg)
- IGES Files (*.igs;*.iges)
- LightWave Files (*.lwo)
- MecSoft Region Files (*.mrg)
- OBJ Files (*.obj)
- Parasolid Files (*.x_t;*.x_b)
- Point Cloud Files (*.csv;*.txt;*.asc)
- RAW Triangle Files (*.raw)
- RHINO 3DM Files (*.3dm)
- SAT Files (*.sat)
- SketchUP Files (*.skp)
- SLC Files (*.slc)
- STEP Files (*.stp;*.step)
- Stereo-lithography files (*.sla;*.stl)
- Universal 3D Files (*.u3d)
- VRML Files (*.wrl)



File Types Supported



Related Topics

[File](#)

[Export](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As](#)

[Browse...](#)

5.1.1.5 Save



Save geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences in a **VCP** file. If saving for the first time, you can name the file and select where on the computer to save the file. If the file had been saved previously, the current information overwrites the original information.



Related Topics

[File](#)

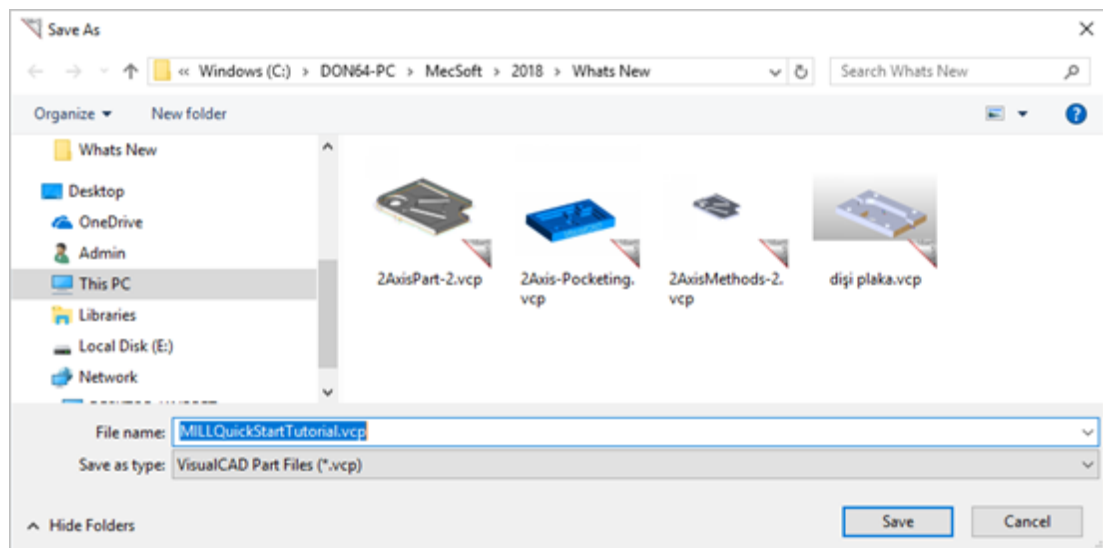
5.1.1.6 Save As ...



Save geometry, layers, orientation, and preferences in a **VCP** file. Name the file and select where on the computer to save it. If selecting an existing file, the current information will overwrite the original information. See [Export ...](#) to save as different file types.



File Save As dialog box



File Save As dialog box



Save as Files Types Supported

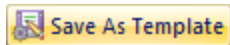
- VisualCAD Part Files (*.vcp)



Related Topics

[File](#)

5.1.1.7 Save As Template



Use this to save VisualCAD® preferences ([System](#), [Display](#), [Color](#), [Grid](#), [Lighting](#), [Dimension](#), [Tolerance and Units](#)) in the *.vcp file. This template file can then be used to begin new VisualCAD drawings.

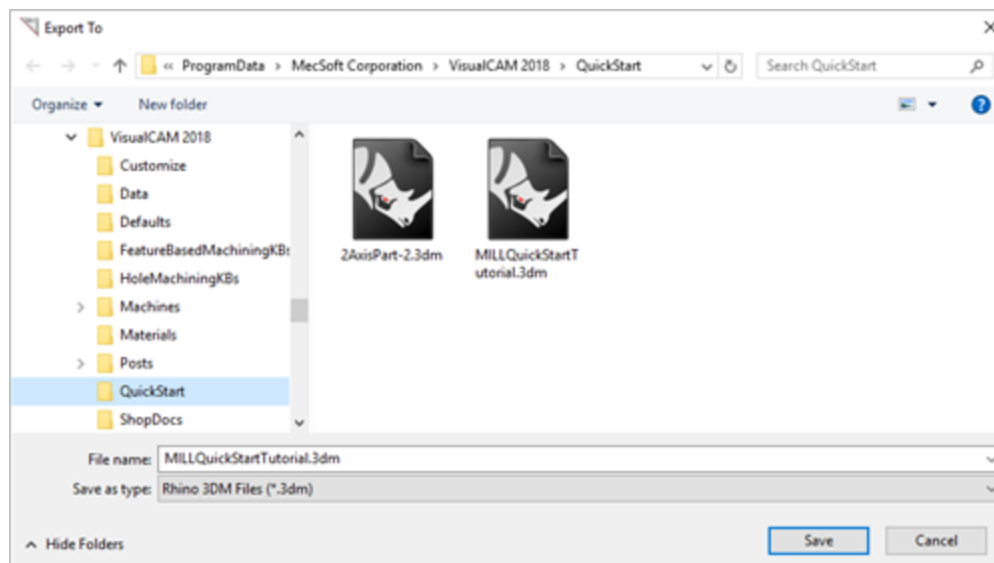
5.1.1.8 Export ...



Save geometry in a neutral file format (can be read by many different programs). The following export translators are available. Binary formats are usually much smaller in size, but ASCII formats are more easily read. Ordinary text programs can read the ASCII files.



Dialog Box: Export To

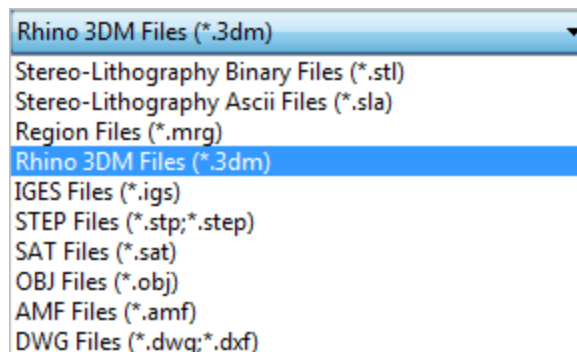


Dialog Box: Export To



Export File Types Supported

The following file types are supported by VisualCAD during Export:



File Types Supported during Export

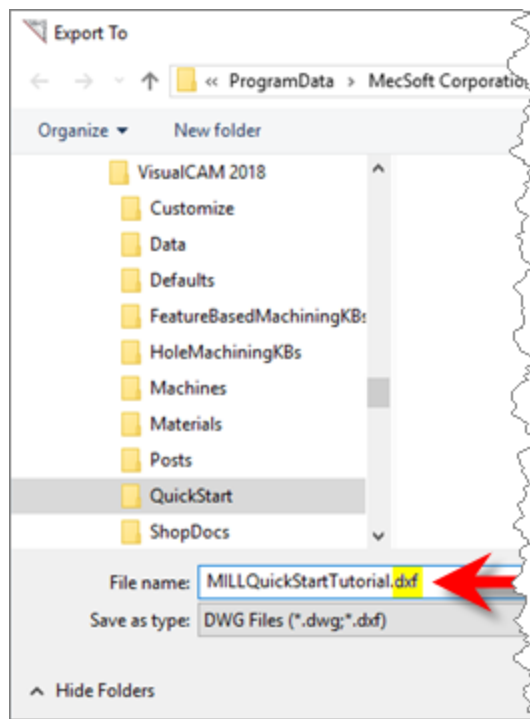
- Stereo-Lithography Binary (*.stl)

- [Stereo-Lithography ASCII \(*.sla\)](#)
- [Region Files \(*.mrg\)](#)
- [Rhino \(*.3dm\)](#)
- [IGES \(*.igs\)](#)
- [STEP Files \(*.stp; *.step\)](#)
- [SAT Files \(*.sat\)](#)
- [OBJ Files \(*.obj\)](#)
- [AMF Files \(*.amf\)](#)
- [DWG Files \(*.dxf; *.dwg\)](#)



Exporting to Dwg/Dxf formats

When you select the [Dwg/Dxf](#) export [File Type](#), the file is exported to [*.dwg](#) format by default. If you would like to export the file in [*.dxf](#) format, you will need to enter the file extension to the end of the file name (i.e., [Example.dxf](#)).



Exporting to the *.dxf File Type



Related Topics

[File](#)

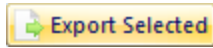
[Import...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Browse...](#)

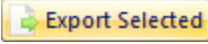
5.1.1.9 Export Selected



This command is similar to the [File Export](#) command but only exports the currently selected entities. The entities **MUST** be pre-selected before executing this command. All of the file types supported by the [File Export](#) command are also supported by this command.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Entry	Command Input
Step 1	Select the entities that you wish to export.	
Step 2	 Pick the Export Selected icon from the Home Ribbon Bar .	
	Use the Export To dialog to create the exported file type required. See File Export ... for more information about using the Export To dialog.	



Related Topics

[File Export ...](#)

[File](#)

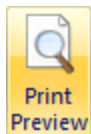
[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Browse...](#)

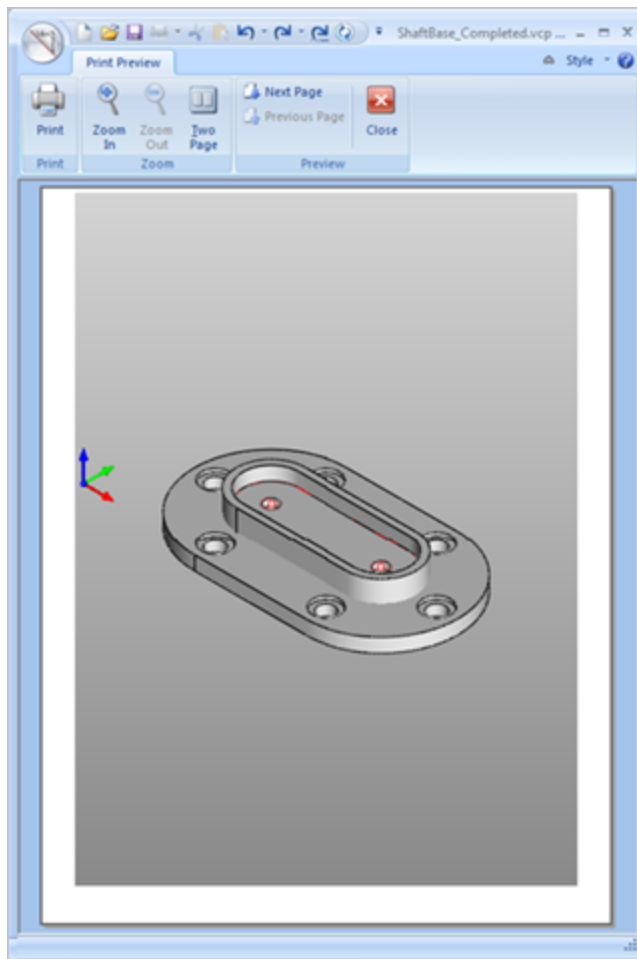
5.1.1.10 Print Preview



This shows a picture of what will be printed. The picture can be printed from here along with the additional controls listed below.



Print Preview Display

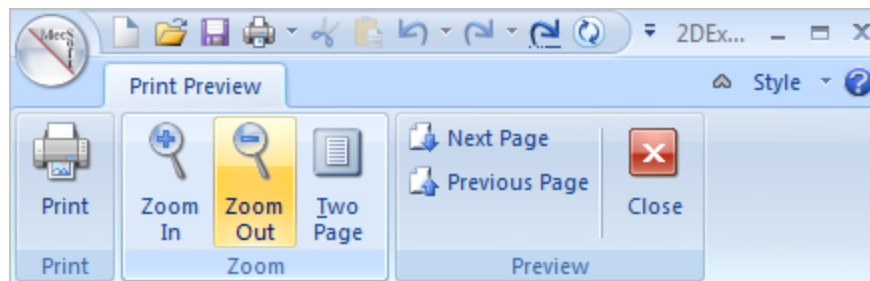


File > Print Preview Display



Print Preview Controls

The following controls are available from the [Print Preview](#) ribbon bar:



Print Preview Ribbon Bar

- [Print](#)
- [Zoom In/Out](#)
- [Two Page](#)
- [Next Page](#)

- [Prev Page](#)
- [Close](#)



Related Topics

[File](#)

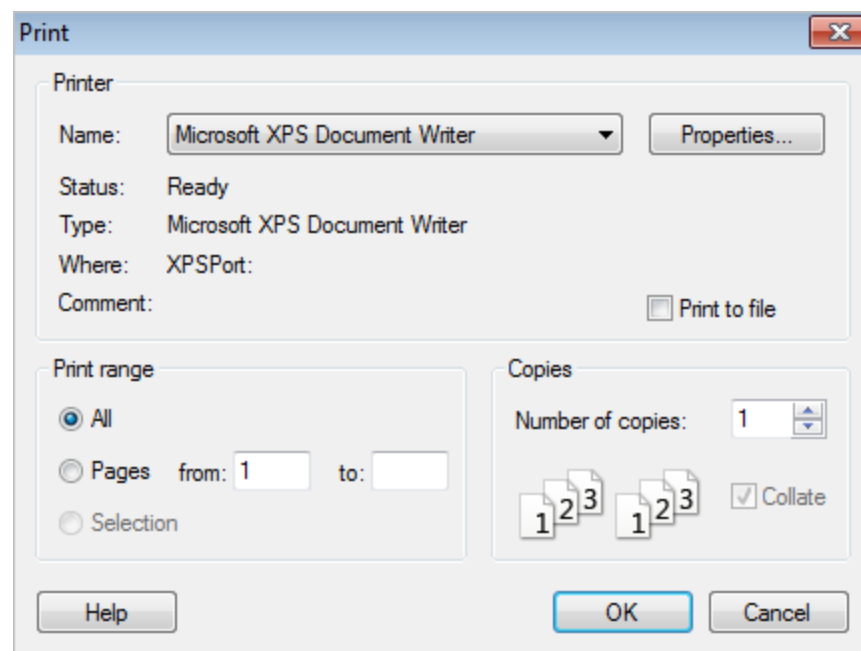
5.1.1.11 Print ...



Prints the objects displayed. If multiple views are displayed, the currently selected view will be printed. The standard [Windows® Print](#) dialog box is displayed.



The standard Windows® Print dialog



The standard Windows® Print dialog



Related Topics

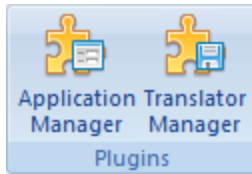
[VisualCAD Menu](#)

[Print Menu](#)

[Print Setup ...](#)

[Print Preview ...](#)

5.1.2 Plugins



The [Home Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Plugins](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Application Plug-ins ...](#)

[Translator Plug-ins ...](#)

[Home Ribbon Bar](#)

5.1.2.1 Application Plug-ins ...

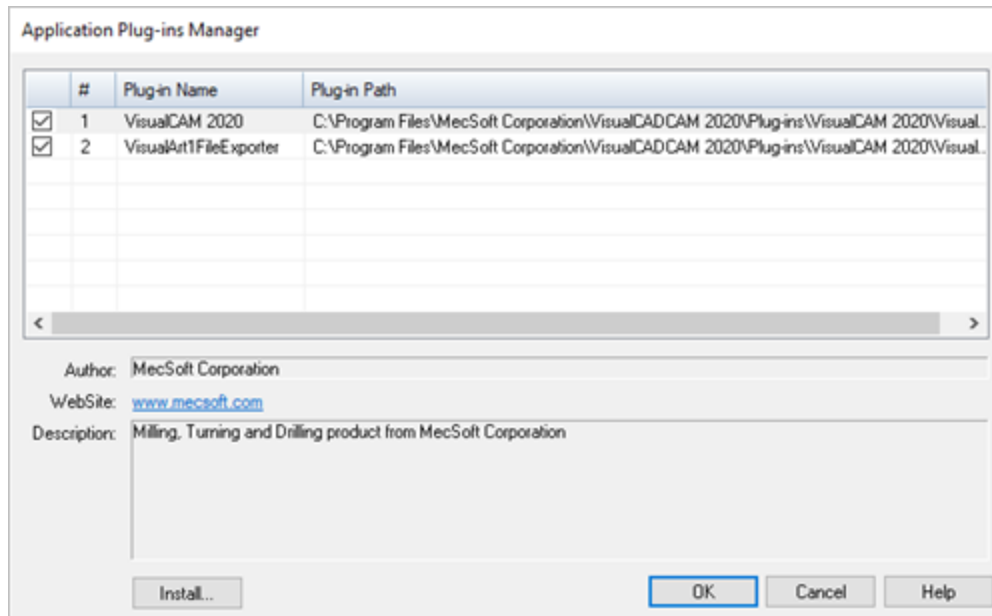


This allows additional functionality to be added to [VisualCAD](#) after installation.

Select from the following for more information:



Dialog Box: Application Plug-ins Manager



Dialog Box: Application Plug-ins Manager



Enable/Disable Application Plug-ins

Active application plug-ins are listed at the top of the manager. The [Plug-in Name](#) and [Plug-in Path](#) are listed.

Check the box to the left of the application plug-in to enable or disable the plug-in.



Install New Application Plug-ins

1. Select the [Install](#) button to display the [File Browser](#).
2. Separate files, normally with an extension *.vca, are stored in the [Plug-ins](#) folder under the installation directory for [VisualCAD®](#).
3. Select a [Plug-in](#) file and then pick [Open](#).
4. The plug-in is added to the [Application Plug-in Manager](#) along with [Author](#), [Website](#) and a [Description](#).



Related Topics

[Options](#)

[Export](#)

[Import](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As](#)

[Browse...](#)

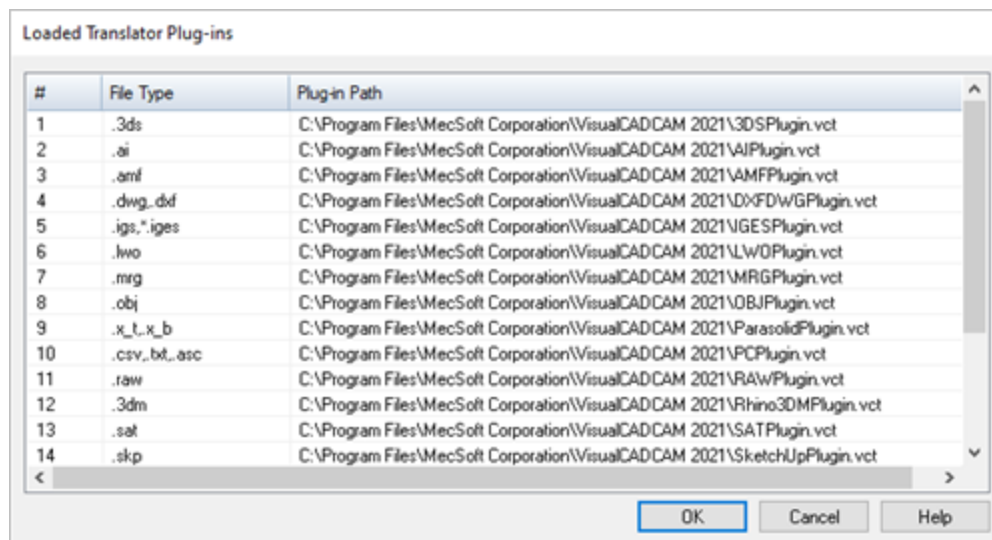
5.1.2.2 Translator Plug-ins ...



This allows different file types to be read, imported, and exported. [VisualCAD](#) can read and write its own file types (*.vcp) with no additional plug-ins. There are some translators that come already pre-installed such as things to read [Dxf](#), [Dwg](#), [STEP](#), [IGES](#), [SAT](#), [Parasolids](#) and [STL](#) file formats.



Dialog Box: Loaded Translator Plug-ins



Dialog Box: Loaded Translator Plug-ins

As more translators become available, they can be plugged in and used.



Related Topics

[Options](#)

[Export ...](#)

[Import ...](#)

[Save](#)

[Save As ...](#)

[Browse...](#)

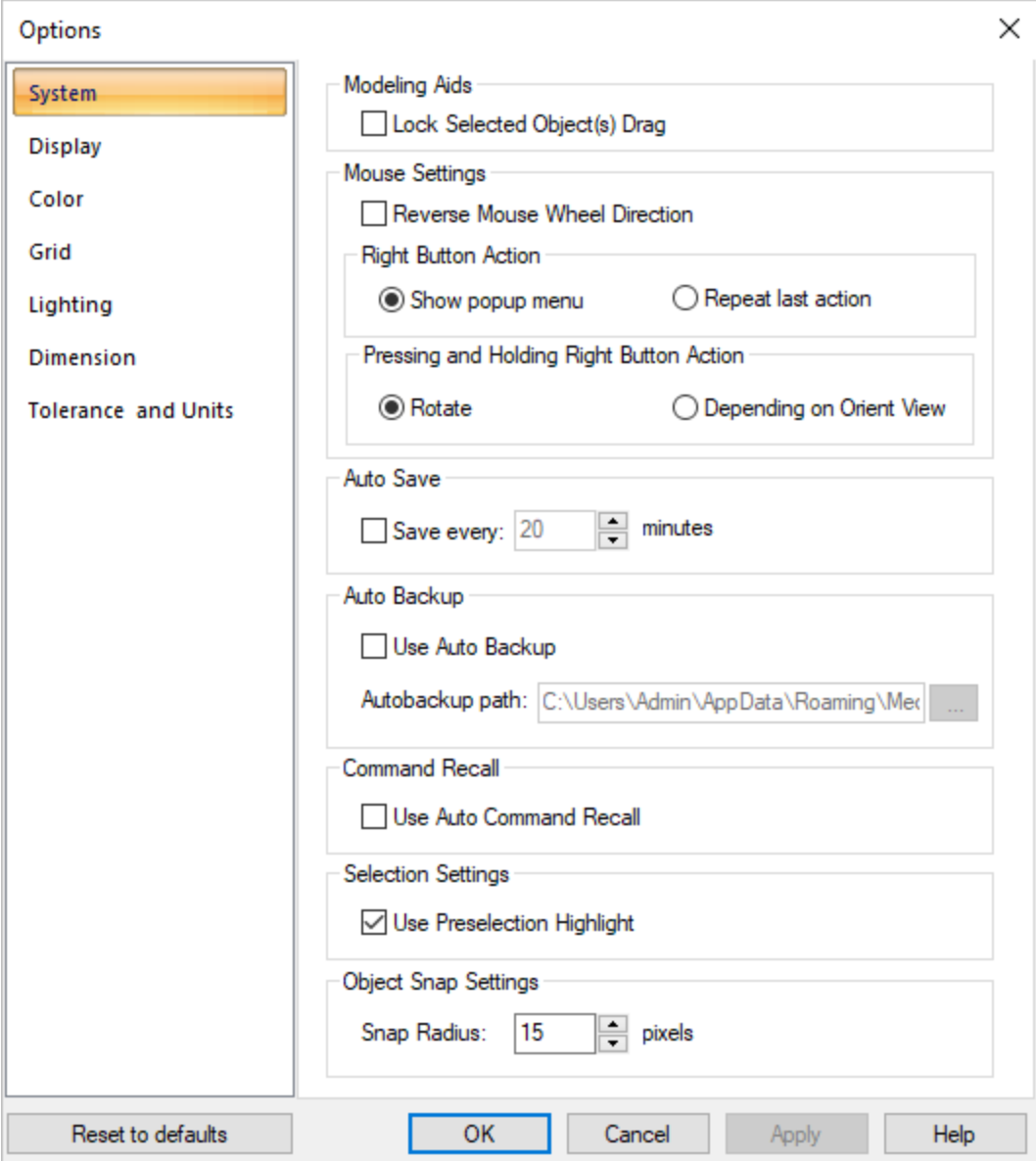
5.1.3 Options



The [Home Ribbon Bar](#) contains the [Options](#) pane. Selecting the icon will display the [Options](#) dialog shown below. This dialog allows you to set global parameters which include [System](#), [Display](#), [Color](#), [Grid](#), [Lighting](#), [Dimension](#), [Tolerance](#) and [Units](#) preferences. This dialog can also be accessed from the [Status Toolbar](#).



Dialog Box: Options

The image shows the 'Options' dialog box in a software application. On the left is a vertical list of categories: System, Display, Color, Grid, Lighting, Dimension, and Tolerance and Units. 'System' is selected and highlighted in orange. The main area on the right contains several sections with checkboxes and controls. 'Modeling Aids' has a checkbox for 'Lock Selected Object(s) Drag'. 'Mouse Settings' includes a checkbox for 'Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction', a 'Right Button Action' section with radio buttons for 'Show popup menu' (selected) and 'Repeat last action', and a 'Pressing and Holding Right Button Action' section with radio buttons for 'Rotate' (selected) and 'Depending on Orient View'. 'Auto Save' has a checkbox for 'Save every: 20 minutes'. 'Auto Backup' has a checkbox for 'Use Auto Backup' and a text field for 'Autobackup path' with a browse button. 'Command Recall' has a checkbox for 'Use Auto Command Recall'. 'Selection Settings' has a checked checkbox for 'Use Preselection Highlight'. 'Object Snap Settings' has a 'Snap Radius' set to 15 pixels. At the bottom are buttons for 'Reset to defaults', 'OK', 'Cancel', 'Apply', and 'Help'.

Options

System

Display

Color

Grid

Lighting

Dimension

Tolerance and Units

Modeling Aids

☐ Lock Selected Object(s) Drag

Mouse Settings

☐ Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction

Right Button Action

☒ Show popup menu ☐ Repeat last action

Pressing and Holding Right Button Action

☒ Rotate ☐ Depending on Orient View

Auto Save

☐ Save every: 20 minutes

Auto Backup

☐ Use Auto Backup

Autobackup path: C:\Users\Admin\AppData\Roaming\Mec ...

Command Recall

☐ Use Auto Command Recall

Selection Settings

☒ Use Preselection Highlight

Object Snap Settings

Snap Radius: 15 pixels

Reset to defaults OK Cancel Apply Help

Dialog Box: Options

**Related Topics**[System](#)[Display](#)[Color](#)[Grid](#)[Lighting](#)[Dimension](#)[Tolerance and Units](#)

[Home Ribbon Bar](#)

5.1.3.1 System



Allows user to set preferences for modeling aids, mouse settings, auto save and command recall.



Dialog Box: Options > System

The screenshot shows the 'Options' dialog box with the 'System' tab selected. The left-hand list contains the following categories: System, Display, Color, Grid, Lighting, Dimension, and Tolerance and Units. The right-hand pane is divided into several sections:

- Modeling Aids:** Contains a checkbox for 'Lock Selected Object(s) Drag'.
- Mouse Settings:** Contains a checkbox for 'Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction'.
- Right Button Action:** Contains two radio buttons: 'Show popup menu' (selected) and 'Repeat last action'.
- Pressing and Holding Right Button Action:** Contains two radio buttons: 'Rotate' (selected) and 'Depending on Orient View'.
- Auto Save:** Contains a checkbox for 'Save every: 20 minutes'.
- Auto Backup:** Contains a checkbox for 'Use Auto Backup' and a text field for 'Autobackup path: C:\Users\Admin\AppData\Roaming\Mex' with a browse button.
- Command Recall:** Contains a checkbox for 'Use Auto Command Recall'.
- Selection Settings:** Contains a checked checkbox for 'Use Preselection Highlight'.
- Object Snap Settings:** Contains a text field for 'Snap Radius: 15 pixels'.

At the bottom of the dialog box are four buttons: 'Reset to defaults', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Dialog Box: Options > System



Lock Selected Object(s) Drag

If the box is not checked, you can select a geometry object and drag it around the C-Plane. When the box is checked, the objects cannot be dragged.



Mouse Settings

The following Mouse options are supported:



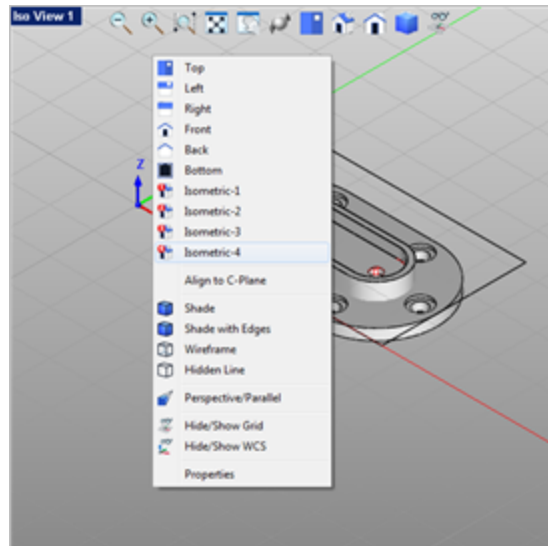
Reverse Mouse Wheel Direction

Reverses the direction of view zooming when using the mouse wheel.

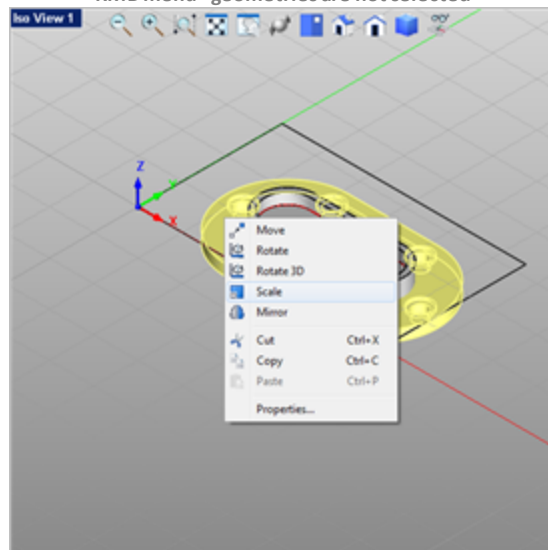


Right Button Action

When **Show pop-up menu** is selected, performing a right mouse button click in the view port displays the commands in the pop-up menu.



RMB menu - geometries are not selected



RMB menu - geometries are selected

When **Repeat last action** is selected, this recalls the previous command.



Pressing and Holding Right Button Action

This option tells **VisualCAD** what to do when the right mouse button is pressed and held.

- **Rotate**
When selected, pressing and holding down the right mouse button from all views performs a **Rotate** on the display.
- **Depending on Orient View**
When depending on orient view is selected, pressing & holding down the right mouse button from **Top**, **Front**, **Right**, **Left**, **Back**, **Bottom** views does a **Dynamic Pan** of the geometries instead of rotate. For **Iso** views (**Iso1,2,3 & 4**) it performs a **Rotate** when pressing and holding down right mouse button down.



AutoSave

The **AutoSave** function can be used to automatically save your active part file at user-specified time intervals. **AutoSave** always saves to the current file name. This saved file is removed when you successfully close your model.



NOTE: Once you activate **AutoSave**, you will need to **Exit VisualCAD** and then launch **VisualCAD** again before **AutoSave** will begin saving your part files!

Under the **AutoSave** function, check the box next to '**Save every xx minutes**' to activate the **AutoSave** function. The time interval can be entered in minutes.

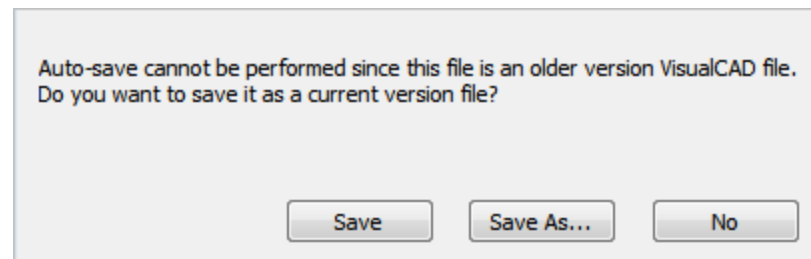


AutoSave saves the file under:
<APPDATA>\MecSoft\VisualCAD 2018\AutoSave where **APPDATA** is a logical pointing to a folder set up by your system administrator. By default it points to:
C:\Users\<username>\AppData\Roaming.



Opening an Older Version *.vcp File

Opening an older version vcp file, displays the following dialog allowing you the opportunity to save the file to the current version.



AutoSave Message



When does AutoSave Prompt me to Save a File?

Under the following conditions **VisualCAD** will prompt you to save your file:

1. When you have opened a non-native **VisualCAD** file.
2. When you have imported a file.
3. When you have created a new part and has not saved the file yet.



When is the AutoSave File Deleted?

Auto save file is deleted under the following scenarios:

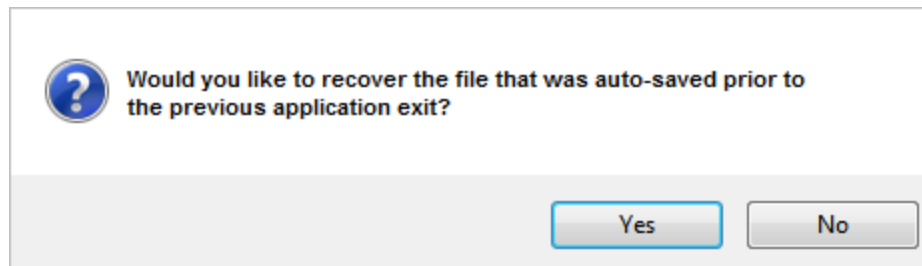
1. When the application closes normally.
2. When you close the file either explicitly or by opening another file.
3. When you select not to recover an **AutoSave** file that was detected on startup



File Recovery

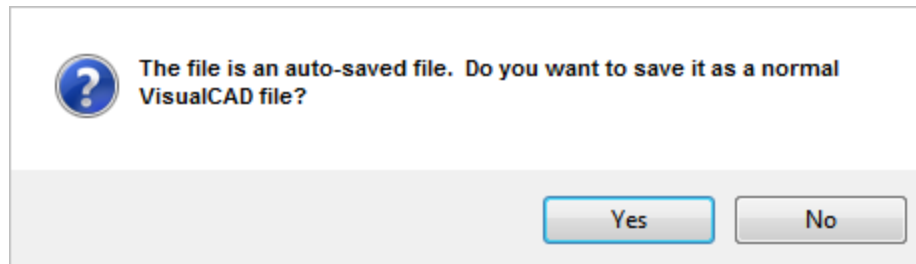
In the event of a computer crash or if **VisualCAD** is terminated abruptly by ending the process from task manager, **VisualCAD** will recover your file if **AutoSave** was active and your part file was automatically saved at least once.

If an **AutoSave** file has been created prior to the crash or termination, **VisualCAD** will detect the file located in the **AutoSave** folder the next time it is loaded. You are then prompted with the following dialog:



AutoSave Message

Selecting **Yes**, displays the following dialog, prompting you to save your file:



AutoSave Message



This is the only opportunity to recover the part file. If you choose not to recover it, the **AutoSave** file will be removed.



Use Auto Backup

Use this option to back up your [VisualCAD](#) files automatically. You can change the [Auto Backup Path](#) destination directory by selecting the 'browse' button.

If you have the check box checked, then the file is saved ONCE (as soon as the file is loaded) to the [Auto Backup](#) path with the same name as the original path file. This file is not deleted on exit so it can be recovered later if necessary. By default the check box to [Auto Backup](#) is unchecked.



Use Auto Command Recall

When this option is selected, [VisualCAD](#) automatically repeats the last command without having to go back & reselect the command from the toolbar or use the right mouse button click or enter option to repeat the previous command.



Use Preselection Highlight

When this option is selected, [VisualCAD](#) automatically highlights selections as the cursor moves over them. See [Pre-Selection Highlight](#) for more information.



Object Snap Settings

You can control the pixel radius of the object snaps located on the [Status Toolbar](#). Enter the [Snap Radius](#) desired.



Related Topics

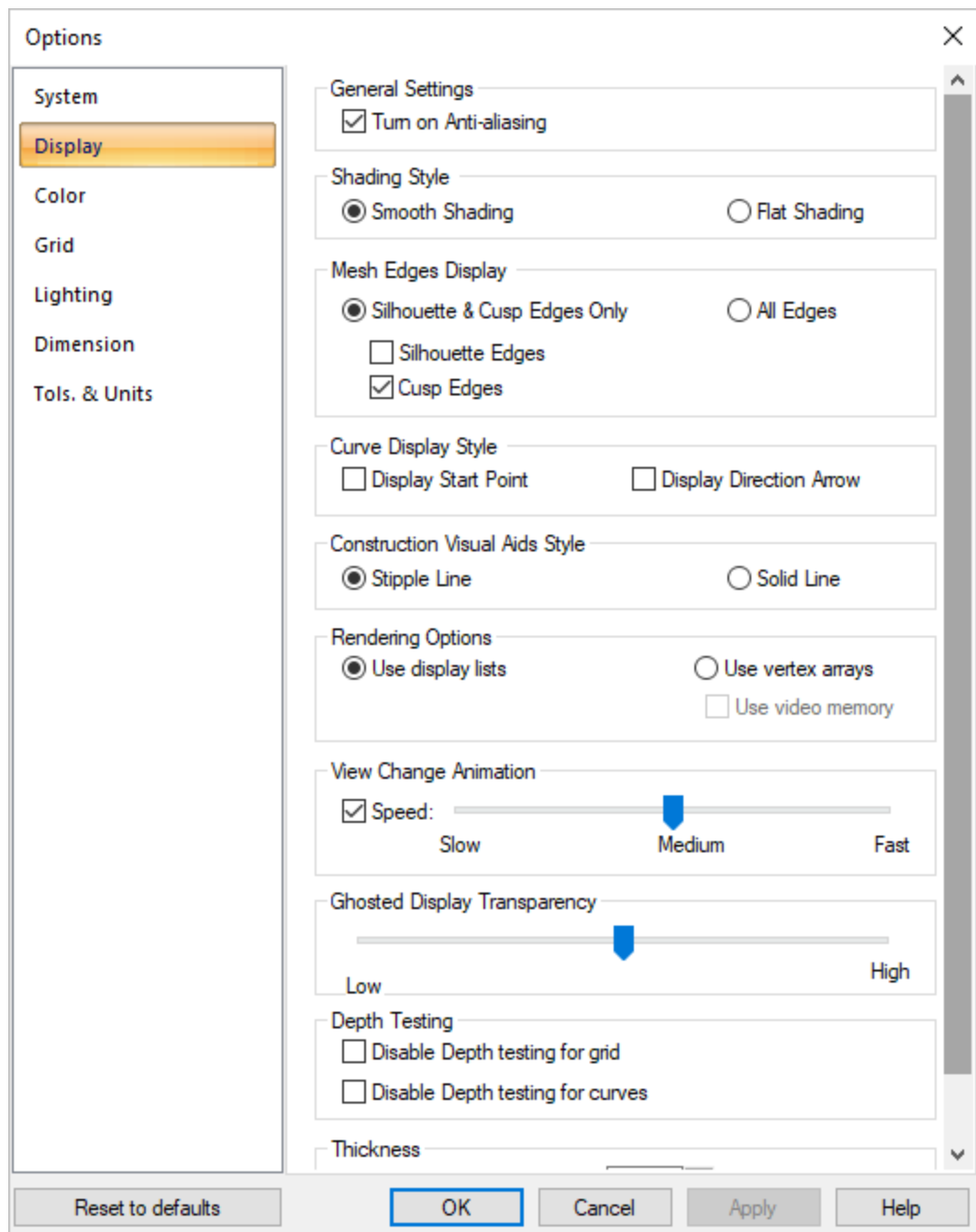
[Options](#)

5.1.3.2 Display

Controls how geometry is displayed. Select from the following:



Dialog Box: Options > Display



Dialog Box: Options > Display



General Settings

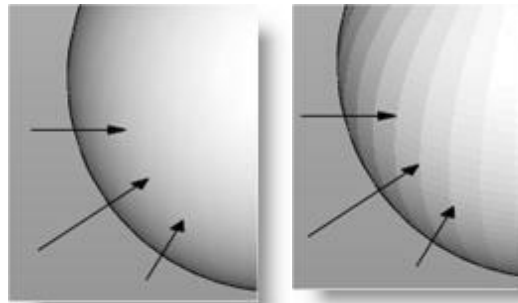
Turn on Anti-aliasing

A method of smoothing the jagged edges along the lines and curves of text or graphics. Aliasing is caused by limited display resolution. Selecting this option turns on [Anti-aliasing](#).



Shading Style

This controls how smooth surfaces are shaded.



Smooth Shading

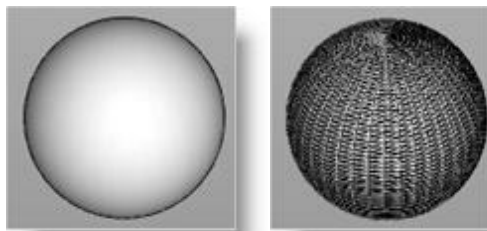
Flat Shading

The pictures demonstrate the difference between smooth and flat shading. The left picture smoothly changes the amount of shading as the surface curves. The right picture just displays the shading for a flat facet on the surface. Since all surfaces (including smooth ones) are internally represented as flat facets, flat shading can affect any surface. The default is smooth shading.



Mesh Edges Display Style

This changes how smooth surfaces are displayed. Since all surfaces are internally represented as flat facets, these facets join up along edges. On smooth surfaces, these edges are not sharp and are not normally displayed. An example of a sharp edge is the edge of a cube.

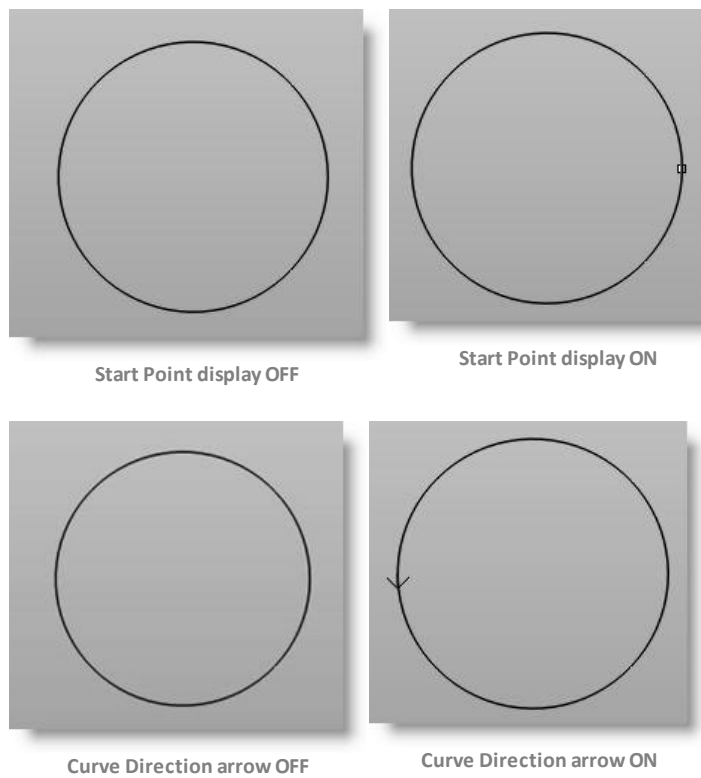


The pictures demonstrate the difference between silhouette & cusp edges only and all edge display. The left picture displays only sharp edges (there are none on a sphere); meanwhile, the right picture displays all the edges. The default is [Silhouette & Cusp Edges Only](#). When selected, this allows you to select [Silhouette Edges](#), [Cusp Edges](#) or [All Edges](#) to display.



Curve Display Style

This provides an option to turn on or off display of curve start point and direction arrow.

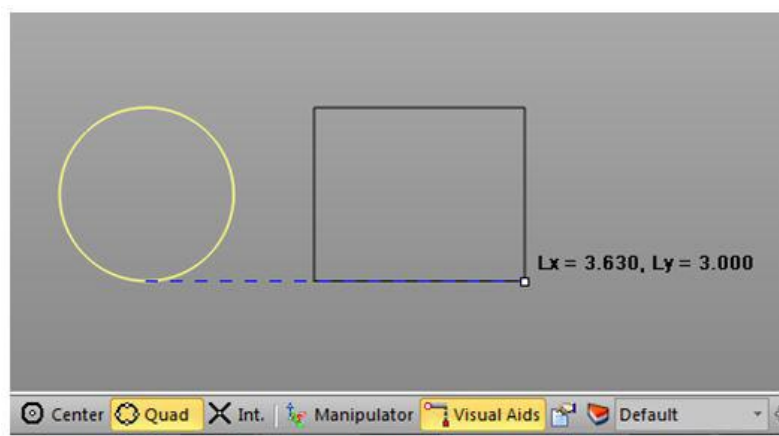


Selecting [Start Point](#) and [Curve Direction](#) arrow display under options displays both start point and curve direction arrow.

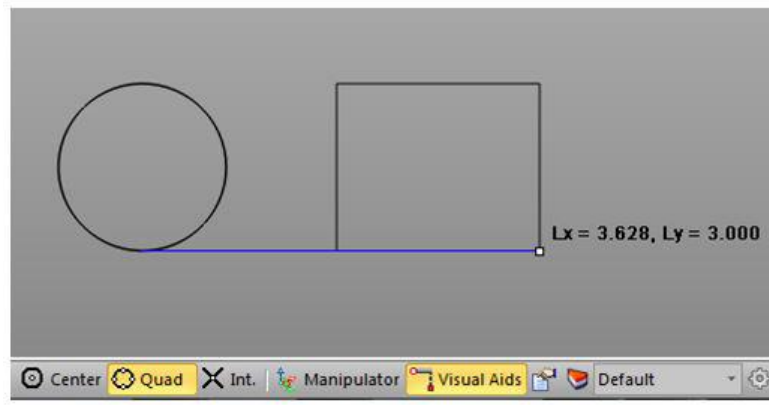


Construction Visual Aids Style

This provides an option to choose the display style between [Stipple line](#) and [Solid line](#) for visual aids when the [Visual Aids](#) is set to active under the status bar.



Stipple line display



Solid line display



Rendering Options

This can be set to [Use Display Lists](#) or [Vertex Arrays](#). The [Vertex Arrays](#) option also provides the option to [Use Video Memory](#) from the video card that is installed on the computer. The speed and performance varies depending on the operating system type and video card installed.



View Change Animation

Whenever the view orientation is changed within the active viewport, [VisualCAD](#) can make that orientation change instantly or through smooth animation. If animation is used, the speed of the animation can be set.

Under the [View Change Animation](#) function, check the box next to [Speed](#) to activate the animation. The animation speed can be controlled using the slider bar.



Ghosted Display Transparency

Whenever the view mode is set to [Ghosted Display](#), you can use this slider to control the transparency level of the hidden (ghosted) geometry.



Depth Testing

These options allow you to fully display certain objects regardless of the view mode. For example, checking the box to [Disable Depth Testing for curves](#), will display all curves even if the view is set to shaded model. You can also [Disable Depth testing for grid](#). If enabled, the grid lines will always display.



Thickness

Use this parameter to set the display line thickness for all wireframe geometry. Set this to 1 for the default line thickness. Higher for thicker lines.



Related Topics

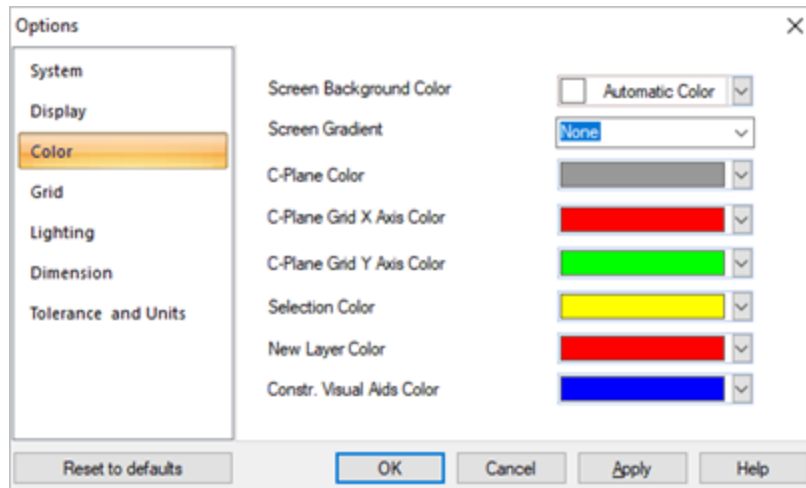
[Options](#)

5.1.3.3 Color

The default colors are set using this dialog.



Dialog Box: Options > Color



Dialog Box: Options > Color

- [Screen Background Color](#)
This allows user to set the viewport background color. This is the color displayed when no objects are at that position.
- [Screen Gradient](#)
This is a smooth change of lighting. The direction specified is the lighter side. It starts slightly darker on the opposite side of the screen and gradually gets lighter until it reaches the specified side.
- [C-Plane Color](#)
This changes the color of the construction plane grid.
- [C-Plane Grid X Axis Color](#)
This changes the horizontal axis line of the construction plane.
- [C-Plane Grid Y Axis Color](#)
This changes the vertical axis line of the construction plane.
- [Selection Color](#)
This is the highlight color of objects that have been selected.
- [New Layer Color](#)
This is the default color of objects created on new (not Default) layers.

- [Constr. Visual Aids Color](#)

This is the default color of construction aids when [Visual Aids](#) is set to active in the status bar.



Related Topics

[Options](#)

5.1.3.4 Grid

This controls how the construction plane grid is displayed.



Dialog Box: Options > Grid

Options

System
Display
Color
Grid
Lighting
Dimension
Tols. & Units

Position of Grid Origin

☒ Center ☐ Lower Left ☐ Lower Right
☐ Upper Left ☐ Upper Right

Pick Point

Grid Extents in X Direction: 800

Grid Extents in Y Direction: 800

Distance between each Minor Grid Line: 5

of Divisions between Each Major Line: 6

Reset to defaults OK Cancel Apply Help

Dialog Box: Options > Grid



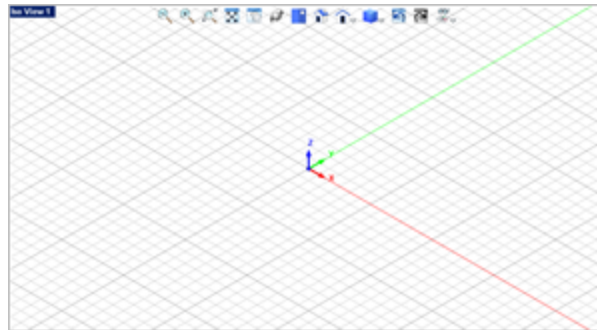
Position of Grid Origin

These options will control where the grid is positioned relative to the World Coordinate System (WCS).

The grid orientation also carries over to whichever view is active, making construction easier.

Center

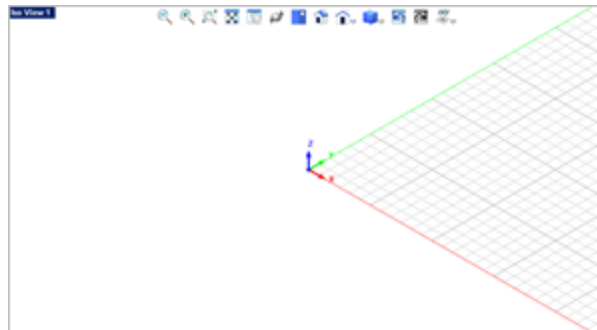
Move the center of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the center of the grid to the WCS.

Lower Left

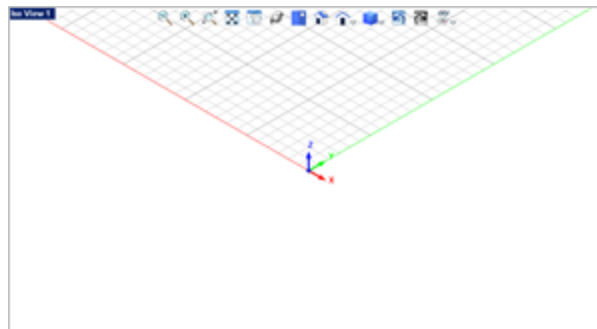
Move the lower left corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the lower left corner of the grid to the WCS.

Lower Right

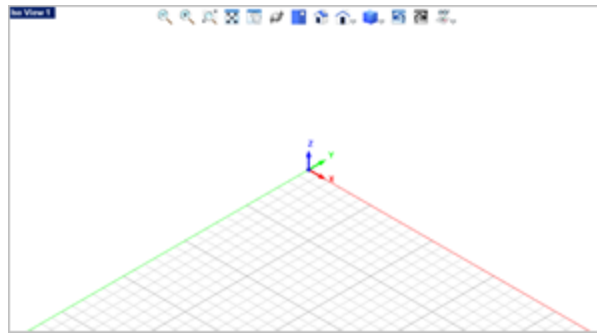
Move the lower right corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the lower right corner of the grid to the WCS.

Upper Left

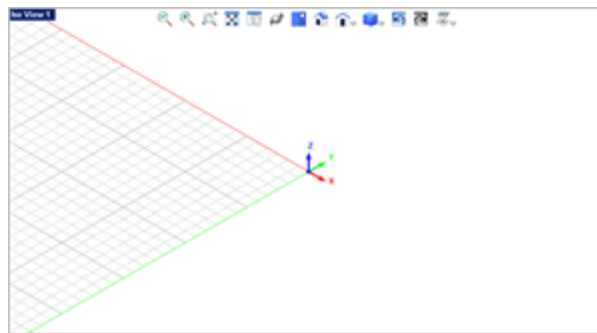
Move the upper left corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the upper left corner of the grid to the WCS.

Upper Right

Move the upper right corner of the grid to the [WCS](#).



Move the upper right corner of the grid to the WCS.

Pick

Use the button to pick a point on the screen and the origin of the grid will move to this location.

Notes:

- The point you pick is always on the default [XY plane](#).
- If you use the [Upper/Lower](#) options above after using this [Pick](#) option, the offset distance between the [WCS](#) and the new origin of the grid remains in effect.



Move the the origin of the grid to this location.



Other Grid Options

Grid Extents in X Direction

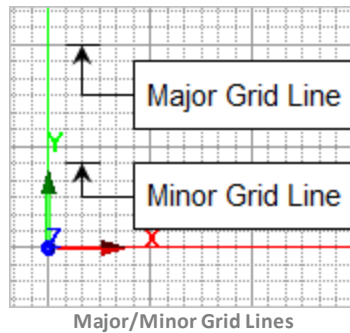
This controls how many major divisions are displayed along the X axis direction.

Grid Extents in Y Direction

This controls how many major divisions are displayed along the Y axis direction.

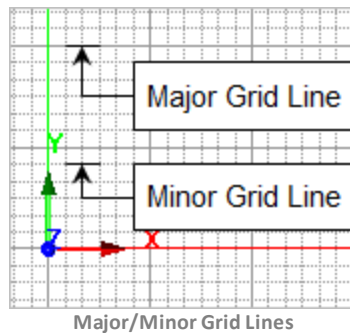
Distance between each Minor Grid Line

This controls the distance between each minor grid line.



of Divisions between Each Major Line

This controls the distance between each major grid line. the number of minor grid line multiplied by the number of major grid lines will determine the overall extent of the grid.



Related Topics

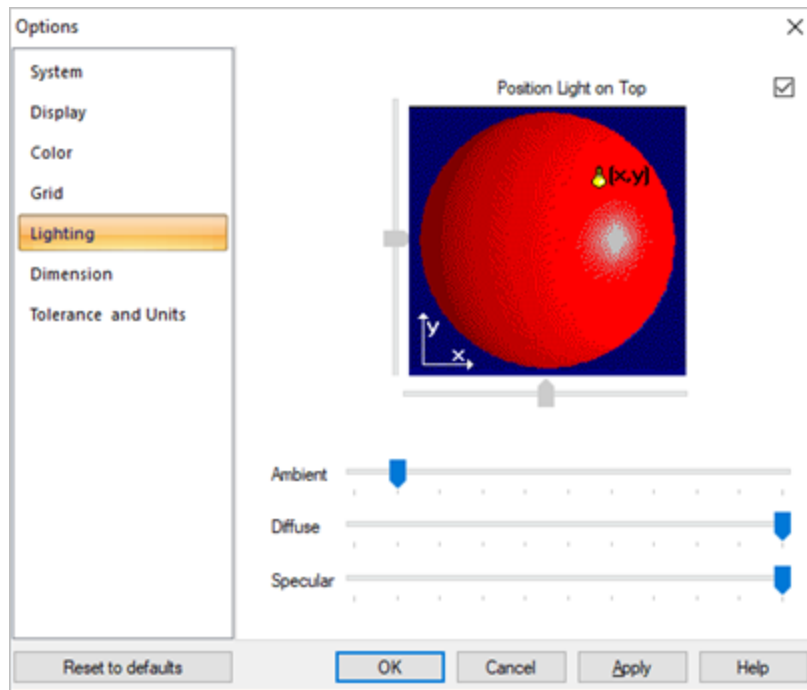
[Options](#)

5.1.3.5 Lighting

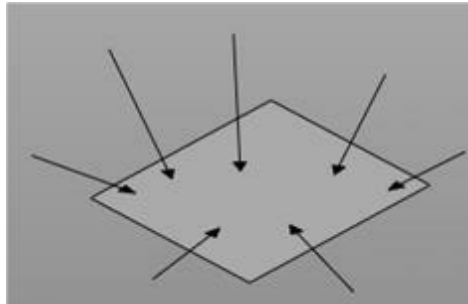
This controls the characteristics of lighting for the model.



Dialog Box: Options > Lighting



There are three types of lighting: ambient, diffuse, and specular.

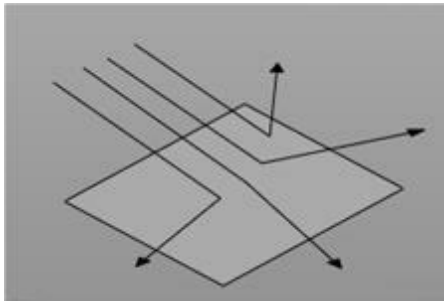


Position Light on Top

The scene has a single light source and there are controls for setting its position. Not all lighting in the model comes directly from that one source; there is some ambient light coming in from all over. The **Position Light on Top** checkbox must be unchecked to be able to move the light source.

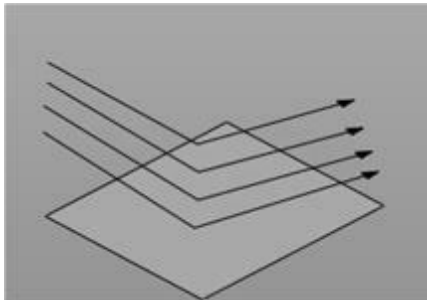
Ambient

Ambient light comes in from all different directions equally. Light sources have no effect on ambient light. Shadows don't appear with only ambient light.



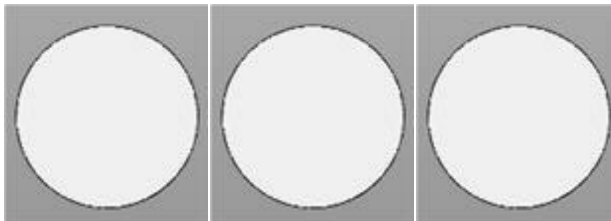
Diffuse

Diffuse light comes from a single source but is scattered in all directions. Shadows appear, but there are no “shiny” spots.

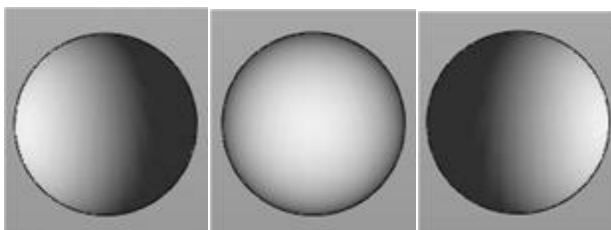


Specular

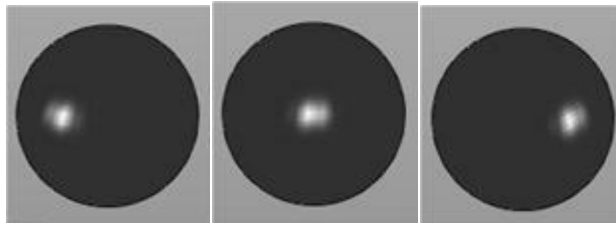
Specular light comes from a single source and is scattered in a single direction. It is reflective light. Shiny metal objects demonstrate good specular reflection. Shading is not a significant consideration with specular light.



The three pictures above demonstrate ambient light as the light source moves from left to right. There is no effect since ambient light comes from all sides equally.



The pictures above show the effects of the motion of the light source using only diffuse lighting. There are no “shiny” spots but yet there is a direction from the light.



The last set of pictures uses only specular lighting. As the light source moves from left to right, the “shiny” spot follows it. However, there is nothing else lit up, so the effect is not just reflective metal.



Related Topics

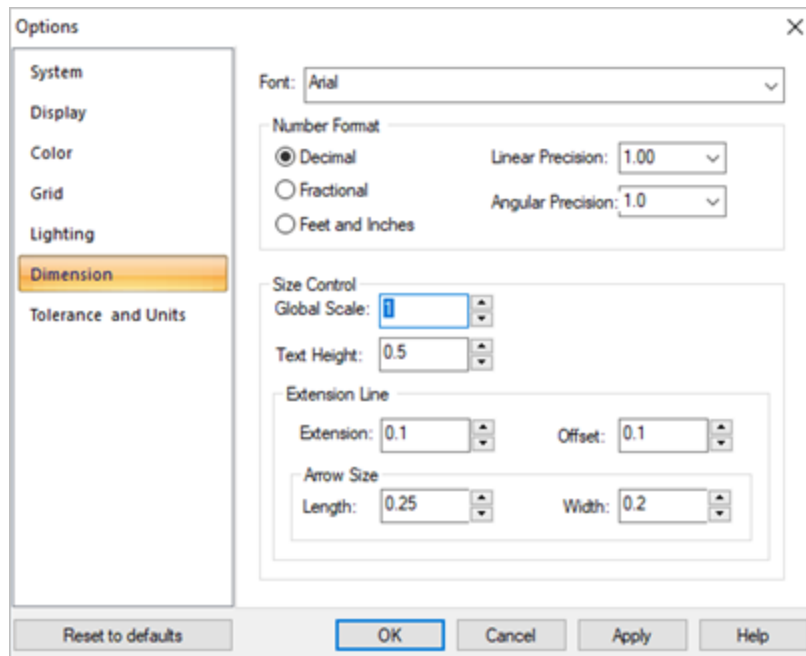
[Options](#)

5.1.3.6 Dimension

This controls the appearance of dimensioning labels, arrows, and leader lines.



Dialog Box: Options > Dimension



Dialog Box: Options > Dimension



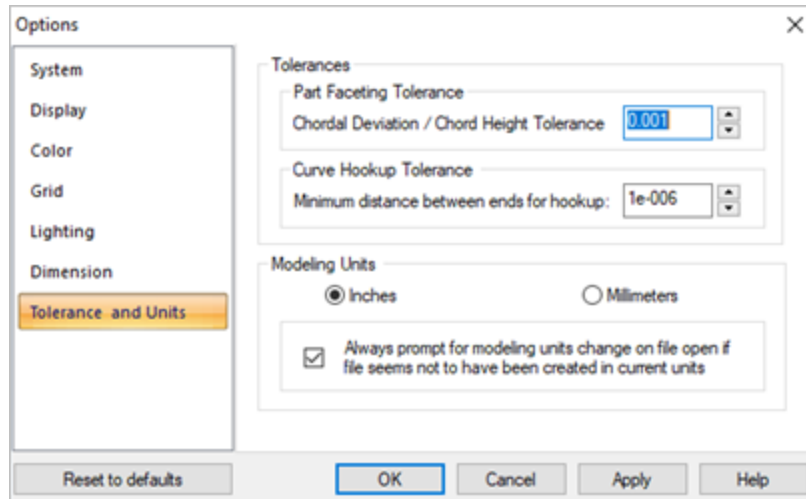
Related Topics

[Options](#)

5.1.3.7 Tol. & Units

This controls the accuracy of the model and part units.

Dialog Box: Options > Tolerance and Units



Dialog Box: Options > Tolerance and Units

Tolerances

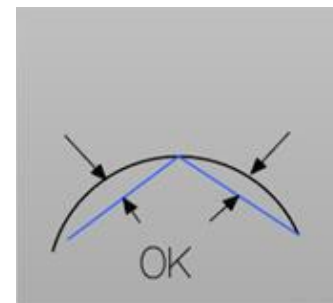
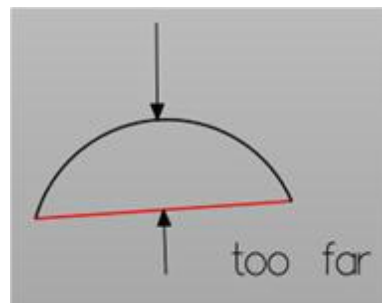
This controls the accuracy of the models. Smaller tolerance numbers often result in significantly big files and slower processing time but are more accurate.

The tolerances are set in a dialog.

Part Faceting Tolerance

Chordal Deviation/Chord Height Tolerance

The chord height tolerance is used in commands that require approximation of smooth curves and surfaces.



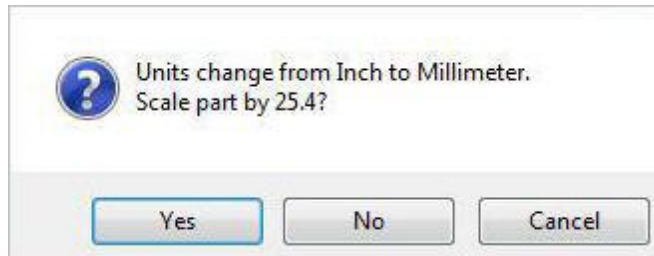
Curve Hookup Tolerance

This specifies maximum separation between the endpoints of different curves when joining them into a single curve.



Units

This converts units from inches to millimeters or from millimeters to inches. If there are existing objects, a dialog will appear confirming if you really want to convert the units.



The objects remain the original size but the coordinate values change.

You can check the box to always prompt you to change the units when files are opened if they appear not to be in the correct units. For example, if the system sees a coordinate value that is quite large such as 500.5, then this dialog will display giving you the opportunity to change the units to Millimeters.



Related Topics

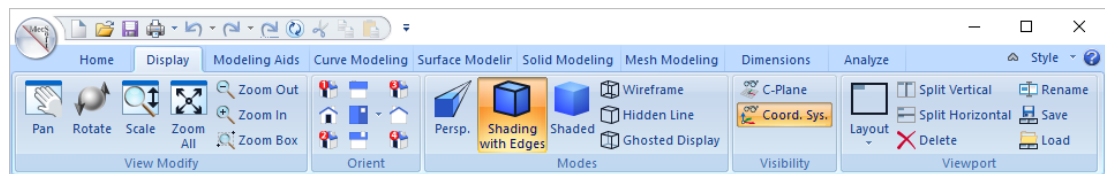
[Options](#)

5.2 Display

The **Display Ribbon Bar** contains **View Modify**, **Orient**, **Modes**, **Visibility** and **Viewport** panes and associated functions.



The Display Ribbon Bar



Display Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[View Modify Pane, Display Ribbon Bar](#)

[Orient Pane, Display Ribbon Bar](#)

[Modes Pane, Display Ribbon Bar](#)

[Visibility Pane, Display Ribbon Bar](#)

[Viewport Pane, Display Ribbon Bar](#)

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

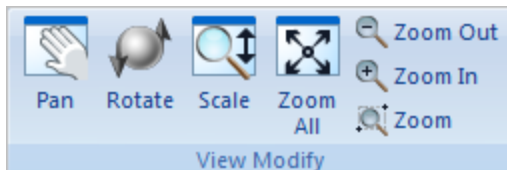
[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.2.1 View Modify

The [Display Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [View Modify](#) pane with associated functions.



Display Ribbon Bar
View Modify Pane



Related Topics

[Dynamic Pan View](#)

[Dynamic Rotate View](#)

[Dynamic Zoom](#)

[Fit View](#)

[Zoom Out](#)

[Zoom In](#)

[Zoom Box](#)

[Display Ribbon Bar](#)

5.2.1.1 Dynamic Pan View



The mouse moves the camera left, right, up, or down. It does not change the orientation or rotate.

You can perform dynamic pan by holding down the shift key on your keyboard and using right mouse button click.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.1.2 Dynamic Rotate View



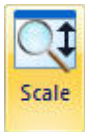
The mouse moves the camera around the model. The center of the view is the center of rotation. You can perform dynamic rotate using right mouse button click.



[Related Topics](#)

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.1.3 Dynamic Zoom



This moves the camera towards or away from the center of view with the mouse. Hold down the left mouse-button while moving the mouse forward (zooms in – makes things appear larger) and backward (zooms out – makes things appear smaller).

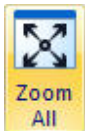
You can perform dynamic zoom by holding down the control key on your keyboard and using right mouse button click.



[Related Topics](#)

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.1.4 Fit View



This changes the position of the camera to so that all objects are in view. It does not change the orientation or rotation. If a 3D object (surface, solid or mesh) is selected, the [Fit View](#) command will fit the view to the selected objects.

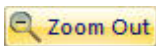
Note: With the [VisualMILL](#) plug-in module loaded, [Fit View](#) will also account for the [Stock](#) model if [Stock](#) display is toggled on.



[Related Topics](#)

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.1.5 Zoom Out



The camera backs up to make the objects appear twice as small. The dimensions of the objects don't change, only the position of the camera.



[Related Topics](#)

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.1.6 Zoom In



The camera moves forward to make the objects appear twice as large. The dimensions of the objects don't change, only the position of the camera.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.1.7 Zoom Box



This creates a rubber-banded rectangle surrounding an area. The camera is moved so that the selected area fills the view. If the area's aspect ratio doesn't match the view's ratio, the area is expanded so that the entire selected area is in view. The dimensions of the objects don't change, only the position of the camera.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.2 Orient



The [Display Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Orient](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Top View](#)

[Bottom View](#)

[Front View](#)

[Back View](#)

[Left View](#)

[Right View](#)

[Iso View 1-4](#)

[Display Ribbon Bar](#)

5.2.2.1 Top View



Changes the currently selected view to look down to the origin. The camera is positioned at a positive z-height on the z-axis. The x-axis points to the right, the y-axis points up, and the z-axis points out of the screen towards you. If geometry is not at the origin, it might be out of view after top view is selected.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.2.2 Bottom View



Changes the currently selected view to look up to the origin. The camera is positioned at a negative z-height on the z-axis. The x-axis points to the right, the y-axis points down, and the z-axis points into the screen away from you. If geometry is not at the origin, it might be out of view after bottom view is selected.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.2.3 Front View



Changes the currently selected view to look at the origin from the front. The camera is position at a negative y-coordinate on the y-axis. The x-axis points to the right, the y-axis points away from you, and the z-axis points up. If geometry is not at the origin, it might be out of view after front view is selected.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.2.4 Back View



Changes the currently selected view to look at the origin from the back. The camera is position at a positive y-coordinate on the y-axis. The x-axis points to the left, the y-axis points towards you, and the z-axis points up. If geometry is not at the origin, it might be out of view after back view is selected.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.2.5 Left View



Changes the currently selected view to look at the origin from the left. The camera is position at a negative x-coordinate on the x-axis. The x-axis points away from you, the y-axis points to the left, and the z-axis points up. If geometry is not at the origin, it might be out of view after left view is selected.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.2.6 Right View



Changes the currently selected view to look at the origin from the right. The camera is position at a positive x-coordinate on the x-axis. The x-axis points towards you, the y-axis points to the right, and the z-axis points up. If geometry is not at the origin, it might be out of view after right view is selected.



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

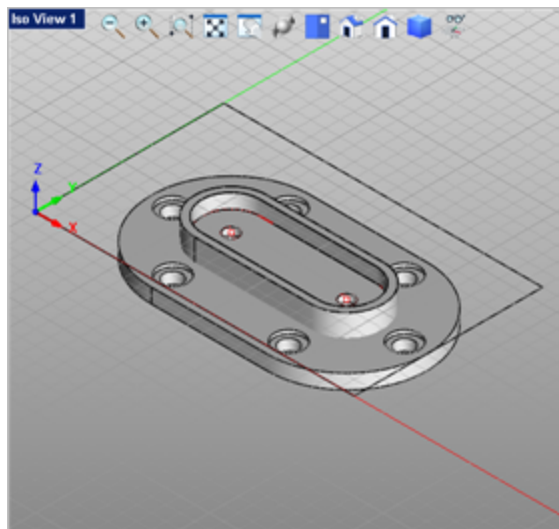
5.2.2.7 Iso View 1-4



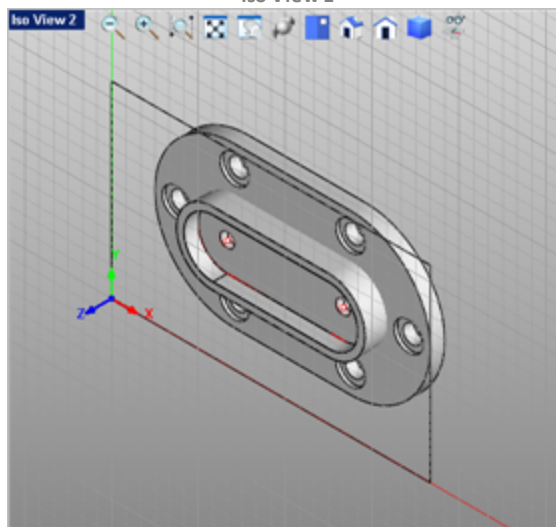
There are 4 preset [Iso Views](#) to choose from. Selecting one of the 4 icons changes the currently active viewport to the assigned [Iso View](#) direction. Note that if geometry is not at the origin, it might be out of view after an [Iso View](#) is selected.



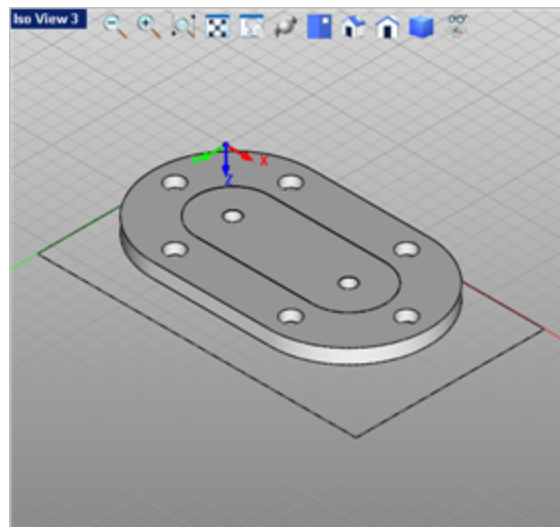
Iso View Examples



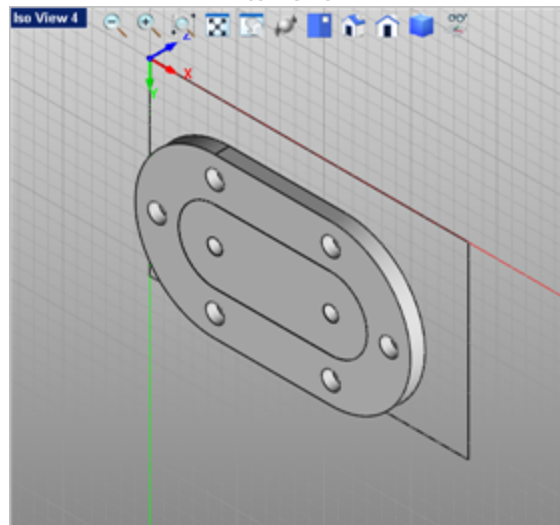
Iso View 1



Iso View 2



Iso View 3



Iso View 4

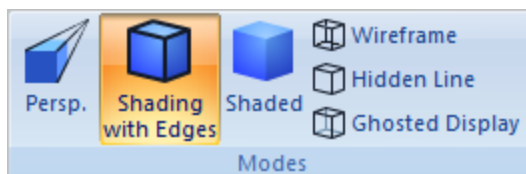


Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.3 Modes

The [Display Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Modes](#) pane with associated functions.



Display Ribbon Bar
Modes Pane



Related Topics

[Perspective / Parallel](#)

[Toggle Shading + Edges](#)

[Shaded Display](#)

[Wireframe Display](#)

[Toggle Hidden Lines](#)

[Toggle Ghosted Display](#)

[Display Ribbon Bar](#)

5.2.3.1 Perspective / Parallel

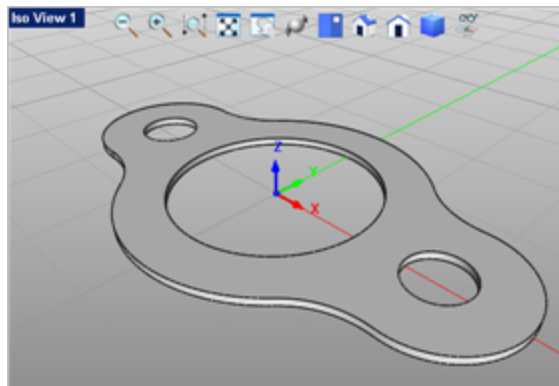


Switch the currently selected view between a perspective view and a parallel view. The default is parallel view. A perspective view shows nearer objects as bigger than normal while objects that are farther away are shown smaller than normal. Even nearer faces of volumes will be bigger than normal while the farther away faces are smaller. This is a standard technique to convey distance but distorts the appearance of objects.

A parallel view maintains the size of all objects, regardless of apparent distance.



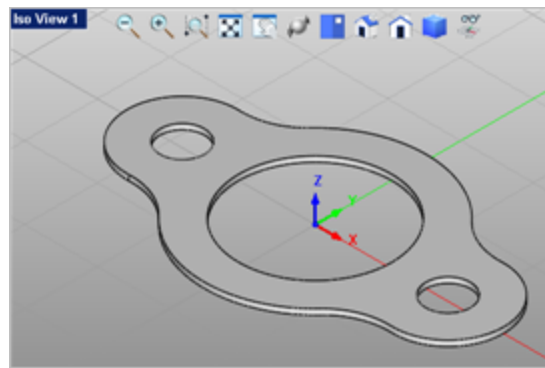
Perspective Enabled



Perspective Enabled



Parallel Enabled



Parallel Enabled



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

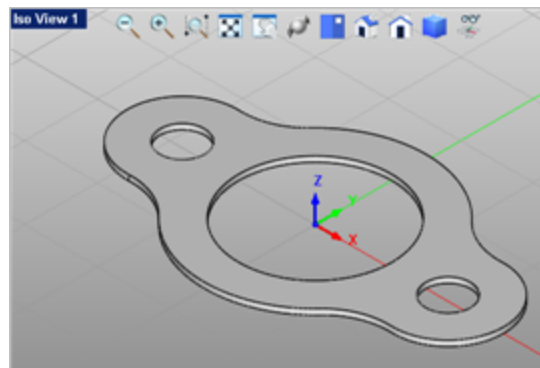
5.2.3.2 Toggle Shading + Edges



All surfaces and volumes in the currently selected view are filled in with colors. The edges of surfaces and volumes are outlined in black. The surface color is modified to display shading and lighting effects. There is a light source that can cause shadows and glossy appearances depending on the position of the geometry and how it is viewed.



Shading + Edges Enabled



Shading + Edges Enabled



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

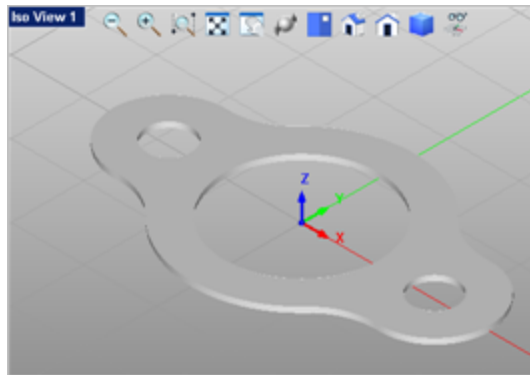
5.2.3.3 Shaded Display



All surfaces and volumes in the currently selected view are filled in with colors. The color is modified to display shading and lighting effects. There is a light source that can cause shadows and glossy appearances depending on the position of the geometry and how it is viewed.



Shading Display Enabled



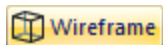
Shading Display Enabled



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

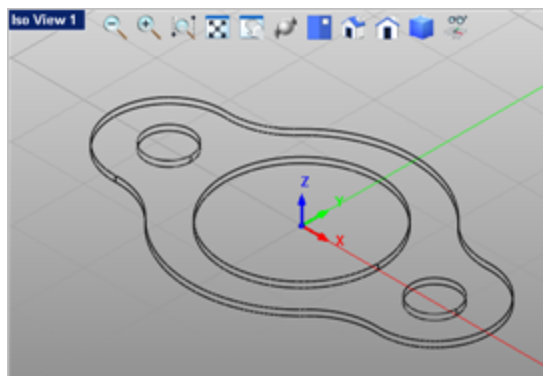
5.2.3.4 Wireframe Display



All surfaces and volumes in the currently selected view are transparent. Only the edges are displayed. Even the edges that would normally be on the backside of a volume and not normally be displayed show up. If one object is behind another, the farther away object is visible through the nearer object.



Wireframe Display Enabled



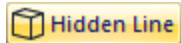
Wireframe Display Enabled



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

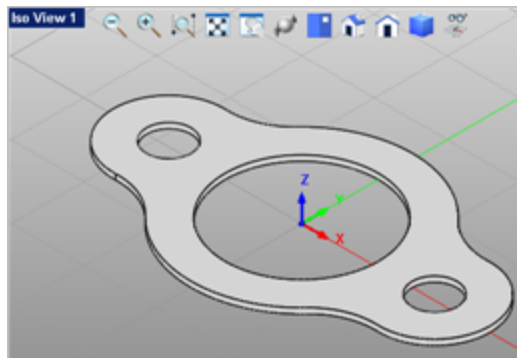
5.2.3.5 Hidden Line Display



All surfaces and volumes in the currently selected view are filled in with a neutral gray. The edges of surfaces and volumes are displayed in the normal color for that layer. No lighting or shading effects are displayed.



Hidden Line Display Enabled



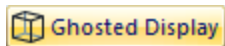
Hidden Line Display Enabled



Related Topics

[View Bar Options](#)

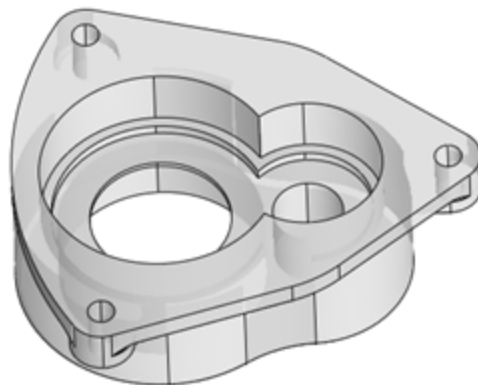
5.2.3.6 Ghosted Display



This display mode is a combination of [Shaded](#) and [Hidden Line](#) where the hidden areas of the part are displayed in a sub-tone color of the part's primary layer color. This display mode give you an understanding the hidden areas of the part. You can control the transparency level (low to high) from the [Display Options](#) dialog.



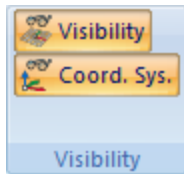
Ghosted Display Enabled



Ghosted Display Enabled

**Related Topics**[View Bar Options](#)[Display Options](#)

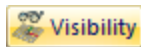
5.2.4 Visibility



The [Display Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Visibility](#) pane with associated functions.

**Related Topics**[Hide/Show Grid](#)[Hide/Show WCS](#)[Display Ribbon Bar](#)

5.2.4.1 Hide/Show Grid



Switches on and off the display of the construction plane in the currently selected view. The default is to show the construction plane (grid).

**Related Topics**[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.4.2 Hide/Show WCS

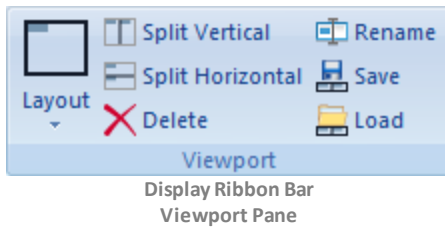


Switches on and off the display of the [World Coordinate System](#) in the currently selected view. The World Coordinate System is the three vectors at the origin, which show the positive x, y, and z axes. The default is to show the [WCS](#).

**Related Topics**[View Bar Options](#)

5.2.5 Viewport

The [Display Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Viewport](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Viewport Layouts](#)

[Viewport Menu](#)

[Split Viewport](#)

[Delete Viewport](#)

[Rename Viewport](#)

[Save Viewport](#)

[Load Viewport](#)

[Display Ribbon Bar](#)

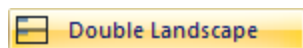
5.2.5.1 Viewport Layouts

The next eight options control the viewport layout on the screen according to the following table. These are various useful arrangements of the views.



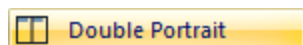
Single
Viewport

Top View

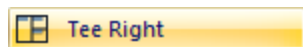


Top View

Iso View

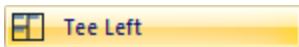


Top View	Iso View
----------	----------



Iso View	Top View
----------	----------

	Right View
--	------------



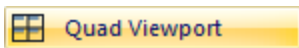
Top View	Iso View
Front View	



Iso View	
Top View	Right View



Top View	Right View
Iso View	



Top View	Iso View
Front View	Right View



Related Topics

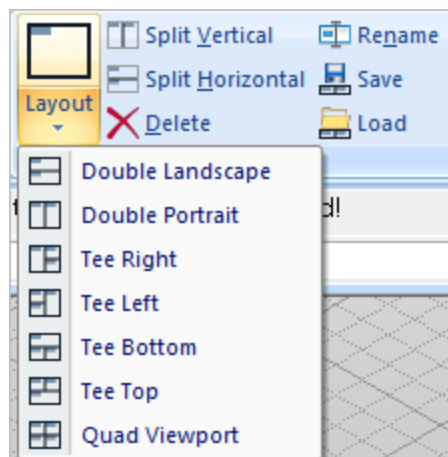
[Viewport](#)

5.2.5.1.1 View port Menu

Use this menu to change the configuration of viewport layouts. A viewport is the section of the screen that displays what a camera would see if it were positioned at a particular location and orientation. The camera will see all the geometry and other objects currently in view with correct lighting and color. The view can be changed by panning or rotating.



Show me the Viewport Menu



Viewport Menu



Right-click Menu from Viewport Title



More about Viewports

Viewports have titles like **Top**, **Right**, **Left**, and **Iso** (Isometric). The way that the construction plane is aligned is also associated with each different title. For example, both **Top** and **Iso** have the construction plane in the z-plane; meanwhile, **Left** and **Right** have the construction plane in the y-plane, and **Front** and **Back** have the construction plane in the x-plane.

Each of the named views has a starting position and orientation. These positions correspond to the name (i.e. **Top** is on top of the model, at a large z position (0, 0, big +z). Both the icons and the names suggest looking at a model (a house) from the top, left, right, front, and back. To distinguish between left and right, notice the little chimney on top of the house. It is visible from one side but not the other. The viewport will always start in the same location.

It is possible that objects may be visible in one view but out of view in another. When you change views, some objects won't appear, but they are still there.

Multiple viewports can be displayed at the same time. Commonly used configurations can be selected with the toolbar button.

Selecting one of these buttons immediately changes the view port configuration. While some objects might suddenly become out-of-view, they are still there. Panning or rotating any view should allow them to be seen.

Viewport menu can also be invoked when you right mouse button click on any viewport title.



Related Topics

[Split Viewport](#)

[Delete Viewport](#)

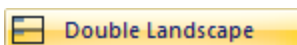
[Viewport Layouts](#)

[Rename Viewport](#)

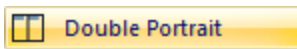
Align to C-Plane

5.2.5.2 Split Viewport

The first two options under Viewport are used to split the **currently active view** into two views, either vertically or horizontally. Any other view that exists in the Viewport layout will remain unchanged.



Top View
Iso View



Top View

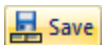
Iso View

**Related Topics**[Viewport](#)**5.2.5.3 Delete Viewport**

The third option will delete the [currently active view](#) from the viewport layout. Instantly, one of the adjacent views will fill in the vacated space in the viewport layout. The [Delete Viewport](#) option will cause no action if the current viewport layout is a single view.

**Related Topics**[Viewport](#)**5.2.5.4 Rename Viewport**

This option allows the currently active view to be renamed. The name change is temporary and neither the name nor the viewport are saved for later reference.

**Related Topics**[Viewport](#)**5.2.5.5 Save Viewport**

This option allows the currently active [Viewport](#) to be [Saved](#) for later recall. Complete the [Viewport Name](#) dialog and then pick [OK](#) to save it. Then at any time you can use the [Load Viewport](#) command to reload it as needed.



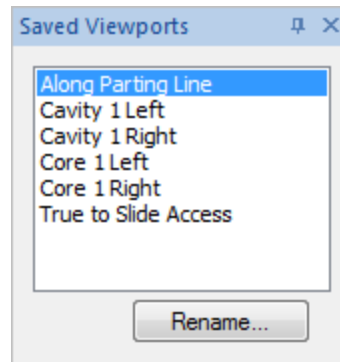
Viewport Name Dialog

**Related Topics**[Load Viewport](#)

5.2.5.6 Load Viewport



This option allows you to [Load](#) a [Viewport](#) that was previously saved using the [Save Viewport](#) command. When you select the [Load Viewport](#) icon the following [Saved Viewports](#) dialog is displayed. Select a saved viewport from the list and it will be displayed in the currently active viewport. To rename a saved viewport, select it and then pick the [Rename ...](#) button.



Saved Viewport Dialog



Related Topics

[Viewport](#)

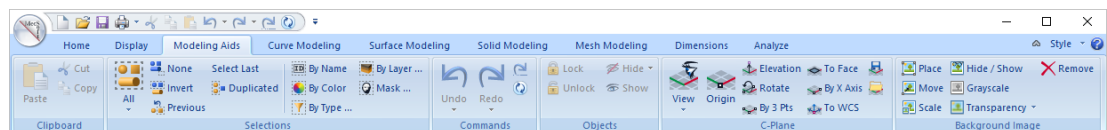
[Save Viewport](#)

5.3 Modeling Aids

The [Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#) contains [Clipboard](#), [Selections](#), [Commands](#), [Objects](#) and [C-Plane](#) panes and associated functions.



The Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar



Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Clipboard Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

[Commands Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

[Objects Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

[Background Image Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

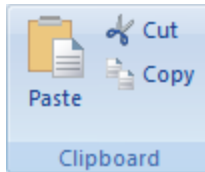
[The Ribbon Bar](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.3.1 Clipboard



The [Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Clipboard](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Cut Selection](#)

[Copy Selection](#)

[Paste Selection](#)

[Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.1.1 Cut Selection



Objects will be deleted, but will remain on the clipboard until replaced by the next items moved/copied to the clipboard. If no objects are selected when the command is executed, objects can be picked.



Related Topics

[Copy Selection](#)

[Paste Selection](#)

5.3.1.2 Copy Selection



Objects will be copied onto the clipboard. If no objects are selected when the command is executed, objects can be picked.



Related Topics

[Cut Selection](#)

[Paste Selection](#)

5.3.1.3 Paste Selection



All objects on the clipboard will be put at the cursor's position when the command was executed.



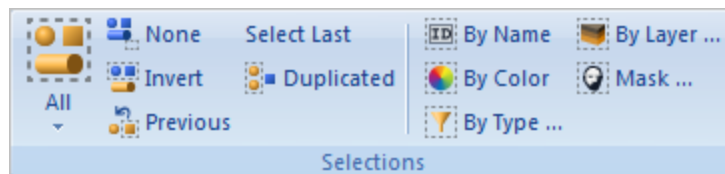
Related Topics

[Cut Selection](#)

[Copy Selection](#)

5.3.2 Selections

The [Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Selections](#) pane with associated functions.



Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar
Selections Pane

These commands allow you to select certain geometry to apply commands to as a group. Commands such as [Delete](#) or [Scale](#) will apply to all of the currently selected geometry in the same way and at the same time. Selected geometry will be highlighted with the highlight color. The default highlight color is yellow. Selected items can also be on multiple layers.

Multiple items can be selected by holding down the control key (on the keyboard) and left-clicking on the item with the mouse.



Selections do not apply to geometries that are hidden, locked and on layers that are not visible and or locked.



Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Select Points](#)

[Select Lines/Polylines](#)

[Select Arcs/Circles](#)

[Select Arcs/Circles ...](#)

[Select Nurbs Curves](#)

[Select Polycurves](#)

[Select Point Clouds](#)

[Select Shells](#)

[Select Meshes](#)

[Select Dimensions](#)

[Select Open Curves](#)

[Select All](#)

[Select None](#)

[Invert Selections](#)

[Select Previous](#)

[Select Last](#)

[Select Duplicated](#)

[Select by Name](#)

[Select by Color](#)

[Select by Type ...](#)

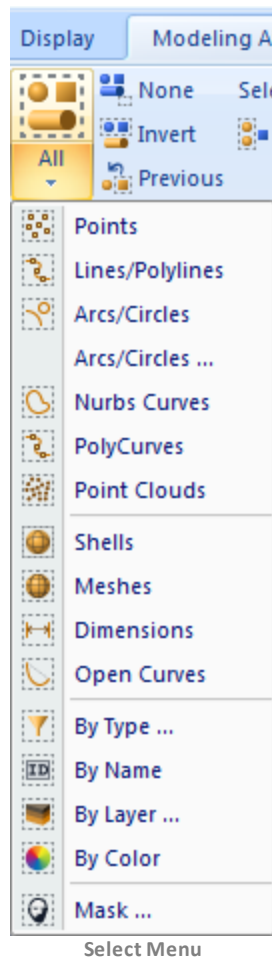
[Select by Layer ...](#)

[Selection Mask ...](#)

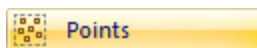
[Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1 Select Menu

Pick the  indicator to drop down the [Select Menu](#).



5.3.2.1.1 Select Points



All points will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

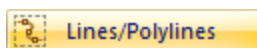


Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.2 Select Lines/Polylines



All lines and polylines will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

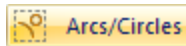


Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.3 Select Arcs/Circles



Arcs/Circles

All arcs and circles will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

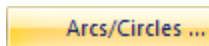


Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.4 Select Arcs/Circles ...

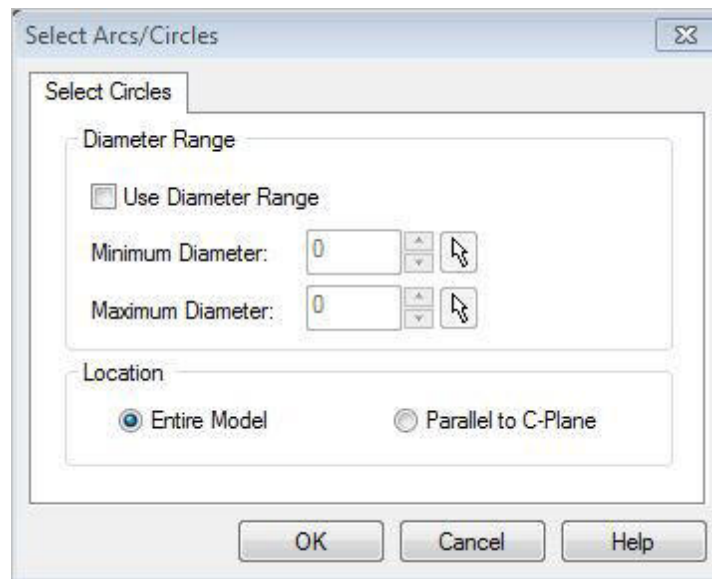


Arcs/Circles ...

This function selects arcs and circles only, but gives the option to be selective to a range of diameter values and orientation.



Select Arcs/Circles dialog box



Select Arcs/Circles dialog box

- **Diameter Range**
If the diameter range is used, the diameters may be entered directly or existing arcs may be picked on the screen to set these values.

- **Location**
Another option restricts the selection to only arcs and circles that are **Parallel** (coplanar) to the **C-Plane**.

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.5 Select Nurbs Curves

**Nurbs Curves**

All NURBS will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.6 Select Polycurves

**PolyCurves**

All curves made of sub curves (e.g. chained curves) will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.7 Select Point Clouds

**Point Clouds**

Use this command to select **Point Cloud** objects. Currently, the **Point Cloud** object can only be created from corresponding data during Import.

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.8 Select Shells

**Shells**

All surfaces & poly-surface objects (not meshes) will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.9 Select Meshes

**Meshes**

All meshes will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.10 Select Dimensions

**Dimensions**

All Dimension labels and leader lines will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.1.11 Select Open Curves

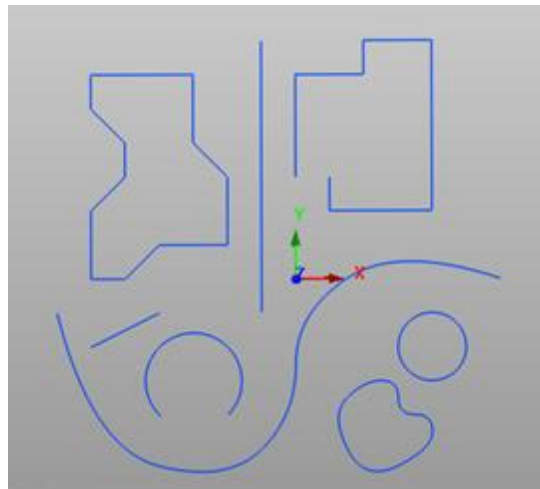
**Open Curves**

All curves including polylines, poly-curves, NURBS curves that are open will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.

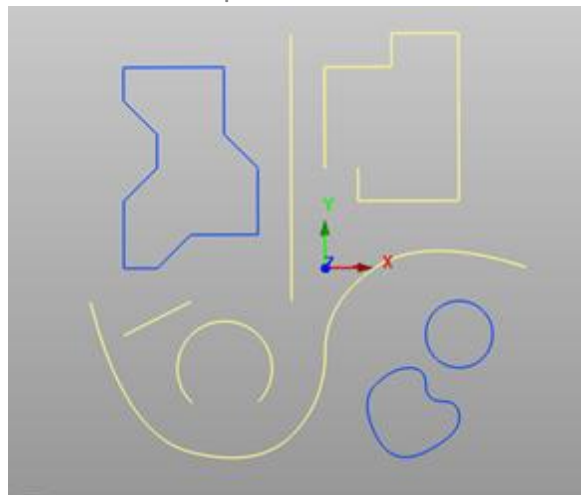
The **Open Curves** selection function is found under **Select** on the **Menu Bar**.

This function will automatically identify all curves on the screen that have an 'open' end that is not connected to another curve. These curves will be selected and highlighted.

**Select Open Curves example**



Select Open Curves - Before



Select Open Curves - Before



Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.2 Select All



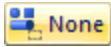
All geometry on all layers is selected.



Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.3 Select None

Everything is deselected.

**Related Topics**

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.4 Invert Selections

All geometry currently selected will be deselected; meanwhile, currently unselected items will be selected and highlighted.

**Related Topics**

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

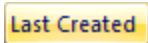
5.3.2.5 Select Previous

Geometries that were previously selected will be re-selected. All currently selected items will be deselected.

**Related Topics**

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

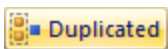
5.3.2.6 Select Last

The geometry created last will be selected.

**Related Topics**

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.7 Select Duplicated

Selects objects that are geometrically identical with another object and visible, regardless of other object properties.



Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.8 Select by Name



Geometry will be selected whose name matches a name that you enter. All other geometry will be deselected.

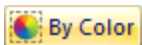


Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.9 Select By Color



Select an entity and then all geometry with the same color is also selected automatically. All other geometry will be deselected.

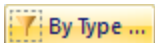


Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

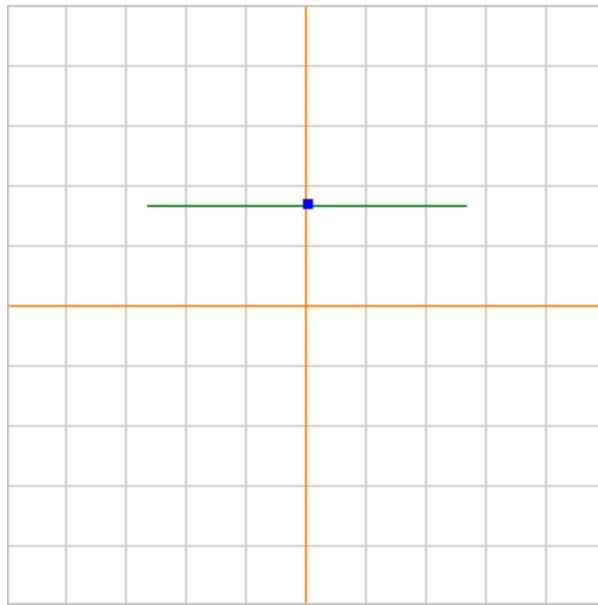
5.3.2.10 Select By Type ...



Geometry of the desired type will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.



Object Selection Filters dialog box



Object Selection Filters dialog box

- [Selectable Types](#)
Check the box next to the object types that you wish to select.
- [Select All / Clear All](#)
Selects or Clears all types selected.



Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

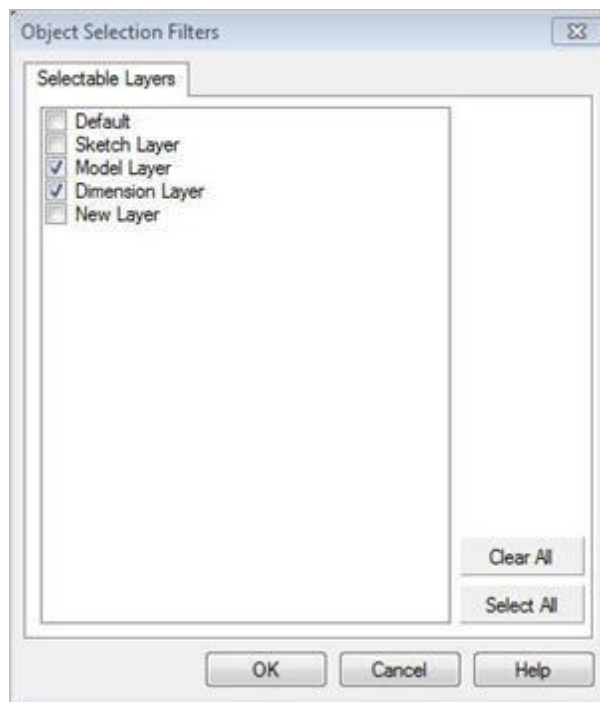
5.3.2.11 Select By Layer ...



All geometry on the desired layer will be selected. All other geometry will be deselected.



Object Selection Filters dialog box (by layer)



Object Selection Filters dialog box (by layer)

- [Selectable Types](#)
Check the box next to the object types that you wish to select.
- [Select All / Clear All](#)
Selects or Clears all types selected.

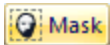


Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

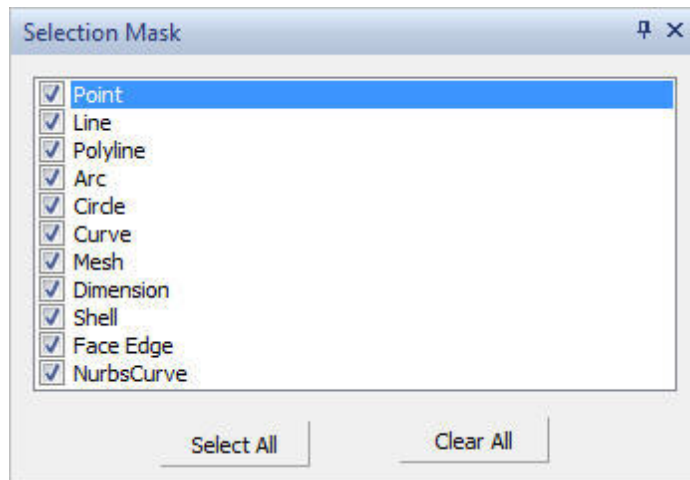
5.3.2.12 Selection Mask ...



Use this to set masks based on object types for subsequent selection operations. All other geometry will be deselected. This can be selected from the [Menu](#) bar by clicking on [Select](#), then choosing [Selection Mask](#) from the list. Geometries can be selected either by clicking on [Select](#) from [Menu](#) bar and selecting [All](#) or dragging a window with mouse to select the geometry in the viewport.



Selection Mask dialog box



Selection Masks

Check the box next to the mask types that you wish to select.

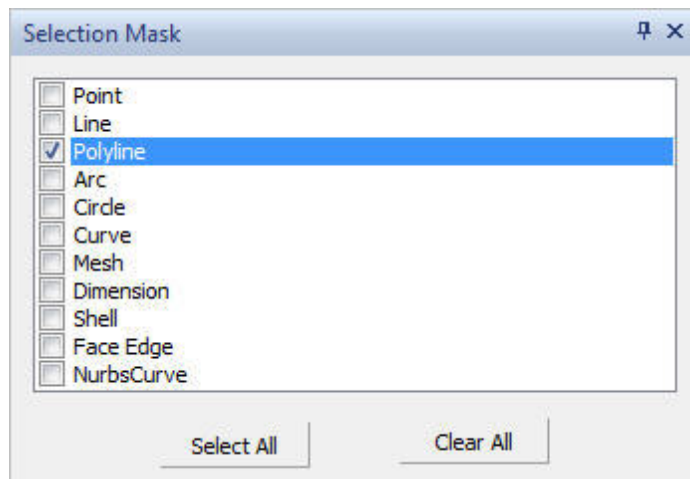
Select All / Clear All

Selects or Clears all types selected.

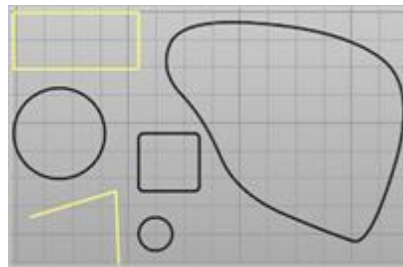


Selection Mask dialog box example

Example shown displays the Selection Mask for Polyline only and the only geometry selected in the viewport are the polylines.



Geometry can be selected either by clicking on Select from Menu bar and selecting All or dragging a window by holding left mouse to select the geometry.



Selection Mask for Polyline results



Related Topics

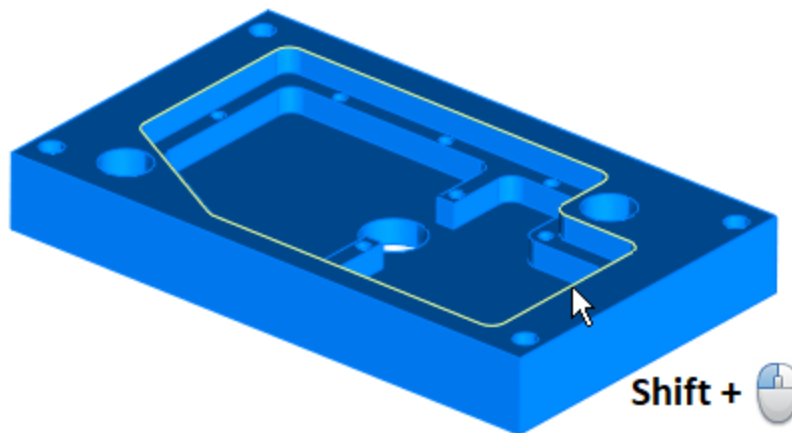
[Select Menu](#)

[Selections Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.2.13 Other Selection Techniques

5.3.2.13.1 Select Chain

Shift +  You can automatically select a chain of curves or edges by pressing the **<Shift>** key while performing a **left-click** selection. This works with any curves or edges that are connected end-to-end. If you want to create a **Curve Chain** entity see [Create a Curve Chain](#). Note that this is not a command and is not located on a menu.



Chain Select (<Shift> + Left-click)



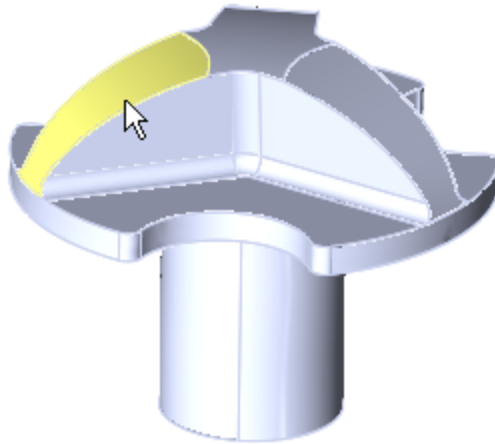
Related Topics

[Select Menu](#)

[Create a Curve Chain](#)

5.3.2.13.2 Highlights

Objects that are available for selection are highlighted when the cursor moves over them. This functionality is not a command and is not located on a menu. This functionality is enabled/disabled from the [System Options](#) dialog.

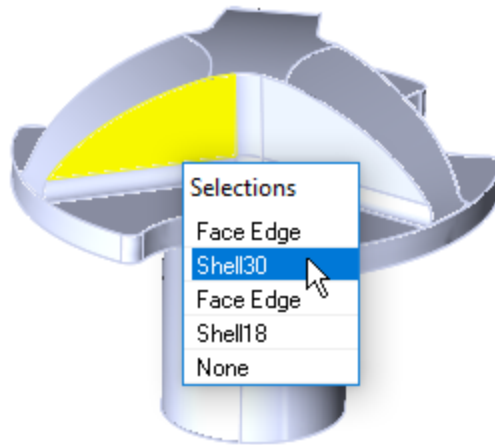


Pre-Selection Highlight

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)[System Options](#)

5.3.2.13.3 Multi-Selections

When you make a selection and there are multiple objects available, the [Multi-Selection Dialog](#) will display listing the available objects. You can select an object from the list. If you select None or pick outside of the list, the dialog will close automatically.

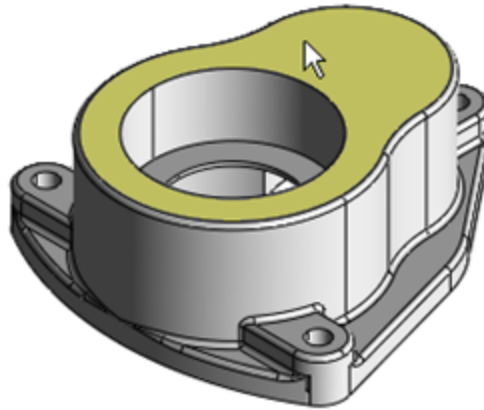


Multi-Selection Dialog

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)

5.3.2.13.4 from Solid

If your part is a solid model (also referred to as a poly-surface), you can highlight and select one or more surfaces. To select one surface just move the cursor over it and then left-click to select it. To select multiple surface, press and hold the <Ctrl> key when selecting.



Select Surface from Solid

**Related Topics**[Select Menu](#)**5.3.3 Commands**

The [Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Commands](#) pane with associated functions.

**Related Topics**[Undo](#)[Undo Multiple](#)[Redo](#)[Redo Multiple](#)[Command Recall](#)[Continuous Command Recall](#)[Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.3.1 Undo



Undoes the previous construction or edit command. Everything goes back to how it was before the last command was executed. Geometry objects that were previously selected (highlighted) will remain selected when **Undo** is used.



Related Topics

[Undo](#)

[Undo Multiple](#)

[Redo](#)

[Redo Multiple](#)

[Commands Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.3.2 Redo



Redoes a previously undone construction or edit command. Everything returns to the state after the command was executed.



Related Topics

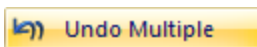
[Undo](#)

[Undo Multiple](#)

[Redo Multiple](#)

[Commands Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.3.3 Undo Multiple



This command will **Undo** multiple commands at the same time. A list of recent commands is displayed. A command is selected, and all commands after that one including it are undone. Everything returns to the state before the selected command was executed.

The commands are listed in reverse order with the most recent at the top. The last command executed is number one, and the second to last command executed is number two. Only one command needs to be picked, and all commands higher (more recent or occurred after that one) will automatically be selected.



Dialog Box: Undo Multiple



Dialog Box: Undo Multiple



Related Topics

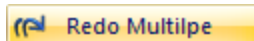
[Undo](#)

[Redo](#)

[Redo Multiple](#)

[Commands Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.3.4 Redo Multiple



Redo Multiple

Redo Multiple commands that were previously undone. A list of undone commands is displayed. A command is selected, and all commands after that one including it are redone. Everything returns to the state after the selected command was executed.

The commands are listed in the order that they were originally executed. The first command executed is number one, and the second command executed is number two. Only one command needs to be picked, and all commands higher will automatically be selected.

Once commands have been undone, they will appear in the multiple redo list until another command is executed. Then the multiple redo list is emptied. **Redo** will have no effect.



Dialog Box: Redo Multiple



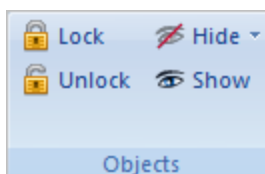
Dialog Box: Redo Multiple

**Related Topics**[Undo](#)[Undo Multiple](#)[Redo](#)[Commands Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)**5.3.3.5 Command Recall**

Redo the previous command.

**Related Topics**[Commands Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)**5.3.3.6 Continuous Command Recall**

Automatically repeats the last command without having to go back & reselect the command from the toolbar or use the right mouse button click or enter option to repeat the previous command.

**Related Topics**[Commands Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)**5.3.4 Objects**

The [Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Objects](#) pane with associated functions.

**Related Topics**

[Lock Selection](#)

[Unlock All](#)

[Hide Selection](#)

[Hide Non-Selected](#)

[Show All](#)

[Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.4.1 Lock Selection



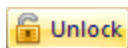
Locks all selected objects. Sets the state of selected objects so they can be seen but cannot be selected for editing.



Related Topics

[Unlock](#)

5.3.4.2 Unlock All



Unlocks all locked objects.



Related Topics

[Lock](#)

5.3.4.3 Hide Selection



Hides or Conceals selected objects from view.

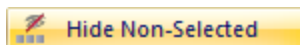


Related Topics

[Show](#)

[Hide Non-Selected](#)

5.3.4.4 Hide Non-Selected



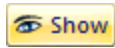
Hides or Conceals non selected objects from view.



Related Topics

[Hide](#)[Show](#)

5.3.4.5 Show All



Displays all hidden objects.

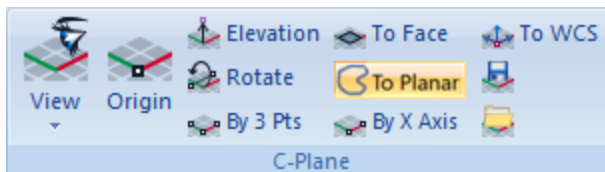


Related Topics

[Hide](#)[Hide Non-Selected](#)

5.3.5 C-Plane

The [Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [C-Plane](#) pane with associated functions.



C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Set C-Plane to View](#)[Set C-Plane to Top View](#)[Set C-Plane to Bottom View](#)[Set C-Plane to Front View](#)[Set C-Plane to Back View](#)[Set C-Plane to Left View](#)[Set C-Plane to Right View](#)[Set C-Plane Origin](#)[Set C-Plane Elevation](#)[Rotate the C-Plane](#)[Set C-Plane by 3 Points](#)[Set C-Plane to 3D Face](#)[Set C-Plane to Planar Curve](#)[Set C-Plane by X Axis](#)

[Set C-Plane to WCS](#)

[Save C-Plane](#)

[Load a C-Plane](#)

[Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.1 Set to View



This option immediately sets the orientation of the [C-Plane](#) to be parallel to the plane of the currently active view. The origin remains the same.



Command Prompts

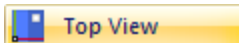
C-Plane by View:: Done



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.2 Set to Top View



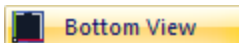
Move the construction plane to the origin and in the z-plane.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.3 Set to Bottom View



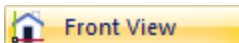
Move the construction plane to the origin and in the z-plane.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.4 Set to Front View



Move the construction plane to the origin and in the y-plane.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.5 Set to Back View



Move the construction plane to the origin and in the y-plane.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.6 Set to Left View



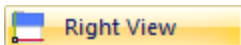
Move the construction plane to the origin and in the x-plane.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.7 Set to Right View



Move the construction plane to the origin and in the x-plane.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.8 Set Origin



Moves the origin of the [C-Plane](#) to a selected point or entered coordinates. The current configuration of the construction plane is saved whenever the model is saved into the [VCP \(VisualCAD Part\)](#) file.



Command Prompts

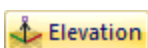
C-Plane Origin:: Pick origin point or enter coordinates x, y and z



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.9 Set Elevation



Moves the elevation of the [C-Plane](#) along its normal (perpendicular to the plane).

Input is a single distance and may be positive or negative. A positive number moves the plane towards the positive end of the coordinate axes even if the viewing location is along the negative axis. All input values are treated as an incremental distance relative to the current location of the plane.



Command Prompts

C-Plane Elevation:: Enter C-Plane elevation



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.10 Rotate



Rotates the **C-Plane** about one of the principle axes of the current **C-Plane**, X, Y, or Z. The center of rotation is the center of the plane and not necessarily the origin. Input is 'axis,degrees'.



Command Prompts

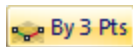
Rotate C-Plane:: Enter axis to rotate about and angle to rotate by (eg: X,45)



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.11 Set by 3 Pts



Three points are selected (origin, x-axis and y-axis) or entered to re-orient the **C-Plane**. The y-axis point defines the **C-Plane** and the general direction of the positive y-axis.



Command Prompts

C-Plane by 3Pts:: Pick origin point or enter coordinates x, y and z

C-Plane by 3Pts:: Pick x axis point or enter coordinates x,y and z

C-Plane by 3Pts:: Pick y axis point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Notes

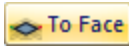
1. The true y-axis will lie in the plane and be perpendicular to the x-axis and will pass through the origin point.
2. The third point cannot be collinear with the other two points.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.12 C-Plane to 3D Face



The **C-Plane** will be oriented to a selected flat plane of a geometry object. The pick point will become the **C-Plane** origin.



Command Prompts

C-Plane to 3D Face:: Pick flat area:



Basic Procedure

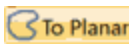
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select the 3D face to align the C-Plane to.	None



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.13 C-Plane to Planar Curve



The **C-Plane** will be oriented to a selected planar curve. The pick point will become the **C-Plane** origin.



Command Prompts

C-Plane to Planar Curve:: Pick a planar curve



Basic Procedure

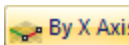
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select the 3D planar curve to align the C-Plane to.	None



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.14 Set by X Axis



Two points are entered to re-orient the x-axis of the **C-Plane**:



Command Prompts

C-Plane by X-Axis:: Pick origin point or enter coordinates x, y and z

C-Plane by X-Axis:: Pick x axis point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

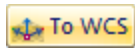
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the new origin point or enter the x,y,z coordinates.	Command 1,1,0.75
Final	Pick a point on the new x-axis. The new C-Plane is parallel to the prior orientation.	



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.5.15 Set to WCS



Resets the C-Plane back to its default orientation relative to the WCS and the currently active viewport. The origin will be the WCS origin.



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

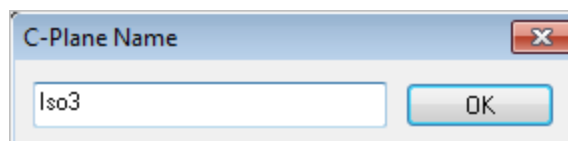
5.3.5.16 Save ...



This option saves the C-Plane orientation from the currently active view. A name must be provided for later reference when loading.



C-Plane Name dialog box



Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

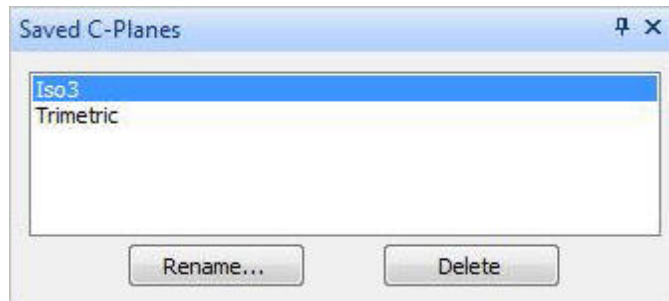
5.3.5.17 Load ...



This option allows the retrieval of a saved **C-Plane** into the currently active view. A list of previously saved **C-Planes** is presented. These saved **C-Planes** may also be deleted in this option or renamed.



Saved C-Planes dialog box

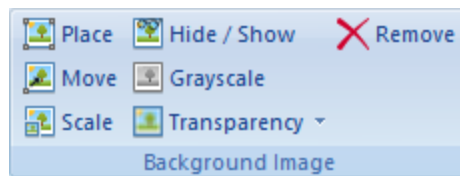


Related Topics

[C-Plane Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar](#)

5.3.6 Background Image

The **Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar** contains the following **Background Image** pane with associated functions.



Background Image Pane, Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Place Background Image](#)

[Move Background Image](#)

[Scale Background Image](#)

[Toggle Display of Background Image](#)

[Gray Scale Background Image](#)

[Background Image Transparency](#)

5.3.6.1 Place Image



Use this command to place an image onto the background of the **C-Plane**.

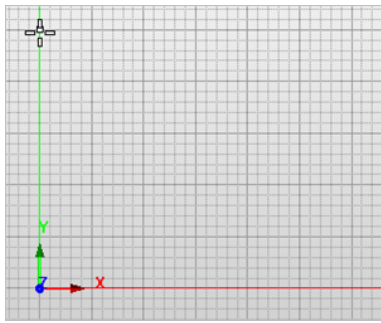
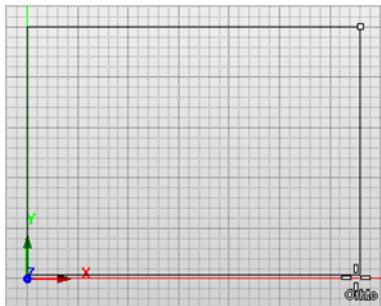


Command Prompts

1. Select an image using the file browser.
2. Pick first point of enter x,y and z
3. Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	none	Select image file.
Step 2	 Pick First Point	Pick first point of enter x,y and z.
Step 3	 Pick Second Point	Pick first point of enter x,y and z.



Related Topics

[Background Image](#)

[Move Background Image](#)

[Scale Background Image](#)

[Toggle Background Image On/Off](#)

[Gray Scale Background Image](#)

[Background Image Transparency](#)

[Delete Background Image](#)

5.3.6.2 Move Image



Move

Use this command to Move the existing background image from one point to another on the **C-Plane**.



Command Prompts

1. Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z
2. Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick a point to move from. You can use the Object Snaps available from the Status Toolbar.  Pick First Point	Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 2	Pick a point to move to. You can use the Object Snaps available from the Status Toolbar.  Pick Second Point	Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Related Topics

[Background Image](#)

[Place Background Image](#)

[Scale Background Image](#)

[Toggle Background Image On/Off](#)

[Gray Scale Background Image](#)

[Background Image Transparency](#)

[Delete Background Image](#)

5.3.6.3 Scale Image



Use this command to Scale the existing background image on the [C-Plane](#).



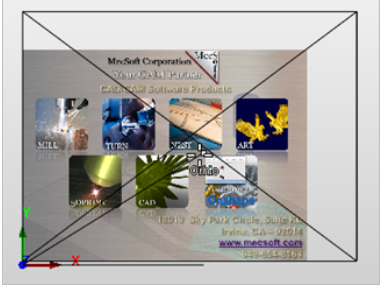
Command Prompts

1. Enter scale center point
2. Enter first reference point or scale factor
3. Enter second reference point



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick a point to serve as the scaling center point. You can use the Object Snaps available from the Status Toolbar.  Enter scale center point	Enter scale center point
Step 2	Pick a reference point or enter a scale factor. You can use the Object Snaps available from the Status Toolbar.  Enter first reference point or scale factor	Enter first reference point or scale factor

Step 3	Pick a second reference point. You can use the Object Snaps available from the Status Toolbar.  Enter second reference point	Enter second reference point
---------------	---	------------------------------



Related Topics

- [Background Image](#)
- [Place Background Image](#)
- [Move Background Image](#)
- [Toggle Background Image On/Off](#)
- [Gray Scale Background Image](#)
- [Background Image Transparency](#)
- [Delete Background Image](#)

5.3.6.4 Toggle Image On/Off



Use this command to toggle the display of the background image on and off.



Command Prompts

- 1. None



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the command icon to toggle the display of the background image off.	None

	 Background Image On	
Step 2	Pick the command icon to toggle the display of the background image on.  Background Image Off	None



Related Topics

[Background Image](#)

[Place Background Image](#)

[Move Background Image](#)

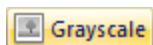
[Scale Background Image](#)

[Gray Scale Background Image](#)

[Background Image Transparency](#)

[Delete Background Image](#)

5.3.6.5 Gray Scale Image



Grayscale

Use this command to toggle the display of the background image to and from gray scale.

Command Prompts

1. None

Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the command icon to toggle the display of the background to gray scale (On)  Gray Scale On	None
Step 2	Pick the command icon to toggle the display of the background from gray scale (Off)  Gray Scale Off	None

Related Topics

[Background Image](#)

[Place Background Image](#)

[Move Background Image](#)

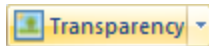
[Scale Background Image](#)

[Toggle Background Image On/Off](#)

[Background Image Transparency](#)

[Delete Background Image](#)

5.3.6.6 Image Transparency



Use this command to adjust the transparency of the background image.

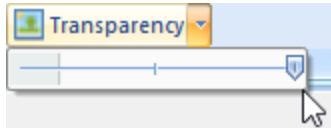


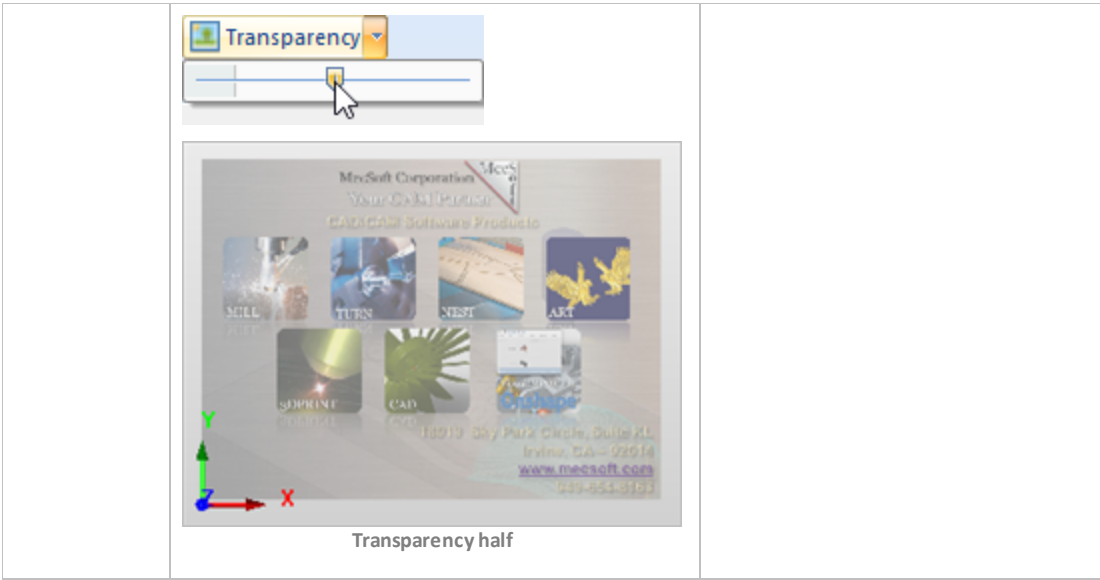
Command Prompts

1. None



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the dropdown menu indicator to the right of the command icon to display the transparency slider. Move the slider to the right for no transparency   Transparency Slider full right	None
Step 2	Move the slider to the middle for half transparency.	None



-  **Related Topics**
- [Background Image](#)
- [Place Background Image](#)
- [Move Background Image](#)
- [Scale Background Image](#)
- [Toggle Background Image On/Off](#)
- [Gray Scale Background Image](#)
- [Delete Background Image](#)

5.3.6.7 Delete Image

 **Remove**

 Use this command to delete the currently active background image.

-  **Command Prompts**
1. None

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the command icon to delete the background image.	None

-  **Related Topics**

[Background Image](#)

[Place Background Image](#)

[Move Background Image](#)

[Scale Background Image](#)

[Toggle Background Image On/Off](#)

[Gray Scale Background Image](#)

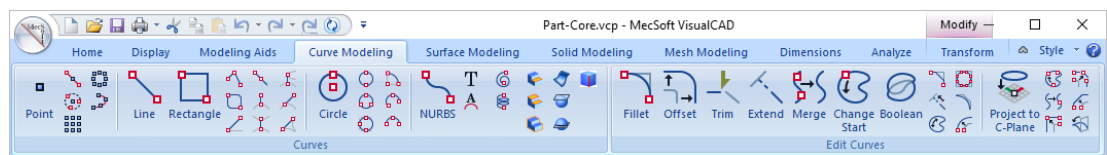
[Background Image Transparency](#)

5.4 Curve Modeling

The [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains [Curves](#) and [Edit Curves](#) panes and associated functions.



The Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar



Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

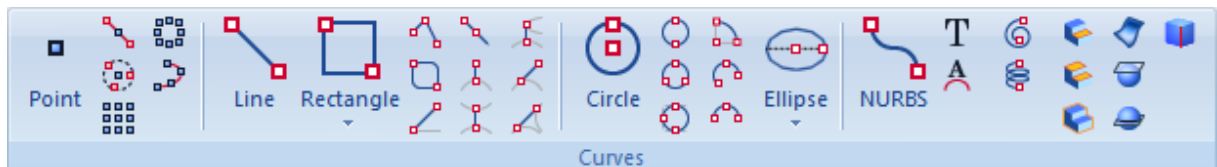
[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.4.1 Curves

The [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Curves](#) pane with associated functions.



Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar
Curves Pane



Related Topics

[Point](#)

[Mid Point](#)

[Center Point](#)

[Point Grid](#)

[Polar Grid of Points](#)

[Points along a Curve](#)

[Line](#)

[Rectangle, 2 Points](#)

[Rectangle, Center](#)

[Rectangle, 3 Points](#)

[Rectangle, Vertical](#)

[Rectangle](#)

[Polyline](#)

[Rounded Rectangle](#)

[Line at an Angle](#)

[Mid-Point Line](#)

[Line Normal to a Curve](#)

[Line Normal to 2 Curves](#)

[Line Normal & Tangent](#)

[Line Tangent to a Curve](#)

[Line Tangent to 2 Curves](#)

[Circle at Center and a Point](#)

[Circle by 2 Dia. Points](#)

[Circle with 3 Dia Points](#)

[Circle Tangent to 3 Curves](#)

[Arc with Center, Start and Angle](#)

[3-Point Arc](#)

[Arc with Center, Start and On Point](#)

[Ellipse, Diameter](#)

[Ellipse, Foci](#)

[Nurbs Curve](#)

[Text Curves](#)

[Text on a Curve](#)

[Spiral Curve](#)

[Helix Curve](#)

[Curves from Flat Area](#)

[Boundary Curves from all Flat Areas](#)

[Extract all Silhouette Curves](#)

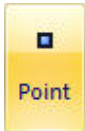
[Curve from a Surface Boundary](#)

[Bounding Rectangle](#)

[Section Curves](#)

[Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.1 Point



Create a [point](#) by picking on the screen or by entering X, Y, Z coordinates.

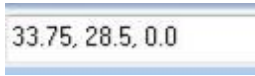
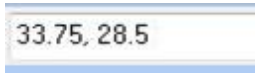


Command Prompts

Point:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Create a point by picking a location on the screen. 	(Optional) Enter the X, Y, Z coordinates of the point.  Also: Other valid entries are...  X, Y coordinates only. Z is 0.000 Note: X, Y, Z coordinates are relative to the Construction Plane in the Active View.



 **Related Topics**
[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

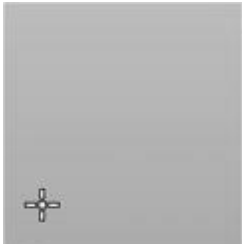
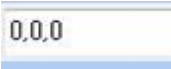
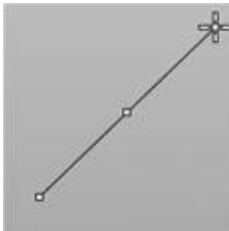
5.4.1.2 Point, Mid

 Create a **point** mid-way between two screen picks or by entering X, Y, Z coordinates for either point.

 Command Prompts

Mid:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Mid:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point. 



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.3 Point, Center



Create a **point** at the center of a circle made from three construction points.



Command Prompts

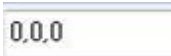
Center :: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

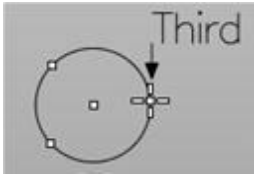
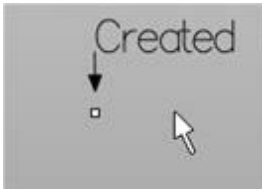
Center :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

Center :: Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick three points to define a circle. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for any of the three points. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for any of the three points. 

Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for any of the three points. 
Final		

**Notes**

1. All construction points and circle are on the [Construction Plane](#) and are not kept.

**Related Topics**

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.4 Point, Grid

Create [points](#) in a rectangular grid array.

**Command Prompts**

Grid :: Enter number of points(circles) in the first and normal direction:: X=4, Y=4, [D=0.000000]

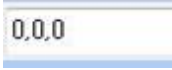
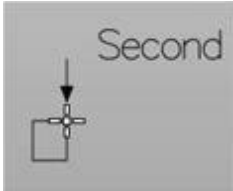
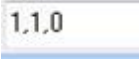
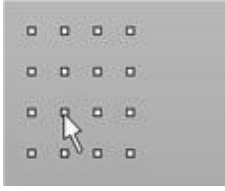
Grid :: Enter angle of first row about X axis:: [A=0.000000]

Grid :: Pick first corner point of spacing

Grid :: Pick second corner point of spacing or enter spacing values

**Basic Procedure**

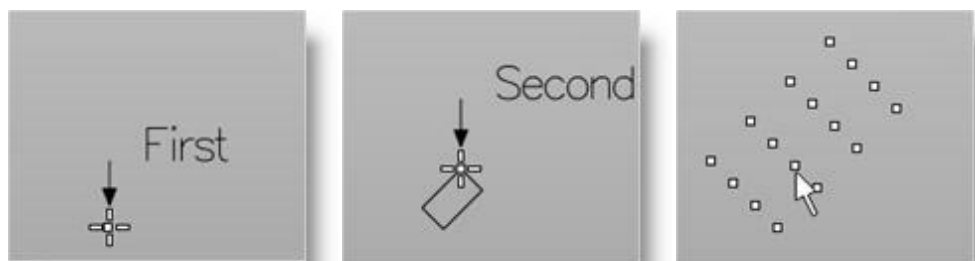
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the number of columns (along X) and rows (along Y). The default values are shown in the Prompt. 

Step 2		Enter the angle that the array makes with the X axis. The Default value is shown in the Prompt. 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 4		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point. 
Final		

Notes

1. The incremental distance between the two points (in X and Y) determines the incremental distance between columns and rows respectively.
2. Since the construction plane changes between the different views, the directions “First” and “Normal” will also change.

Example with a 45-degree rotation



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.5 Point, Polar Grid



Create **points** in a circular grid array.



Command Prompts

Polar Grid :: Enter number of points along circumference:: N=4, [D=0.000000]

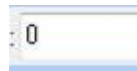
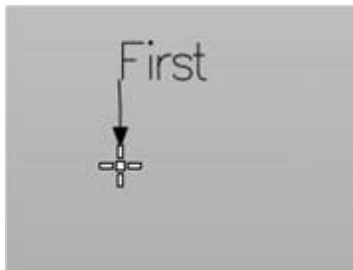
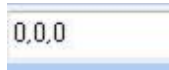
Polar Grid :: Enter angle of first row about X axis:: [A=0.000000]

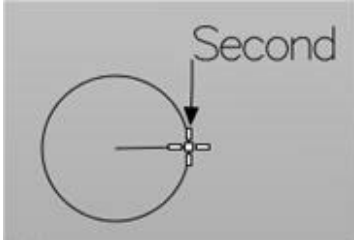
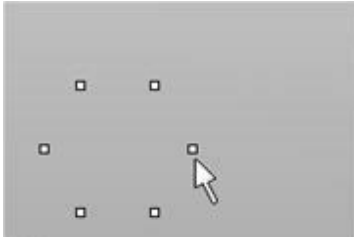
Polar Grid :: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Polar Grid :: Enter radius or pick radius point:: [R=4.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the number of points in the circular array. The default value is shown in the Prompt. 
Step 2		Enter the angle that a radial line through the first circumference point makes with the X axis. The Default value is shown in the Prompt. 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 

Step 4		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (determines the radius). 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius value directly. 9.50
Final		



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.6 Point, On Curve



Create **points** equidistant along a curve.



Command Prompts

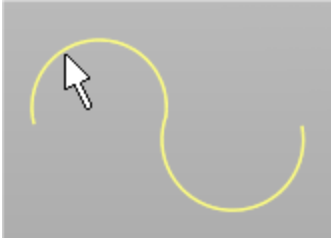
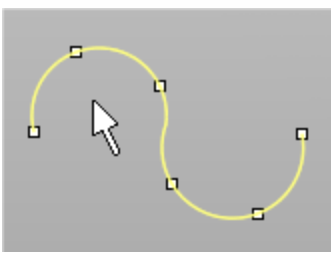
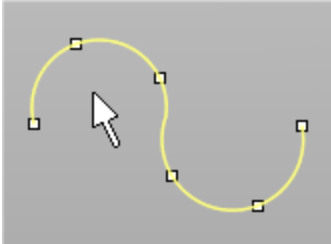
On Curve:: Pick the curve(s) to draw the points on. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

On Curve :: Enter number of points along the curve(s):: N=4



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

Step 1		
Step 2		Enter the number of points to be created. The default value is shown in the Prompt. 
Final		

**Notes**

1. If multiple curves are selected, a full set of points will be created on each curve.
2. The curves can be 3D spatial curves.

**Related Topics**

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.7 Line

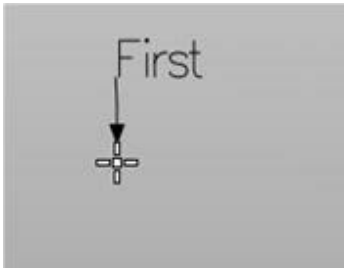
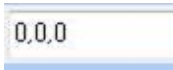
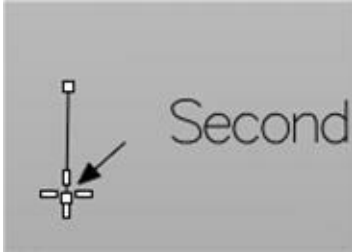
Create a **line** between two points by picking on the screen or by entering X, Y, Z coordinates.

**Command Prompts**

Line :: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Line :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

**Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point. 

**Notes**

1. Coordinate entry can be in absolute or relative coordinates. An example of absolute coordinate is shown above.
2. Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates:
 - a. Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
 - b. Pick second point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R5,0
3. For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @5,0. This creates a horizontal line that is 5 units in length from 2,0 to 7,0 in X Y coordinates.
4. To create a vertical line, the coordinate entry for second point can be entered as @0,5. This creates a vertical line that is 5 units in length from 2,0 to 2,5 in X Y coordinates.
5. To create a line at an angle the coordinate entry for the second point can be entered as @5<45. This creates a line at 45 degrees which is 5 units in length.

**Related Topics**

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.8 Rectangle, 2 Points

Create a **rectangle** between two points by picking on the screen or by entering X, Y, Z coordinates.



Command Prompts

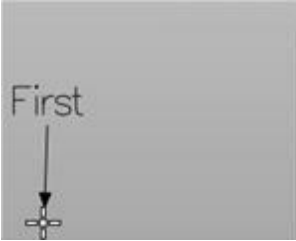
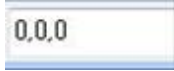
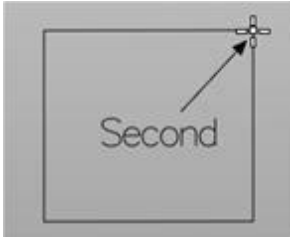
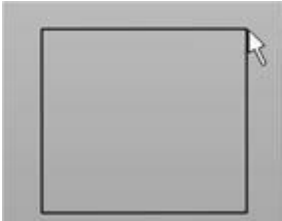
Rectangle:: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Rectangle:: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Rectangle:: Done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). 
Final		



Notes

1. The rectangle is aligned with the axes of the [Construction Plane](#).
2. The final rectangle will lie in a plane parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) and with one corner at the first point selected.
3. If the second point selected is not in that same plane, it will be projected onto the destination plane of the final rectangle.
4. Coordinate entry can be in absolute coordinates or in relative coordinates. An example of absolute coordinate is shown above.
5. Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates:

- a. Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
 - b. Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R6,4
6. For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @6,4. This creates a rectangle line that is 6 units in length and 4 units in width from 2,0 to 8,4 in X Y coordinates.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.9 Rectangle, Center



Rectangle by Center

Create a [rectangle](#) about a center point. Picking points or entering coordinates.



Command Prompts

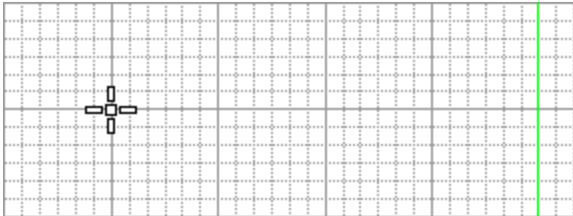
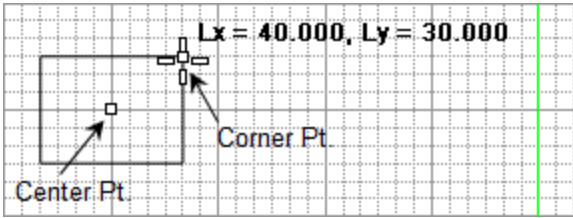
Rectangle:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

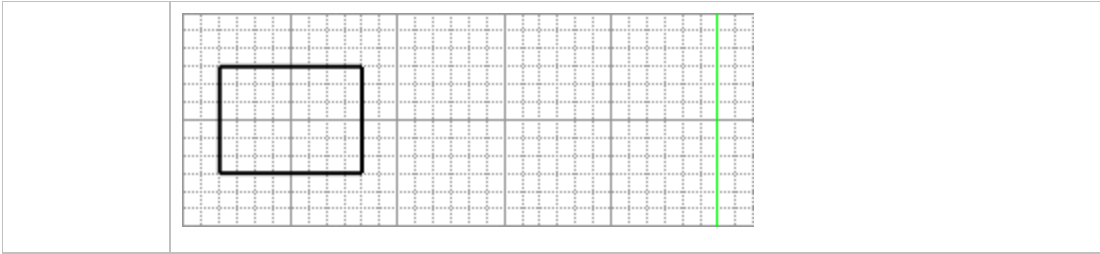
Rectangle:: Pick other corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Rectangle:: Done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick
Step 1	Rectangle:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z 
Step 2	Rectangle:: Pick other corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z 
Final	Rectangle:: Done



 Notes

- 1. The rectangle is aligned with the axes of the [Construction Plane](#).
- 2. The final rectangle will lie in a plane parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) and with one corner at the first point selected.
- 3. If the second point selected is not in that same plane, it will be projected onto the destination plane of the final rectangle.
- 4. Coordinate entry can be in absolute coordinates or in relative coordinates.
- 5. Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates:
 - a. Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
 - b. Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R6,4
- 6. Coordinate input can also be entered as @6,4.
This is 6 units in length and 4 units in width from 2,0 to 8,4 in X Y coordinates.

 Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.10 Rectangle, 2 Points 2



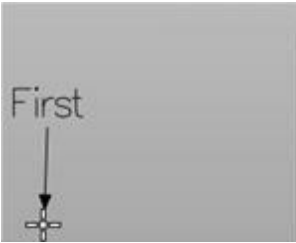
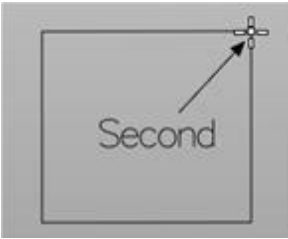
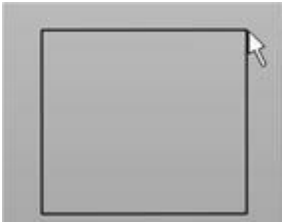
Create a [rectangle](#) between two points by picking on the screen or by entering X, Y, Z coordinates.

 Command Prompts

Rectangle:: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Rectangle:: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Rectangle:: Done

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). 
Final		



Notes

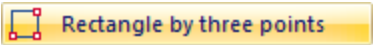
1. The rectangle is aligned with the axes of the [Construction Plane](#).
2. The final rectangle will lie in a plane parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) and with one corner at the first point selected.
3. If the second point selected is not in that same plane, it will be projected onto the destination plane of the final rectangle.
4. Coordinate entry can be in absolute coordinates or in relative coordinates. An example of absolute coordinate is shown above.
5. Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates:
 - a. Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
 - b. Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R6,4
6. For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @6,4. This creates a rectangle line that is 6 units in length and 4 units in width from 2,0 to 8,4 in X Y coordinates.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.11 Rectangle, 3 Points



Create a **rectangle** between two base points and a height point.
Picking points or entering coordinates.

Command Prompts

- Rectangle:: Pick edge start point or enter coordinates x,y and z
- Rectangle:: Pick edge end point or enter coordinates x,y and z
- Rectangle:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z or enter width
- Rectangle:: Done

Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick
Step 1	Rectangle:: Pick edge start point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 2	Rectangle:: Pick edge end point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 3	Rectangle:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z or enter width
Final	Rectangle:: Done

Notes

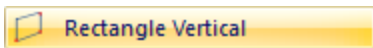
1. The rectangle is aligned with the axes of the [Construction Plane](#).
2. The final rectangle will lie in a plane parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) and with one corner at the first point selected.
3. If the second point selected is not in that same plane, it will be projected onto the destination plane of the final rectangle.
4. Coordinate entry can be in absolute coordinates or in relative coordinates. An example of absolute coordinate is shown above.
5. Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates:
 - a. Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
 - b. Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R6,4
6. For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @6,4. This creates a rectangle line that is 6 units in length and 4 units in width from 2,0 to 8,4 in X Y coordinates.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.12 Rectangle, Vertical



Create a [rectangle](#) between two base points and a height point. You can pick points or enter coordinates (See notes below).



Command Prompts

Rectangle:: Pick edge start point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Rectangle:: Pick edge end point or enter coordinates x,y and z

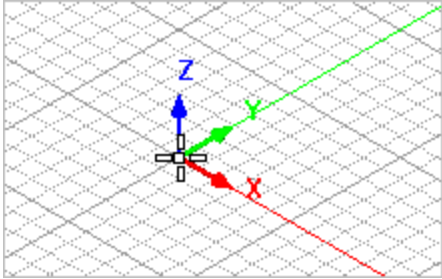
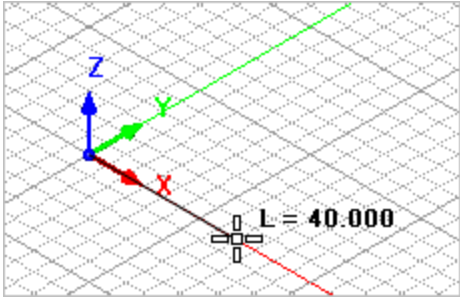
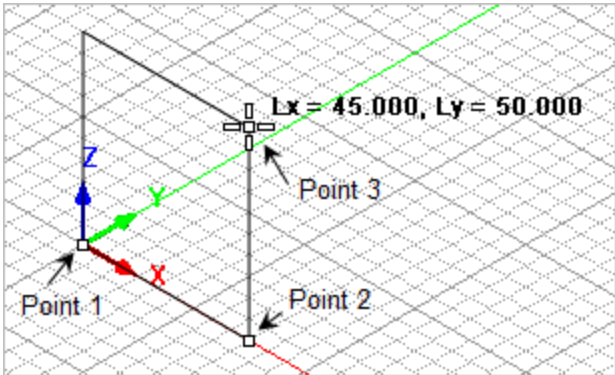
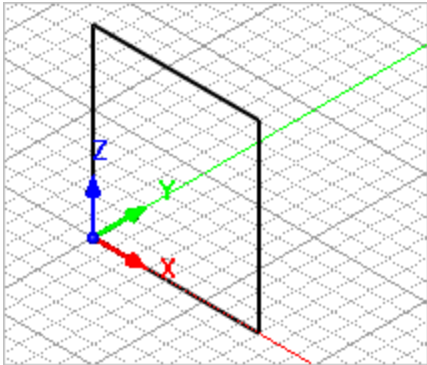
Rectangle:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z or enter width

Rectangle:: Done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick
Step 1	Rectangle:: Pick edge start point or enter coordinates x,y and z

	
Step 2	Rectangle:: Pick edge end point or enter coordinates x,y and z 
Step 3	Rectangle:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z or enter width 
Final	Rectangle:: Done 

Notes

1. The rectangle is aligned with the axes of the [Construction Plane](#).
2. The final rectangle will lie in a plane parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) and with one corner at the first point selected.
3. If the second point selected is not in that same plane, it will be projected onto the destination plane of the final rectangle.
4. Coordinate entry can be in absolute coordinates or in relative coordinates. An example of absolute coordinate is shown above.
5. Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates:
 - a. Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
 - b. Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R6,4
6. For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @6,4. This creates a rectangle line that is 6 units in length and 4 units in width from 2,0 to 8,4 in X Y coordinates.

Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.13 Polyline

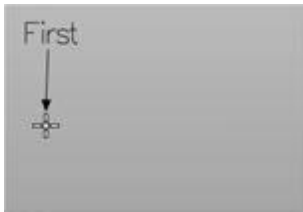
 Create a [polyline](#) between consecutive points by picking on the screen or by entering X, Y, Z coordinates. Polylines are continuous line segments connected end-to-end.

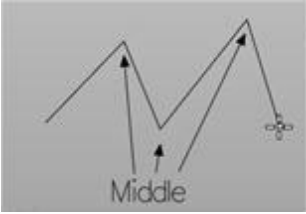
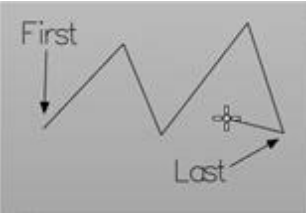
Command Prompts

Polyline :: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z

The Prompt (and point selection) is repeated until the right mouse button is clicked.

Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 

Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for any of the intermediate points.
Step 3	 After the last point is selected, click the right mouse button to end the selection.	
Final		

Notes

1. Coordinate entry can be in absolute coordinates or in relative coordinates. An example of absolute coordinate is shown above.
2. Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates:
 - a. Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
 - b. Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R5,0
3. For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @5,0. This creates a horizontal line that is 5 units in length from 2,0 to 7,0 in X Y coordinates.
4. To create a vertical line, the coordinate entry for next point can be entered as @0,5. This creates a vertical line that is 5 units in length from 2,0 to 2,5 in X Y coordinates.
5. To create a line at an angle the coordinate entry for the next point can be entered as @5<45. This creates a line at 45 degrees which is 5 units in length.

Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.14 Rounded Rectangle



Create a rounded **rectangle** between two points by picking on the screen or by entering X, Y, Z coordinates.



Command Prompts

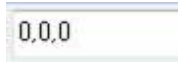
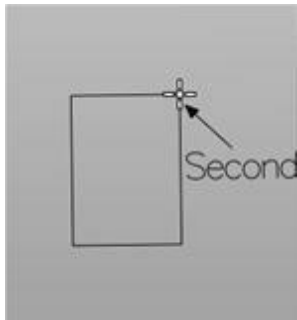
Rounded Rect. :: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

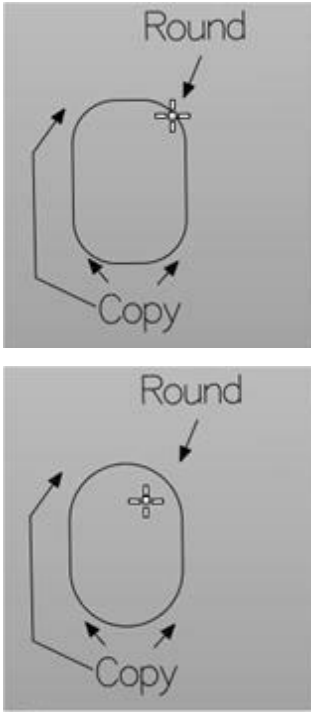
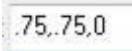
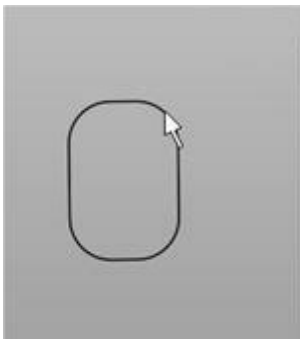
Rounded Rect. :: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Rounded Rect. :: Enter radius or point for rounded corner to pass through: [R=0.250000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). 

Step 3		Enter the radius of the rounded corners.  or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates that the arc of the rounded corner should pass through.  If the point specified is too far inside the rectangle, the maximum radius will be maintained.
Final		



Notes

1. The rules for alignment and positioning are the same as for [Rectangle](#).
2. All four rounded corners will have the same radius.
3. A radius value of 0.00 will produce a standard rectangle with sharp corners.
4. If the entered radius equals or exceeds half the width of the rectangle, then a full-radius rectangle will result.

Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates.

1. Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
2. Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R6,4
For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @6,4

This creates a rounded rectangle line that is 6 units in length and 4 units in width from 2,0 to 8,4 in X Y coordinates.

3. Enter radius: 0.25



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.15 Line at Angle



Create a **line** at an angle to a base line, and either through a point or you can input an angle and a line length.



Command Prompts

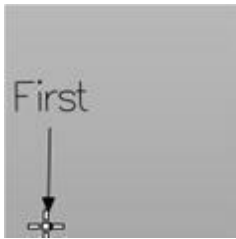
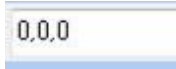
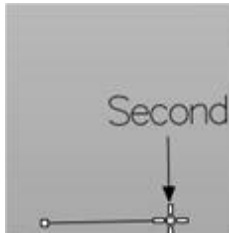
Line at Angle :: Select first point of Base Line

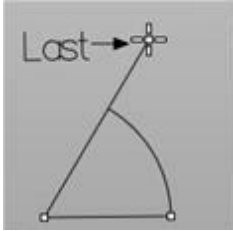
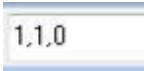
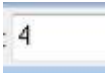
Line at Angle :: Select second point of Base Line

Line at Angle :: Enter point on line or specify an angle::[A=0.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point. 

Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point.  or... (Optional) Enter the angle of the line from this base line.  and... (optional) Enter the length of the line to be created. 
Final		



Notes

1. The first point selected is the pivot point about which the angle is measured.
2. If the second point is defined by picking on the screen or by entering coordinates, then the distance between those two points becomes the length of the created line, unless the length is entered through Input.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.16 Line, from Mid-Point



Create a **line** by specifying its mid-point and an end-point.



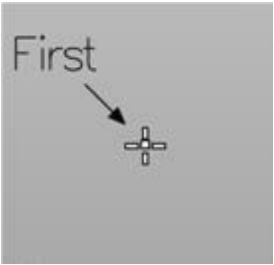
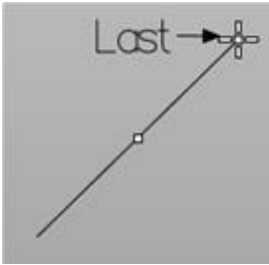
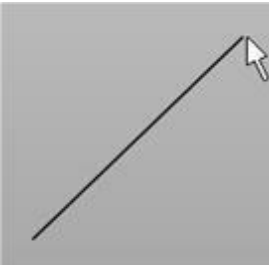
Command Prompts

From Mid-Point :: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

From Mid-Point :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (mid-point). 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (end point). 
Final		



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.17 Line, Normal to



Create a **line** that is normal (perpendicular) to a curve. Line segments, polylines, and rectangles can also be selected.



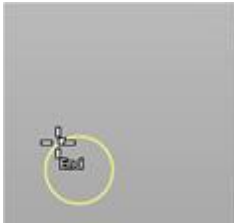
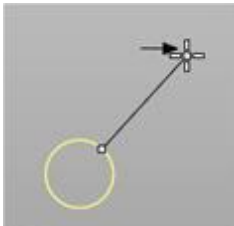
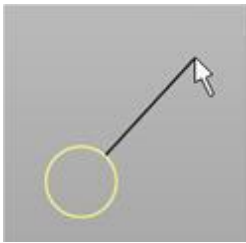
Command Prompts

Tangent to:: Pick the curve to draw the tangent to

Tangent to:: Pick end point of Tangent line. You can use "S" key to change tangent line (BLACK line will be created)



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the far end point. 
Final		



Notes

1. If the normal line cannot be calculated, no line will appear on the screen.
2. In the case of multiple solutions, the nearest normal point will be used.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.18 Line, Normal to 2



Create a **line** that is normal (perpendicular) to two curves. Line segments, polylines, and rectangles can also be selected.



Command Prompts

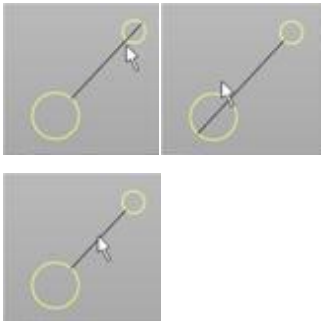
Create Line Normal to 2 :: Pick first curve to draw the normal to

Create Line Normal to 2 :: Pick second curve to draw the normal to

Create Line Normal to 2 :: Pick the candidate solution



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2		
Step 3	 In step 3 above where there are multiple solutions, move the cursor along the line and left click when the desired solution appears.	



Notes

1. If the normal line cannot be calculated, no line will appear on the screen.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.19 Line, Normal & Tangent

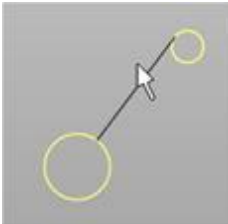
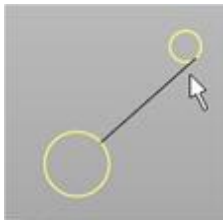
 Create a **line** that is normal (perpendicular) to the first curve and tangent to the second curve. Line segments, polylines, and rectangles can also be selected.

 Command Prompts

Normal & Tangent: Pick the curve to draw the normal to

Normal & Tangent: Pick curve to draw the tangent to

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2		
Step 3		
Final		

 Notes

- 1. If the line cannot be calculated, a line will not appear on the screen.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.20 Line, Tangent to



Create a **line** that is tangent to a curve. Line segments, polylines, and rectangles can also be selected.

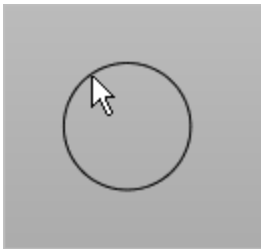
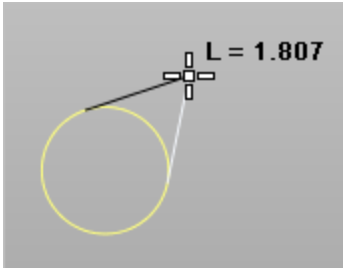
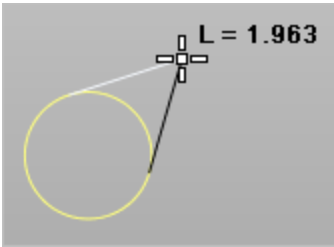


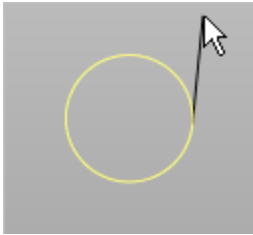
Command Prompts

Tangent to:: Pick the curve to draw the tangent to
Tangent to:: Pick end point of Tangent line. You can use "S" key to change tangent line (BLACK line will be created)



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the non-tangent end point. 1,1,0 (Optional) Pick the S key to switch the tangent direction of the line: 

Final		
-------	---	--

 **Related Topics**
[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

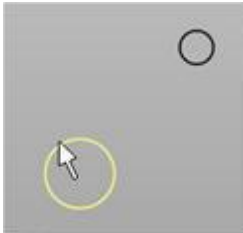
5.4.1.21 Line, Tangent to 2

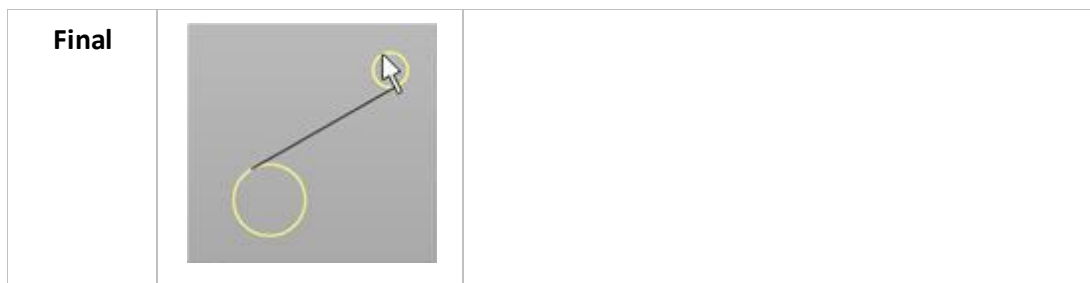
 Create a **line** that is tangent to a two curves. Line segments, polylines, and rectangles can also be selected.

 **Command Prompts**

Tangent to 2:: Pick first curve to draw the tangent to
Tangent to 2:: Pick second curve to draw the tangent to

 **Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2		



Notes

1. If multiple curves are pre-selected at the time that this function is used, only one of the pre-selected curves is retained as the first, picked curve.
2. If no solution is possible, then no line will appear on the screen.
3. Moving the cursor around will reveal the other solutions of tangency.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.22 Circle, Center, On Pt



Create a [circle](#) by picking a center point and a point on the circle.



Command Prompts

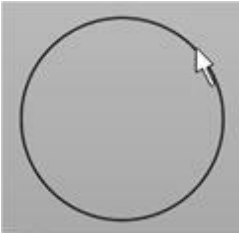
Center, On Pt :: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Center, On Pt :: Enter point on circle::[D=0.707107]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the center point. 0,0,0

Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the point (diameter) on the circle. 1,1,0
Final		

 Notes

1. The circle will be created in a plane that passes through the specified center point and that is parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) of the currently selected view.
2. If the circumference point is not on the plane of the circle, it will be projected normal onto that plane.

 Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.23 Circle, Start, Diameter Pt

 Create a [circle](#) by picking two opposite points on the circumference that determine the diameter of the circle.

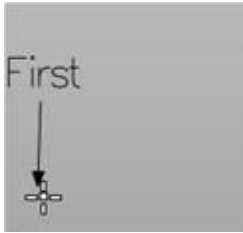
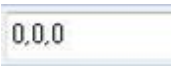
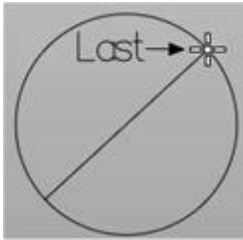
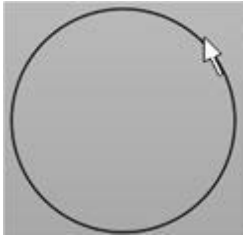
 Command Prompts

Start, Diameter Pt :: Pick diameter start point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Start, Diameter Pt :: Pick diameter end point or enter coordinates x,y and z

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point. 
Final		

**Notes**

1. The circle will be created in a plane that passes through the first circumference point and that is parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) of the currently selected view.
2. If the second circumference point is not on the plane of the circle, it will be projected normal onto that plane.

**Related Topics**

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.24 Circle, 3 Pts

Create a [circle](#) by picking three points on the circumference of the circle.

**Command Prompts**

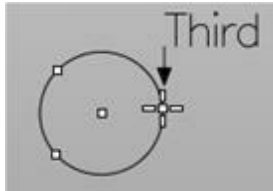
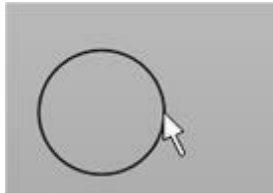
3 Pts :: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

3 Pts :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

3 Pts :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point. 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point. 
Final		



Notes

1. The circle will be created in a plane that passes through all three points. These points may not be collinear.
2. The start of the circle will be at the first circumference point specified.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.25 Circle, Tangent to 3



Create a **circle** that will be mutually tangent to three curves or locations. The geometry selected may be points, lines, or curves.



Command Prompts

Tangent to 3 :: Pick the first point, line or circle entity

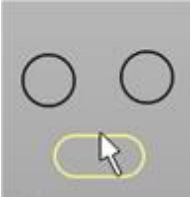
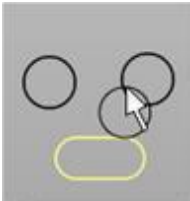
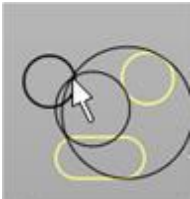
Tangent to 3 :: Pick the second point, line or arc entity or hit enter for mouse point

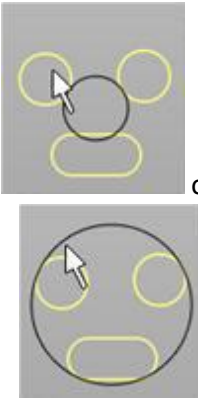
Tangent to 3 :: Pick the third point, line or arc entity or hit enter for mouse point

Tangent to 3 :: Pick the candidate solution



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2		
Step 3		

Step 4	 or	
--------	---	--

 Notes

1. If line segments are used, they are extended to lines for the purpose of computing the tangency.

 Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.26 Arc, Center, Start, Angle Pts

 Create an **arc** by giving a center point, a starting point which determines the radius, and an end point, which determines the angle of the arc.

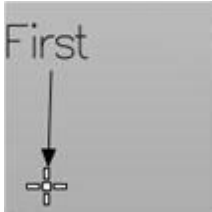
 Command Prompts

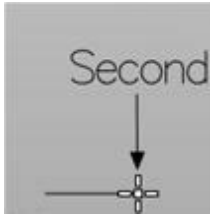
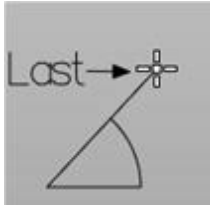
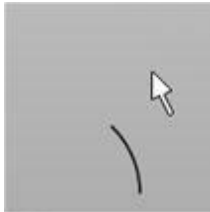
Center,Start,Angle Pts :: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Center,Start,Angle Pts :: Pick arc start point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Center,Start,Angle Pts :: Pick arc end point or enter coordinates x,y and z::[A=45.000000]

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (center of circle). 0,0,0

Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (determines radius and arc start). 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point (determines angle and arc end). 
Final		

**Related Topics**[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)**5.4.1.27 Arc, 3 Pts**

Create an [arc](#) by selecting three points on the circumference: a start point, an intermediate point, and an end point (in that order of selection).

**Command Prompts**

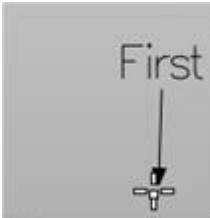
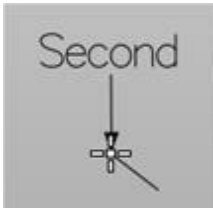
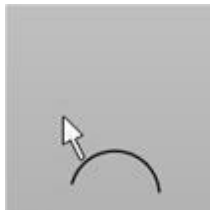
```
3 Pts :: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z
```

```
3 Pts :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z
```

```
3 Pts :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z
```

**Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (start of arc). 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (intermediate point on arc). 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point (end of arc). 
Final		



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.28 Arc, Start, End, On



Create an **arc** by selecting three points on the circumference: a start point, an end point, and then an intermediate point (in that order of selection).



Command Prompts

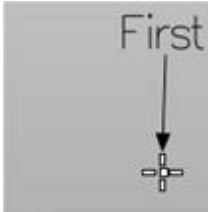
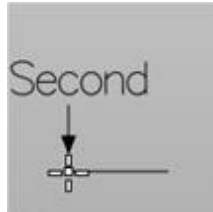
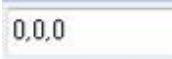
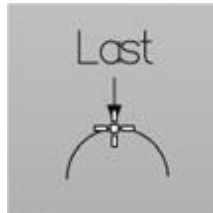
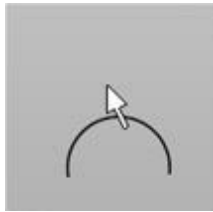
Start, End, On :: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Start, End, On :: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

Start, End, On :: Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

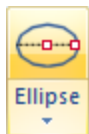
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (start of arc). 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (end of arc). 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point (intermediate point on arc). 
Final		



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.29 Ellipse, Center, Diameter, End Pt.



Create an **Ellipse** by selecting three points. The first two points define the major axis while the third point defines the minor axis.



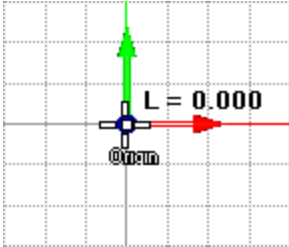
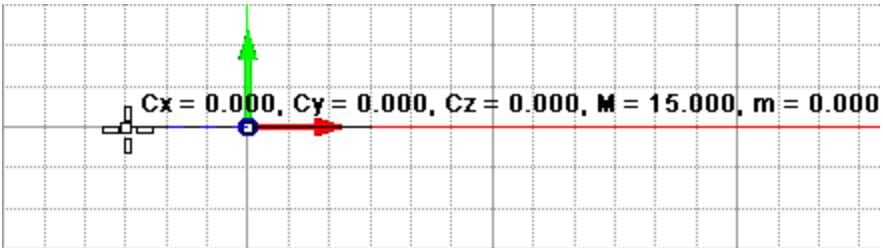
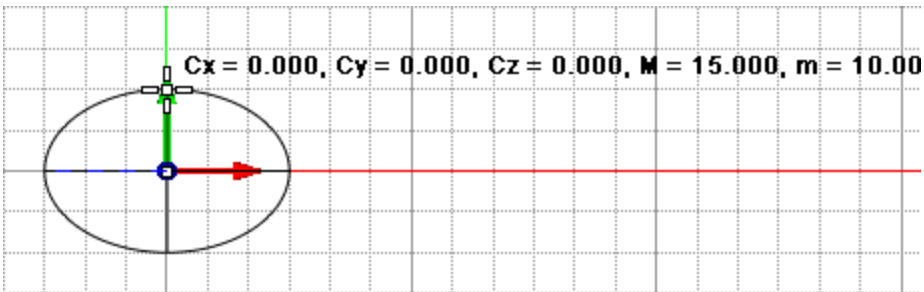
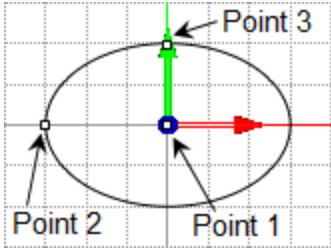
Command Prompts

Ellipse:: Pick major axis start point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Ellipse:: Pick major axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Ellipse:: Pick minor axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z or Enter width value

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick / Command Input
Step 1	 Ellipse:: Pick major axis start point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 2	 Ellipse:: Pick major axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 3	 Ellipse:: Pick minor axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z or Enter w value.
Final	

 Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.30 Ellipse, Diameter, End Pt.



Create an **Ellipse** by selecting two diameter points and a third point to define the axis end point.

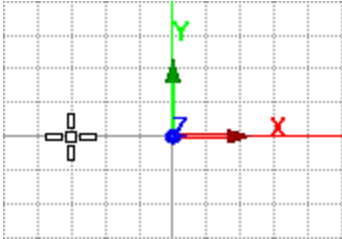
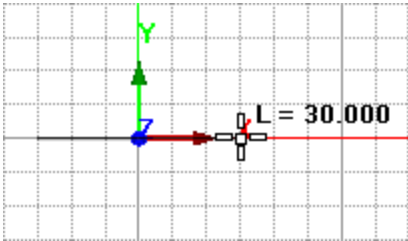
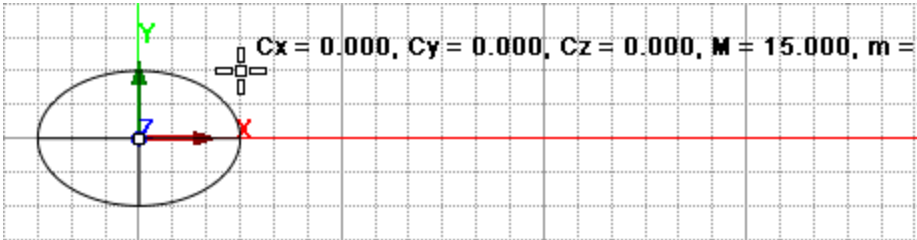


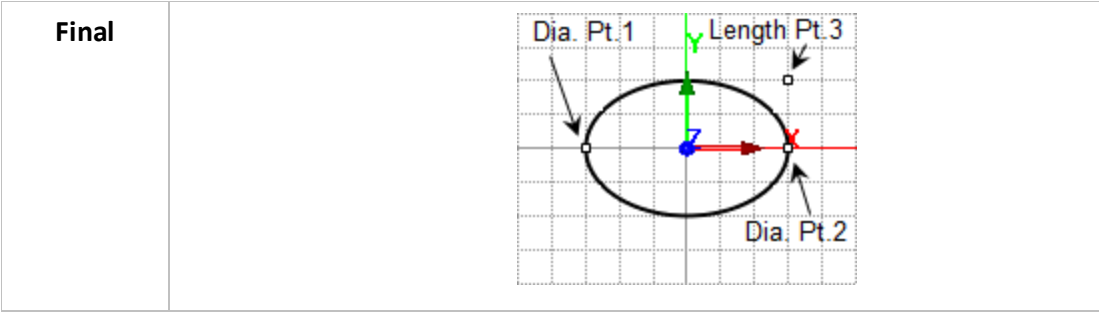
Command Prompts

- Ellipse:: Pick major axis start point or enter coordinates x,y and z
- Ellipse:: Pick major axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z
- Ellipse:: Pick minor axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z or Enter width value



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick / Command Input
Step 1	 Ellipse:: Pick major axis start point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 2	 Ellipse:: Pick major axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 3	 Ellipse:: Pick minor axis end point or enter coordinates x,y and z or Enter w value.



Related Topics
[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.31 Ellipse, Foci

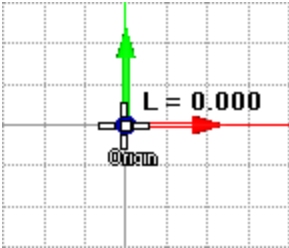


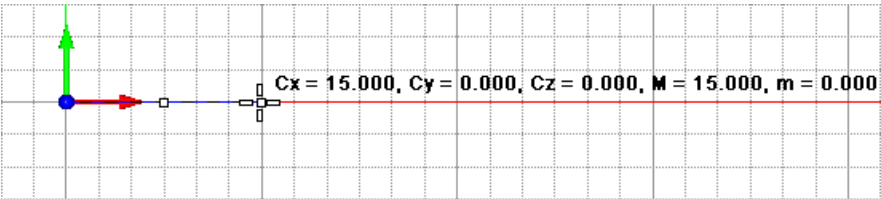
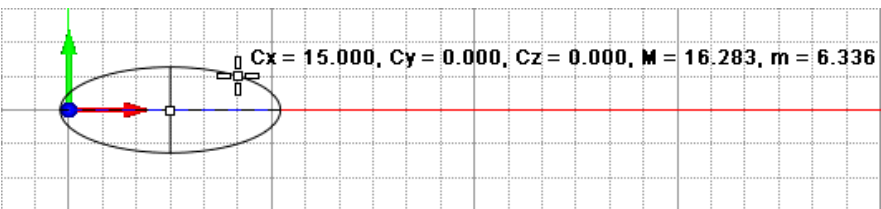
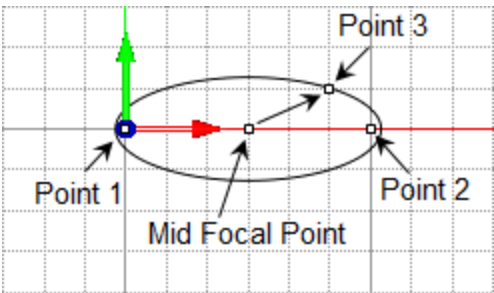
Create an **Ellipse** by defining a focal point about which the ellipse is positioned. The first two points define the ellipse major axis and are the focal points about which the ellipse is located. The minor axis of the ellipse passes through a third point defining the minor axis. Refer to the steps below.

Command Prompts

- Ellipse:: Pick first foci point or enter coordinates x,y and z
- Ellipse:: Pick second foci point or enter coordinates x,y and z
- Ellipse:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick / Command Input
Step 1	 Ellipse:: Pick first foci point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Step 2	 Ellipse:: Pick second foci point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 3	 Ellipse:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Final	



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.32 Nurbs Curve



Non-uniform rational basis-spline (**NURBS**) is a mathematical way of defining curves. The control points determine the shape of the curve. Typically, each point of the curve is computed by taking a weighted sum of a number of control points. The degree of the Nurbs curve can be set between 1 and 11.

Create a **NURBS** Curve by first entering the degree of B-Spline and then pick point or enter the X, Y, Z coordinates. Open and closed curves can be created using **NURBS** Curve. **NURBS** Curve icon can be selected in the **Geometry Ribbon Bar** under the **Curves** tab.



Command Prompts

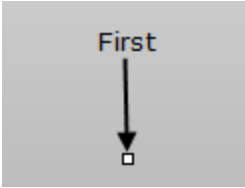
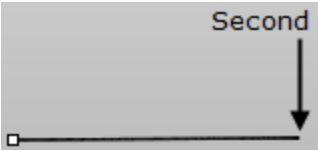
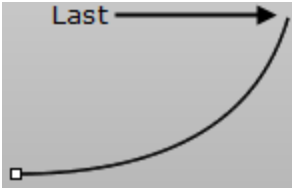
Nurbs curve:: Enter degree of BSpline (1 < degree < 11)::[degree=2]

Nurbs curve:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Nurbs curve:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter degree of B Spline ($1 < \text{degree} < 11$):: [degree=2] Command 2
Step 2		(Optional) Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Step 3		(Optional) Pick point or enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point.
Step 4		(Optional) Pick point or enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the last point.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.33 Text Curves



Create **text curves** from keyed-in text. The outlines of letters are created as a series of separate curves.



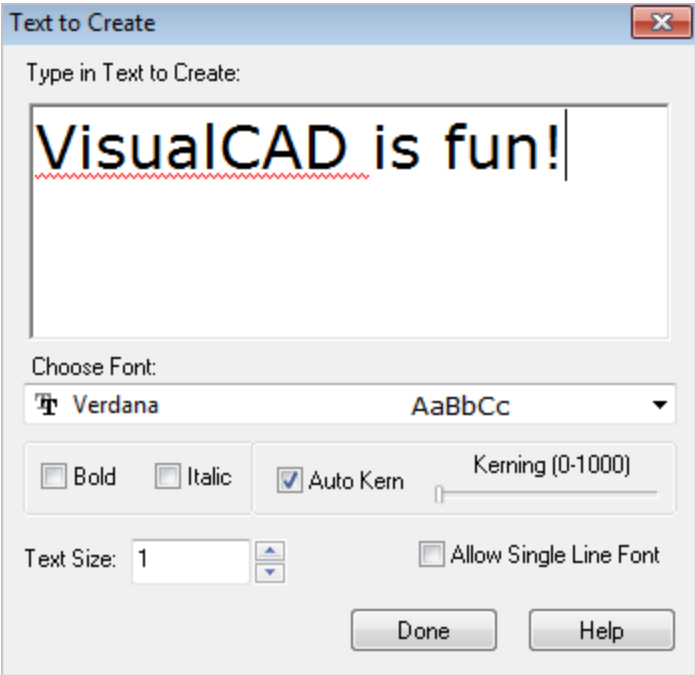
Command Prompts

Enter parameters and text in dialog.

Text:: Enter start point of text



Dialog Box: Text to Create



Dialog Box: Text to Create



Choose Font

VisualCAD supports over 300 different text fonts. Select one from the list.



Auto Kerning

Kerning is the process of adjusting the spacing between characters in a proportional font, usually to achieve a visually pleasing result. Kerning adjusts the space between individual letter forms, while tracking (letter-spacing) adjusts spacing uniformly over a range of characters. In a well-kerned font, the two-dimensional blank spaces between each pair of characters all have a visually similar area.

- Use the slider to adjust [Kerning](#) or check the box to [Auto Kerning](#).



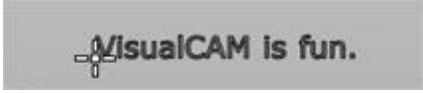
Other Options

- Bold/Italic
- Text Size
- Allow Single Line Font



Basic Procedure

	Screen Action	Comments
--	---------------	----------

Step 1		Font: font style, size, bold, and italic can be specified. Kerning slider bar: The spacing between the characters can be set between 0 (closest) to 1000 (farthest). Enter text.
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the text start point 
Final		Top line kerning = 0 Middle line kerning = 250 Bottom line kerning = 500

Notes

1. The text curves will be created on a plane parallel to the [Construction Plane](#).
2. After the text is created, the curves can be independently manipulated.

Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.34 Text on Curve



Create [text curves](#) that follow a curve. The outlines of letters are created as a series of separate curves.

Command Prompts

Enter parameters and text in dialog.

Text on Curve:: Pick Curve to create Text on:



Dialog Box: Text to Create

Text to Create (on Curve)



Choose Font

VisualCAD® supports over 300 different text fonts. Select one from the list.



Auto Kerning

Kerning is the process of adjusting the spacing between characters in a proportional font, usually to achieve a visually pleasing result. Kerning adjusts the space between individual letter forms, while tracking (letter-spacing) adjusts spacing uniformly over a range of characters. In a well-kerned font, the two-dimensional blank spaces between each pair of characters all have a visually similar area.

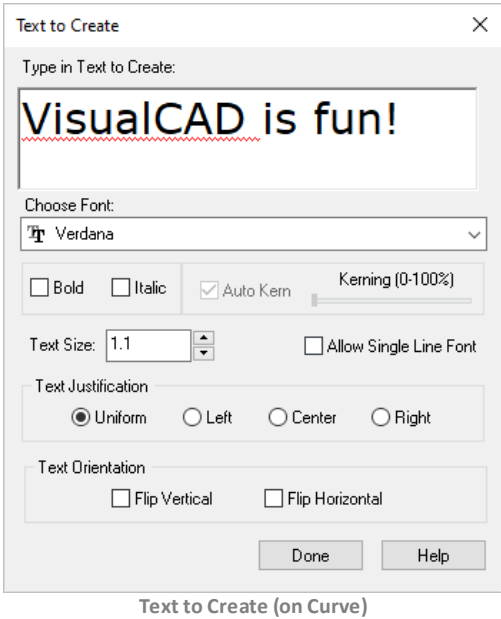
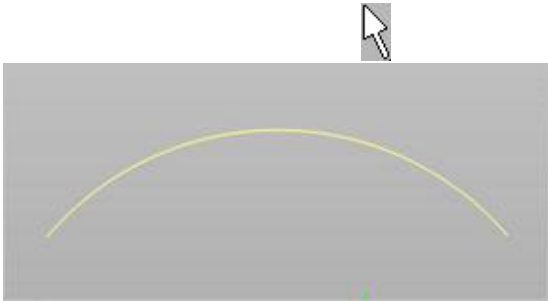
- Use the slider to adjust [Kerning](#) or check the box to [Auto Kerning](#).

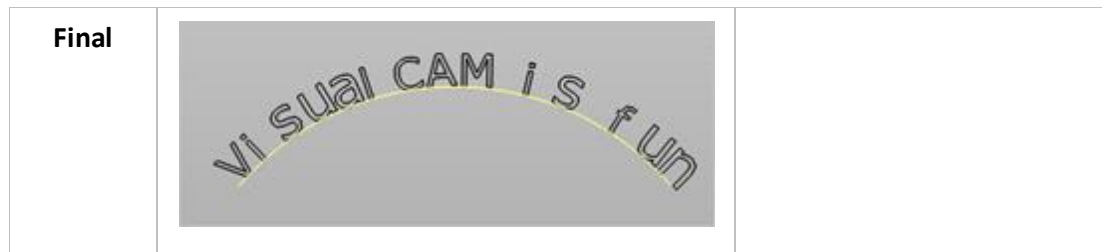


Other Options

- [Bold/Italic](#)
- [Text Size](#)
- [Allow Single Line Font](#)
- [Text Justification](#)
- [Text Size](#)
- [Text Spacing](#)
- [Text Orientation](#)

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1		See Dialog Box: Text to Create below. Font: font style, size, bold, and italic can be specified. Kerning slider: The spacing between the characters can be set between 0 (closest) to 1000 (farthest). Enter text.
Step 2		



Notes

1. The text curves will be created along the curve in oriented to the current view.
2. After the text is created, the curves can be independently manipulated.
3. The text to appear is typed into the box. It will appear in the box in the selected font, bold, and italic applied. Changes in size do not appear in the text in the box but do take effect when the text is actually created.



4. Hanging text has the top of the letters on the curve; whereas, the default is the bottom of the letters are on the curve.



5. Flip text flips each individual letter while keeping the sequence of letters the same.



6. The plane of the text is the viewing plane of the currently selected view. It doesn't have to be a construction plane.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.35 Curve, Spiral



Create a spiral curve in a plane.



Command Prompts

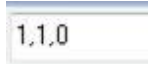
Spiral :: Enter the number of revolutions::[N=4]

Spiral :: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Spiral :: Enter radius or pick radius point::[R=4.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the number of revolutions of the spiral. The Prompt shows the default. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the center point. 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter the radius.  or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point which determines the radius. 



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.36 Curve, Helix



Create a [helix](#) curve.



Command Prompts

Helix :: Enter the number of revolutions::[N=4]

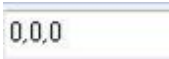
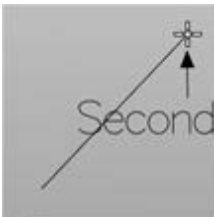
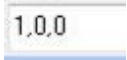
Helix :: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

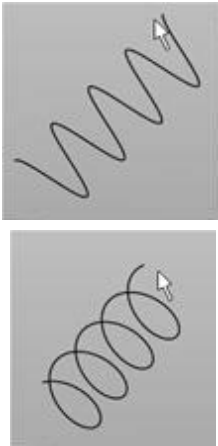
Helix :: Enter the height of the helix:[H=2.000000]

Helix :: Enter radius or pick radius point:[R=2.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the number of revolutions of the helix. The Prompt shows the default. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the center point. 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point which determines the axis and height of the helix. 
Step 4		(Optional) Enter the radius.  or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point which determines the radius of the helix. 

Final		
-------	---	--

 Notes

1. Intermediate geometry is discarded and only the helix is retained.

 Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.37 Curve, Flat Area

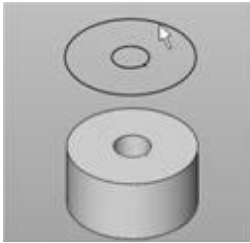
 Create a **curve**(s) forming the boundary of a flat-area region. The region could be a face of a mesh or a plane.

 Command Prompts

Flat Area :: Pick flat area:

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none

Final		
-------	---	--

 Notes

1. If there are holes in the area, multiple curves will be made, one for the outer boundary, and one curve each for the inner boundary of the holes.

 Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

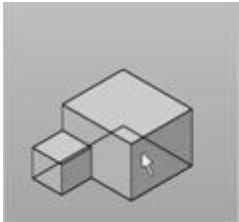
5.4.1.38 Curve, All Flat Areas

 Create a set of **curves** enclosing flat-area regions. All flat regions parallel to the construction plane will generate curves including surfaces on multiple meshes.

 Command Prompts

Click on the function 'All Flat Areas'

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Select Function		none
Final		

 Notes

- 1. Each of the generated curves is independent after it is created.

 Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.39 Silhouette Curves

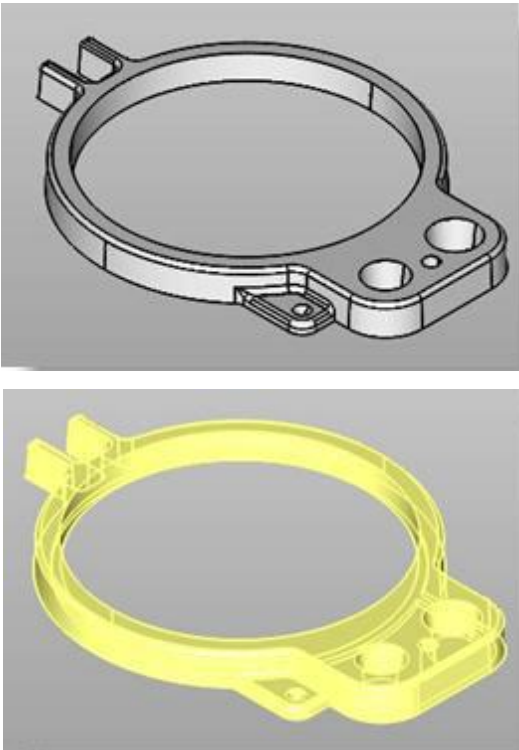
 Creates a 2D curve that represents the boundaries of the part for all selected solids and surface geometries on the screen. The curves will be independent once created and will be parallel to the active construction.

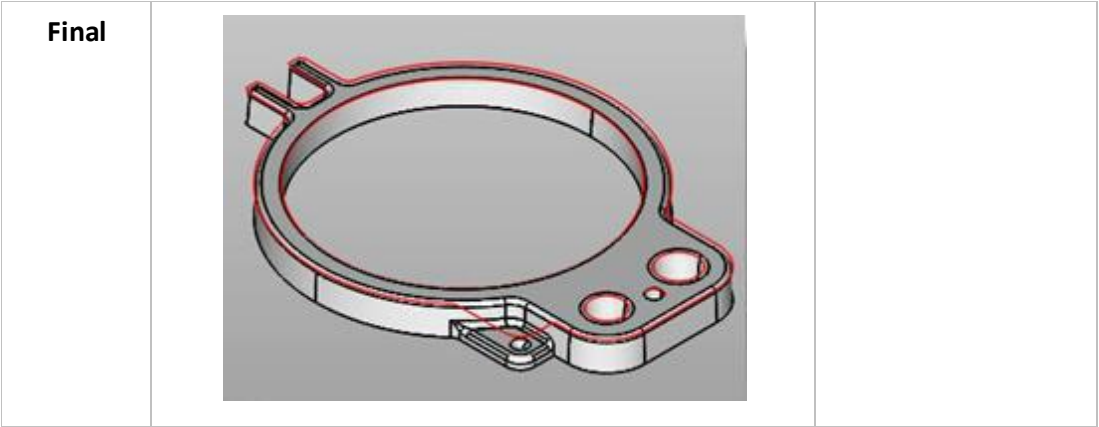
Reminder: You might want to set a new Layer as the destination for the newly created curves.

 Command Prompts

Silhouette:: Pick surface(s) for creating silhouette area curves

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Entry	Command Input
Step 1		Select Surfaces by single pick or rectangular selection. Hit the ENTER key when done.



 **Related Topics**
[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

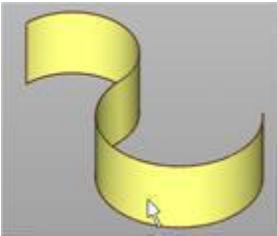
5.4.1.40 Curve, Surface Boundary

 Create a single **curve** from the outer boundary of a surface.

 **Command Prompts**

Surface Boundary :: Pick a surface to extract edges from

 **Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Final		

 **Related Topics**

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.41 Curve, Bounding Rect.



Create a **rectangular curve** that is derived from a volumetric box that surrounds selected geometry objects.

The volumetric box and rectangle are oriented to either the Construction Plane or the World Coordinate System (your choice). The bounding rectangle will then be created at the top, middle, or bottom of that volumetric box (your choice).



Command Prompts

Bounding Rect.: Pick Objects for command. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

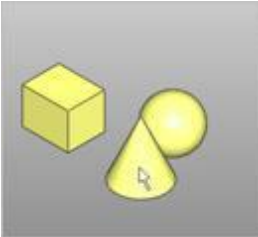
Bounding Rect.: Enter Orientation [CPlane=C,World=W]

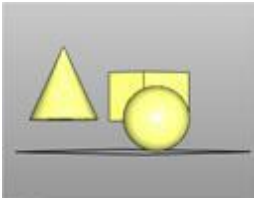
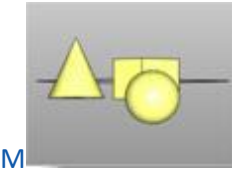
Bounding Rect.: Enter offsets in X & Y Direction [X=0.000000,Y=0.000000]

Bounding Rect.: Enter Location [Bottom=B,Mid=M,Top=T]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick or Screen Results	Command Input
Step 1	 Select all objects to be included in the volumetric box. Hit ENTER to end the selection.	
Step 2		Enter 'C' or 'W'. 'C' orients the volumetric box to the Construction Plane. 

		'W' orients the volumetric box to the World Coordinate System. 
Step 3		Enter X and Y offsets. These are incremental offsets that will enlarge the volumetric box in the X and Y directions respectively. Negative values are not allowed. 
Step 4	 T  M  B	Enter 'T', 'M', or 'B'. 'T' creates the rectangle at the top of the volumetric box. 'M' creates the rectangle at the middle of the volumetric box. 'B' creates the rectangle at the bottom of the volumetric box. 



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.42 Section Curves

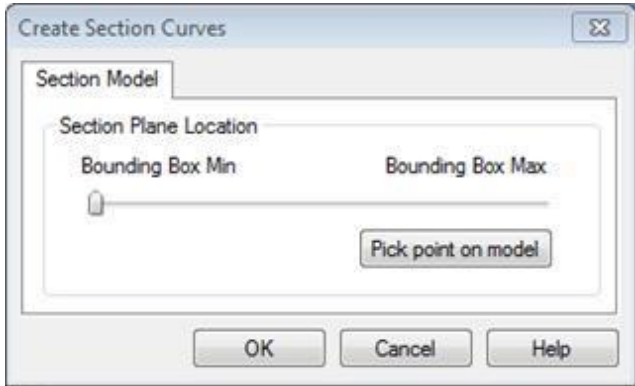
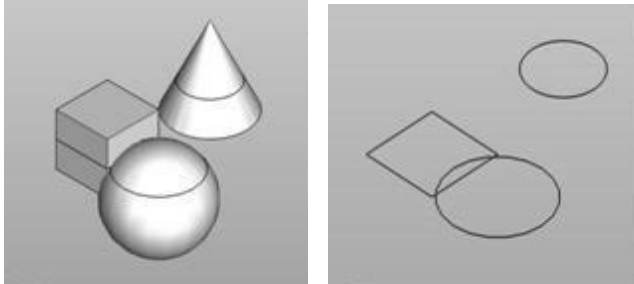


Creates cross-section **curves** through all solids, surface and mesh geometries on the screen. The curves will be independent once created.

Reminder: You might want to set a new Layer as the destination for the newly created curves.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Entry	Command Input
Step 1	 Adjust the Bounding Box slider to raise or lower the cutting plane (dynamically shown on the models). When the cutting plane is positioned correctly, hit OK on the dialog to create the curves. or... ...Pick a point on the model to determine where the cutting plane is positioned.	(Optional) Enter X, Y, and Z values that define the point of the cutting plane. 1,1,1 Hit the ENTER key when done.
Final		



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.1.43 Extract Curve



Creates (extracts) a curve from a surface edge. The curve will be independent of the surface once created.

Reminder: You might want to set a new Layer as the destination for the newly created curves.

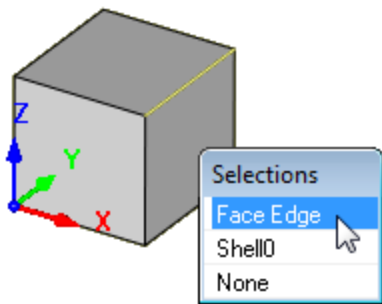
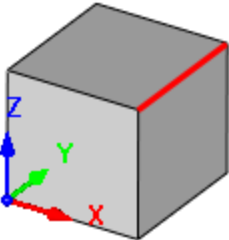


Command Prompts

Extract curve from face edge:: Select face edge(s) and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Entry	Command Input
Step 1	Select the surface edge to create a curve from. You can pre-select the surface edge before executing this command. 	Right-click or press <ENTER> when done.
Final		

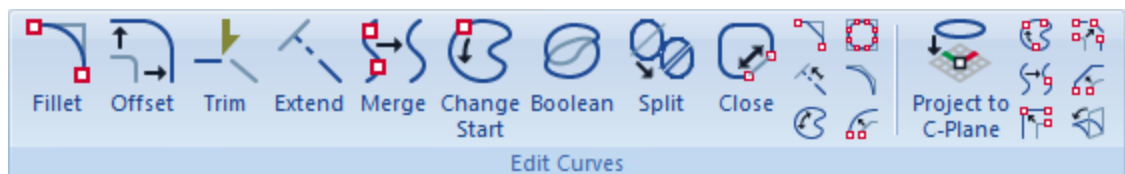


Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2 Edit Curves

The [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Edit Curves](#) pane with associated functions.



Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar
Edit Curves Pane



Related Topics

[Fillet 2 Curves](#)
[Create Offset Curves](#)
[Trim a Curve](#)
[Extend Curve](#)
[Merge Curves](#)
[Curve Boolean](#)
[Split by Curve](#)
[Close Curve](#)
[Change Curve Start Point](#)
[Chamfer Curves](#)
[Extend Curve by Distance](#)
[Reverse Curve Direction](#)
[Automatically Fillet Curves of a Polyline](#)
[Fit an Arc to a Polyline](#)
[Smooth a Curve](#)
[Project Curves to a C-Plane](#)
[Create a Curve Chain](#)
[Split Curves](#)
[Break Curves at Sharp Corners](#)
[Explode Curves](#)
[Reduce a Curve](#)
[Wrap a Curve onto a Cylinder](#)
[Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.1 Fillet



Create a tangent arc blend (fillet) at the intersection of two curves. The radius of the fillet is user specified. **Zero radius fillets can be created with this command by entering 0 as the fillet radius.**



Command Prompts

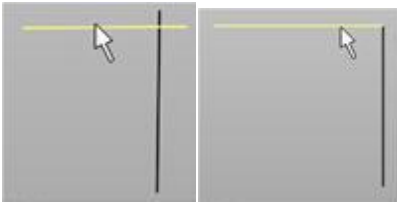
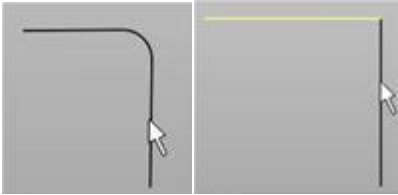
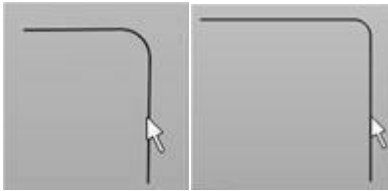
Fillet: Enter fillet radius [R=0.500000]

Fillet: Pick first curve

Fillet: Pick second curve



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the radius of the desired corner fillet. 
Step 2		
Step 3		
Final		



Notes

1. If necessary, the ends of the target curves will be trimmed back to meet the ends of the fillet arc.
2. Curve ends will not be extended to meet the intended fillet arc. If the ends are too short, the fillet will not be created.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.2 Offset

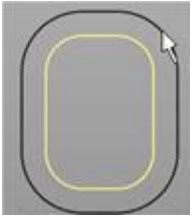


Create a new curve that is offset from a selected curve. The curve may be open or closed.
Corners may be rounded or sharp.

 Command Prompts

- 1. Offset:: Select convex corner type [r - rounded; s - sharp] or Pick curve to offset [convex corners will be rounded]
- 2. Pick curve to offset
- 3. Enter offset distance [D=1.000000]

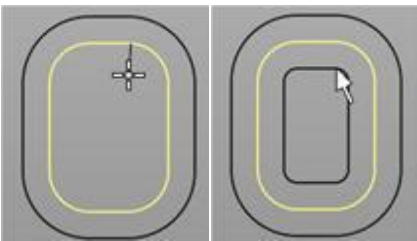
 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Select convex corner type [r - rounded; s - s Pick curve to offset [convex corners will be rounded]
Step 2		
Step 3	Use the cursor to indicate the offset side and offset distance. 	(Optional) Enter the offset distance.  Note: Negative offset distances are not allo To offset toward the inside, position the cu inside the curve and enter a positive offset distance.
Final		

 Notes

- 1. The existing curve may be pre-selected.

- 2. Sharp, outside corners in the original curve will result in radius offset corners in the new curve.



An example of offsetting on the inside of the curve using the cursor pick position.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.3 Trim



Modify a curve by trimming away part of it. The curve can be trimmed in the following two cases:

- 1. Between its end point and an intersection with another curve, or
- 2. Between two intersections with other curves.

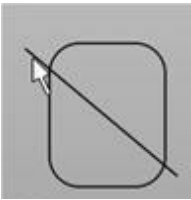
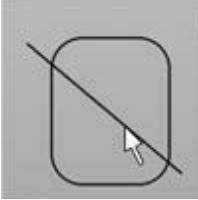
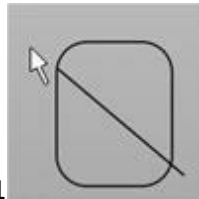
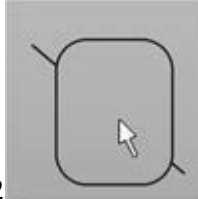


Command Prompts

Prompt: Trim:: Pick curve to trim



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	1  or 2 	none
Final	1  or 2 	

 Notes

- 1. Where you select the curve also selects the segment to be trimmed away.

 Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.4 Extend



Extend a curve along its tangency to its nearest intersection with another geometry object.

The curve is extended only on the end where it is picked. To extend the other end, the EXTEND function must be used again by picking the other end.

 Command Prompts

Extend:: Pick Curve to Extend

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Final		

 Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.5 Merge



Convert two or more curves into one curve. The adjacent endpoints must be within VisualCAD tolerance. See **Note 1** below.

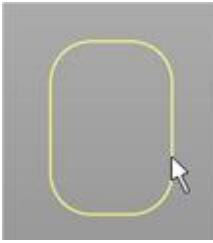


Command Prompts

Merge:: Pick curves to merge. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2		
Final		



Notes

1. To set the system tolerance for curve hookup, go to: [Home](#) > [Options](#) > [Tolerance and Units](#) > [Curve Hookup Tolerance](#).
2. If curves do not merge as expected, check to see if their end point proximity exceeds the system hookup tolerance.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.6 Change Start



Move the start/end position on a closed curve.

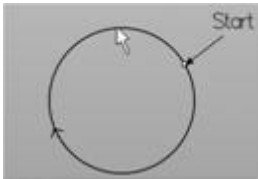
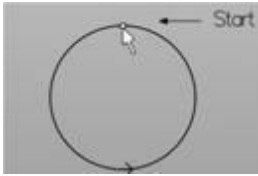


Command Prompts

Change Start: Pick closed curve to change start point



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Final		



Notes

1. This function has no effect on open curves.
2. To show curve start point, go to [Home](#) > [Options](#) > [Display](#) > [Curve Display Style](#). Check the box [Display Curve / Region Start Point](#).



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.7 Boolean



Use this command to perform boolean operations on selected curves. The curves must intersect each other and lie on the construction plane. Also be sure to read the notes section below.



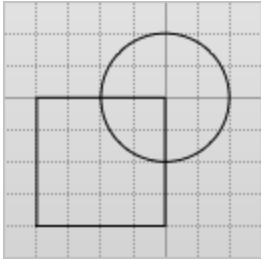
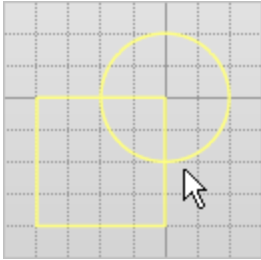
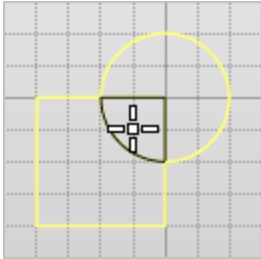
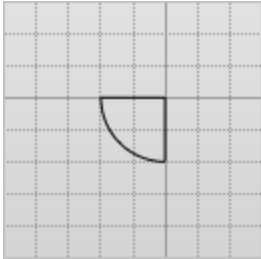
Command Prompts

Boolean:: Pick curves to boolean and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

Boolean:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z.

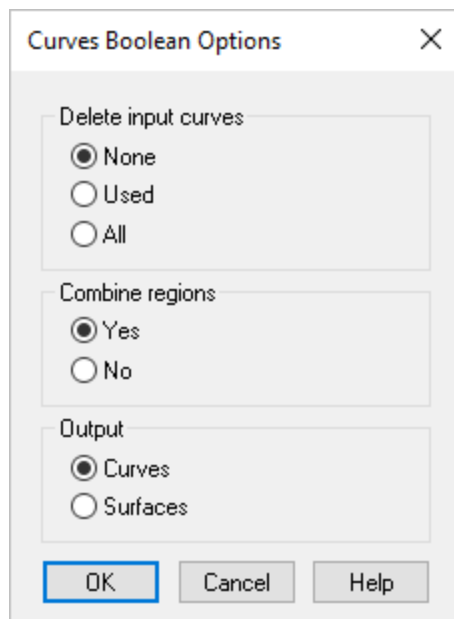


Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	 	Select the curves to boolean and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.
Step 2		Make desired selections from the Curve Boolean options dialog. (see below)
Final		Delete input curves: All Combine Regions: Yes Output: Curves



Curve Boolean Options Dialog



Curve Boolean Dialog

Delete input curves

- **None:** Do not delete the input curves.
- **Used:** Delete only the affected input curves. Leave all other selected curves intact.
- **All:** Delete ALL selected input curves, even those that are unaffected by the operation.

Combine regions

- **Yes:** Merge all affected curves into one curve region.
- **No:** Do not merge the affected curves.

Output

- **Curves:** The resulting regions should be curves.
- **Surfaces:** The resulting regions should be planar surfaces.



Notes

1. All selected curves must be planar and lie on the construction plane.
2. Experiment with each dialog option until you understand the expected results.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.8 Split by Curve



Split a curve(s) by another curve. If the curves to split are nested, you can choose to honor the nest (Y) or not (N).



Command Prompts

Split:: Pick Splitting curve

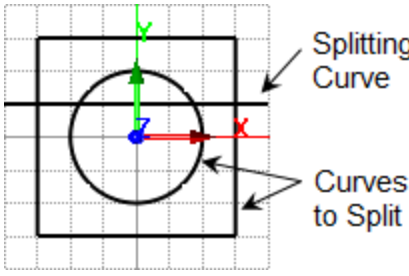
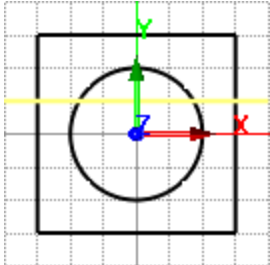
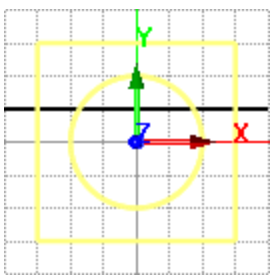
Split:: Pick curves to split. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

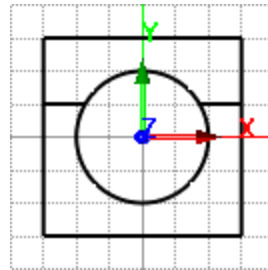
Split:: Honor Nesting option(Y/N)?

Split:: Done

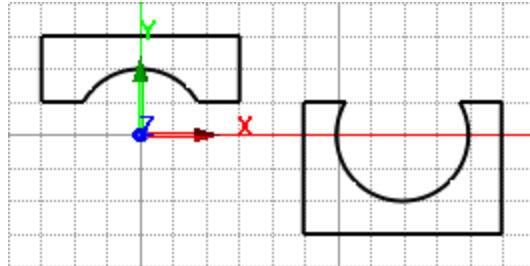


Basic Procedure

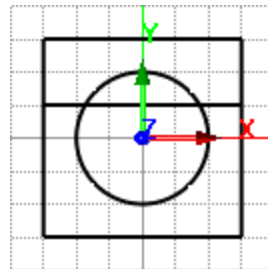
	Screen Pick / Command Input
Geometry to split	
Step 1	 Split:: Pick Splitting curve
Step 2	 Split:: Pick curves to split. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

Step 3

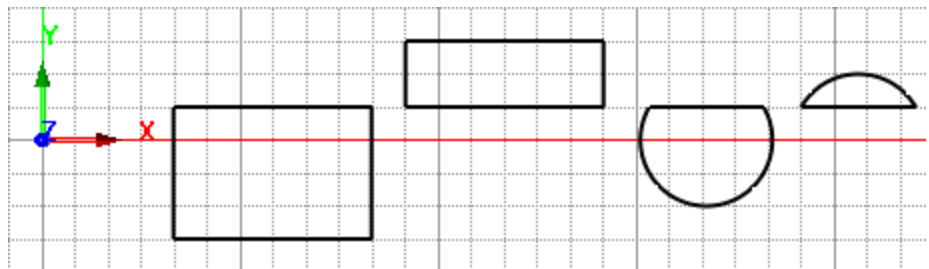
Split:: Honor Nesting option(Y/N)? Y (Results)



Split:: Honor Nesting option(Y/N)? Y (Results separated)



Split:: Honor Nesting option(Y/N)? N (Results)



Split:: Honor Nesting option(Y/N)? N (Results separated)

**Related Topics**

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.9 Close Curve



Use this command to close a curve by automatically connecting its endpoints. Note that this command will not close multiple curves. There needs to be a single curve and multiple curves that have been merged into a single curve. Also **Note**: You can use the [Merge Curve](#) command to close multiple curves as long as the [Curve Hookup Tolerance](#) is larger than the gap you are attempting to close. You can find the [Curve Hookup Tolerance](#) parameter on the [Tols. & Units](#) tab of the [VisualCAD Options](#) dialog.



Command Prompts

Close:: Pick curve to close and Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick / Command Input
Curve to Close	
Step 1 Final	Close:: Pick curve to close and Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Related Topics

[Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.10 Chamfer



Create a chamfer at the intersection of two curves. The length of the chamfer is user specified.

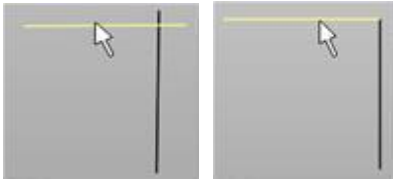
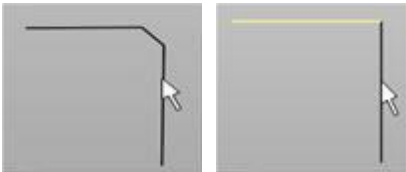
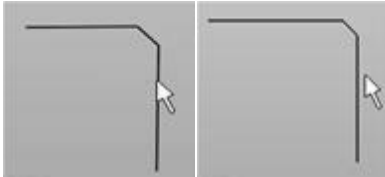
 Command Prompts

Chamfer:: Enter chamfer length [C=0.500000]

Chamfer:: Pick first curve

Chamfer:: Pick second curve

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the length of the desired chamfer. 
Step 2		
Step 3		
Final		

 Notes

- 1. If necessary, the ends of the target curves will be trimmed back to meet the ends of the chamfer line.
- 2. Curve ends will not be extended to meet the intended chamfer. If the ends are too far apart, the chamfer will not be created.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.11 Extend by Dist



Extend a curve along its tangency by the specified distance. The curve is extended only on the end where it is picked. To extend the other end, the **EXTEND** function must be used again by picking the other end.



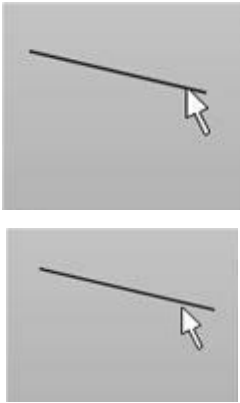
Command Prompts

Extend by Dist:: Enter extension distance::[L=1.000000]

Extend by Dist:: Pick Curve to Extend



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter extension distance 
Final		



Notes

1. This command can be used with arcs, polylines, poly-curves and Nurbs curve.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

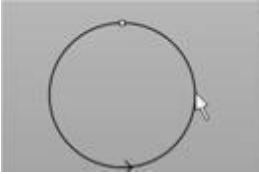
5.4.2.12 Reverse

 **Reverse** the definition direction of curves.

Command Prompts

Reverse:: Pick curves to reverse and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done

Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Final		

Notes

1. To show curve direction arrow: [Home > Options > Display > Curve Display Style](#). Check the box [Display Curve / Region Direction Arrow](#).

Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.13 Auto Fillet

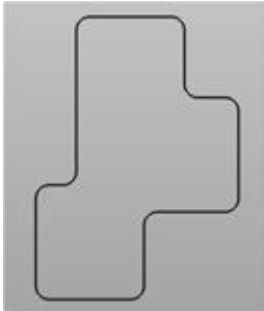
 Rounds the corners of Polycurves and Polylines with arcs of a specified radius at the intersection of two curves.

Command Prompts

Auto Fillet:: Enter fillet radius::[0.250000]

Auto Fillet:: Pick polylines for corners rounding . Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the radius of the desired corner fillet. 
Step 2		
Final		

 Notes

- 1. The prompt displays the filleted corner count.

 Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.14 Arc Fit

 Fit arcs to a polyline.

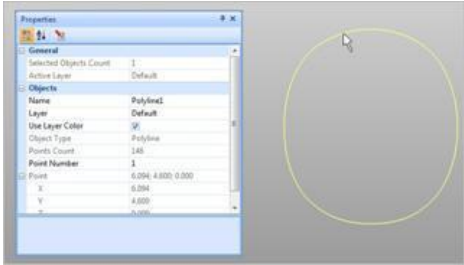
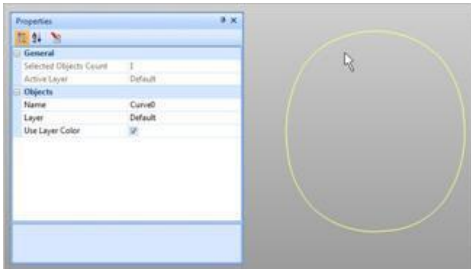
 Command Prompts

Arc Fit: Enter fillet radius: [0.010000]

Arc Fit:: Pick polylines for corners rounding . Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Enter the fillet radius and press enter. 0.001
Step 2		
Final		



Notes

1. The properties dialog is displayed to show the geometry type as polyline before arc fit and as a curve after the arc fit command is executed.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.15 Smooth



Modify a curve to smooth sharp corners.



Command Prompts

Smooth:: Pick curve(s) to smooth and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done

Smooth:: Enter curve smoothing tolerance::[0.002000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		
Step 2		Enter the smoothing tolerance. A smaller number produces greater smoothing. 
Final		



Notes

1. Curves may be pre-selected.
2. Highly smoothed curves will contain many underlying segments. This increases computation when these curves are used in calculations.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.16 Project to CPlane



Projects the selected curves to active construction plane. Split an existing curve into two segments at the pick point.

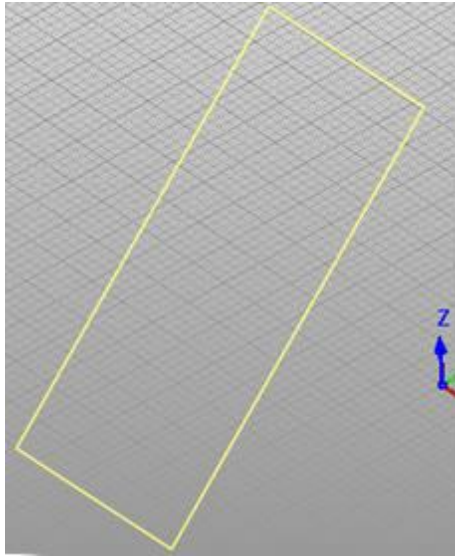


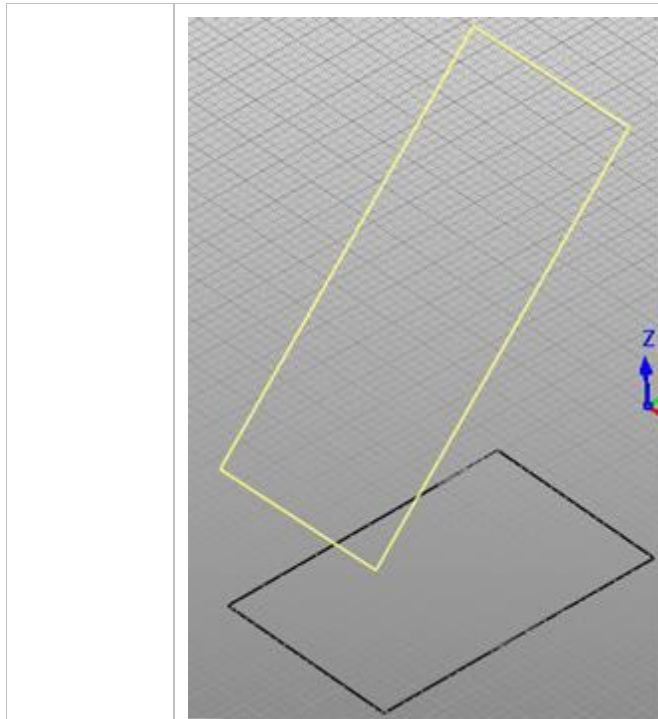
Command Prompts

Project to CPlane:: Pick curves to be projected. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick curves to be projected with left mouse click selection or dragging a window with left mouse hold. 	none
Final	Hit right mouse button or hit Enter on keyboard to accept selection. Selected geometry is now projected to the C-Plane coordinate.	



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.17 Chain



Create a single curve out of multiple curves that form a closed loop. You can automatically select a chain of curves or edges using the **<Shift>** key while selecting. The curve chain does not have to be created using this command. See [Chain Select](#) for more information.



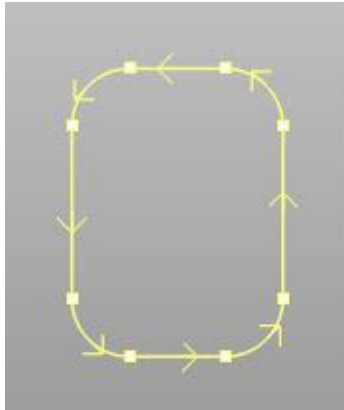
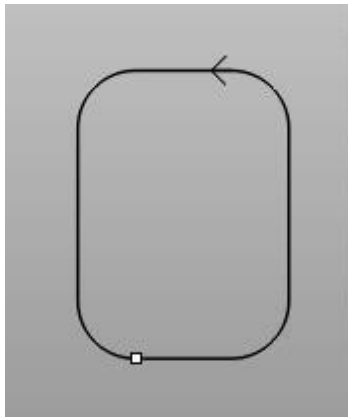
Command Prompts

Chain:: Pick curve to start chain



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

Step 1	 Select any one curve of a set of curves that form a closed region.	none
Final		



Notes

1. To show curve direction arrow and start point: [Home](#) > [Options](#) > [Display](#) > [Curve Display Style](#). Check the box [Display Curve / Region Direction Arrow](#) and [Display Curve / Region Start Point](#).



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[Chain Select](#)

5.4.2.18 Split



Split an existing curve into two segments at the pick point.

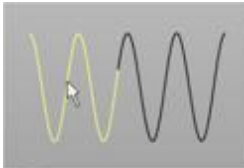


Command Prompts

Split: Pick curve to split



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2	Move the cursor to determine the split position. Left click causes split. 	
Final		



Notes

1. If the curve is pre-selected, the function will begin at Step 2 above.
2. If the curve is not pre-selected, then the pick point becomes the split point.
3. If the curve is picked very near a sharp corner, the split will be at the corner.



To create breaks in curves at multiple corners that have a given angle size, see the [Break](#) command.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.19 Break



Break a curve into segments at its sharp corners, where the corners are equal or less than a user-entered angle value.



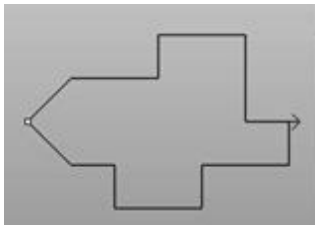
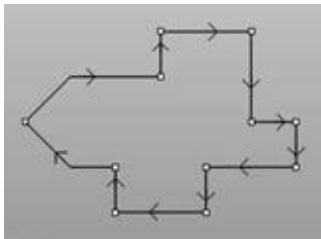
Command Prompts

Prompt: Break:: Pick curve(s) to break and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done

Prompt: Break:: Enter limiting angle for breaking curves::[90.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		
Step 2		Enter the angle where breaks should occur. Input: 90
Final		



Notes

1. Curves may be pre-selected.
2. **Tip:** If you wish to break a curve at selected corners and are not concerned about the corner angle, then use the [Curve Modeling](#) > [Edit Curves](#) > [Split](#) command to directly select a corner of the curve where you want the curve break to occur.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.20 Explode



Convert one curve into multiple curve segments.

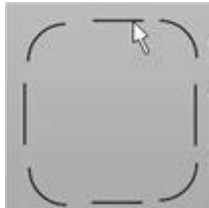


Command Prompts

Explode:: Pick curves to explode. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Final	Gaps are magnified to show separation into independent curves. 	



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.4.2.21 Reduce



Modify a curve by reducing the number of underlying segments which make up the curve.



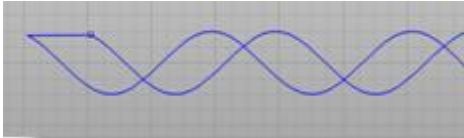
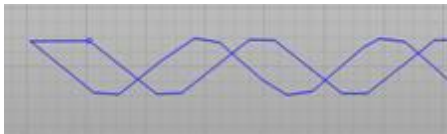
Command Prompts

Reduce:: Pick curve(s) to reduce and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done

Reduce:: Enter curve reduction tolerance::[0.020000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		
Step 2		Enter the reduction tolerance. A larger number produces fewer underlying curves. 
Final		



Notes

1. Curves may be pre-selected.
2. This function will improve the speed of computation for curves that have had their underlying segments reduced.
3. Reducing the number of underlying segments of a curve will result in less accurate calculations with that curve.



Related Topics

[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

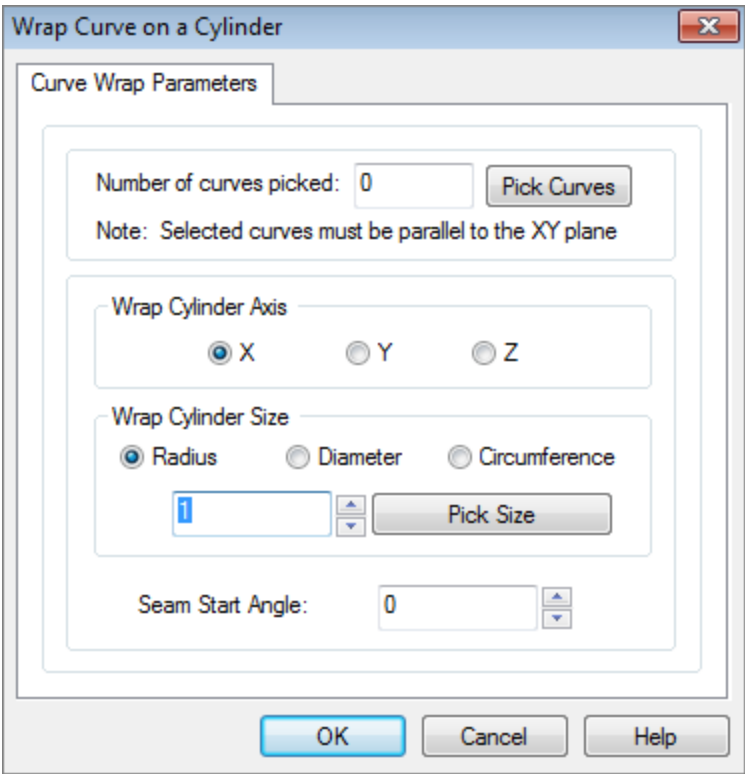
5.4.2.22 Wrap



Wrap curves onto a construction cylinder whose center-line is aligned with one of the principle axes of the CPlane.



Dialog Box: Wrap Curve on a Cylinder



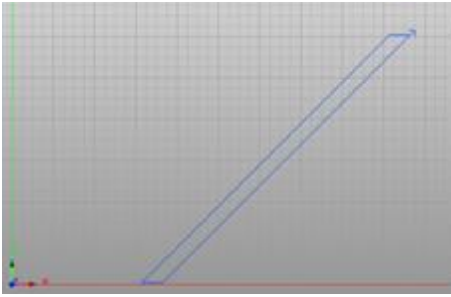
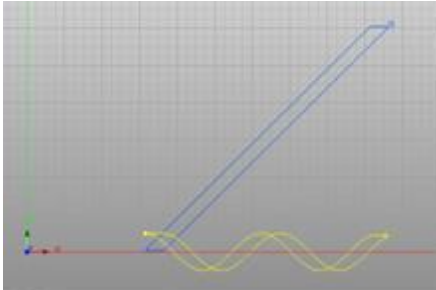
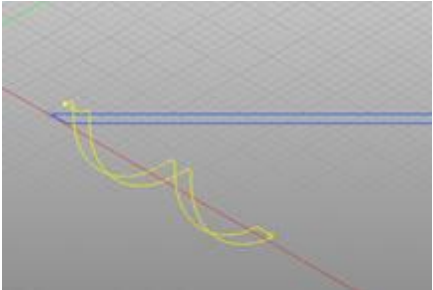
Dialog Box: Wrap Curve on a Cylinder

- **Number of curves picked**
The number of curves selected is displayed. Select the **Pick Curves** button to add more curves to the selection.
- **Wrap Cylinder Axis**
Select **X**, **Y** or **Z** to determine the cylinder axis.
- **Wrap Cylinder Size**
Select **Radius**, **Diameter** or **Circumference** to determine the size of the cylinder to wrap the selected curves on. Then enter the appropriate value or select the **Pick Size** button to select two points to set the size value.
- **Seam Start Angle**
Specify the start angle for the seam of the cylinder according to the right-hand rule (counter-clockwise).



Basic Procedure

	Dialog Interaction
--	---------------------------

Initial	
Step 1	Select the Pick Curves button and pick the curves to be wrapped. The curve may be pre-selected.
Step 2	Select one of the C-Plane axes that is used as the construction cylinder's axis.
Step 3	Choose the method to input the size of the construction cylinder.
Step 4	Enter the dimension size of the construction cylinder. You may pick a geometric object to determine that size.
Step 5	Enter the start angle on the cylinder where wrapping will begin.
Step 6	Hit the OK button
Final	 

**Notes**

1. The curves to be wrapped must be co-planar and parallel to the [CPlane](#).
2. The curves will be wrapped in a positive direction around the construction cylinder according to the right-hand rule (counter-clockwise).

**Related Topics**

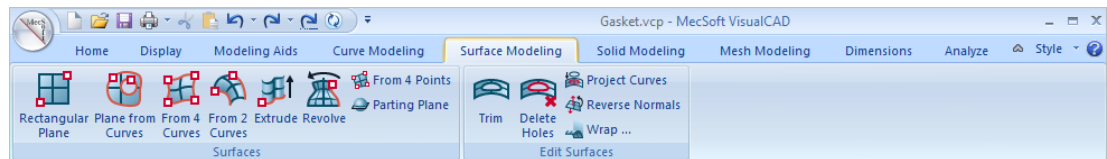
[Edit Curves Pane, Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5 Surface Modeling

The [Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains [Surfaces](#) and [Edit Surfaces](#) panes and associated functions.



The Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar



Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[Edit Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

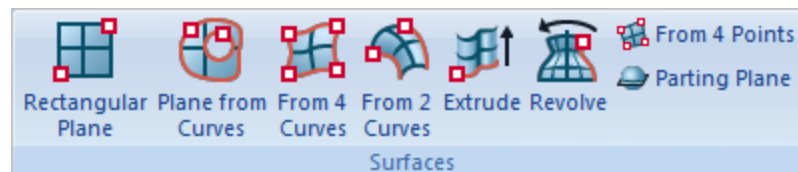
[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.5.1 Surfaces

The [Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Surfaces](#) pane with associated functions.



Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar
Surfaces Pane



Related Topics

[Create a Rectangular Plane](#)

[Create a Plane from Curves](#)

[Create a Surface from 4 Curves](#)

[Create a Surface from 2 Planar Curves](#)

[Create an Extruded Surface](#)

[Create a Revolved Surface](#)

[Create a Surface from 4 Points](#)

[Create a Parting Line Surface](#)

[Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.1 Rectangular Plane



Create a rectangular **plane** parallel to the **Construction Plane**.



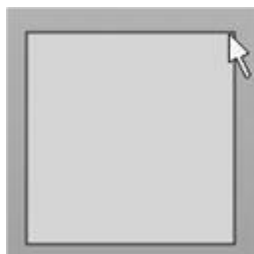
Command Prompts

Rectangular Plane:: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Rectangular Plane:: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. <u>0,0,0</u> Note: This point will determine a <u>level</u> (parallel to the Construction Plane), on which the final rectangular plane will be created.
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point. <u>1,1,0</u> Note: This point will be projected onto the parallel <u>level</u> of the first point.
Final		



Notes

1. The created plane will be parallel to the **Construction Plane** and through the first point.

Coordinate entry can be in absolute coordinates or in relative coordinates.

An example of absolute coordinate is shown above.

Example of coordinate entry Input for relative coordinates.

- a) Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: 2,0
- b) Pick second point or enter coordinates x,y and Z: R6,4

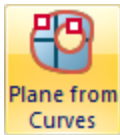
2. For the second point, the coordinate input can also be entered as @6,4
This creates a rectangular plane that is 6 units in length and 4 units in width from 2,0 to 8,4 in X Y coordinates.



Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.2 Plane from Curves



Create a **plane** from curves (or surface edges) that define a closed region. Internal closed regions may also be selected to create voids or holes in the plane.

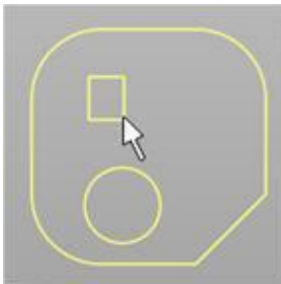


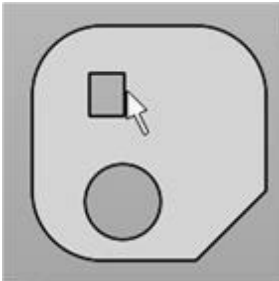
Command Prompts

Plane from Curves:: Pick planar curve(s) and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none

Final		
-------	---	--

 Notes

1. If the curves (or surface edges) are pre-selected, the plane will automatically be created from those curves.

 Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane](#), [Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.3 Surface by 4

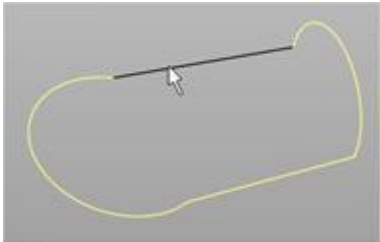


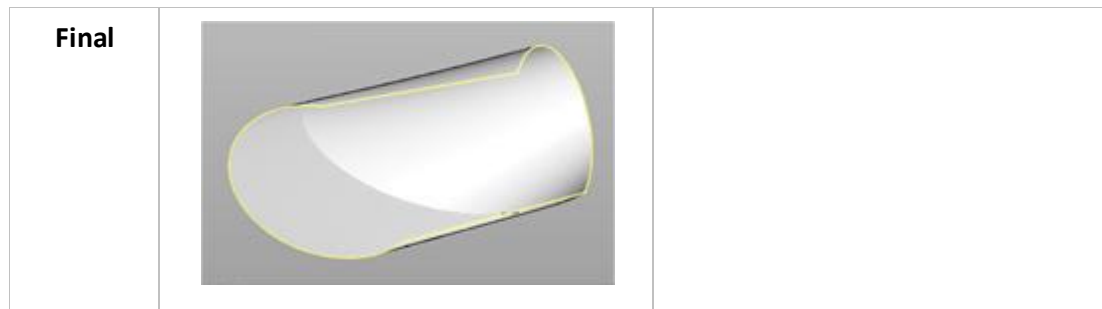
Create a [surface](#) from four chain curves (or surface edges) that form a closed region.

 Command Prompts

Surface by 4:: Pick four (chain) curves

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none



Notes

1. The curves (or surface edges) may be pre-selected.
2. The curves (or surface edges) do not need to be co-planar.
3. The endpoints of adjacent curves (or surface edges) must be within the hookup tolerance. See [Home > Options > Tolerance and Units > Curve Hookup Tolerances](#).



Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane](#), [Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.4 Surface by 2



Create a [surface](#) between two planar curves (or surface edges).

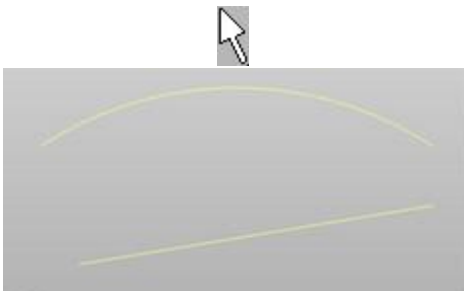


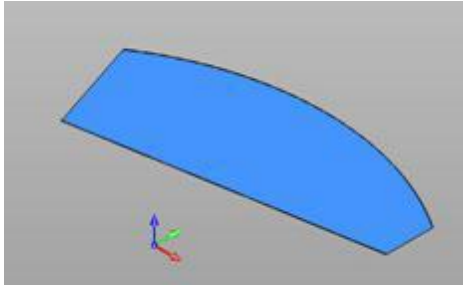
Command Prompts

Surface by 2:: Pick two planar curve(s) and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none

	Pick two planar curves (or surface edges).	
Final		



Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.5 Surface of Extrusion



Create a [surface](#) by extruding a curve (or surface edge). Multiple curves (or surface edges) may be selected, which will create multiple surfaces.



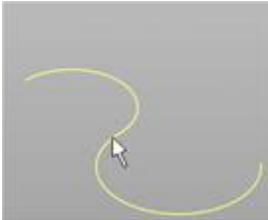
Command Prompts

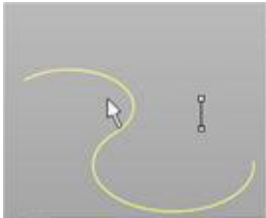
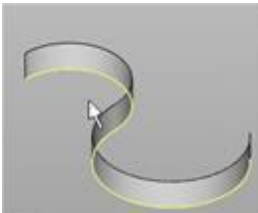
Surface of Extrusion:: Pick curves to extrude and hit right mouse when done

Surface of Extrusion:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	 Hit right mouse button when done.	

Step 2		(Optional) Enter an extrusion distance. 2.25
Final		



Notes

1. The curves (or surface edges) may be pre-selected.



Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.6 Surface of Revolution



Create a [surface](#) by revolving a curve (or surface edge) around an axis. Start and end angles may be entered according to the right-hand rule of positive rotation, as determined by the direction that the axis line is defined.



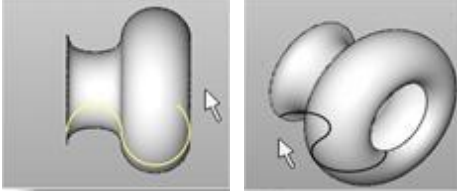
Command Prompts

Surface of Revolution:: Pick curve to revolve
Surface of Revolution:: Pick start point of axis of revolution or enter coordinates xy and z
Surface of Revolution:: Enter start angle of revolution::[sA=0.000000]
Surface of Revolution:: Enter end angle of revolution::[eA=360.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

Step 1	 The curves (or surface edges) may be pre-selected.	
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (start of axis line). 0,0,0
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (end of axis line). 1,0,0
Step 4		Enter the start angle of revolution (according to the right-hand rule of positive rotation). 0
Step 5		Enter the end angle of revolution. 360
Final		

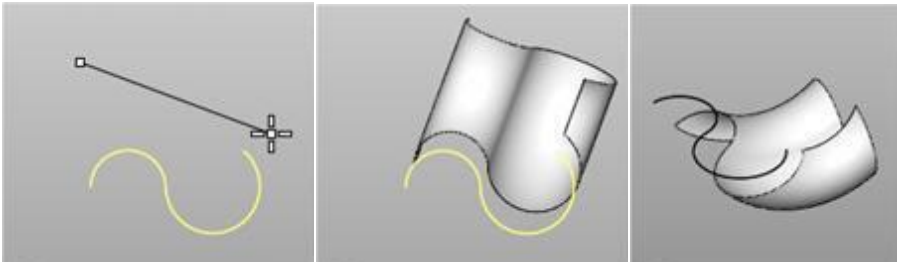


Notes

1. The direction of definition of the axis line is important because it determines the right-hand rule of positive rotation for the start and end angles of the revolved

surface.

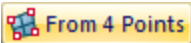
- 2. The curve's (or surfaces edge's) existing position defines the zero degree position for angles.
Here is an example doing a partial rotation from 20 to 100 degrees.



Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.7 Bi-linear Surface from 4 Points



Create a [surface](#) by specifying four corner points.



Command Prompts

Bilinear Surface from 4 Points:: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

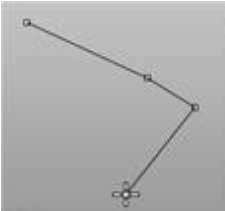
Bilinear Surface from 4 Points:: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

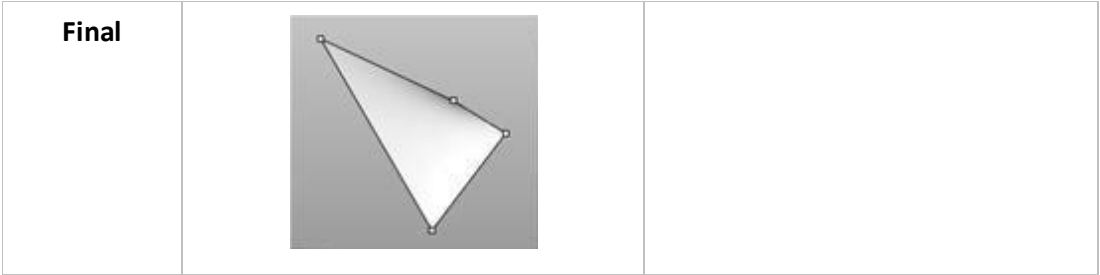
Bilinear Surface from 4 Points:: Pick third corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Bilinear Surface from 4 Points:: Pick fourth corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Steps 1-4		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for any of the points 1-4. 0,1,0



 Notes

- 1. Pre-selected points are not allowed.

 Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.1.8 Parting Plane



Create a parting plane positioned relative to a volumetric box around selected surfaces or meshes. VisualCAD creates a volumetric box around the surfaces and/or meshes. The box is oriented to either the Construction Plane of the World Coordinate System (your choice). The parting plane will then be created at the top, middle, or bottom of that volumetric box (your choice).

 Command Prompts

Parting Plane:: Pick Objects for command. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

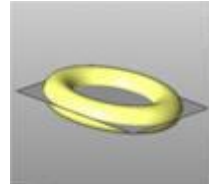
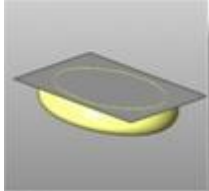
Parting Plane:: Enter Orientation [CPlane=C,World=W]

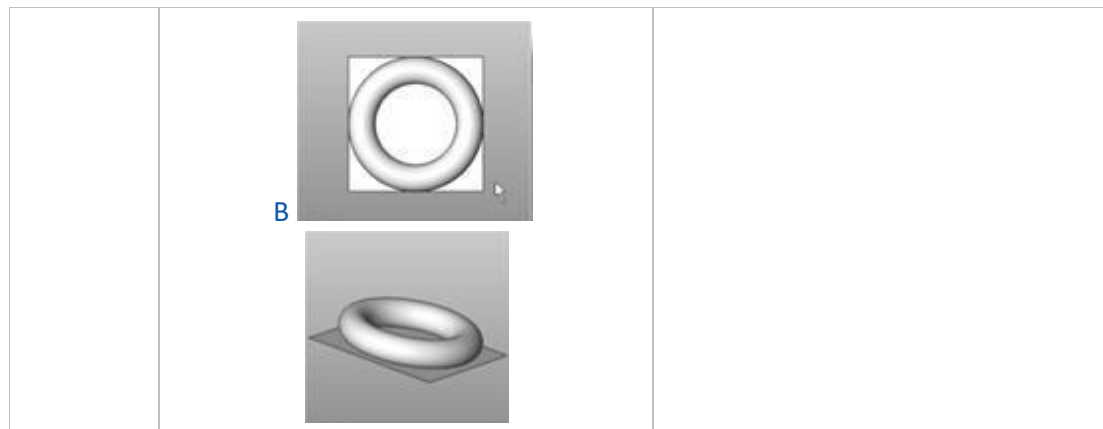
Parting Plane:: Enter offsets in X & Y Direction [X=0.000000,Y=0.000000]

Parting Plane:: Enter Location [Bottom=B,Mid=M,Top=T]

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

Step 1		
Step 2		Enter 'C' or 'W'. 'C' orients the parting plane parallel to the Construction Plane. 'W' orients the parting plane parallel to the World Coordinate System. 
Step 3		Enter X and Y offsets into the Command Input Bar. These are incremental offsets that will enlarge the parting plane in the X and Y directions respectively. Negative values are not allowed. 
Step 4	T M 	Enter 'T', 'M', or 'B'. 'T' creates the parting plane at the top of the volumetric box. 'M' creates the parting plane at the middle of the volumetric box. 'B' creates the parting plane at the bottom of the volumetric box. 

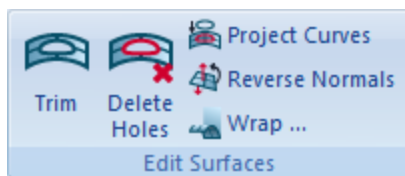


Related Topics

[Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.2 Edit Surfaces

The [Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Edit Surfaces](#) pane with associated functions.



Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar
Edit Surfaces Pane



Related Topics

[Trim Surfaces with Curves](#)

[Delete Holes from Surfaces](#)

[Project Curves onto a Surface](#)

[Reverse Surface Normals](#)

[Wrap a Surface](#)

5.5.2.1 Trim



Trim away sections of surfaces by selecting closed curves that bound those sections.



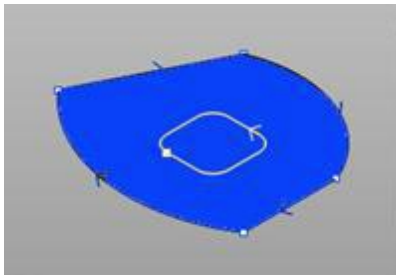
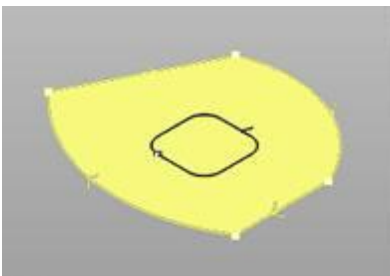
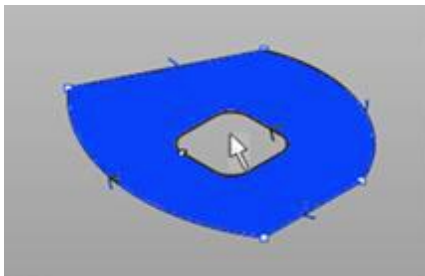
Command Prompts

Trim:: Select cutting objects. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

Trim:: Pick an object to be trimmed.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		None
Step 2		
Final		



Notes

1. When you pick the surface to be trimmed, select the piece of the surface that you want trimmed away. The pick point determines which surface region is trimmed away.



Related Topics

[Edit Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.2.2 Delete Holes



This function will remove holes from a surface.

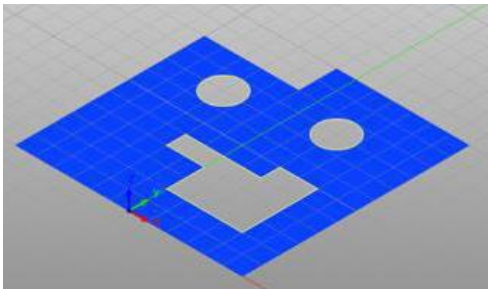
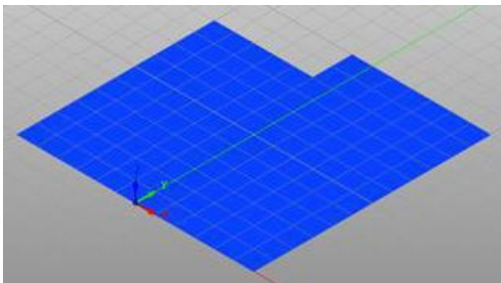


Command Prompts

Delete Holes:: Pick hole edges to delete. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select the edges of the holes that you want removed. 	None
Step 2	When the selection is complete, hit the Right-Mouse Button or Enter to remove the holes. 	



Notes

- 1. This function will not remove holes in mesh surfaces.



Related Topics

[Edit Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.2.3 Project Curves



Project curves along the surface normals onto a surface.



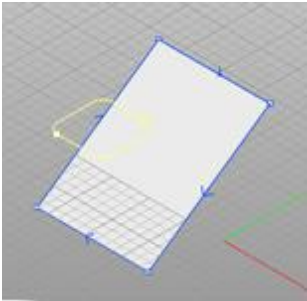
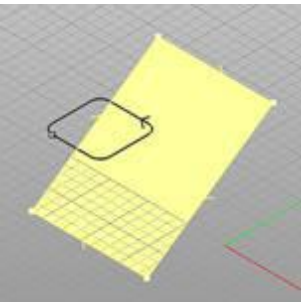
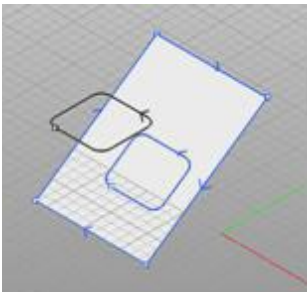
Command Prompts

Project Curves:: Pick curves to be projected. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

Project Curves:: Pick surface for projection.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2		
Final		



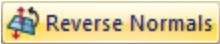
Notes

1. Meshes are not allowed as the projection surface.

 Related Topics

[Edit Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.5.2.4 Reverse Normals

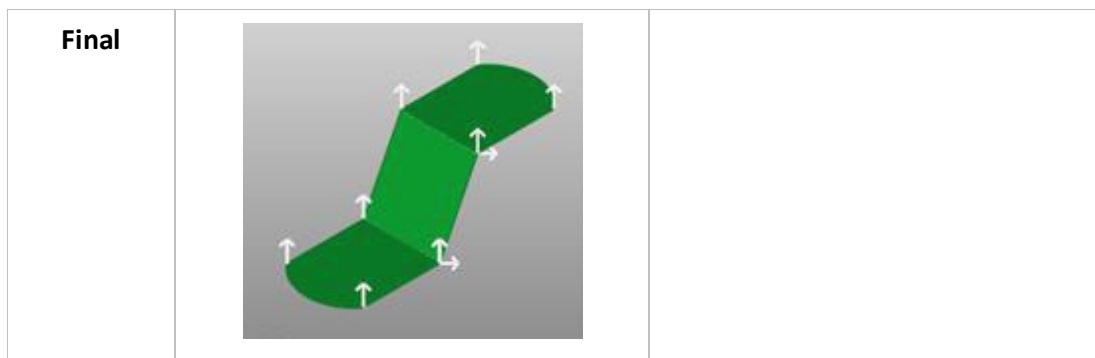
 **Reverse Normals** This function will reverse the normal vectors for each surface selected.

 Command Prompts

Reverse Normals:: Pick surfaces to reverse and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Initial		None
Step 1		



Related Topics

[Edit Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

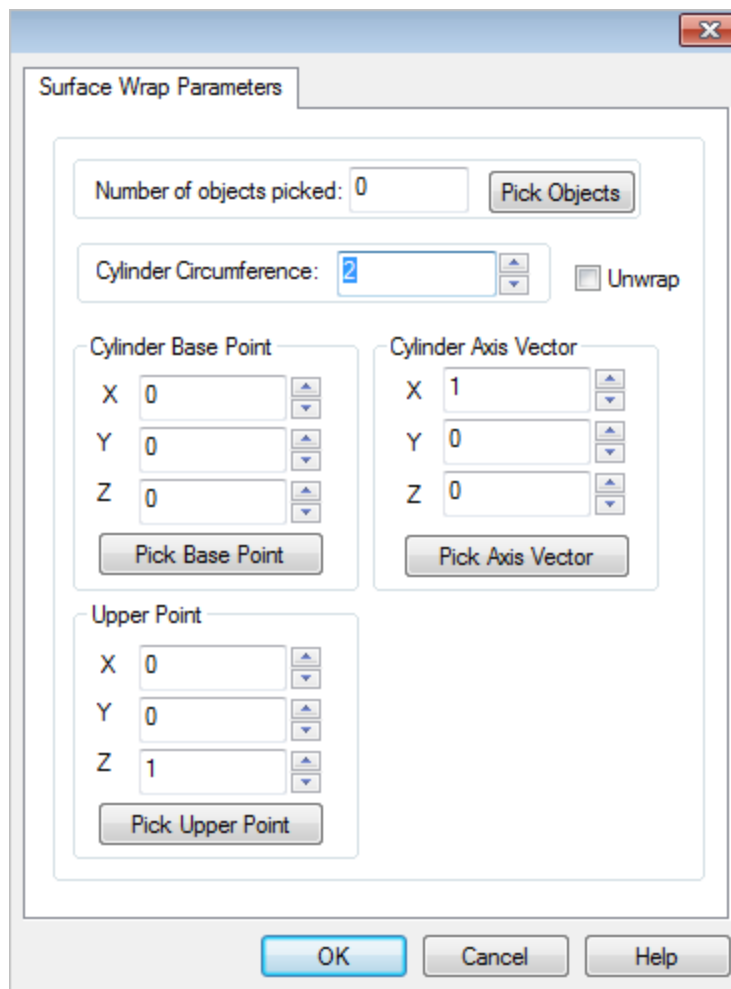
5.5.2.5 Wrap



Wraps a surface onto a construction cylinder whose center line is aligned with one of the principle axes of the [CPlane](#).



Dialog Box: Edit Surface Wrap



The dialog box is titled "Surface Wrap Parameters" and contains several input fields and buttons. At the top, there is a "Number of objects picked:" field with the value "0" and a "Pick Objects" button. Below this is a "Cylinder Circumference:" field with the value "2" and an "Unwrap" checkbox. The "Cylinder Base Point" section has X, Y, and Z fields with values 0, 0, and 0 respectively, and a "Pick Base Point" button. The "Cylinder Axis Vector" section has X, Y, and Z fields with values 1, 0, and 0 respectively, and a "Pick Axis Vector" button. The "Upper Point" section has X, Y, and Z fields with values 0, 0, and 1 respectively, and a "Pick Upper Point" button. At the bottom are "OK", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons.

Dialog Box: Edit Surface Wrap

- **Number of objects picked**
The number of curves selected is displayed. Select the [Pick Curves](#) button to add more curves to the selection.
- **Cylinder Circumference**
Enter a circumference for the wrapped cylinder.
- **Unwrap**
Check this box to unwrap the selected surface.
- **Cylinder Base Point**
Enter the [Cylinder Base Point XYZ](#) coordinates or select the [Pick Base Point](#) button and then select a point to locate the base of the cylinder.
- **Cylinder Axis Vector**
Enter the [Cylinder Axis Vector XYZ](#) coordinates or select the [Pick Axis Vector](#) button and then select a start point and end point to define the axis.

- **Upper point**
Enter the **Cylinder Upper Point XYZ** coordinates or select the Pick **Upper Point** button and then select a point to locate the upper point of the cylinder.



Basic Procedure

	Dialog Interaction
Step 1	Select the Pick Objects button and pick the surface to be wrapped. The surface may be pre-selected.
Step 2	Specify the cylinder circumference.
Step 3	Select one of the C-Plane axes that is used as the construction cylinder's axis.
Step 4	Set the cylinder base point
Step 5	Set the cylinder upper point
Step 6	Hit the OK button



Notes

1. The surface to be wrapped must be co-planar and parallel to the **C-Plane**.
2. The surface will be wrapped in a positive direction around the construction cylinder according to the right-hand rule (counter-clockwise).



Related Topics

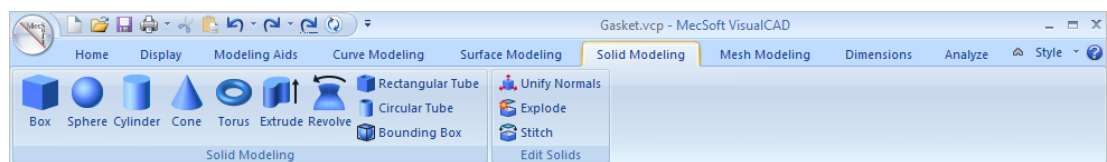
[Edit Surfaces Pane, Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6 Solid Modeling

The **Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar** contains **Solid Modeling** and **Edit Solids** panes and associated functions.



The Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar



Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[Edit Solids Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

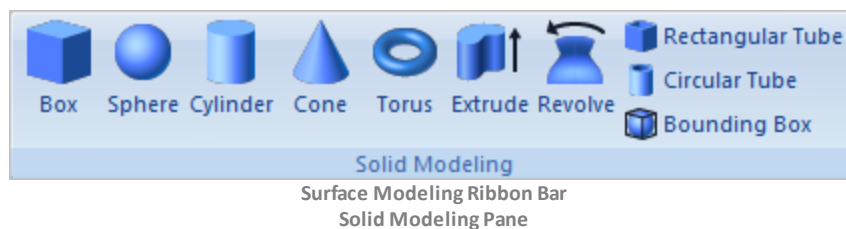
[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.6.1 Solid Modeling

The [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Solid Modeling](#) pane with associated functions. See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



Related Topics

[What is a Solid?](#)

[Create a Solid Box](#)

[Create a Solid Sphere](#)

[Create a Solid Cylinder](#)

[Create a Solid Cone](#)

[Create a Solid Torus](#)

[Create an Extruded Solid](#)

[Create a Revolved Solid](#)

[Create a Solid Rectangular Tube](#)

[Create a Solid Circular Tube](#)

[Create a Solid Bounding Box](#)

[Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.1 Solid Box



Create a [Mesh Solid](#) in the shape of a [rectangular box](#). See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



Command Prompts

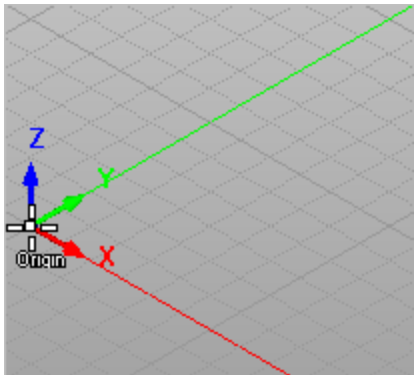
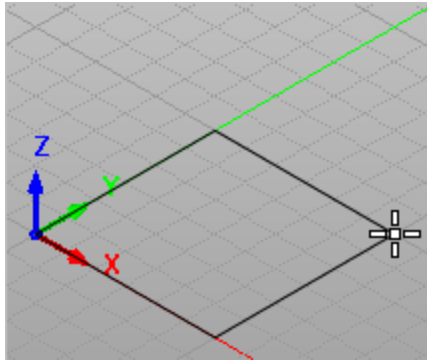
Box:: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z: [0.000,0.000,0.000]

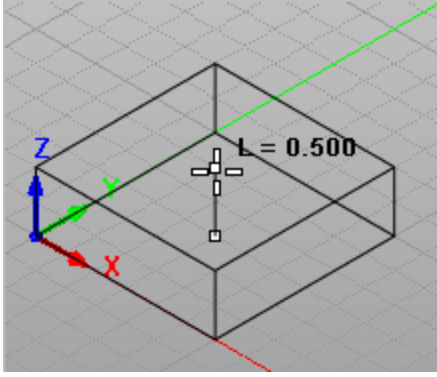
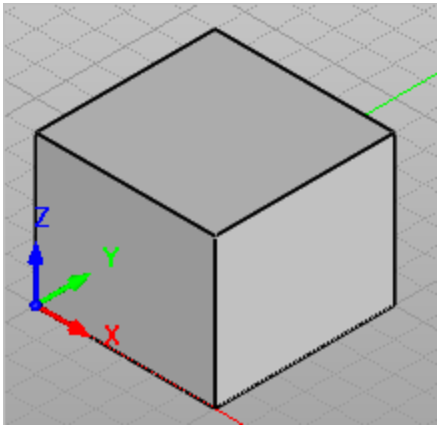
Box:: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Box:: Enter extrusion distance: [L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 0,0,0
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner) 1,1,0

Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the extrusion Length. 1,1,1 or... (Optional) Enter the Length. 4.5
Final		



Notes

1. The bottom of the box will lie in a base plane (parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) of the active view) with its corner at the first point defined.
2. If the second point does not lie on the base plane, it will be projected onto that base plane.



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane](#), [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.2 Solid Sphere



Create a solid in the shape of a [sphere](#). See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



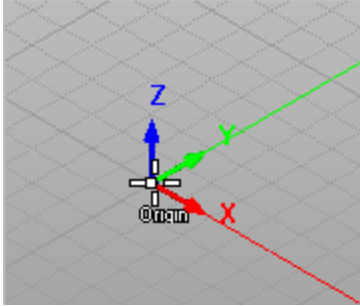
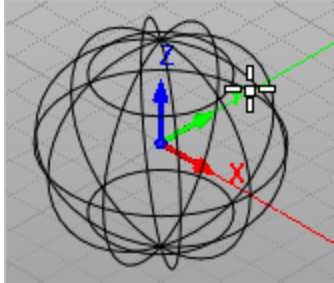
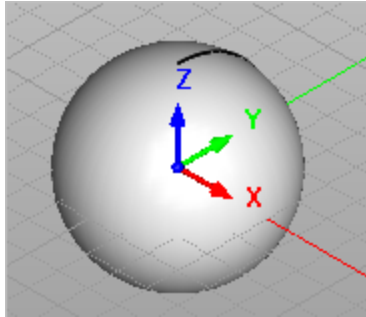
Command Prompts

Sphere:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z::[0.000,0.000,0.000]

Sphere:: Enter radius or pick radius point::[R=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (center). 0,0,0
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (radius point). 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. 2.25
Final		



Notes

1. In [Step 2](#), if a single number is entered, it will be interpreted as the radius. If 2 or 3 numbers are entered, they will be interpreted as the coordinates of the radius point.



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.3 Solid Cylinder



Create a solid in the shape of a [cylinder](#). See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



Command Prompts

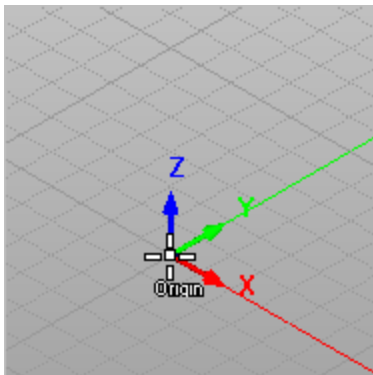
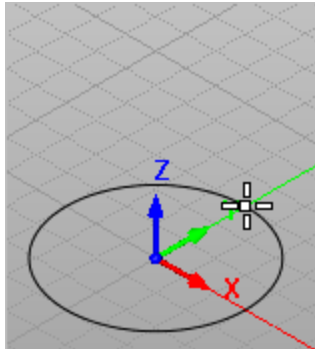
Cylinder:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z::[0.000,0.000,0.000]

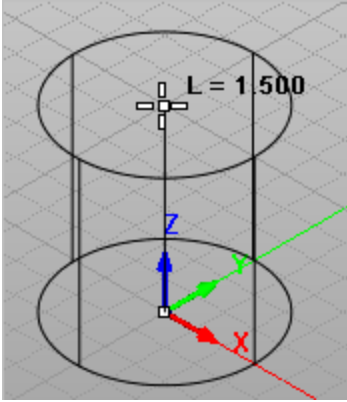
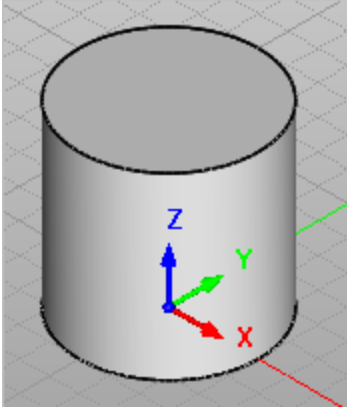
Cylinder:: Enter radius or pick radius point::[R=1.000000]

Cylinder:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (center). 0,0,0
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (radius point). 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. 2.25

Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the third point (height). 1,1,1 or... (Optional) Enter the height. 4.5
Final		



Notes

1. The axis of the cylinder will be normal (perpendicular) to the [Construction Plane](#).



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane](#), [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.4 Solid Cone



Create a mesh that is the shape of a [cone](#). See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



Command Prompts

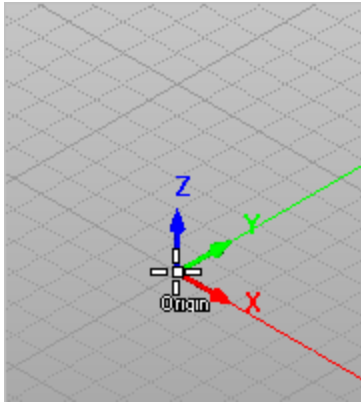
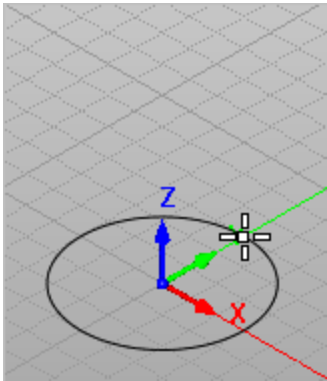
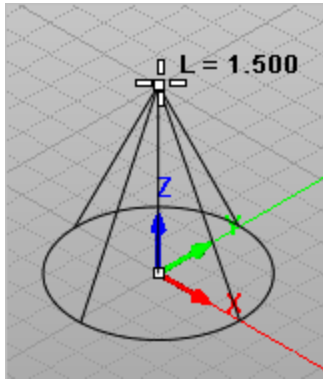
Cone:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z: [0.000,0.000,0.000]

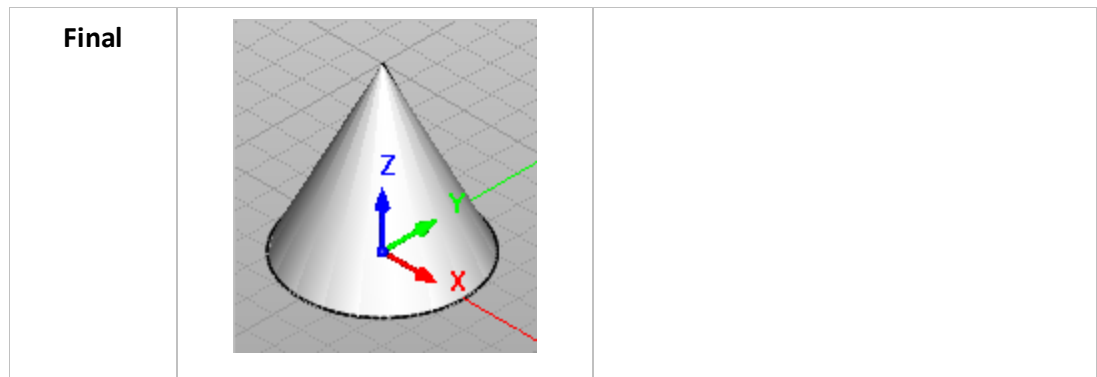
Cone:: Enter radius or pick radius point: [R=1.000000]

Cone:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (center). 0,0,0
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (radius point). 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. 2.25
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the third point (height). 1,1,1 or... (Optional) Enter the height. 4.5



Notes

1. The base plane for the cone will be parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) of the active view when the second point (radius point) is defined.
2. The axis of the cone will be normal (perpendicular) to the base plane.
3. The height of the cone is measured from the base along the axis of the cone.



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane](#), [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.5 Solid Torus



Create a mesh that is the shape of a ring [torus](#). See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



Command Prompts

Torus:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z::[0.000,0.000,0.000]

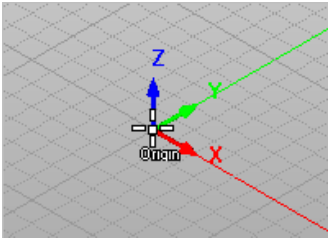
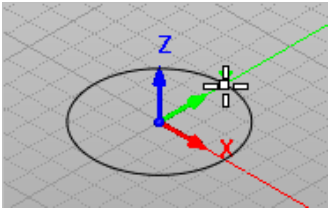
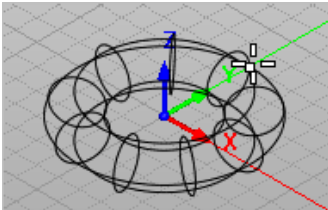
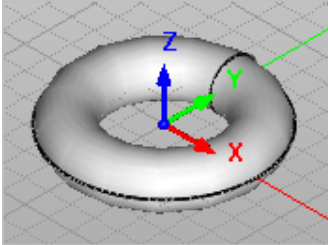
Torus:: Enter radius or pick radius point::[R=1.000000]

Torus:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input

Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (hole center). 0,0,0
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (center-line radius point). 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. 2.25
Step 3		(Optional) Enter the radius of the tube section (tube radius or outer diameter point). 2.25 or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point on the surface (tube radius or outer diameter point). 1,1,0
Final		



Notes

1. The plane of the circular center line of the torus will be parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) of the active view when the second point (center line radius point) is defined.



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.6 Solid Extrusion



Create a solid by **extruding** a closed curve (or surface edge) set. See What is a Solid? for information about **Meshes** and **Solids** in **VisualCAD**.



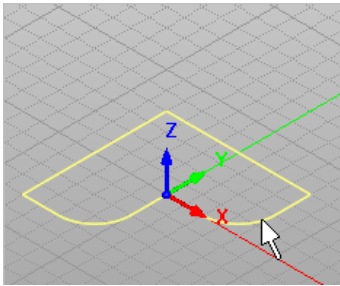
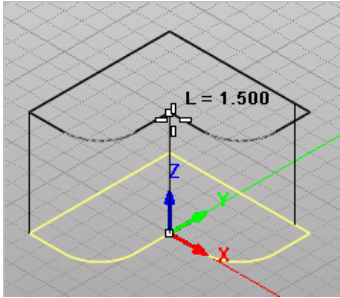
Command Prompts

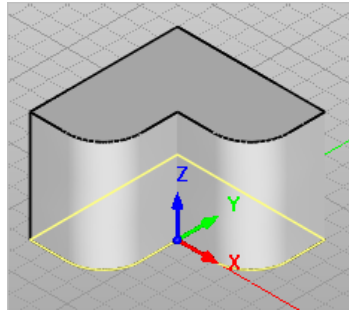
Extrude:: Pick curves to extrude and hit right mouse when done

Extrude:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

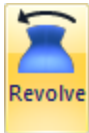
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		none
Step 2		(Optional) Enter the extrusion distance. 2.25 or.. (Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the extrusion distance point. 1,1,1

Step Final**Notes**

1. The curve (or surface edge) set may be pre-selected.
2. If the curve (or surface edge) set is not coplanar, each curve (or surface edge) is projected onto the [Construction Plane](#).
3. The extrusion is performed normal to the [Construction Plane](#).

**Related Topics**

[Solid Modeling Pane](#), [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.7 Solid Revolve

Create a solid by [revolving](#) a closed curve (or surface edge) around an axis. See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).

**Command Prompts**

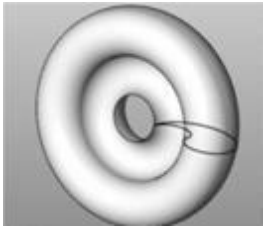
Revolve:: Pick curve to revolve

Revolve:: Pick start point of axis of revolution or enter coordinates x,y and z

Revolve:: Pick end point of axis of revolution or enter coordinates x,y and z

**Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

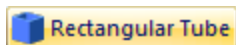
Step 1		none
Step 2		
Step 3		
Final		



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.8 Solid Rectangular Tube



Create a solid that is the shape of a **rectangular tube** with constant wall thickness. See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in VisualCAD.



Command Prompts

Rectangular Tube:: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z::[0.000,0.000,0.000]

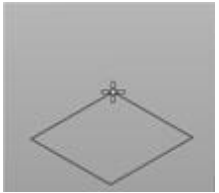
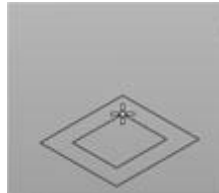
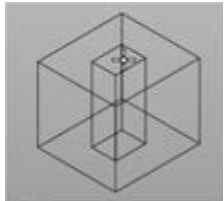
Rectangular Tube:: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Rectangular Tube:: Enter offset distance::[O=0.000000]

Rectangular Tube:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

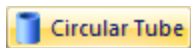
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the third point (wall thickness).  or... (Optional) Enter the wall thickness. 
Step 4		(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the fourth point (height).  or... (Optional) Enter the extrusion distance. 



Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.9 Solid Circular Tube



Create a solid that is the shape of a **circular tube** (pipe). See What is a Solid? for information about **Meshes** and **Solids** in **VisualCAD**.



Command Prompts

Circular Tube:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z::[0.000,0.000,0.000]

Circular Tube:: Enter radius or pick radius point::[R=1.000000]

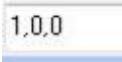
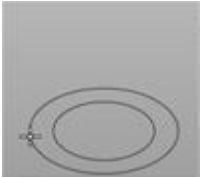
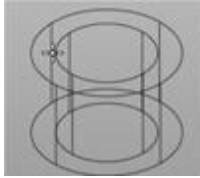
Circular Tube:: Enter radius or pick radius point::[R=1.250000]

Circular Tube:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (hole center). 0,0,0
Step 2		(Optional) Enter the first radius of the tube. 2.25 or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (first radius point).

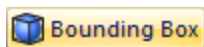
		
Step 3		(Optional) Enter the other radius of the tube.  or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point (other radius point). 
Step 4		(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the fourth point (height).  or... (Optional) Enter the extrusion distance. 
Final		

**Notes**

1. The base plane for the circular tube will be parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) of the active view when the second point (radius point) is defined.
2. The axis of the circular tube will be normal (perpendicular) to the base plane.

**Related Topics**

[Solid Modeling Pane](#), [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.1.10 Solid Bounding Box**Bounding Box**

Create a [rectangular box](#) solid that encompasses selected geometry objects. See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



Command Prompts

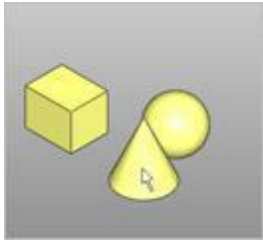
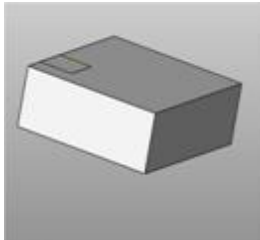
Bounding Box: Pick Objects for command. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.

Bounding Box: Enter Orientation [CPlane=C,World=W]

Bounding Box: Enter offsets in X & Y Direction [X=0.000000,Y=0.000000,Z=0.000000]



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select all objects to be included in the volumetric box. Hit Right Mouse Button or ENTER to end the selection. 	
Step 2		Enter 'C' or 'W'. 'C' orients the volumetric box to the Construction Plane. 'W' orients the volumetric box to the World Coordinate System.
Step 3		Enter X, Y and Z offsets. These are incremental offsets that will enlarge the volumetric box in the X, Y and Z directions respectively. Negative values are not allowed.
Final		

 Notes

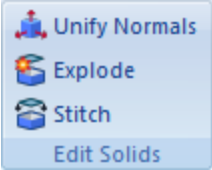
1. All geometry types are permitted.

 Related Topics

[Solid Modeling Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.2 Edit Solids

The [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Edit Solids](#) pane with associated functions. See [What is a Solid?](#) for information about [Meshes](#) and [Solids](#) in [VisualCAD](#).



 Related Topics

- What is a Solid?
- [Unify Surface Normals](#)
- [Explode Surfaces](#)
- [Stitch Surfaces into a Solid](#)
- [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.2.1 Unify Normals



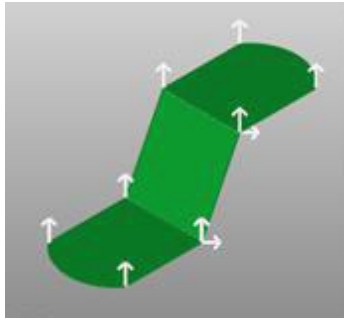
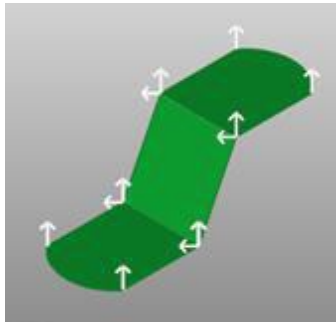
For a set of surfaces that are adjacent and share edges, this function will make all surface normals consistent in direction, relative to the other surfaces.

 Command Prompts

Unify Normals:: Pick surfaces to be oriented uniformly and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

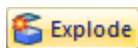
Initial		none
Step 1		
Final		



Related Topics

[Edit Solids Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.2.2 Explode



This function will separate all the surfaces of a shell or poly-surface into independent surfaces with no topological relationships to each other.

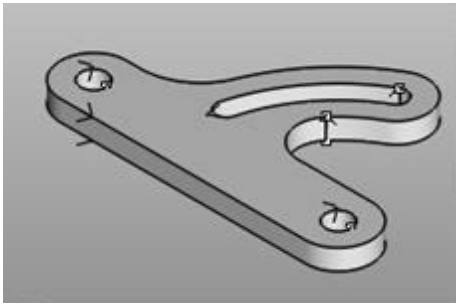
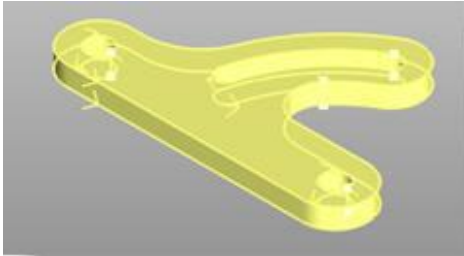
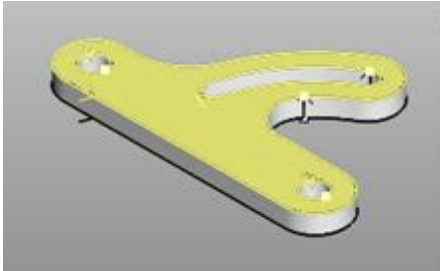


Command Prompts

Explode:: Pick surfaces to explode. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Initial		none
Step 1	Select poly-surface part. 	
Final	After Explode, each surface is independent from others. 	

**Notes**

1. Meshes are not allowed for the Explode function.

**Related Topics**

[Edit Solids Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.6.2.3 Stitch

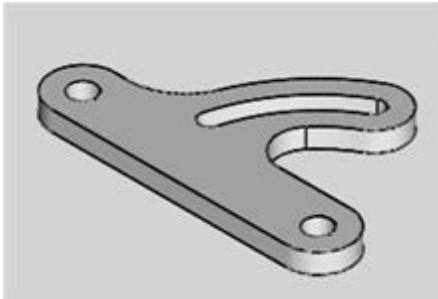
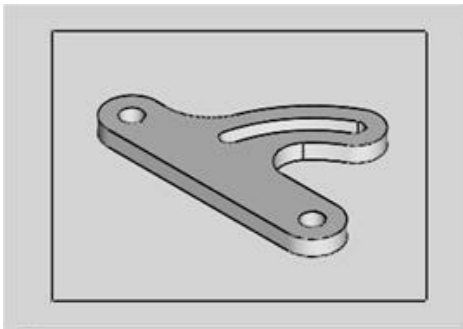
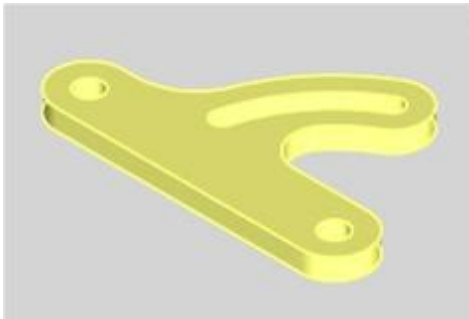
This function will join selected surfaces to form a shell or poly-surface.

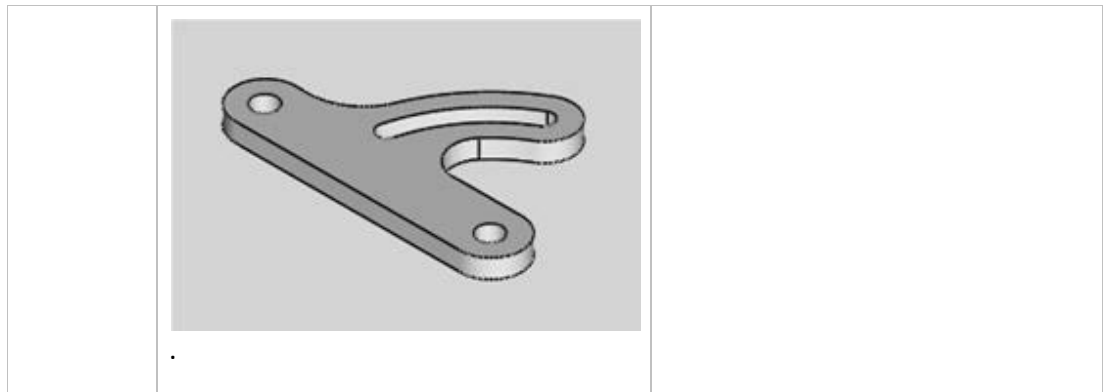
**Command Prompts**

Stitch:: Pick surfaces to Stitch. Hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Initial		none
Step 1	Select surface(s) part. You can either use single select and pick individual surfaces or draw a window to select all surfaces. 	
	Selected surface(s) are now highlighted. 	
Final	After Stitch, selected surfaces are merged to shell or poly-surface.	



Notes

1. Meshes are not allowed for the Stitch function.



Related Topics

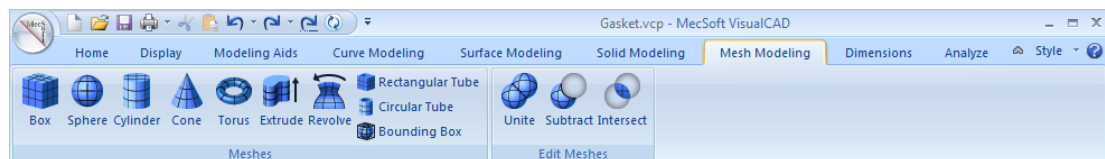
[Edit Solids Pane, Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7 Mesh Modeling

The [Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) contains [Meshes](#) and [Edit Meshes](#) panes and associated functions.



The Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar



Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[Edit Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

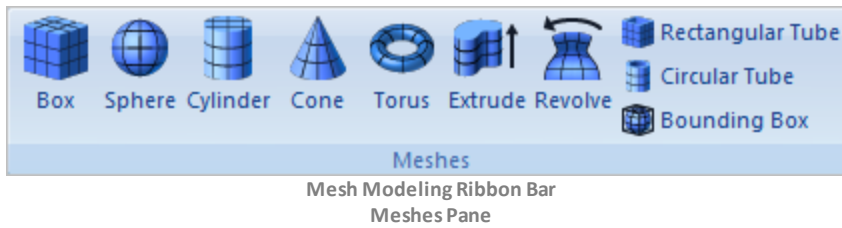
[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.7.1 Meshes

The **Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar** contains the following **Meshes** pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Create a Mesh Box](#)

[Create a Mesh Sphere](#)

[Create a Mesh Cylinder](#)

[Create a Mesh Cone](#)

[Create a Mesh Torus](#)

[Create a Rectangular Tube Mesh](#)

[Create a Mesh Circular Tube](#)

[Create Extruded Mesh](#)

[Create a Revolved Mesh](#)

[Create a Mesh Bounding Box](#)

[Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.1.1 Box

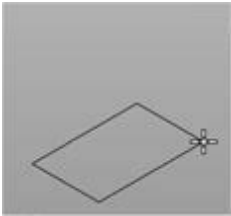
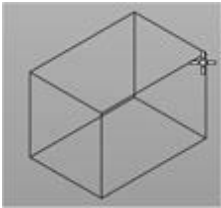
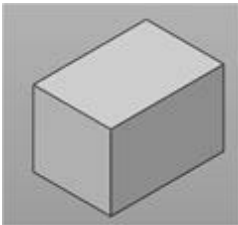


Create a mesh that is the shape of a **rectangular box**. The bottom of the box will lie in a base plane (parallel to the **Construction Plane** of the selecting view) with its corner at the first point defined. If the second point does not lie on the base plane, it will be projected onto that base plane.



Basic Procedure

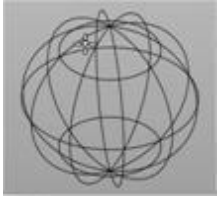
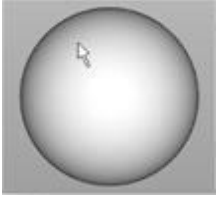
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first corner of the base rectangle.	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the first point. Example: 0,0,0

		
Step 2	Pick the diagonal corner of the base rectangle. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). Example: 1,1,0
Step 3	Pick a point to define the height of the box. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the third point (height). Example: 1,1,1 <i>or...</i> (Optional) Enter the height. Example: 4.5
Final		

**Related Topics**[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)**5.7.1.2 Sphere**

Create a mesh that is the shape of a **sphere**. In Step 2 (see below), if a single number is entered, it will be interpreted as the radius. If 2 or 3 numbers are entered, they will be interpreted as the coordinates of the radius point.

**Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the center point for the sphere. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the first point (center). Example: 0,0,0
Step 2	Pick the radius point for the sphere. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the second point (radius point). Example: 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. Example: 2.25
Final		



Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.1.3 Cylinder

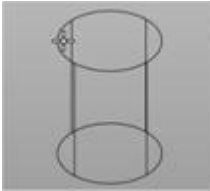
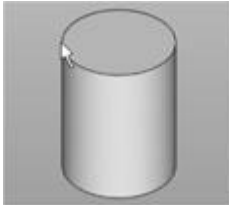


Create a mesh that is the shape of a **cylinder**. The axis of the cylinder will be normal (perpendicular) to the **Construction Plane**.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the center point of the base circle.	(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (center). Example: 0,0,0

		
Step 2	Pick the radius point of the base circle. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (radius point). Example: 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. Example: 2.25
Step 3	Pick the length point of the cylinder. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point (height). Example: 1,1,1 or... (Optional) Enter the height. Example: 4.5
Final		



Related Topics

[Meshes Pane](#), [Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

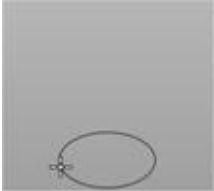
5.7.1.4 Cone



Create a mesh that is the shape of a **cone**. The base plane for the cone will be parallel to the **Construction Plane** of the active view when the second point (radius point) is defined. The axis of the cone will be normal (perpendicular) to the base plane. The height of the cone is measured from the base along the axis of the cone.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the center point of the base circle. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the first point (center). Example: 0,0,0
Step 2	Pick the radius point of the base circle. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the second point (radius point). Example: 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. Example: 2.25
Step 3	Pick the length point of the cone. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the third point (height). Example: 1,1,1 or... (Optional) Enter the height. Example: 4.5
Final		



Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

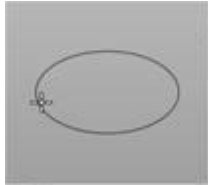
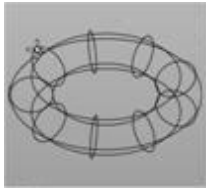
5.7.1.5 Torus



Create a mesh that is the shape of a ring **torus**. The plane of the circular center line of the torus will be parallel to the **Construction Plane** of the active view when the second point (center line radius point) is defined.



Basic Procedure

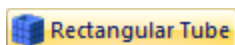
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the center point of the torus. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the first point (hole center). Example: 0,0,0
Step 2	Pick the radius point of the torus. 	(Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the second point (center line radius point). Example: 1,1,0 or... (Optional) Enter the radius. Example: 2.25
Step 3	Pick the second radius (i.e., cross-section radius) point of the torus. 	(Optional) Enter the radius of the tube section. Example: 2.25 or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, Z coordinates for the third point on the surface (tube radius point). Example: 1,1,0
Final		



Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

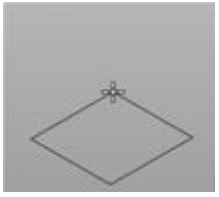
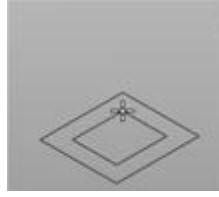
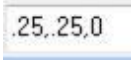
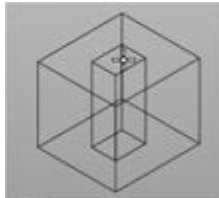
5.7.1.6 Rectangular Tube

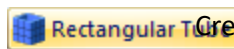


Create a mesh that is the shape of a **rectangular tube** with constant wall thickness.



Basic Procedure

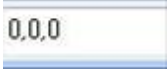
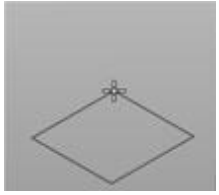
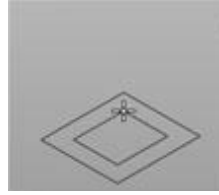
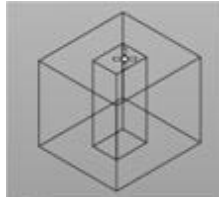
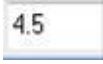
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X , Y , [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X , Y , [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X , Y , [Z] coordinates for the third point (wall thickness).  or... (Optional) Enter the wall thickness. 
Step 4		(Optional) Enter X , Y , [Z] coordinates for the fourth point (height).  or... (Optional) Enter the extrusion distance. 
Final		



Create a mesh that is the shape of a **rectangular tube** with constant wall thickness.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point (wall thickness).  or... (Optional) Enter the wall thickness. 
Step 4		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the fourth point (height).  or... (Optional) Enter the extrusion distance. 

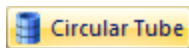
Final		
--------------	---	--



Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

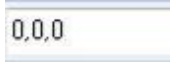
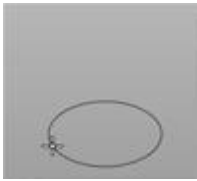
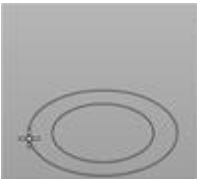
5.7.1.7 Circular Tube

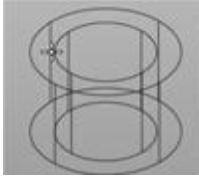


Create a mesh that is the shape of a **circular tube** (pipe).



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point (hole center). 
Step 2		(Optional) Enter the first radius of the tube.  or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (first radius point). 
Step 3		(Optional) Enter the other radius of the tube.  or... (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the third point (other radius point).

		
Step 4		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the fourth point (height).  or... (Optional) Enter the extrusion distance. 
Final		

**Notes**

1. The base plane for the circular tube will be parallel to the [Construction Plane](#) of the active view when the second point (radius point) is defined.
2. The axis of the circular tube will be normal (perpendicular) to the base plane.

**Related Topics**

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.1.8 Extrude

Create a mesh by [extruding](#) a closed curve (or surface edge) set.

**Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick curves (or surface edges) to extrude and hit right mouse when done	

		
Step 2		(Optional) Enter the extrusion distance. 2.25 or.. (Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the extrusion distance point. 1,1,1
Final		

Notes

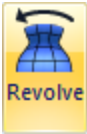
1. The curves (or surface edges) may be pre-selected.
2. If the curves (or surface edges) are not coplanar, they are projected onto the [Construction Plane](#).
3. The extrusion is performed normal to the [Construction Plane](#).

Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.1.9

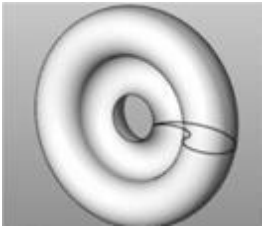
Revolve



Create a mesh by **revolving** a closed curve (or surface edge) around an axis.

Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
--	-------------	---------------

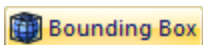
Step 1	Pick curve to revolve 	none
Step 2	Pick start point of axis of revolution or enter coordinates x,y and z 	
Step 3	Pick end point of axis of revolution or enter coordinates x,y and z 	
Final		



Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

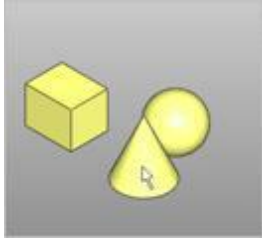
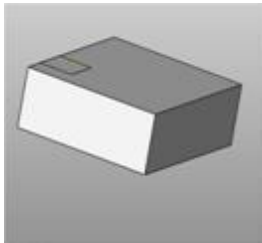
5.7.1.10 Bounding Box



Create a **rectangular box** mesh that encompasses selected geometry objects.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select all objects to be included in the volumetric box. Hit Right Mouse Button or ENTER to end the selection. 	
Step 2		Enter 'C' or 'W'. 'C' orients the volumetric box to the Construction Plane. 'W' orients the volumetric box to the World Coordinate System.
Step 3		Enter X, Y and Z offsets. These are incremental offsets that will enlarge the volumetric box in the X, Y and Z directions respectively. Negative values are not allowed.
Final		



Notes

1. All geometry types are permitted.

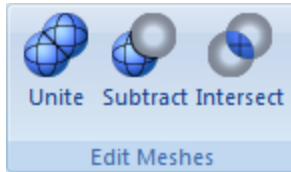


Related Topics

[Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.2 Edit Meshes

The **Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar** contains the following **Edit Meshes** pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Unite Two Mesh Solid Bodies](#)

[Subtract one Mesh Solid Body from another](#)

[Intersect 2 Mesh Solids](#)

[Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.2.1 Unite



Unite two mesh objects into one mesh object. The first mesh object may be pre-selected. Unite two or more mesh objects into one mesh object. The first set of mesh objects may be pre-selected. A **Mesh Revolve** that is open-ended (not a full 360 degrees) cannot be used in this function.

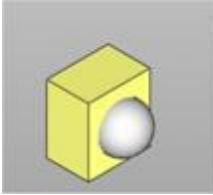
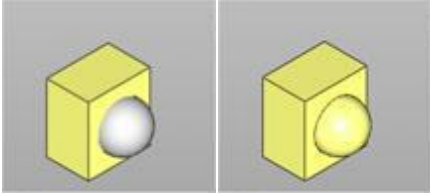
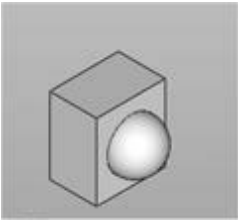
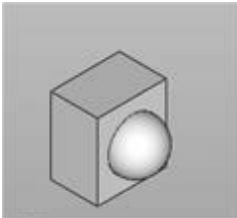


Meshes Must be Closed: If any selected mesh does not form closed volume (i.e., there are any open edges) the **Mesh Boolean** operations (i.e., **Unite**, **Subtract** or **Intersect**) will fail. This can sometimes occur with imported data files. If this occurs, use the **Auto Fix** command on each mesh before using the **Unit**, **Subtract** or **Intersect Mesh** commands. You can also use the **Diagnose** command to check for mesh errors.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first mesh to unite.	none

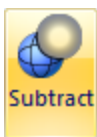
	 Select meshes to unite. 	
Step 2	Pick the second mesh solid. The Unite is performed automatically.   Right-click or press <Enter> to perform the unite. 	



Related Topics

[Edit Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.2.2 Subtract



Subtract one mesh volume from another. The two mesh objects must intersect. The first mesh may be pre-selected. The second mesh will be deleted after the subtraction. Subtract one or more mesh volumes from another. At least one mesh in each selection must intersect. The first set of meshes may be pre-selected. The second set of meshes will be deleted after the subtraction. A **Mesh Revolve** that is open-ended (not a full 360 degrees) cannot be used in this **Subtract** function.

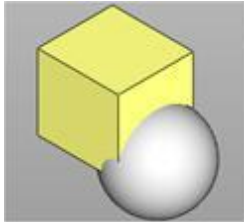
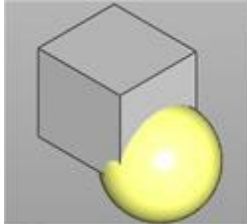
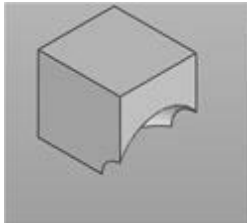


Meshes Must be Closed: If any selected mesh does not form closed volume (i.e., there are any open edges) the **Mesh**

Boolean operations (i.e., [Unite](#), [Subtract](#) or [Intersect](#)) will fail. This can sometimes occur with imported data files. If this occurs, use the [Auto Fix](#) command on each mesh before using the [Unit](#), [Subtract](#) or [Intersect Mesh](#) commands. You can also use the [Diagnose](#) command to check for mesh errors.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select the mesh object to subtract from. Select one or more mesh objects to subtract from. Right-click or press <Enter> when done. 	none
Step 2	Select the mesh object to subtract. Select one or more mesh objects to subtract. Right-click or press <Enter> when done. 	
Final	The Subtract is performed automatically. 	



Related Topics

[Edit Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.7.2.3 Intersect



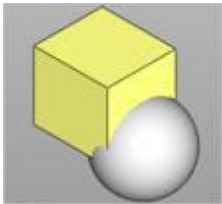
Create a mesh that represents the volume that is shared between two intersecting meshes. The first mesh may be pre-selected. Both of the original meshes will be deleted after the [Intersect](#) function is completed. Only their shared volume will remain. Create a mesh that represents the volume that is shared between two or more intersecting meshes. The first set of meshes may be pre-selected. Each of the original meshes will be deleted after the [Intersect](#) function is completed. Only their one shared volume mesh will remain. A [Mesh Revolve](#) that is open-ended (not a full 360 degrees) cannot be used in this [Intersect](#) function.

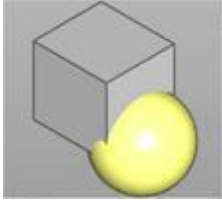


Mesher Must be Closed: If any selected mesh does not form closed volume (i.e., there are any open edges) the [Mesh Boolean](#) operations (i.e., [Unite](#), [Subtract](#) or [Intersect](#)) will fail. This can sometimes occur with imported data files. If this occurs, use the [Auto Fix](#) command on each mesh before using the [Unit](#), [Subtract](#) or [Intersect Mesh](#) commands. You can also use the [Diagnose](#) command to check for mesh errors.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select the first mesh object to intersect. Select the first set of mesh objects to intersect. Right-click or press <Enter> when done. 	none
Step 2	Select the second mesh object.	

	Select the second set of mesh objects. Right-click or press <Enter> when done. 	
Final	The resulting mesh represents their shared volume. 	



Related Topics

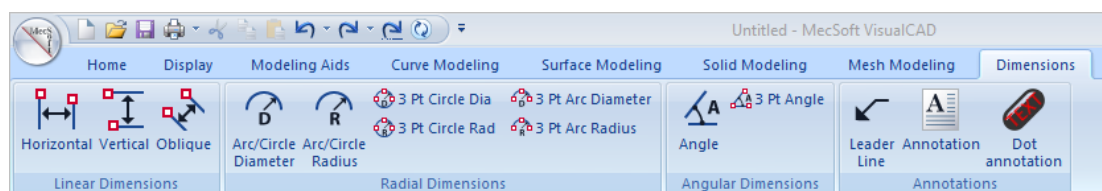
[Edit Meshes Pane, Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8 Dimensions

The [Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#) contains [Linear Dimensions](#), [Radial Dimensions](#), [Angular Dimensions](#) and [Annotations](#) panes and associated functions.



The Dimensions Ribbon Bar



Dimensions Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Linear Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

[Radial Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

[Angular Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

[Annotations Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

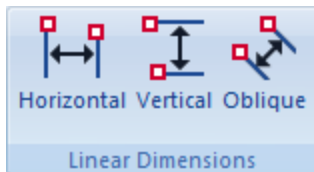
[The Ribbon Bar](#)

[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.8.1 Linear Dimensions



The [Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Linear Dimensions](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

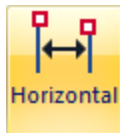
[Create a Horizontal Dimension](#)

[Create a Vertical Dimension](#)

[Create an Oblique Dimension](#)

[Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.1.1 Horizontal Dimension



Creates a linear dimension label horizontally.



More Information

Depending on the view, the horizontal will be parallel to different principle axes (x, y, or z). The horizontal direction is whichever axis is horizontal when a view is first started. For example, the Iso-view has the z-plane as a construction plane and the horizontal direction is parallel to the x-axis. Meanwhile, the right-view has the x-plane as a construction plane with the horizontal direction parallel to the y-axis. If the view is rotated, the horizontal stays with the construction plane. If the construction plane is modified, then horizontal direction is then modified.

Two points are selected and they are projected onto a horizontal line. The dimension is measured from the separation of these projected points. In other words, only the distance along the horizontal direction is measured.

The label can be slid vertically so that its projection line intersects the mouse. The picked point determines where the label appears. The units are included.



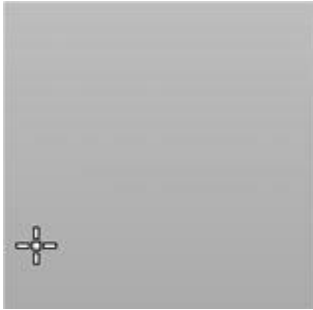
Command Prompts

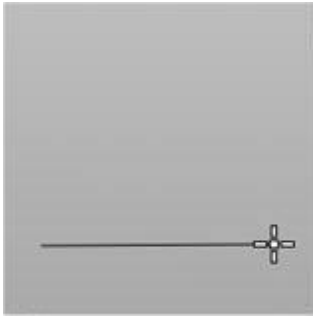
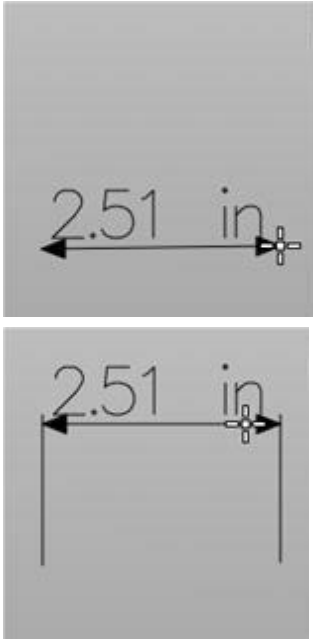
Horizontal:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Horizontal:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z



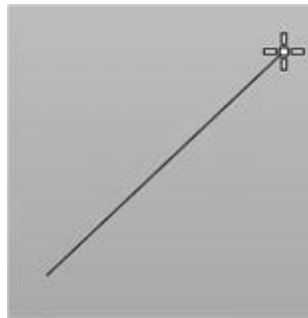
Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first point or type in the coordinates into the Command Input Bar. 	None
Step 2	Pick the second point or type in the coordinates.	

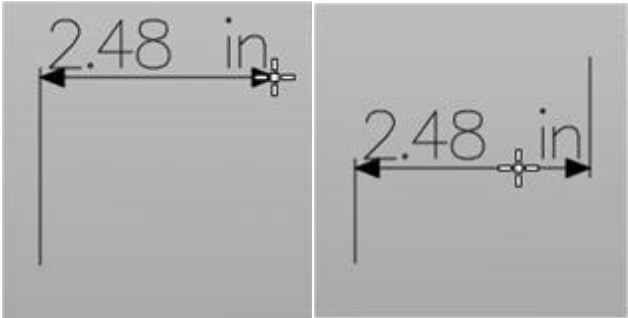
		
Step 3	Pick a point to determine the vertical position of the label. 	

**Notes**

1. Even if the picked points are not at the same level, the points will be projected down onto a horizontal line.



2. Here is the result.



 Related Topics

[Linear Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.1.2 Vertical Dimension



Creates a linear dimension label vertically.

 More Information

Depending on the view, the vertical will be parallel to different principle axes (x, y, or z). The vertical direction is whichever axis is vertical when a view is first started. For example, the Iso-view has the z-plane as a construction plane and the vertical direction is parallel to the y-axis. Meanwhile, the right-view has the x-plane as a construction plane with the vertical direction parallel to the z-axis. If the view is rotated, the vertical stays with the construction plane. If the construction plane is modified, then vertical direction is then modified.

Two points are selected and they are projected onto a vertical line. The dimension is measured from the separation of these projected points. In other words, only the distance along the horizontal direction is measured.

The label can be slid horizontally so that its projection line intersects the mouse. The picked point determines where the label appears. The units are included.

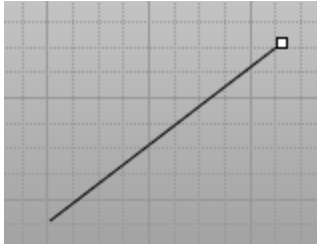
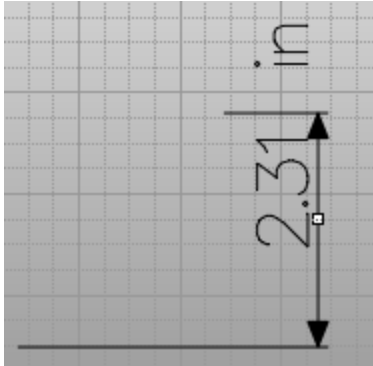
 Command Prompts

Vertical:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Vertical:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

 Basic Procedure

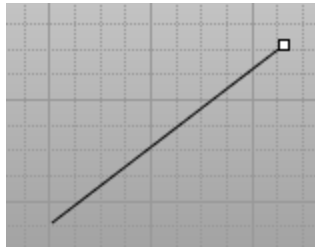
	Screen Pick	Command Input

Step 1	Pick the first point or type in the coordinates into the Command Input Bar. 	None
Step 2	Pick the second point or type in the coordinates. 	
Step 3	Pick a point to determine the vertical position of the label. 	

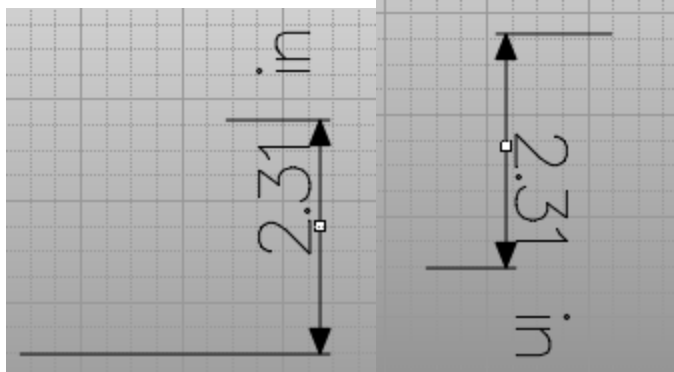


Notes

1. Even if the picked points are not at the same level, the points will be projected down onto a horizontal line.



Here is the result.



Related Topics

[Linear Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.1.3 Oblique Dimension



Creates a linear dimension label at an angle. Two points are selected. The three-dimensional distance between them is computed and is the number displayed. The label can be slid normally (perpendicular) to the line connecting the two points. The units are included.



Command Prompts

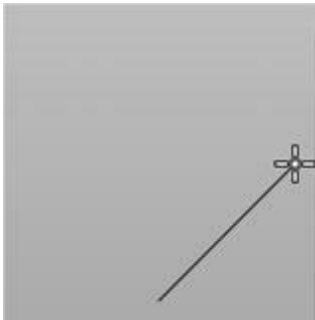
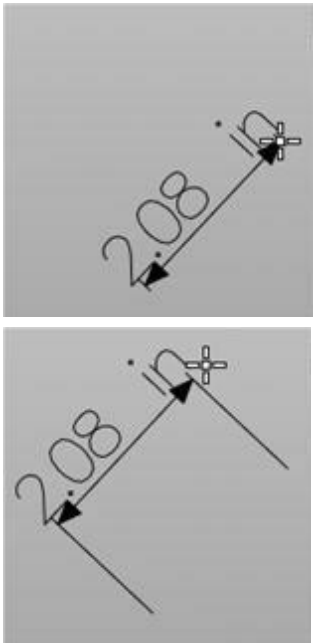
Oblique:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Oblique:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first point or type in the coordinates into the Command Input Bar.	None

		
Step 2	Pick the second point or type in the coordinates. 	
Step 3	Pick a point to determine the offset position of the label. 	

[Related Topics](#)

5.8.2 Radial Dimensions

The [Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Radial Dimensions](#) pane with associated functions.



 Related Topics

- [Create an Arc Circle/Diameter Dimension](#)
- [Create an Arc Circle/Radius Dimension](#)
- [Create a 3-Point Circular Diameter Dimension](#)
- [Create a 3-Point Circular Radius Dimension](#)
- [Create a 3-Point Arc Diameter Dimension](#)
- [Create a 3 Point Arc Radius Dimension](#)
- [Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.2.1 Arc/Circle Diameter



Create a dimension label for an arc. It measures the diameter of the circle of which the arc is a part. The letter ‘D’ appears in the label to show that it is measuring the diameter.

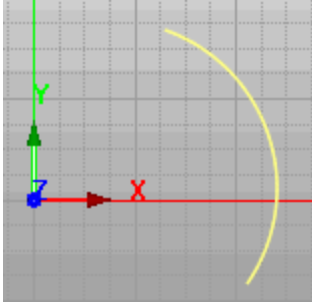
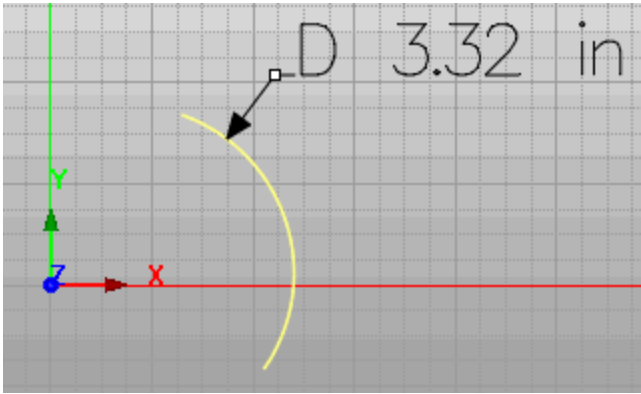
An arrow specifies which arc is labeled. The text is always horizontal. Both are always in the plane of the arc. Both can be slid around the arc. The units are included.

 Command Prompts

- Circle:: Pick the arc to dimension
- Circle:: Enter dimension point

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Inpu
--	-------------	--------------

Step 1	Pick the arc or circle to dimension. 	None
Step 2	Select a point to locate the radial dimension. 	



Related Topics

[Radial Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.2.2 Arc/Circle Radius



Create a dimension label for an arc. It measures the radius of the circle of which the arc is a part. The letter 'R' appears in the label to show that it is measuring the radius.

An arrow specifies which arc is labeled. The text is always horizontal. Both are always in the plane of the arc. Both can be slid around the arc. The units are included.



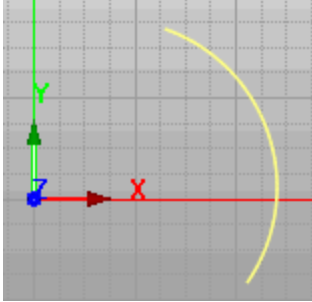
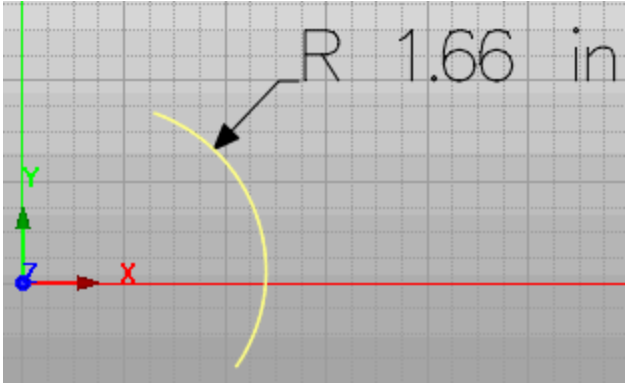
Command Prompts

Arc Diameter:: Pick the arc to dimension

Arc Diameter:: Enter dimension point



Basic Procedure

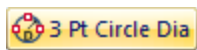
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the arc or circle to dimension. 	None
Step 2	Select a point to locate the radial dimension. 	



Related Topics

[Radial Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.2.3 3 Pt Circle Dia



Create a dimension label for a circle. It measures the diameter of the circle. The letter 'D' appears in the label to show that it is measuring the diameter.

An arrow specifies which circle is labeled and is always radial. The text is always horizontal. Both are always in the plane of the circle. Both can be slid around the circle. The units are included.

Note: You can use points as input to this command.



Command Prompts

3 Pt Circle Dia: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y,z

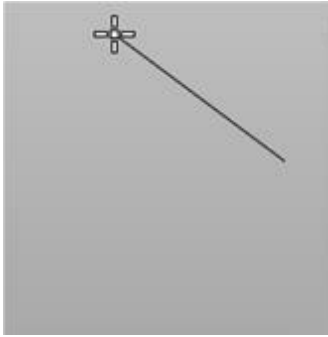
3 Pt Circle Dia: Pick second point or enter coordinates x,y,z

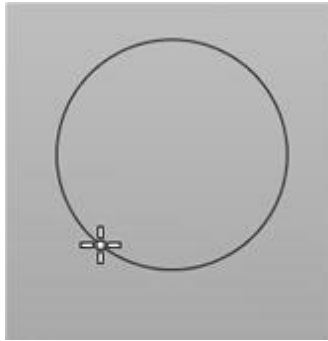
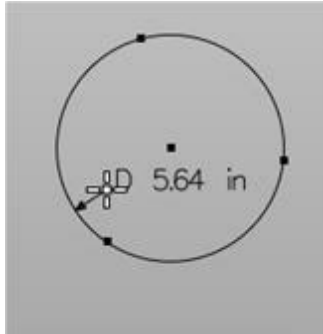
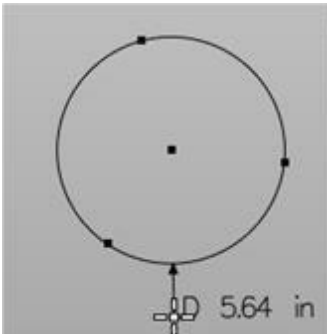
3 Pt Circle Dia:: Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y,z

3 Pt Circle Dia:: Pick third point or enter the dimension point



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first point on the circle or type in the coordinates into the Command Input Bar. 	None
Step 2	Pick the second point on the circle or type in coordinates. 	
Step 3	Pick the third point on the circle or type in coordinates.	

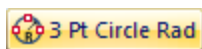
		
Step 4	Pick the endpoint of the arrow which points at the circle. This is also where the text appears.  	



Related Topics

[Radial Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.2.4 3 Pt Circle Rad



Create a dimension label for a circle. It measures the radius of the circle. The letter 'R' appears in the label to show that it is measuring the radius.

An arrow specifies which circle is labeled and is always radial. The text is always horizontal. Both are always in the plane of the circle. Both can be slid around the circle. The units are included.

Note: You can use points as input to this command.



Command Prompts

3 Pt Circle Rad:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y,z

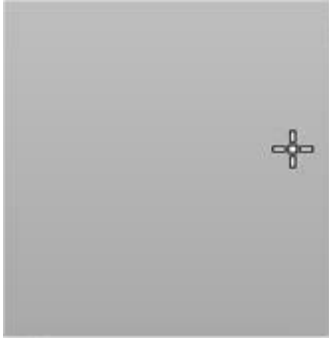
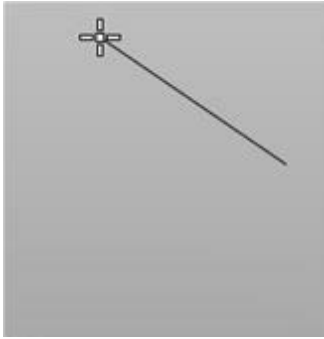
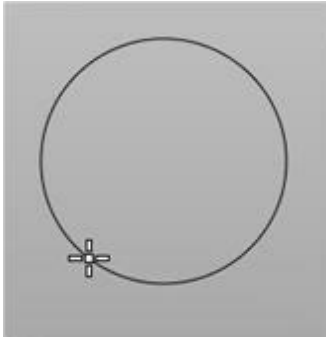
3 Pt Circle Rad:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x,y,z

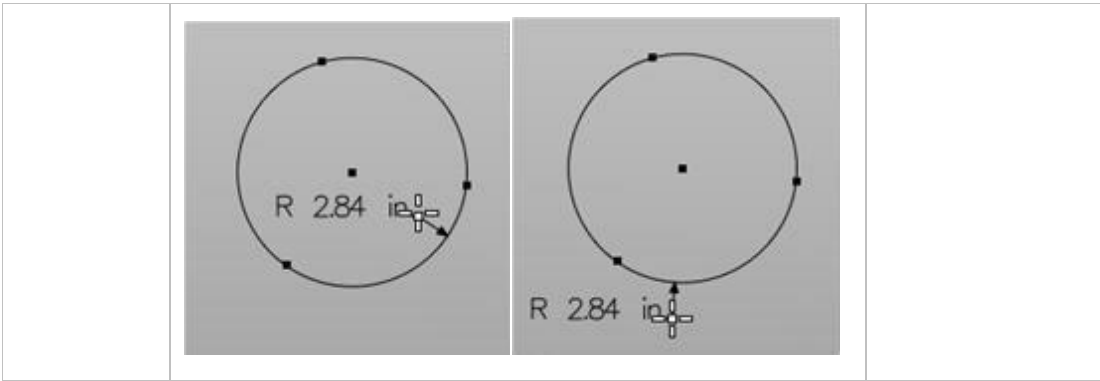
3 Pt Circle Rad:: Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y,z

3 Pt Circle Rad:: Pick third point or enter the dimension point



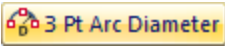
Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first point on the circle or type in the coordinates into the Command Input Bar. 	None
Step 2	Pick the second point on the circle or type in coordinates. 	
Step 3	Pick the third point on the circle or type in coordinates. 	
Step 4	Pick the endpoint of the arrow which points at the circle. This is also where the text appears.	



 **Related Topics**
[Radial Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.2.5 3 Pt Arc Diameter



Create a dimension label for an arc. It measures the diameter of the circle of which the arc is a part. The letter ‘D’ appears in the label to show that it is measuring the diameter.

An arrow specifies which arc is labeled. The text is always horizontal. Both are always in the plane of the arc. Both can be slid around the arc. The units are included. **Note:** You can use points as input to this command.

 Command Prompts

3 Pt Arc Diameter:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y,z

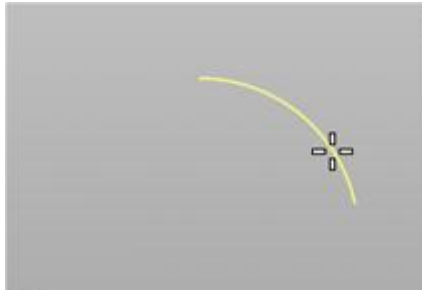
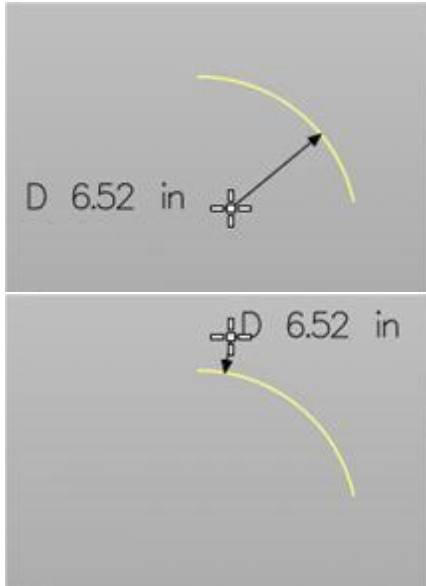
3 Pt Arc Diameter:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x,y,z

3 Pt Arc Diameter:: Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y,z

3 Pt Arc Diameter:: Pick third point or enter the dimension point

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the arc. It can be pre-selected.	None

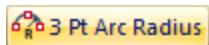
		
Step 2	Pick the endpoint of the arrow which points at the arc. This is also where the text appears. 	



Related Topics

[Radial Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.2.6 3 Pt Arc Radius



Create a dimension label for an arc. It measures the radius of the circle of which the arc is a part. The letter 'R' appears in the label to show that it is measuring the radius.

An arrow specifies which arc is labeled. The text is always horizontal. Both are always in the plane of the arc. Both can be slid around the arc. The units are included. **Note:** You can use points as input to this command.



Command Prompts

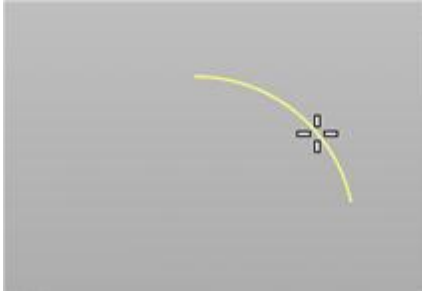
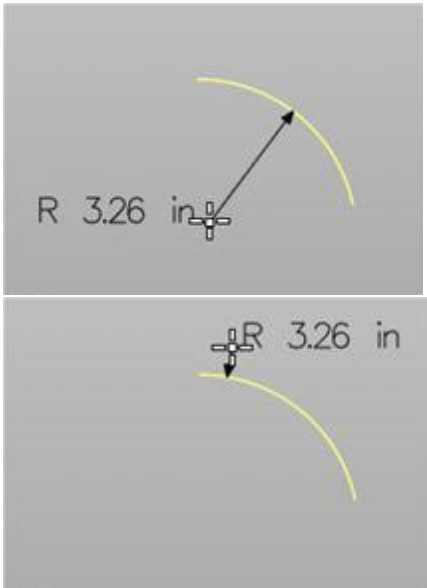
3 Pt Arc Radius:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y,z

3 Pt Arc Radius:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x,y,z

3 Pt Arc Radius:: Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y,z

3 Pt Arc Radius:: Pick third point or enter the dimension point

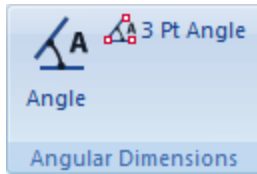
 Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the arc. It can be pre-selected. 	None
Step 2	Pick the endpoint of the arrow which points at the arc. This is also where the text appears. 	

 Related Topics

[Radial Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.3 Angular Dimensions



The [Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Angular Dimensions](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Create an Angle Dimension](#)

[Create a 3 Point Angle Dimension](#)

[Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.3.1 Angle



Create a dimension label for the angle between line segments. The segments do not have to intersect; they will be extended into lines for the purposes of calculation.

The text is always along the dimension label and centered. The units are degrees and are included.

There are four possible arcs. Pick a point which will define the quarter of the labeling plane and how far away from the vertex to put the label.



Command Prompts

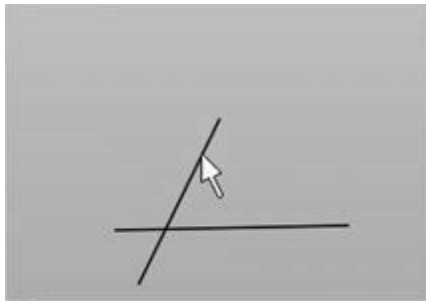
Angle:: Pick first curve

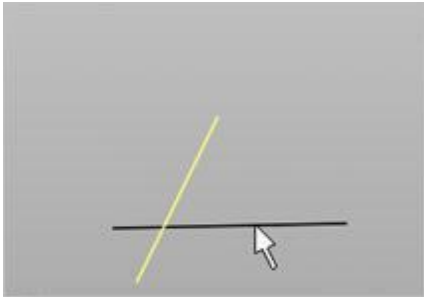
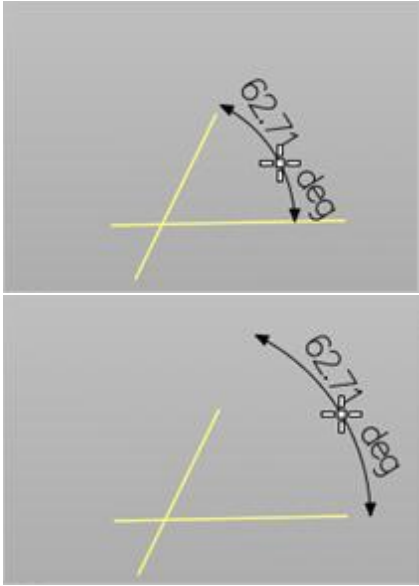
Angle:: Pick second curve

Angle:: Enter dimension point



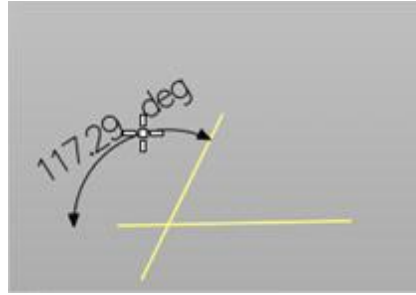
Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first line segment. It can be pre-selected. 	None

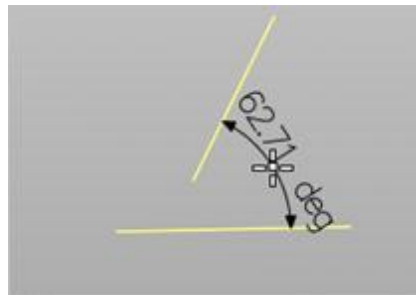
Step 2	Pick the second line segment. 	
Step 3	Pick the radial distance where the label should be displayed. Arrows go along the arc and point at the two rays. The label appears on the outside of the arc. 	

**Notes**

1. It is possible to choose an arc not inside the angle that was just made. For example, the defined angle was the 63 degree angle, but the supplementary 117 degree angle can also be dimensioned.



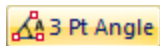
2. It is not necessary for the segments to intersect, the segments will be extended to intersection for the purpose of calculation.



Related Topics

[Angular Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.3.2 3 Pt Angle



Create a dimension label for an arc. It measures the angle subtended.

An arrow specifies which arc is labeled. The text is always along the dimension label and centered. Both are always in the plane of the arc. Both can be slid radially. The units are degrees and are included.

Pick three points, the first of which is the vertex of the arc and two additional points which define lines going through the vertex point. There are now four possible arcs, one in each quarter of these intersecting lines. Pick another point which defines which quadrant and how far away from the vertex the label should be. **Note:** You can use points as input to this command.



Command Prompts

3 Pt Angle:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

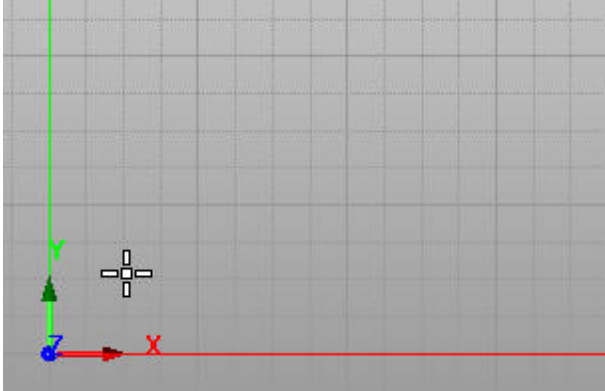
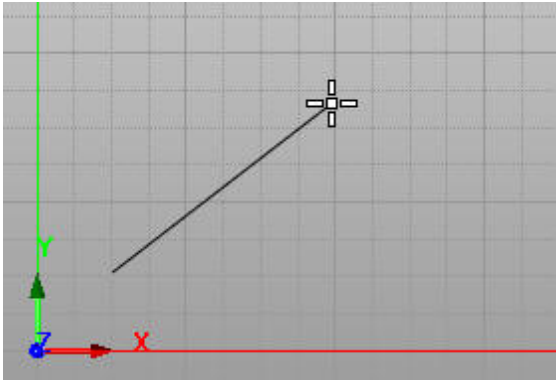
3 Pt Angle:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

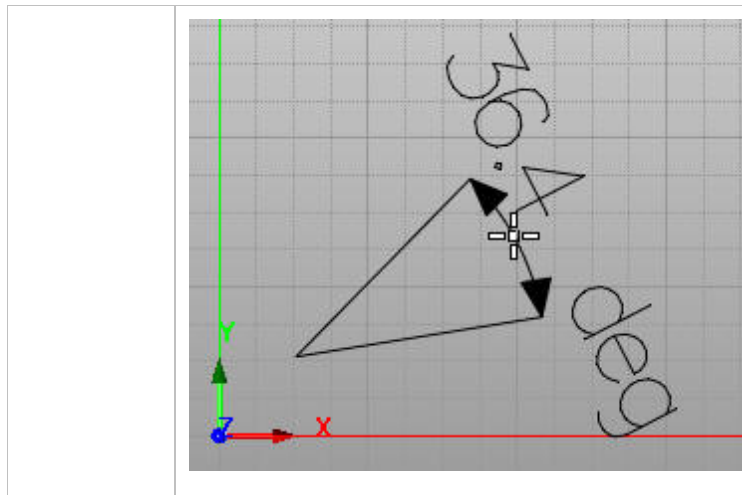
3 Pt Angle:: Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y and z

3 Pt Angle:: Enter dimension point



Basic Procedure

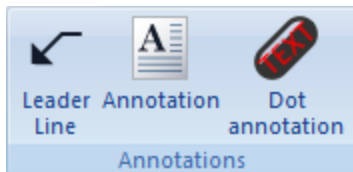
	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the first point on the arc to dimension or enter x,y,z coordinates. 	None
Step 2	Pick the second point on the arc to dimension or enter x,y,z coordinates. 	
Step 3	Enter the dimension point.	



Related Topics

[Angular Dimensions Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.4 Annotations



The [Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Annotations](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Create a Leader Line Dimension](#)

[Create a Text Annotation](#)

[Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.4.1 Leader Line



Create a text label with an arrow pointing in a direction. It can be used to label various pieces of geometry or other items of interest.



More Information

Type in the text into the Command Input Bar.

Create a dimension label for the angle between line segments. The segments do not have to intersect; they will be extended into lines for the purposes of calculation.

The text is always along the dimension label and centered. The units are degrees and are included.

There are four possible arcs. Pick a point which will define the quarter of the labeling plane and how far away from the vertex to put the label.



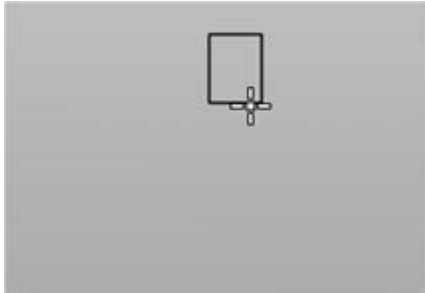
Command Prompts

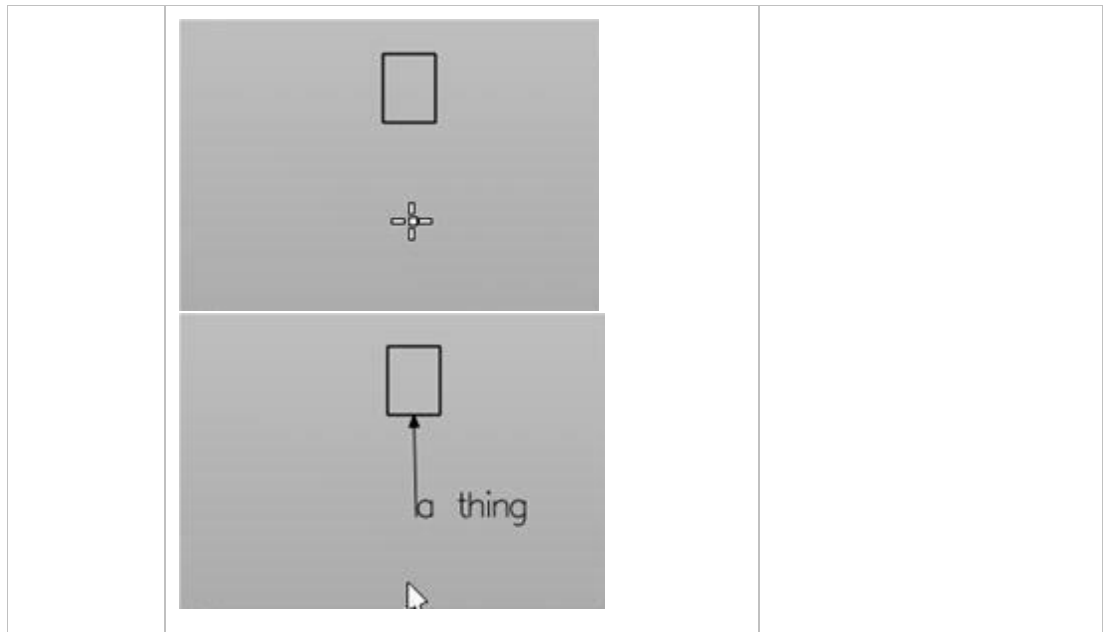
Leader Line:: Enter text string

Leader Line:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z



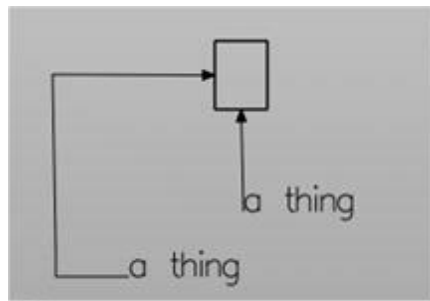
Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Pick the point or type in coordinates. This is where the head of the arrow should go. The arrow is a polyline and so can have multiple sections at angles. This can be useful if having to label something in the middle of a collection of other items. The labeling arrow can bend its way through the collection to point at the correct item. 	None
Step 2	Right-click the mouse to stop adding segments to the polyline. The text will appear at the last point selected.	

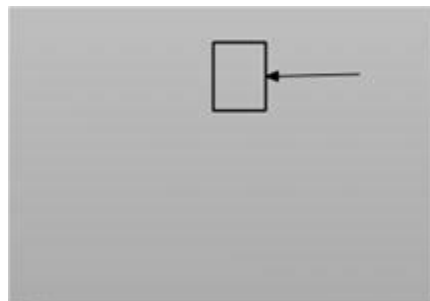


Notes

1. Here is an example of a multiple segment polyline leader.



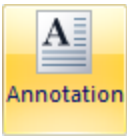
2. Text does not have to be included. This results in only an arrow. When asked for text, start picking the endpoints of the leader.



Related Topics

[Annotations Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

5.8.4.2 Annotation



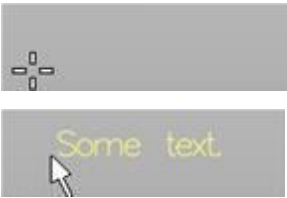
Create annotation text. It can be used to put in notes or other information in your drawing. The text [Font Height](#) can be edited individually for each annotation. See [Editing Annotation Text Font Height](#) below for more information on how to do this.

Command Prompts

Leader Line:: Enter text string

Leader Line:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z

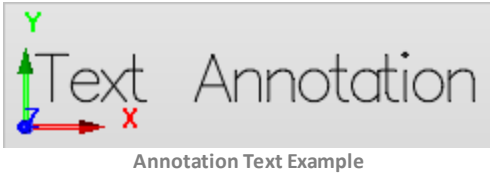
Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Type in the text into the Command Input Bar.	None
Step 2	Pick the point or type in coordinates. This is where the text will appear. 	

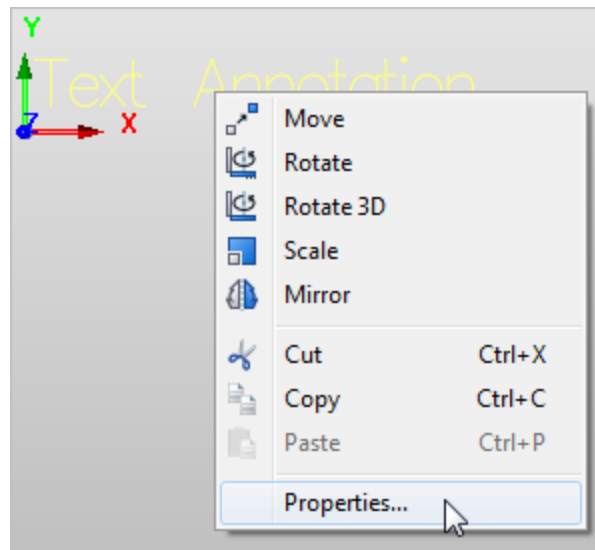
Editing Annotation Font Text Height

The height of annotation text can be edited individually for each annotation entity. Here's how its done:

1. Select the [Text Annotation](#) that you wish to edit.

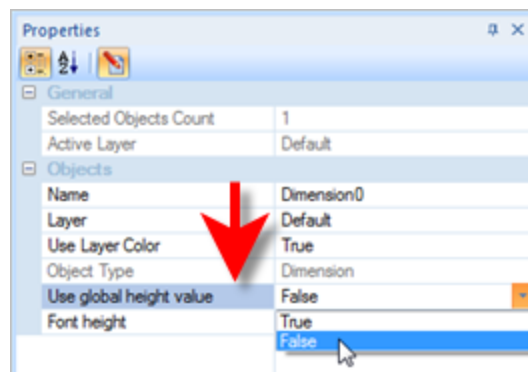


2. Right-click and select [Properties](#).



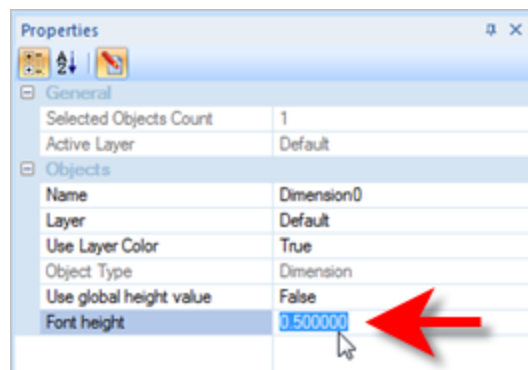
Right-click & select Properties

3. From the **Properties** dialog, change the **Use global height** value to **False**.



The Properties dialog

4. Then edit the **Font Height**.



The Properties dialog



Related Topics

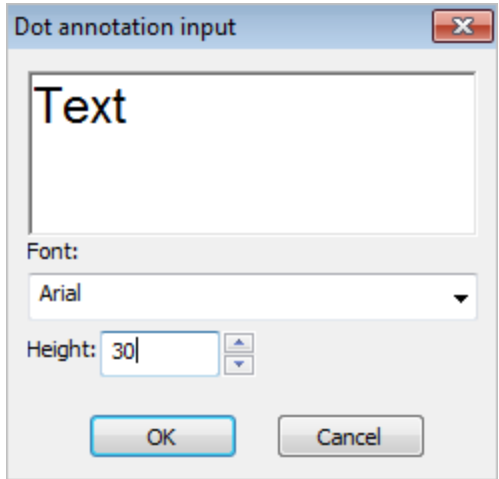
[Annotations Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)**5.8.4.3 Dot Annotation**

Create graphical dot text at a selected point. This can be used to identify geometry in [VisualCAD](#) without using a geometric element.

**Command Prompts**

Dot annotation:: Enter start point of text

**Basic Procedure**

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Use the Dot Annotation Input dialog to enter your Text, Font and Height and then pick OK. 	None
Step 2	Select a location in the drawing window to place the dot annotation. 	

**Related Topics**

[Annotations Pane, Dimensions Ribbon Bar](#)

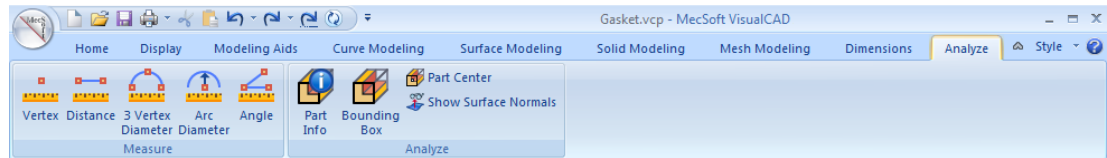
[Annotation](#)

5.9 Analyze

The [Analyze Ribbon Bar](#) contains [Measure](#) and [Anal](#) panes and associated functions.



The Analyze Ribbon Bar



Analyze Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[Measure Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

[Analyze Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

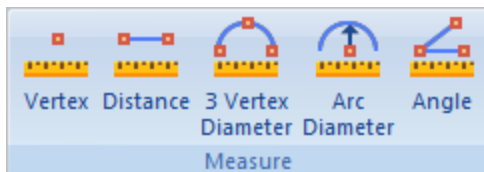
[Customize Quick Access Toolbar](#)

[Customize Dialog](#)

[VisualCAD Options](#)

5.9.1 Measure

The [Analyze Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Measure](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Measure a Vertex](#)

[Measure a Distance](#)

[Measure a 3 Vertex Diameter](#)

[Measure an Arc Diameter](#)

[Measure an Angle](#)

[Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.1.1 Vertex



Get the X, Y, Z coordinates of a selected point (vertex). Move the cursor over a point with one of the object snaps active. The coordinates of the point are displayed dynamically. After you select the point, the coordinates are displayed in the command prompt window.



Command Prompts

Co-ordinates:: Pick vertex point

Vertex: {0.500000,1.250000,0.000000}



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Pick a vertex point.



Notes

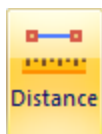
1. Unless a point on an existing object is selected, the picked point will be in the Construction Plane of the currently selected view.



Related Topics

[Measure Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.1.2 Distance



Get the 3D distance between two points. The point coordinates and the distance between them are displayed dynamically. The distance is also displayed in the command prompt window.



Command Prompts

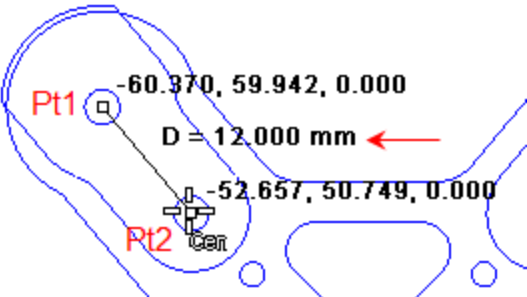
Distance:: Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Distance:: Pick second point or enter coordinates x, y and z

D: 1.414214 in, Dz: 0.000000 in; {-2.000000,1.000000,0.000000} - {-1.000000,2.000000,0.000000}



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		Pick first point or enter x,y,z
Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second



Notes

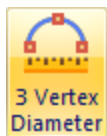
1. The distance is displayed with a letter 'D' and the units. The 3D coordinates of the two picked points will also be displayed after the distance.
2. Unless points on an existing object are selected, picked points will be in the construction plane of the currently selected view.



Related Topics

[Measure Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.1.3 3 Vertex Diameter



Get the diameter and center coordinates of a temporary arc through three points. The coordinates of each of the three points are dynamically displayed. The calculated diameter between the three points is also dynamically displayed on the arc as well as in the command prompt window. The arc center coordinates are displayed in the command prompt window. **Note:** You can select arcs, Circles or surface edges.



Command Prompts

(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (intermediate point on arc).

(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (intermediate point on arc).

(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (intermediate point on arc).

Arc Diameter: 10.010000 mm, Center: {-52.656830,50.749151,0.000000}



Basic Procedure

Screen Pick	
Step 1	
Step 2	
Step 3	



Notes

1. The diameter (with units) and center information is from the circle that contains the temporary arc.

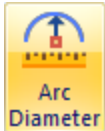
2. Unless points on an existing object are selected, picked points will be in the construction plane of the currently selected view.



Related Topics

[Measure Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.1.4 Arc Diameter



Get the diameter of an arc or circle. Pick an arc or circle and the diameter and center will be displayed in the **Prompt Input Bar**. **Note:** You can select arcs, Circles or surface edges.



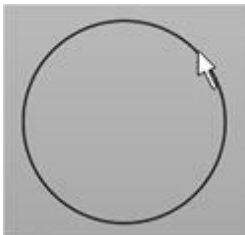
Command Prompts

Arc Diameter:: Pick Arc/Closed Curve to measure

Arc Diameter: 6.000000 in, Center: {-12.000000,7.000000,0.000000}



Basic Procedure

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1	Select an arc or circle. 	none



Related Topics

[Measure Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.1.5 Angle



Get the angle formed between a vertex point and two other points.

The coordinates of the points are dynamically displayed along with the included angle.



Command Prompts

Pick first point or enter coordinates x,y and z

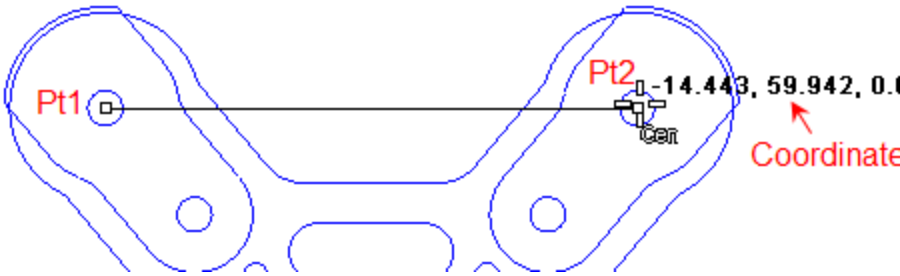
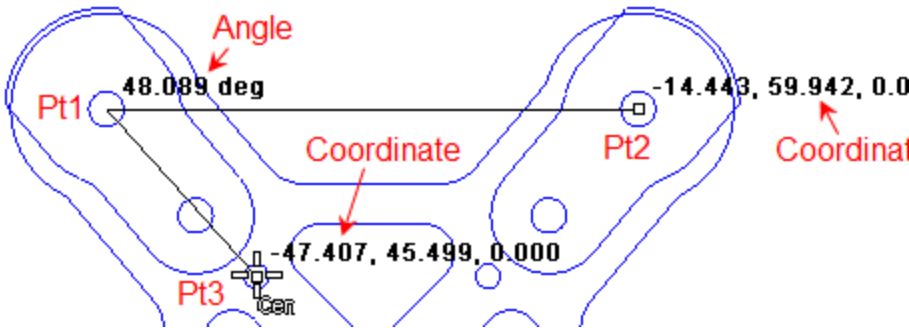
Pick second point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Pick third point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Angle: 48.089217 deg



Basic Procedure

Screen Pick	
Step 1	
Step 2	
Step 3	



Notes

1. The resultant angle is always between 0 and 180 degrees.
2. The picked points will be in the Construction Plane of the currently selected view.

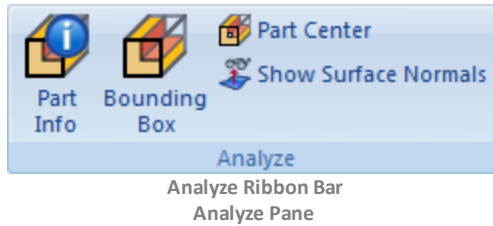


Related Topics

[Measure Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.2 Analyze

The [Analyze Ribbon Bar](#) contains the following [Analyze](#) pane with associated functions.



Related Topics

[Analyze the Part Information](#)

[Analyze the Bounding Box](#)

[Analyze the Part Center](#)

[Show Surface Normals](#)

[Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

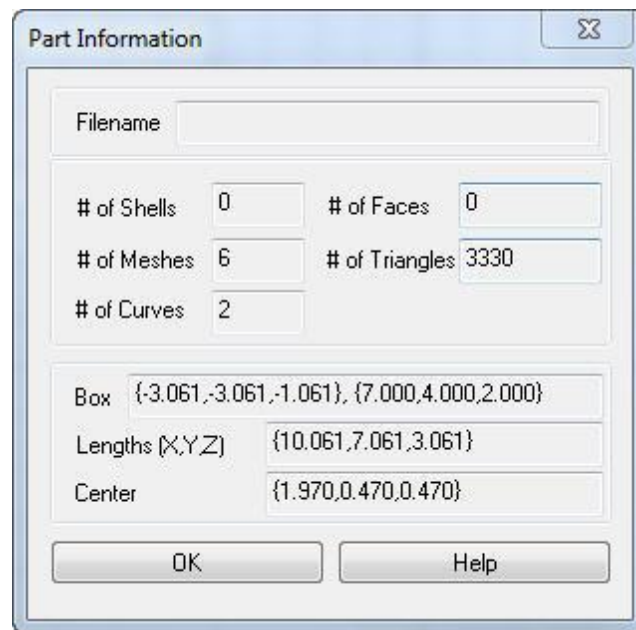
5.9.2.1 Part Info.



When this function is selected, all geometry is evaluated and important information is reported in a dialog, as shown below:



Dialog Box: Part Information



Part Information dialog box

- **Filename**
Shows the saved location of the current part file. This field will be empty if the part file has not yet been saved.
- **Shells**
Refers to poly-surface geometry objects.
- **Faces**
Refers to surface geometry objects.
- **Meshes**
Refers to a [Box](#), [Sphere](#), [Cylinder](#), [Cone Torus](#), [Rectangular Tube](#), [Circular Tube](#), [Extrude](#), and [Revolve](#).
- **Curves**
Refers to the number of points, lines, polylines, arcs, circles, and other curves in the part geometry.
- **Faces**
Refers to the number of surfaces in the part geometry.
- **Triangles**
Refers to the number of triangles in all mesh geometry.
- **Box, Lengths, Center**
This information is the same as described in the [Bounding Box](#) function and [Part Center](#) function.
- **OK**
Closes the dialog.

- [Help](#)
Brings up the on-line Help.



Related Topics

[Analyze Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.2.2 Bounding Box



When this function is selected, [VisualCAD](#) will analyze all existing geometry, will create an internal minimum, volumetric box that contains all that geometry, and will return the following information about the box:

- {minimum X, Y, Z} equals the lower left bottom vertex of the box.
- {maximum X, Y, Z} equals the upper right top vertex of the box.
- {lengths along X, Y, Z} of the box.

This information is oriented to the World Coordinate System (WCS).



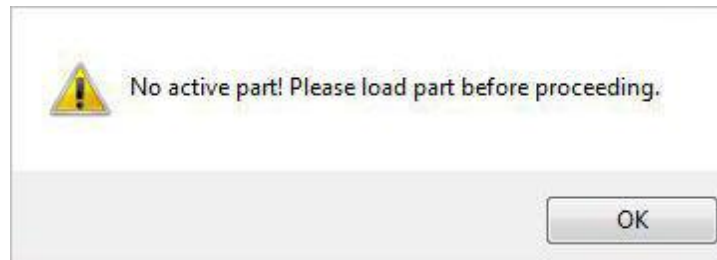
Command Prompts

```
Box: {-3.060660,-3.060660,-1.060660}, {2.499434,3.000000,2.000000}; Lengths: {5.560094,6.060660,3.060660}
```



Notes

1. Existing geometry is required for the [Analyze](#) functions. If none exists, a message is returned.



Analyze Bounding Box Message

2. Geometry objects do not need to be selected since the bounding box will automatically contain all existing objects.
3. All geometry is evaluated, including points, curves, surfaces, meshes, etc.
4. Geometry on all layers, visible or invisible, is contained in the box.



Related Topics

[Analyze Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.2.3 Part Center

**Part Center**

This function will return the coordinates of the center of the bounding box that contains all the part geometry, as referred to in the Bounding Box function above.



Command Prompts

```
Center: {1.969670,0.469670,0.469670}
```



Notes

1. Refer to the Notes in the Bounding Box function above.



Related Topics

[Analyze Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

5.9.2.4 Show Surface Normals

**Show Surface Normals**

Selecting this function will cause normal vector arrows to display on every surface on the screen. Geometry objects do not need to be selected. Mesh objects do not apply.

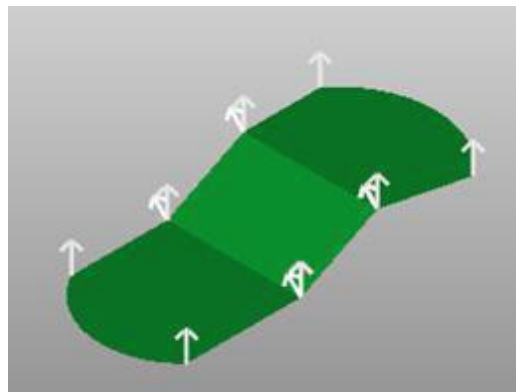


Command Prompts

```
Press Escape to abort
```



Basic Procedure



Press the **ESC** key to abort the display of surface normals.



Notes

1. Surface normals are also displayed for objects that are locked. If no valid surfaces are found, the following error message will be displayed.



Related Topics

[Analyze Pane, Analyze Ribbon Bar](#)

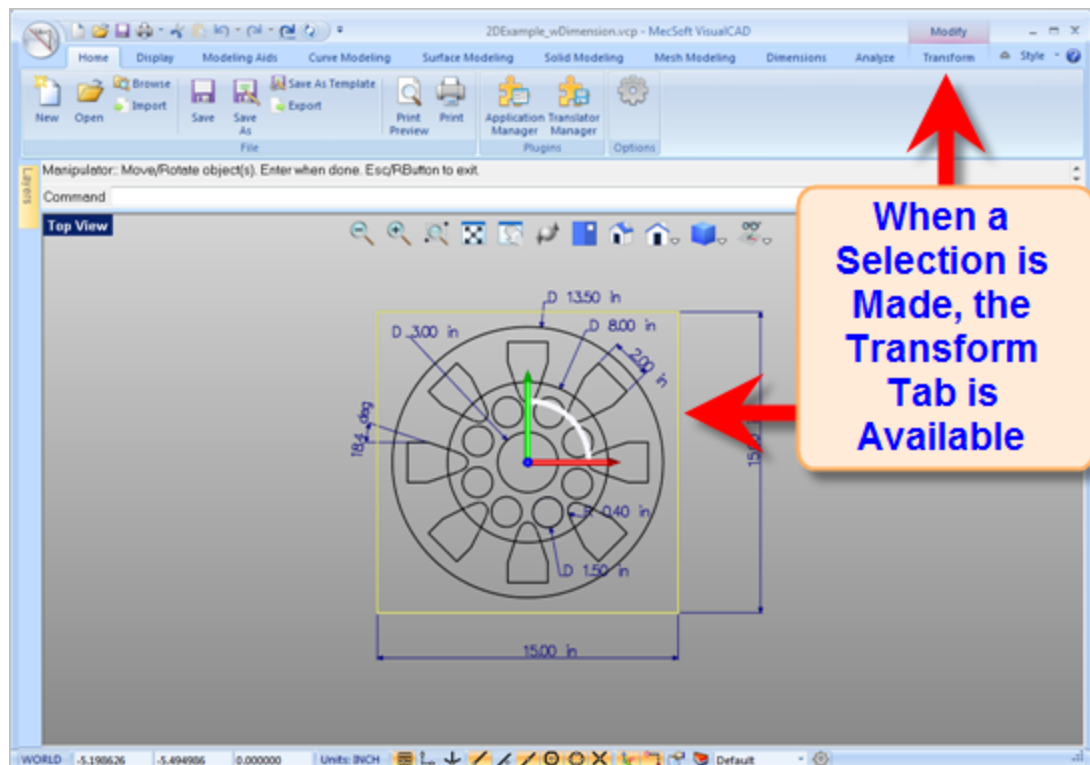
5.10 Transform

The [Transform Ribbon Bar](#) contains a [Transform](#) pane and associated functions.



Enabling the Transform Ribbon Bar

When a geometry selection is made [VisualCAD](#) enter [Edit Mode](#) and allows access to the [Transform Ribbon Bar](#).

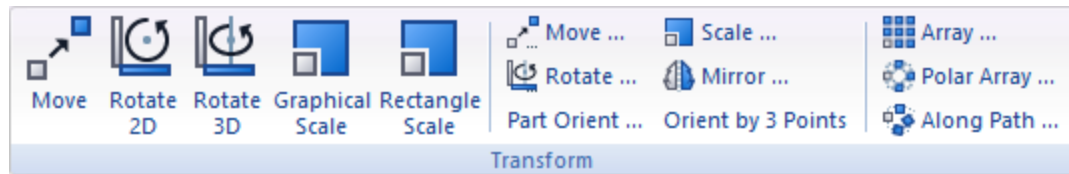


When a Selection is Made, the Transform Tab is Available

The Transform Ribbon Bar is Enabled

Selecting **Transform** will display the **Transform Ribbon Bar**.

Selecting a **Transform** command will act upon the selected geometry.



Transform Ribbon Bar



Context Transform Menu (Right-click)

Selecting geometry in a viewport and by using right mouse button click also provides access to transformation tools.



Context Transform Menu
(Right-click)



If you do not see the above options when you **Right** mouse button click, enable **Show pop-up menu** under **Home** > **Options**.



Related Topics

[Move Objects by Mouse](#)

[Rotate Selected Object in 2D](#)

[Rotate Selected Object in 3D](#)

[Graphically Scale Selected Objects](#)

[Rectangle Scale selected Objects](#)

[Move Objects in 3D](#)

[Rotate Selected Objects](#)

[Orient the Entire Part](#)

[Scale Selected Objects](#)

[Mirror Selected Objects](#)

[Array Selected Objects](#)

[Polar Array Selected Objects](#)

[Graphical Manipulator](#)

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.1 Move by Mouse



All selected items will be moved in 3D. The direction and distance to move is specified by picking a starting and ending point. All selected items will be moved that direction and distance.



Command Prompts

Select objects and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done

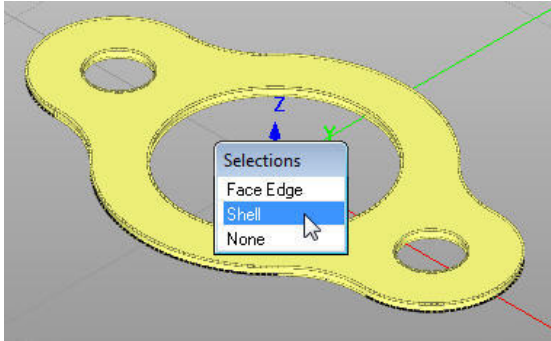
Move by mouse:: Pick from point or enter coordinates x,y and z

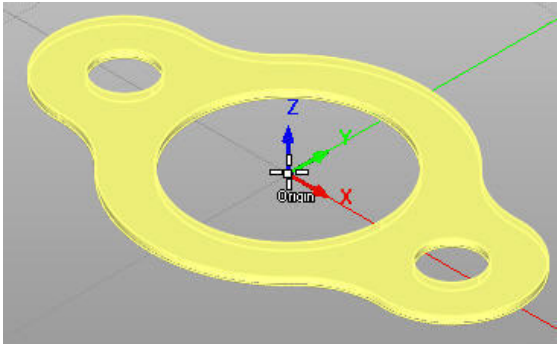
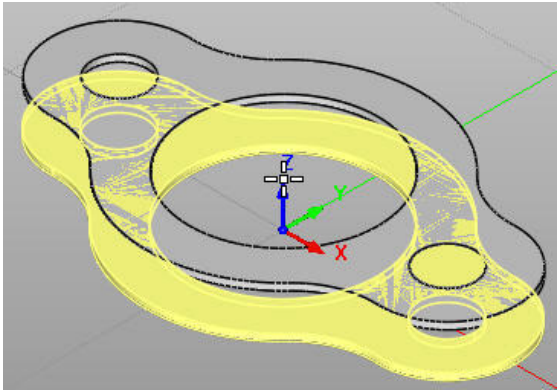
Move by mouse:: Pick to point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Added # objects to selection!



Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select items to move. The items could be pre-selected. If a mesh is selected, choose from the pop-up selection options provided. 	
Step 2	Pick a starting point or type in coordinates into the Command Bar.	

		
Step 3	Pick an ending point or type in coordinates. 	

 **Related Topics**
[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.2 Rotate 2D



Rotate selected objects around a picked point a given angle. The plane of rotation is parallel to the construction plane in the currently selected view.

 **Command Prompts**

- 2D Rotate by mouse:: Select objects - hit right mouse to end
- 2D Rotate by mouse:: Enter rotation center point
- 2D Rotate by mouse:: Enter first reference point or rotation angle
- 2D Rotate by mouse:: Enter second reference point

 **Basic Procedure**

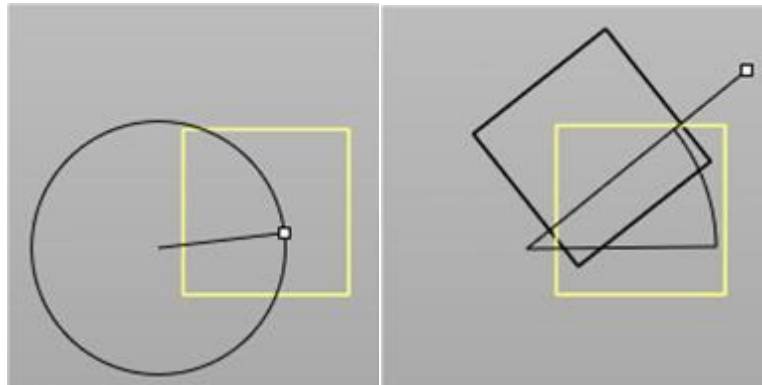
	Screen Activity	Comments
--	-----------------	----------

Step 1	Pick objects to be rotated. They can be pre-selected.	
Step 2	Pick a center of rotation or type in the coordinates into the Command Input Bar .	
Step 3	Pick a starting point or type in the coordinates. A temporary ray from the center of rotation going through the starting point will be made.	
Step 4	Pick an ending point or type in the coordinates. A temporary ray from the center of rotation going through the ending point will be made. The angle of rotation will be measured from the starting ray.	



Example

In the example below, a rectangle was selected and is highlighted yellow. A center point of rotation was picked to the left of the rectangle. The picture on the right side shows that the starting point was picked inside the rectangle. The cursor has moved to just above the rectangle and its position is marked by a white dot. A temporary line segment goes from the center of rotation to that point. The effects of the rotation on the selected geometry (rectangle) are displayed in black.



Once the final point is selected, the geometry is rotated and all the temporary line segments, circles, rays, and points disappear. The final result is a rotated rectangle.



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.3 Rotate 3D



Rotate selected objects around a picked point a given angle.



Command Prompts

3D Rotate by mouse:: Enter number of copies or Pick rotation axis base point

3D Rotate by mouse:: Pick axis head point

3D Rotate by mouse:: Enter angle or reference point

3D Rotate by mouse:: Enter second reference point



Basic Procedure

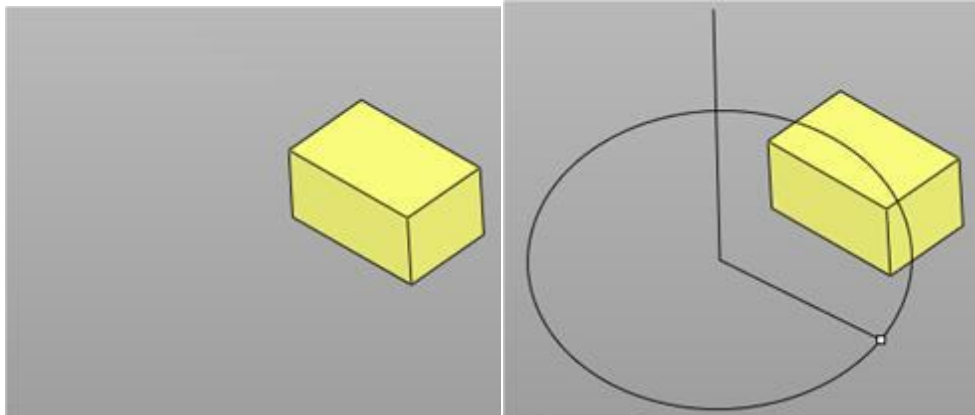
	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Pick objects to be rotated. They can be pre-selected.	
Step 2	Type in the number of copies to be made. If no copies are to be made, just go to step 3.	
Step 3	Pick the axis basis point or type in the coordinates into the Command Input Bar.	
Step 4	Pick the axis head point or type in the coordinates. A temporary segment will connect the axis base and axis head points.	
Step 5	Pick a starting point or type in the coordinates. A temporary ray from the center of rotation going through the starting point will be made.	
Step 6	Pick an ending point or type in the coordinates. A temporary ray from the center of rotation going through the ending point will be made. The angle of rotation will be measured from the starting ray	



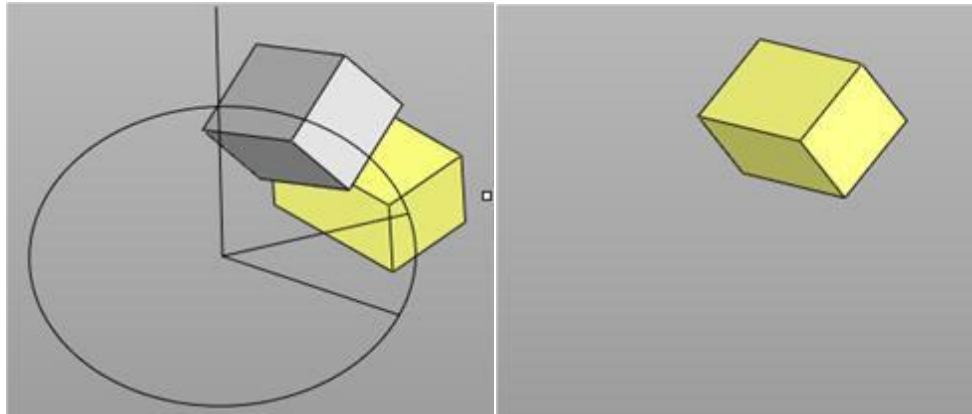
Example

In the example below, a box was selected and is highlighted yellow. The axis base point and head point were picked. The axis is the vertical line to the left of the box. The starting point for the angle is being picked in the second picture. The cursor location is

the white dot below the box at the intersection of the rotary circle and a ray from the axis base point.



In the first image below, the starting point was picked. The current cursor position is to the right of the selected box and is marked by a white dot. The effects of the rotation are displayed by the gray box. Once the endpoint is picked the geometry is rotated and all the temporary line segments, circles, rays, and points disappear.



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.4 Scale



This function will interactively scale selected 2D/3D geometry about a point. The scale factor can be directly keyed-in to the [Command Bar](#) or will be determined by the ratio of two user-defined radial distances. This method of scaling will maintain a constant aspect ratio of the part model size.



Command Prompts

Graphical Scale:: Enter scale center point

Graphical Scale:: Enter first reference point or scale factor

Graphical Scale:: Enter second reference point



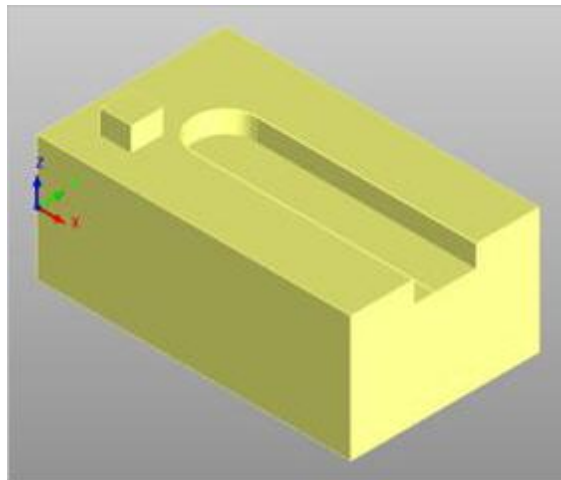
Basic Procedure (also see Example below)

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select Graphical Scale from Transform menu.	None
Step 2	Select the 2D and/or 3D geometry objects that you want to be scaled.	
Step 3	Enter the scale reference point (or scale focus point).	
Step 4	Determine the scaling factor (factor or distance ratios).	
Step 5	Select a second point for scaling.	
Step 6	ESC or Right Mouse Button to quit.	

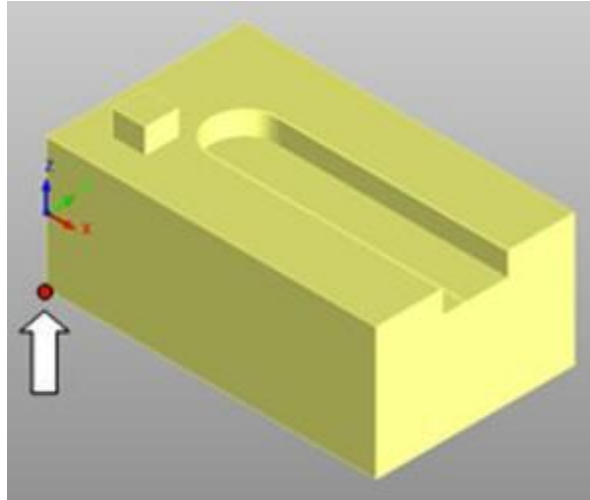


Example

1. Select the 2D and/or 3D geometry objects that you want to be scaled. They may also be pre-selected. After the desired geometry is selected and right-click to close the selection.



2. Enter the scale reference point (or scale focus point). This can be any point on the model or the grid or you can key-in [World](#) coordinates, etc. Scaling will be done toward or away from this point.

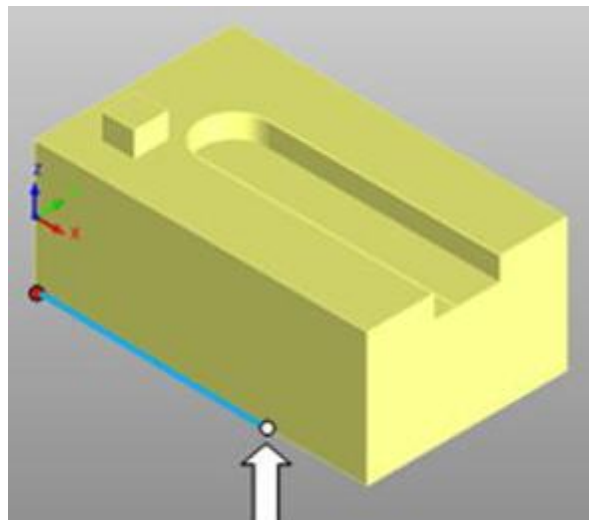


3. Determine the scaling factor in one of two ways described below:
- Enter scale factor:* A scale factor (decimal value) may be directly entered into the **Command Bar**. When this value is accepted, the geometry will immediately be scaled and the function will end.

A screenshot of the software's Command Bar. It contains the text "Command .25".

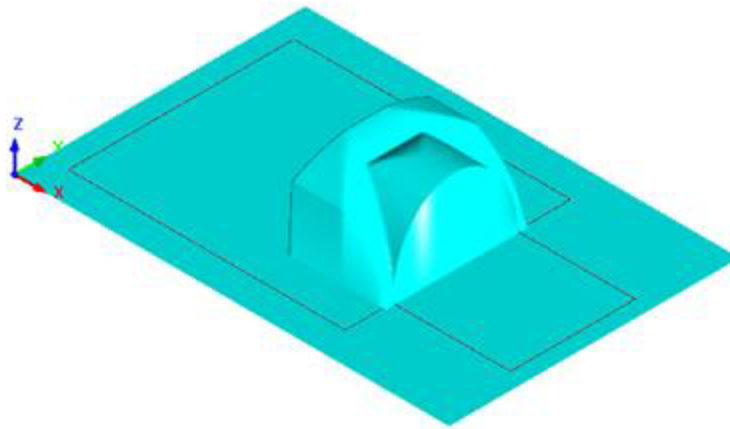
Command .25

- Distance ratios:* Select a point away from the scale reference point (from **Step 3**). The distance between this point and the scale reference point represents 100% or the full scale of the selected geometry.



4. Select a second point for scaling. The distance between this second point and the scale reference point (from **Step 3**) is compared to the first distance and this ratio determines the scale factor for the geometry. If this second point is selected using

the cursor, you will see the geometry being scaled dynamically until this second point is finally determined.



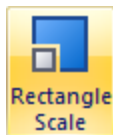
5. Finally, after the second point is picked, the geometry will be scaled and the function will end. Scaling larger or smaller are both permitted. The function can be canceled at any time before completion by using **ESC** or the **Right Mouse Button**.



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.5 Rectangular Scale



This function will scale selected 2D/3D geometry by interactively changing the size of a 'minimum rectangle' around the geometry. This scaling method performs 2D scaling oriented to the C-Plane and does not maintain a constant aspect ratio of the part model size.



Command Prompts

Rectangle Scale:: Select objects - hit right mouse to end

Rectangle Scale:: Move corners of rectangle to scale. Enter when done. ESC/Right-Mouse to quit



Basic Procedure

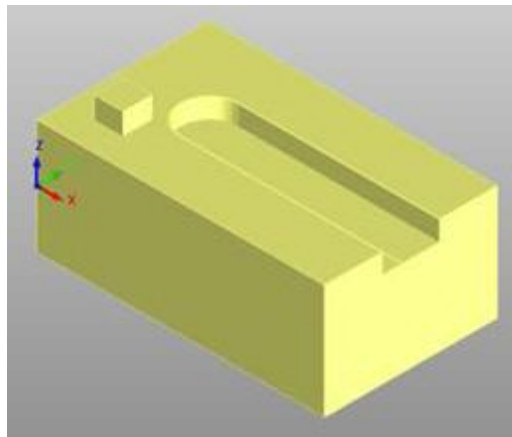
	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select Rectangular Scale from Transform menu.	None
Step 2	Select the geometry objects to scale.	

Step 3	Interactively move the rectangle corners/mid-points to reshape the rectangle.	
Step 4	ESC or Right-click to quit.	

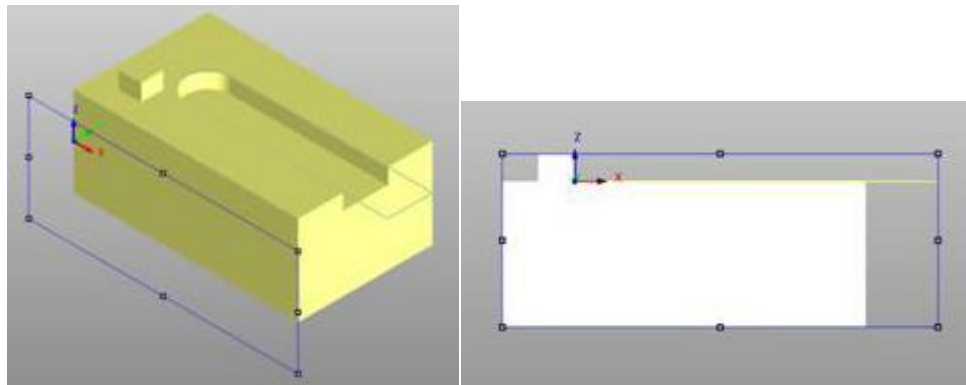


Example

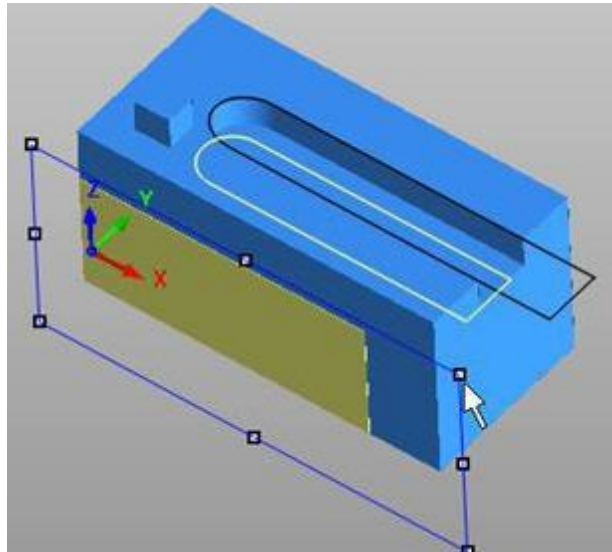
1. Select the 2D and/or 3D geometry objects that you want to be scaled. They may also be pre-selected. After the desired geometry is selected, hit the **Right Mouse Button** to close the selection.



2. **VisualCAD** will immediately create a minimum rectangle in the C-Plane that surrounds the selected geometry.



3. Interactively move the rectangle corners/mid-points to reshape the rectangle. As the rectangle is changed, a temporary duplicate of the geometry will be shown to help you visualize the resultant model change. When all changes are made to the rectangle, select **ENTER** to accept the changes or **ESC/Right Mouse Button** to cancel the function.



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.6 Move ...



All selected items will be moved in 3D. The direction and distance to move is specified by picking a starting and ending point. All selected items will be moved that direction and distance. A dialog will appear where you can input parameters for the move.



Command Prompts

Select objects and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	From the Move select text by mouse dialog box, select Pick Objects and select the objects to move.	
Step 2	Enter the Move From XYZ coordinates or select the Pick From Point button and then select a point.	

Step 3	Enter the Move To XYZ coordinates or select the Pick To Point button and then select a point.	
Step 4	Select the Pick Translation Axis button to define the translation axis.	Optional
Step 5	Enter the Number of Copies and then pick OK to complete the Move .	



Dialog Box: [Move select text by mouse](#)



[Number of objects picked](#)

The number of items to be moved is displayed. If more items need to be moved, use the [Pick Objects](#) button.



[Move From / Move To](#)

The starting point is defined in the [Move From](#) area, and the ending point is defined in the [Move To](#) area. The coordinates can be entered or a point can be picked. All picked points are projected down into the view's construction plane.



[Pick Translation Axis](#)

The [Pick Translation Axis](#) can be used to define the starting and ending points. Once the button is pushed, you make a temporary line segment: the endpoints of that segment are the start and end points of the move.



[Number of Copies](#)

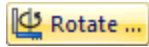
The [Number of Copies](#) allows you to make additional copies of the objects, each separated by the move vector. For example, a point at the origin is moved from (0,0,0) to (5,0,0) with three copies. The result is four points at (0,0,0), (5,0,0), (10,0,0), and (15,0,0). The original point is unaffected, and the other points were copied using the movement vector.



[Related Topics](#)

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.7 Rotate ...



All selected objects will be rotated in 3D. The axis and angle of rotation are specified, and all selected items will be that angle about the axis. Refer to the [Basic Procedure](#) below. Note additional information under the [Dialog Box](#) below.



Command Prompts

Select objects and hit Right Mouse Button/Enter when done



Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	From the Rotate selected objects dialog box, select Pick Objects and select the objects to rotate.	
Step 2	Enter the Rotate About XYZ coordinates or select the Pick About Point button and then select a point.	Default is 0,0,0 origin.
Step 3	Enter the Axis Vector XYZ coordinates or select the Pick Rotation Axis button and then select a start point and end point to define the axis.	
Step 4	Enter the Rotation Angle .	
Step 5	You can Copy and Rotate at the same time if desired. Enter the Number of Copies and then pick OK to complete the Rotate .	Optional



Dialog Box: Rotate selected objects



Number of objects picked

The number of items to be rotated is displayed. If more items need to be rotated, use the [Pick Objects](#) button.



Rotate About

The point of reference is defined in the Rotate About section. The coordinates can be entered or an [About Point](#) can be picked.



Axis Vector

The axis of rotation is defined with a point and a vector. The point allows the axis to be offset from the origin. The vector is parallel to the axis, and the direction of the vector tells which rotation is a positive angle. This is the [Right Hand Rule](#). For example, an axis of rotation at the origin (point is (0,0,0)) and a vector (0,0,1) has positive angle going counterclockwise from the top view (from positive x-axis to positive y-axis). Alternatively, if the axis of rotation was at the origin (0,0,0) but went the other way with a vector (0,0,-1) has positive angle going clockwise (from positive x-axis to negative y-axis).



Rotation Angle

The rotation angle is measured from the current location.



Number of Copies

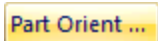
This allows you to make additional copies of the objects, each separated by the rotation angle. The original object is unaffected, and the other points were copied using the rotation angle.



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.8 Part Orient ...



This dialog allows user to orient the part to have it aligned parallel to [World Coordinate System \(WCS\)](#). The dialog offers a convenient way of selecting each of the six principal directions to set the cutting direction.



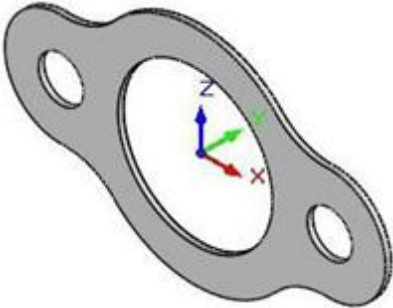
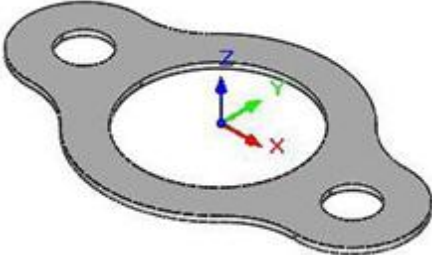
Command Prompts

None.

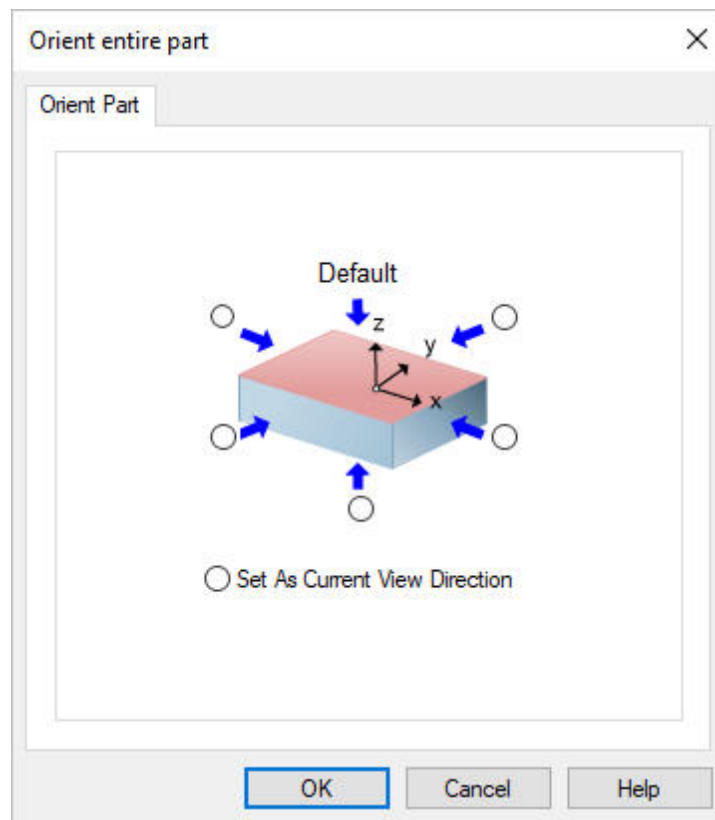


Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Open part file.	

		
Step 2	Select Part Orient... from Transform menu to display the Orient Entire Part dialog box.	
Step 3	From the dialog box, select the WCS direction to orient the part to.	
Step 4	Select to Set as Current View Direction if desired.	Optional
Step 5	Pick OK and the part is now oriented as shown below. 	

 **Dialog Box: Rotate selected objects**



World Coordinate System (WCS)

Once you select a [WCS](#) direction, all of the geometry will be rotated to an orientation where the selected cutting direction becomes the negative Z axis.



Set as Current View Direction

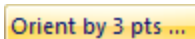
Orients the part parallel to the current view orientation.



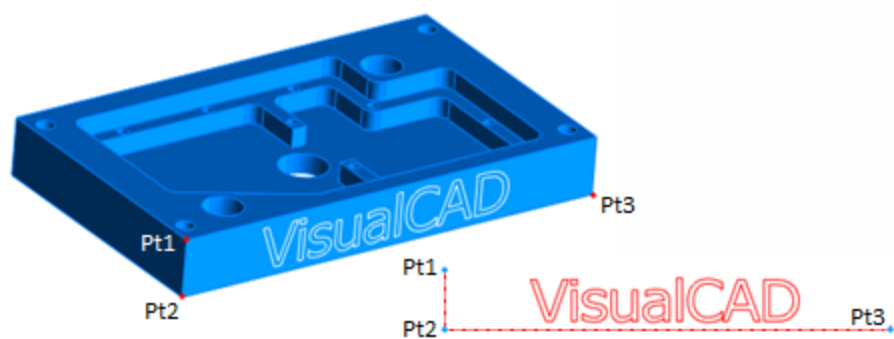
Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.9 Orient by 3 Pts



This command allows you to transform the currently selected objects using three reference points and three target points.



 Command Prompts

- Pick or enter first reference point.
- Pick or enter second reference point.
- Pick or enter third reference point.
- Pick or enter first target point.
- Pick or enter second target point.
- Pick or enter third target point.

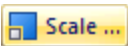
 Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Pick three reference points in relation to the selected objects.	The selected objects are re-oriented.
Step 2	Pick three target points to re-orient the objects.	

 Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.10 Scale ...



All selected objects will be magnified, shrunk, or stretched the same way. A dialog will appear where you can input parameters for the scaling.

 Command Prompts

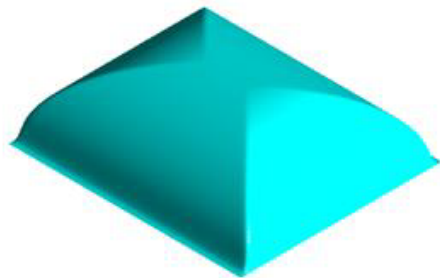
None.

 Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select Scale... from the Transform menu to display the Scale selected objects dialog box.	
Step 2	The number of objects is displayed. Use Pick Objects to add more to the selection.	
Step 3	Select either Uniform or Non-Uniform Scaling and enter the XYZ scale factors.	
Step 4	Pick OK to Scale the selected objects.	Optional



Dialog Box: Scale selected objects



Scale Selected Objects



Number of objects picked

The number of objects to be scaled is displayed. If more items need to be scaled, use the [Pick Objects](#) button.



Scale Units

This converts the units associated with the geometry to a different set of units. Conversions can go from millimeters to inches or from inches to millimeters. The object's size remains constant, but the numbers associated with the size change. A one-inch object will be scaled into a 25.4 mm object. The units of the display view are not affected, so the object appears to grow or shrink. When the units of the display are changed, the object will appear as it did before the scaling.



Uniform scaling

This will magnify or shrink all dimensions equally. A scaling of 1.0 is no change. A scaling of 0.5 will make the object half as small, and a scaling of 3 will make the object 3 times bigger.



Non-Uniform Scaling

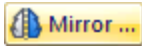
This will stretch the object. The coordinates of the object are what are scaled. This will cause an object not at the origin to move. For example, if a point is at (5,0,0) and is uniformly scaled by a factor of 3, the point will be at (15, 0, 0).



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.11 Mirror ...



Reflects all selected objects in a plane parallel to one of the principal planes. A dialog will appear where you can input parameters for the mirroring.



Command Prompts

None.

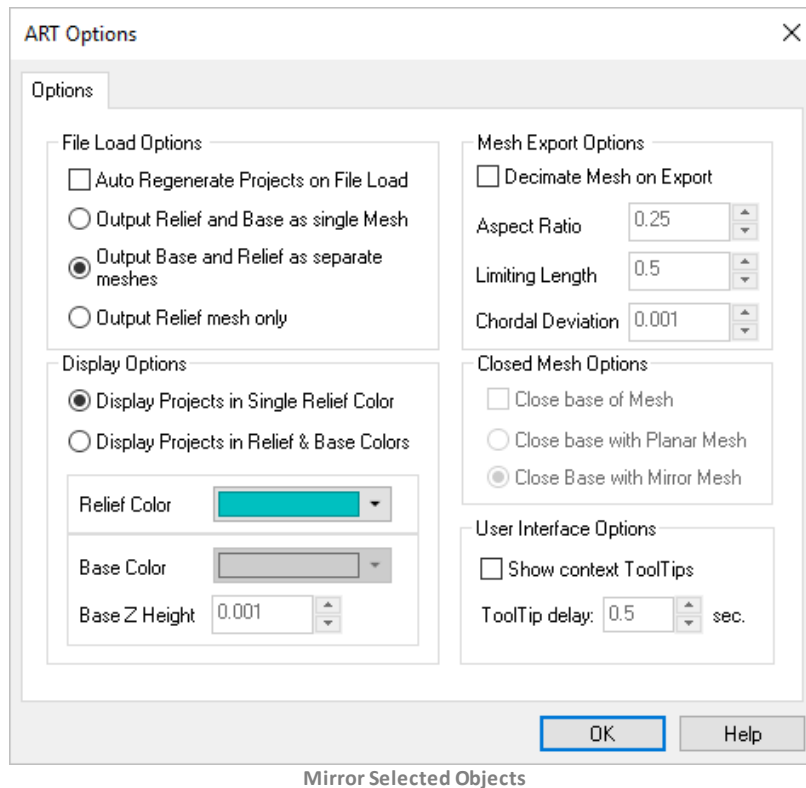


Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select Mirror... from Transform menu.	
Step 2	The number of objects is displayed. Use Pick Objects to add more to the selection.	
Step 3	Define the Mirror Plane and Pick (P) point.	
Step 4	Check the box to mirror a copy if desired.	Optional



Dialog Box: Mirror selected objects



Number of objects picked

The number of objects to be mirrored is displayed. If more items need to be scaled, use the [Pick Objects](#) button.

Mirror Plane / Point (P)

[Mirror Plane](#) is parallel to one of the principal planes: [XY Plane](#), [XZ Plane](#), or [YZ Plane](#).

[Point \(P\)](#) is defined to allow the planes to be offset. This point is on the mirroring plane. You may also select [Pick Plane Point](#).

Create Copy

This allows a copy to be made and leaves the original object in place and puts a copy at the mirrored location.

Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.12 Array ...



All selected objects will be copied into a uniform grid of objects offset from each other specified distances in x, y, and z. A dialog will appear where you can input parameters.



Command Prompts

None.



Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select Array... from Transform menu.	
Step 2	The number of objects is displayed. Use Pick Objects to add more to the selection.	
Step 3	Define the XYZ Spacing and # of Copies .	
Step 4	Pick OK to complete the Mirror command.	



Dialog Box: Array selected objects



Array selected objects



Number of objects picked

The number of objects to be arrayed is displayed. If more items need to be scaled, use the [Pick Objects](#) button.



XYZ Spacing

The **XYZ Spacing** is the separation of a given point on an object and the corresponding point on the copied objects. The object's size is not considered during this command.



of Copies

There can be a different **Number of X, Y or Z Copies** made in each direction.



Notes

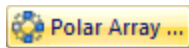
1. If the spacing numbers are all positive, the original object will be the one with the lowest (x, y, z) coordinates.



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.13 Polar Array ...



All selected objects will be copied into a uniform ring of objects around a circle. A dialog will appear where you can input parameters.



Command Prompts

None.

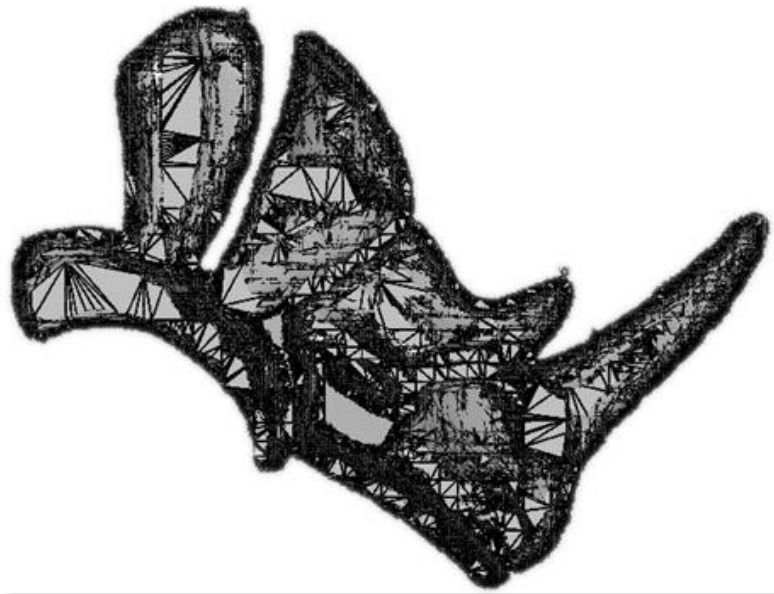


Basic Procedure

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select Polar Array... from Transform menu.	
Step 2	Enter or pick the point to Rotate About .	
Step 3	Enter the Angle to Fill . and total Number of Copies to array.	
Step 4	Pick OK to complete the Polar Array command.	



Dialog Box: Polar array selected objects



Polar Array



Number of objects picked

The number of objects to be polar arrayed is displayed. If more items need to be scaled, use the [Pick Objects](#) button.



Rotate About

This is defined with a point and a vector. [Pick About Point](#) allows the axis to be offset from the origin.



Axis Vector

This is parallel to the axis, and the direction of the vector tells which rotation is a positive angle. This is the [Right Hand Rule](#). For example, an axis of rotation at the origin (point is $(0,0,0)$) and a vector $(0,0,1)$ has positive angle going counterclockwise from the top view (from positive x-axis to positive y-axis). Alternatively, if the axis of rotation was at the origin $(0,0,0)$ but went the other way with a vector $(0,0,-1)$ has positive angle going clockwise (from positive x-axis to negative y-axis).



Angle to Fill

The rotation **Angle to Fill** measured from the current location.



Number of Copies

The **Number of Copies** is evenly distributed about the Angle to Fill.



Related Topics

[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)**5.10.14 Along Path ...**

All selected objects will be copied along a path curve. A dialog will appear where you can input parameters.

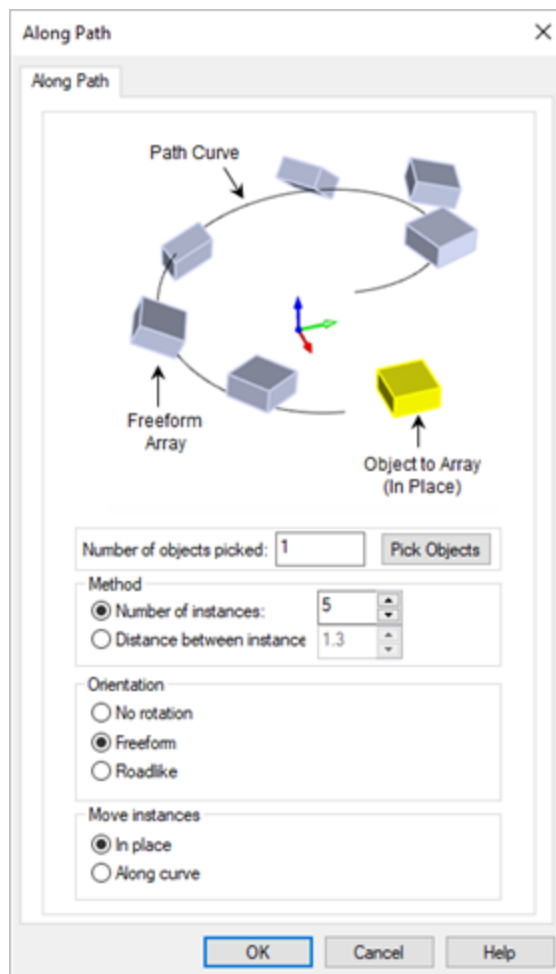
**Command Prompts**

None.

**Basic Procedure**

	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select Along Path... from Transform menu.	
Step 2	Select options from the dialog for Method , Orientation and Move Instances .	
Step 3	Pick OK to complete the Polar Array command.	

**Dialog Box: Polar array selected objects**



Transform Along Path



Number of objects picked

The number of objects to be transformed along the path curve. If more items need to be scaled, use the [Pick Objects](#) button.



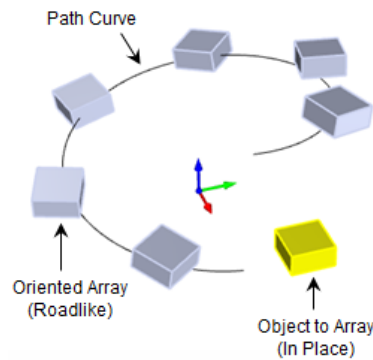
Method

This option allows you to specify the distance between the copied objects. You either specify the number of instances or specify the number of objects.

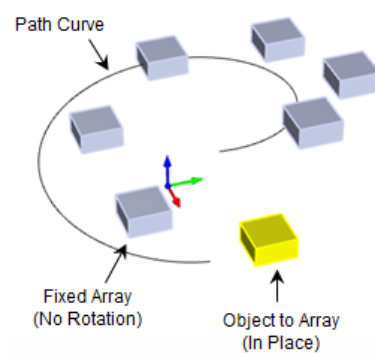


Orientation

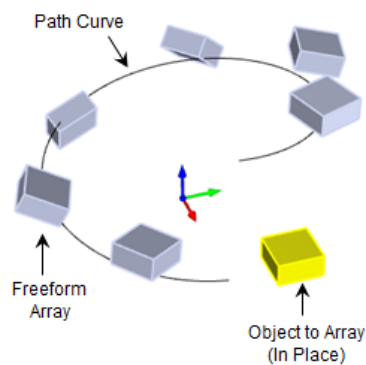
This specifies how the object instances should be oriented. The illustrations below show the different options. There can be [No Rotation](#) where the objects are fixed in place. There can also be a [Freeform](#) or a [Road like](#) orientation. Again the illustrations below provides some guidance on how the transformation will apply.



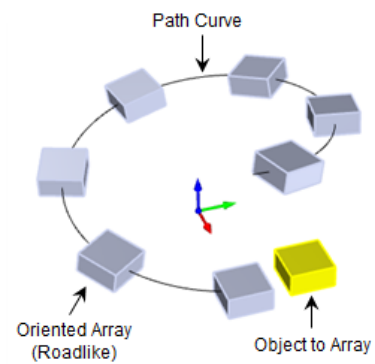
Array In Place Road Like



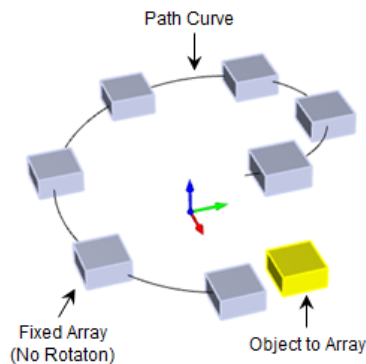
Array In Place No Rotation



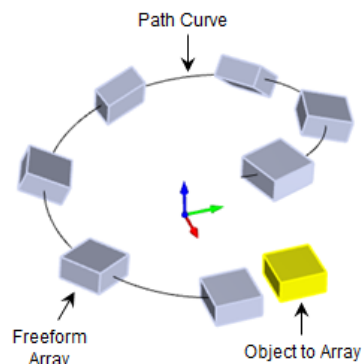
Array In Place Freeform



Array Along Path Roadlike



Array Along Path No Rotation



Array Along Path Freeform



Move Instances

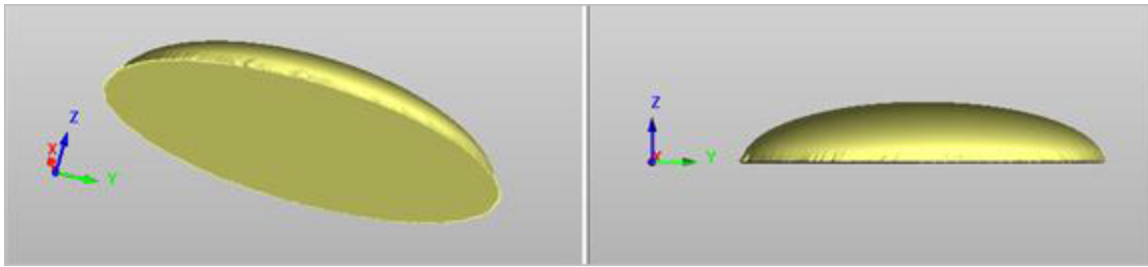
This specifies how the objects are moved. Select either **In Place** or **Along Curve**. Refer to the illustrations above for guidance.



Related Topics

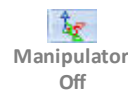
[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.10.15 Graphical Manipulator



Dis
pla
ys
th
e
gra
phi
cal

manipulator widget on selected object(s) facilitating move, scale, and rotate transformations around the graphical manipulator origin. This can be toggled on and off by selecting [Manipulator](#) on the [Status](#) bar.



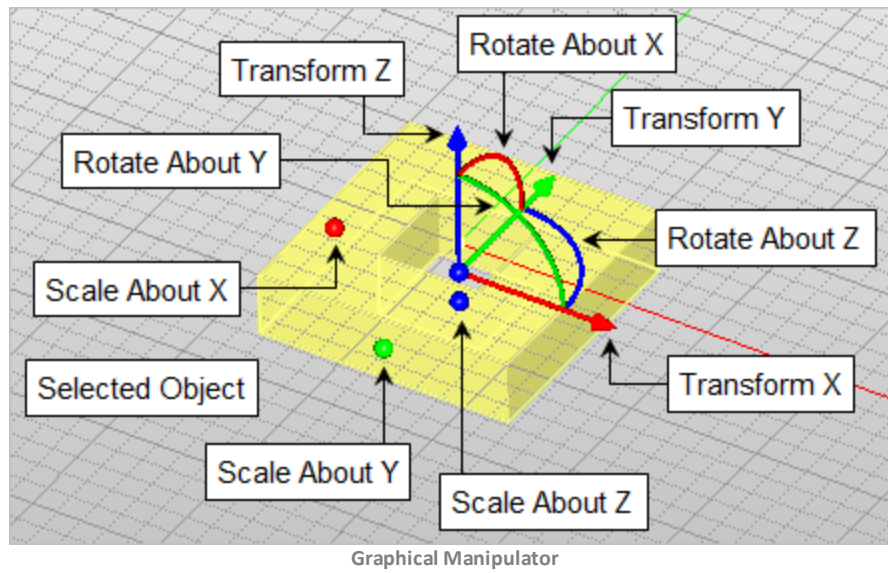
About the Graphical Manipulator

[Graphical Manipulator](#) can be used for graphical transform of objects by selecting the icon on the [Status Toolbar](#). This feature can be used to move or rotate objects. The orientation of the graphical manipulator is in the same orientation as the [World Coordinate System \(WCS\)](#).

The arrows displayed on the graphical manipulator can be selected and a numerical value placed to move the geometry in either X, Y or Z direction. Or the arrows can be selected and simply dragged in either the X, Y or Z direction.

To rotate the geometry, use the arcs on display of the graphical manipulator. The arcs displayed on the graphical manipulator can be selected and a numerical value placed to rotate the geometry in either X, Y or Z direction. Or the arcs can be selected and simply rotated by dragging with the left hold of mouse.

[Graphical Manipulator](#) can also be enabled by selecting [Transform](#) on the [Menu](#) bar and then selecting [Manipulator](#).



Command Prompts

Manipulator:: Move/Rotate object(s). Enter when done. Esc/RButton to exit.

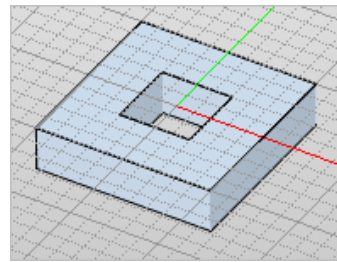


Basic Procedure

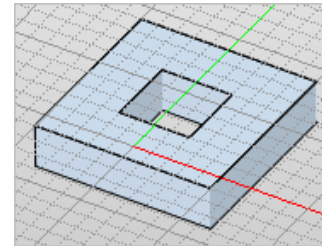
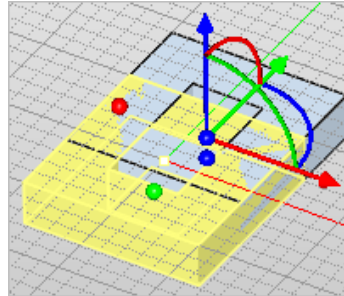
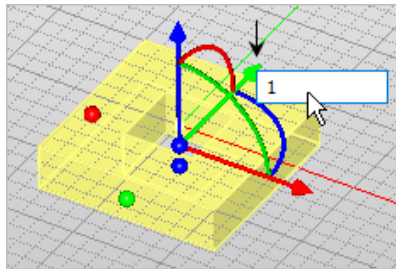
	Screen Activity	Comments
Step 1	Select an object to manipulate.	
Step 2	Select Manipulator from Transform menu or from the Status Toolbar . to display the manipulator widget.	
Step 3	Left-click on one of the manipulator widgets. There are three for each axis. They are Scale , Transform and Rotate . Refer to the illustration above.	
Step 4	Enter a value in the pop-up window and press ENTER . Alternately you can drag the widget to dynamically transform the object.	
	Left click on the origin of the Manipulator to display additional options. See below.	Optional



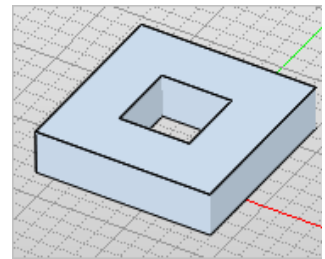
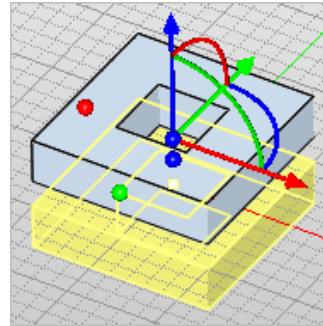
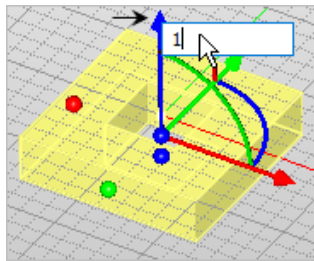
Examples



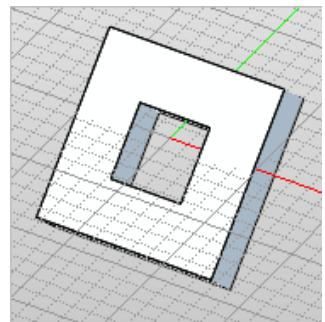
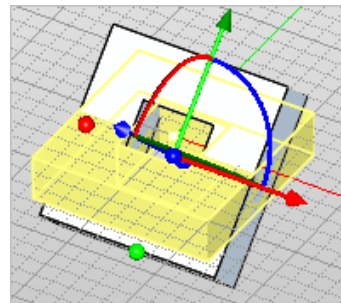
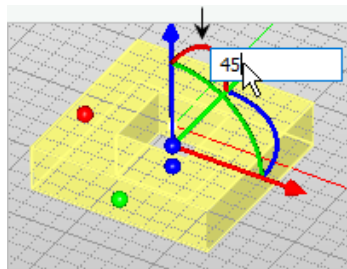
Original Geometry



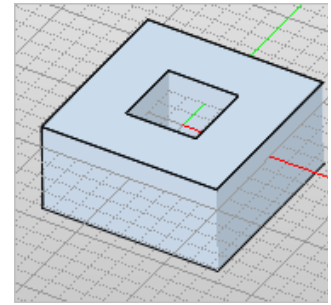
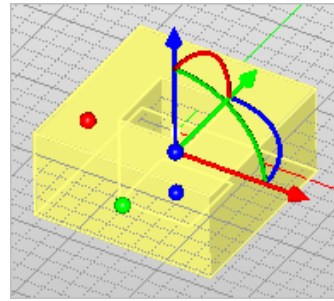
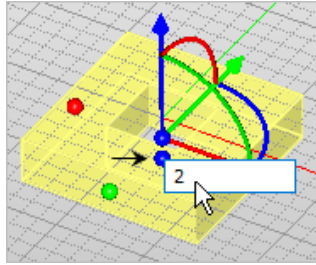
Move 1" along the positive Y Axis



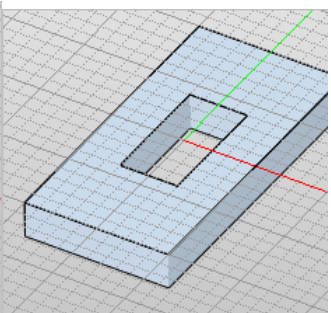
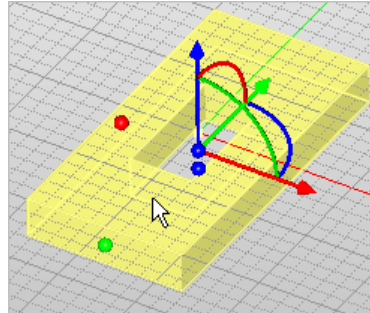
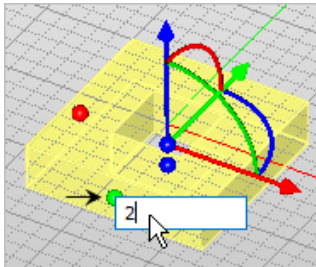
Move 1" along the positive Z Axis



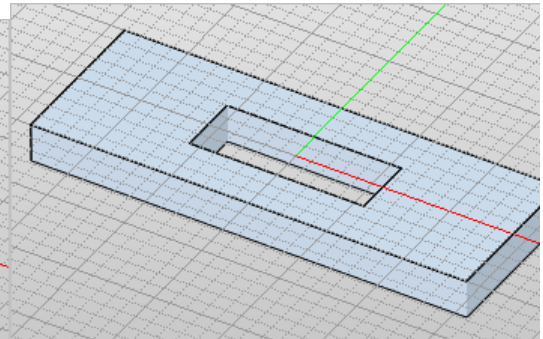
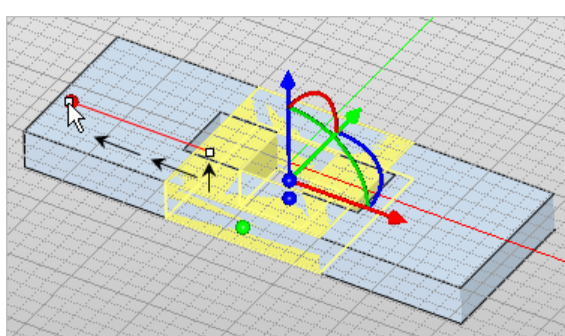
Rotate 45 degrees about the positive X Axis



Scale by 2 about the positive Z Axis



Scale by 2 about the positive Y Axis



Scale by Dragging equal distance about the X Axis

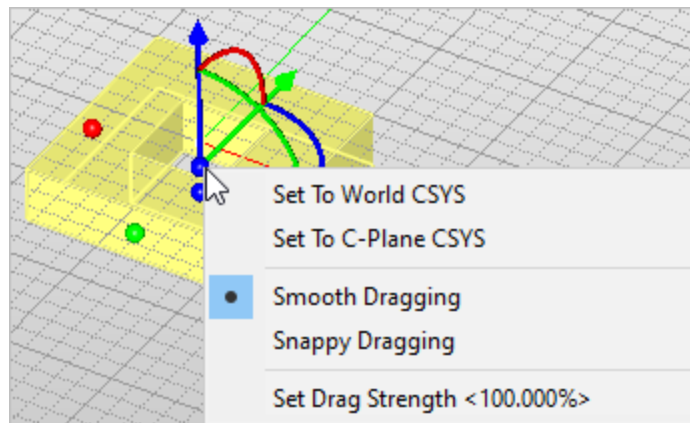


Graphical Manipulator options

Graphical Manipulator options can be invoked by left clicking on the origin of the manipulator.

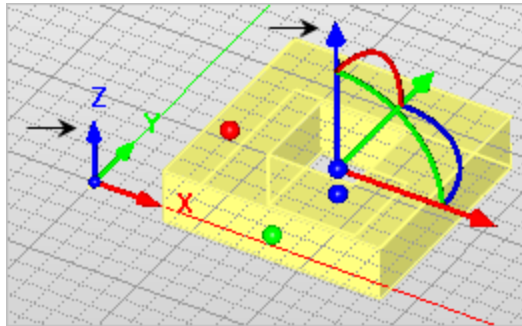
This allows for the selection of additional manipulator options such as [Set to World CSYS](#), [Set to CPlane CSYS](#), [Smooth Dragging](#), [Snappy Dragging](#) and [Set Drag Strength<100.000%>](#)

The below example shows the options after left click of mouse on origin of the manipulator.



Set to World CSYS

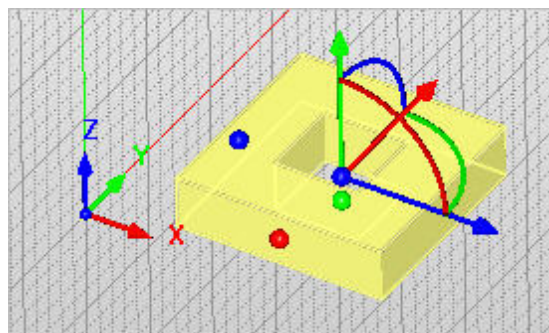
Set to World CSYS - In the below example, the [Graphical Manipulator](#) is set to the [World Coordinate System \(WCS\)](#).



Set to C-Plane CSYS

This sets the Graphical Manipulator to the Construction Plane Coordinate System

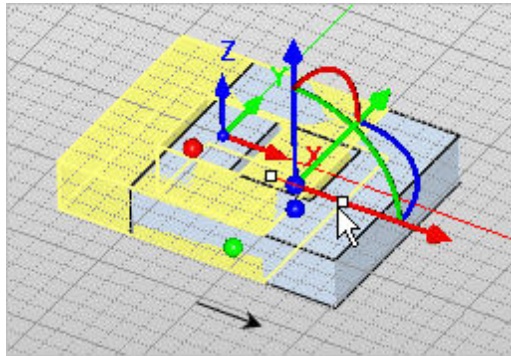
In the below example, the C-Plane is set to 45 degrees on the X axis coordinate and the manipulator is also set to that CPlane.



Smooth Dragging

This allows the Graphical Manipulator to glide freely when being manipulated.

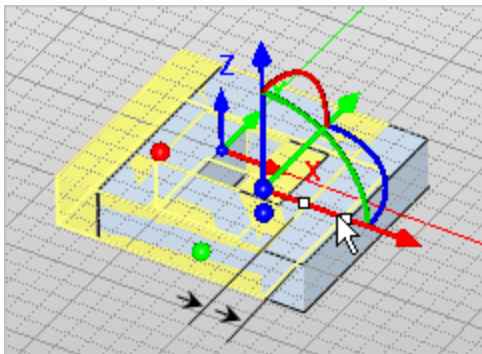
In the below example, please note that the geometry is gliding freely in between cells.



Snappy Dragging

This allows the Graphical Manipulator to move in increments by snapping from cell to cell for each move.

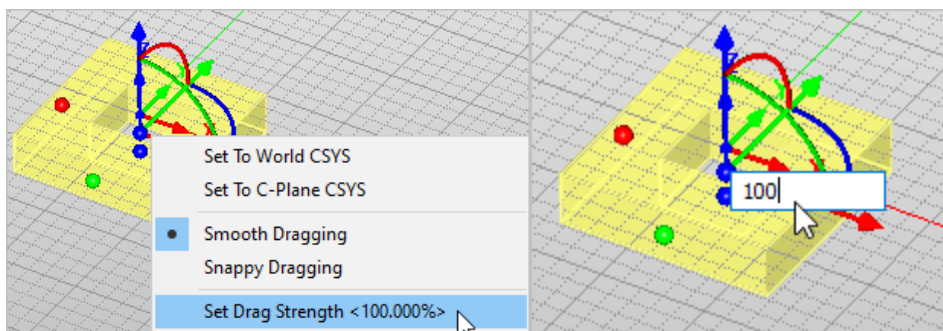
In the below example, please note that the geometry is snapping directly on to the cells



Set Drag Strength<100.000%>

This value by default is set to 100%. This sets the percentage of the speed by which the **Graphical Manipulator** moves when being dragged or rotated. The lower the value, the slower the speed.

In the below example the drag strength is set at 100%.





Related Topics

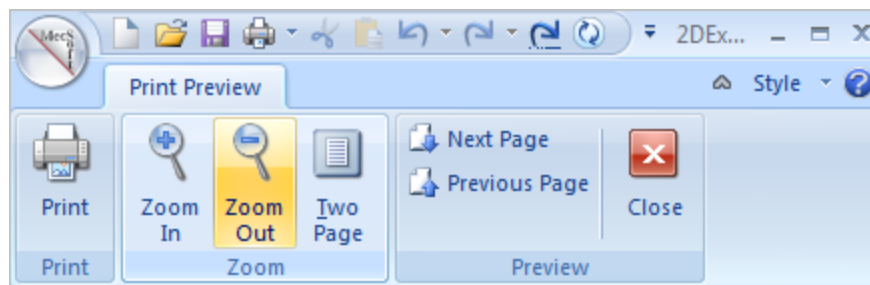
[Transform Ribbon Bar](#)

5.11 Print Preview

The [Print Preview Ribbon Bar](#) contains [Print](#), [Zoom](#), and [Preview](#) panes and associated functions. This [Ribbon Bar](#) is only displayed when the [Print Preview](#) command is executed.



The Print Preview Ribbon Bar



Print Preview Ribbon Bar



Related Topics

[The Ribbon Bar](#)

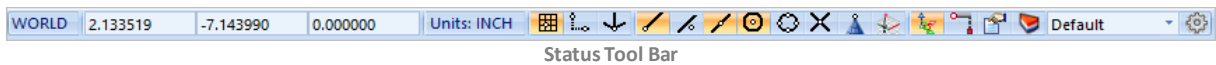
[VisualCAD Menu](#)

[Print ...](#)

[Print Preview ...](#)

[Print Setup ...](#)

Status Toolbar



Related Topics

[Coordinate input](#)

[Current Position](#)

[Part Units](#)

[Object Snap Control](#)

[Graphical Manipulator](#)

[Visual Aids](#)

[Properties](#)

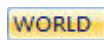
[Layer Manager](#)

[Options](#)

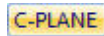
[Background Properties](#)

6.1 Coordinate input

Coordinate input for geometry creation can be set to World coordinates or **Construction Plane (C-Plane)** coordinates). To toggle between **WORLD** and **C-PLANE**, click **WORLD** on status bar.



World Coordinates



Construction Plane Coordinates



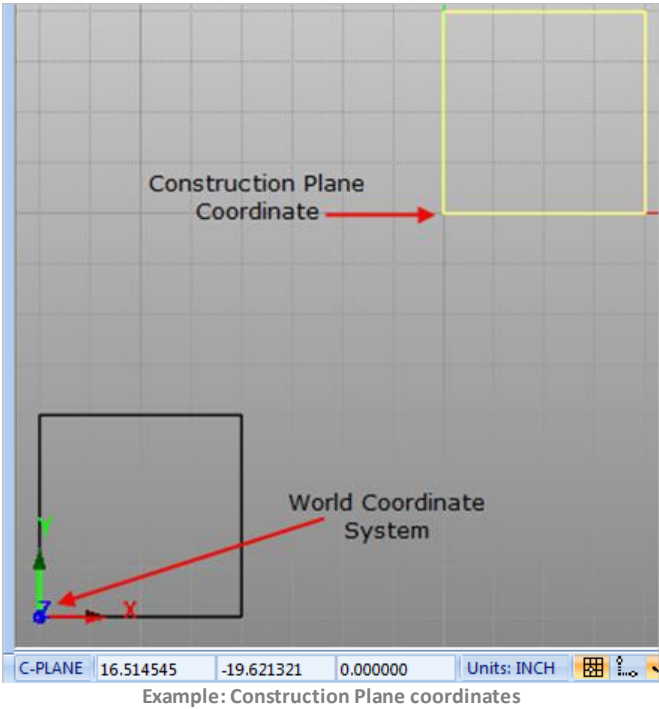
Construction Plane coordinates

Construction Plane coordinates can be used for inputting coordinates for geometry creation. This comes in handy when the C-plane is transformed from the **WCS** orientation. User can toggle between **C-PLANE** and **WORLD** coordinates by selecting **C-PLANE** or **WORLD** icon located on the **Status** bar.



Example: Construction Plane coordinates

Example above shows the construction plane transformed from the **World** origin.



Example: Construction Plane coordinates

Basic Procedure

To input coordinates in **C-Plane**, activate the **C-Plane** from the status bar by toggling this from **WORLD** to **C-Plane**.

Under the **Curve** pane of the **Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar**, select the **Rectangle** icon.

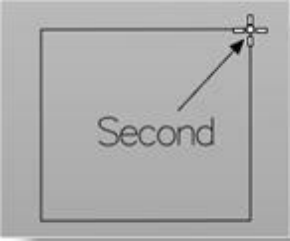
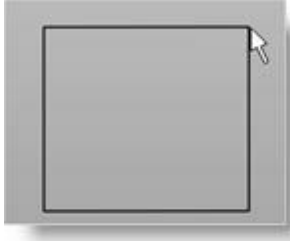
Step 1

Rectangle :: Pick first corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

Step 2

Rectangle :: Pick second corner point or enter coordinates x,y and z

	Screen Pick	Command Input
Step 1		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the first point. Command 0,0

Step 2		(Optional) Enter X, Y, [Z] coordinates for the second point (opposite corner). Command 1,1
Final		

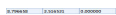


Related Topics

[Status Tool Bar](#)

6.2 Current Position

Displays information on current settings. It also has controls for the picking of points.

 Current Position (X, Y, Z)

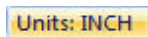
Displays the coordinates of the current cursor position in the view. The cursor is projected down into the current view's construction plane.



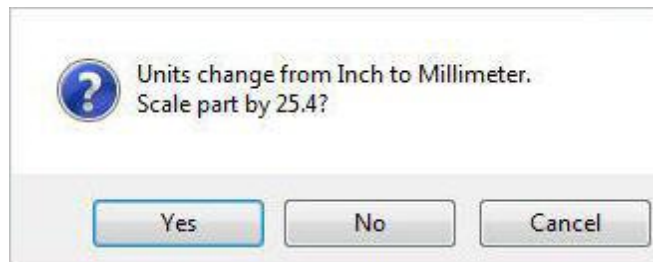
Related Topics

[Status Tool Bar](#)

6.3 Part Units

 Units: INCH

Displays the current model units. If it is picked, it will attempt to change units from inches to millimeters or from millimeter to inches. If objects are already in the model, a dialog will verify if you really want to change units. The objects keep the same size but their measured dimensions change.



Related Topics

[Status Tool Bar](#)

6.4 Object Snap Control

The [Object Snap](#) controls are located on the [Status Tool Bar](#). They allow you to select objects by their snap locations. The available [Object Snaps](#) are listed in the [Related Topics](#) section below.



Object Snaps



Related Topics

[Status Tool Bar](#)

[Grid Snap](#)

[Ortho Snap](#)

[Origin Point Snap](#)

[End Point Snap](#)

[Near Point Snap](#)

[Mid Point Snap](#)

[Center Point Snap](#)

[Quad Point Snap](#)

[Intersection Point Snap](#)

Vertex Point Snap

Project C-Plane Snap

6.4.1 Grid Snap



Points picked near construction plane grid intersection will be snapped to that grid point. This can be toggled on and off by selecting [Grid Snap](#) on the [Status](#) bar.



Grid Snap



Grid Snap

On

Off

**Related Topics**[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.2 Ortho Snap



Switches on and off the display of the construction plane in the currently selected view. The default is to show the construction plane (grid). This can be toggled on and off by selecting **Ortho Snap** on the **Status** bar.

Ortho Snap
OnOrtho Snap
Off**Related Topics**[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.3 Origin Point Snap



Points picked near the origin will be snapped to the origin. This can be toggled on and off by selecting **Origin Snap** on the **Status** bar.

Origin Point Snap
OnOrigin Point Snap
Off**Related Topics**[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.4 End Point Snap

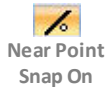


Points picked near the end points of objects will be snapped to that end point. This can be toggled on and off by selecting **End Point Snap** on the **Status** bar.

End Point
Snap
OnEnd Point
Snap
Off**Related Topics**[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.5 Near Point Snap

 Points picked near objects will be snapped to the nearest point. The nearest point is the closest point on the object to the cursor. This can be toggled on and off by selecting **Near Point Snap** on the **Status** bar.

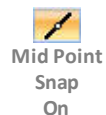


Related Topics

[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.6 Mid Point Snap

 Points picked near the midpoints of a curve will be snapped to that point. This can be toggled on and off by selecting **Mid Point Snap** on the **Status** bar.

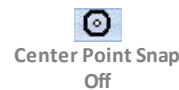
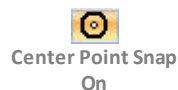


Related Topics

[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.7 Center Point Snap

 Points picked near the center point of a circle, arc, or closed polygon will be snapped to that point. This can be toggled on and off by selecting **Center Point Snap** on the **Status** bar.

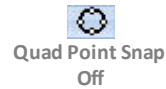
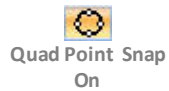


Related Topics

[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.8 Quad Point Snap

 Points picked near the quadrant points of circles and arc will be snapped to that point. Quadrant points are the points on the circle at 0, 90, 180, and 270 degrees. This can be toggled on and off by selecting **Quad Point Snap** on the **Status** bar.



Related Topics

[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.9 Intersection Point Snap

 Points picked near the intersection of curves will be snapped to that point. This can be toggled on and off by selecting [Intersection Point Snap](#) on the [Status](#) bar.

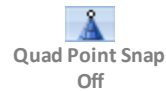
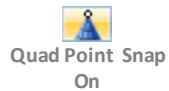


Related Topics

[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.10 Vertex Point Snap

 Points picked near the vertex of a mesh will be snapped to that point.

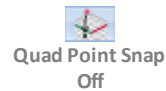
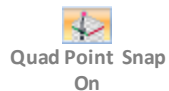


Related Topics

[Object Snap Control](#)

6.4.11 Project to C-Plane Snap

 All selected points will be projected to the construction plane.

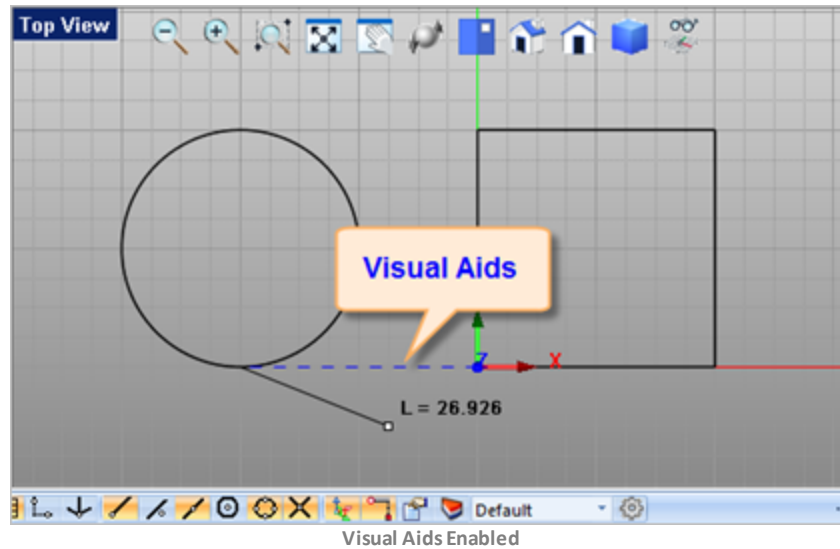


Related Topics

[Object Snap Control](#)

6.5 Visual Aids

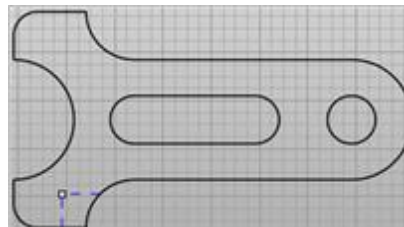
 This provides tools for the construction of geometry.



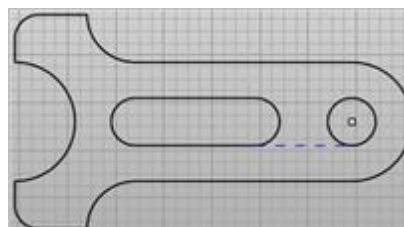
This can be toggled on and off by selecting **Visual Aids** on the **Status** bar.



This feature can serve as a construction aid or a tool for referencing geometry. With **Visual Aids** enabled, it will allow viewing of construction lines as it references geometry. This allows for easier visual placement of new geometry. Curve creation using **Visual Aids** can be enabled by selecting the **Visual Aids** icon on the **Status** Toolbar.



The above example shows intersection reference of 2 curves



The above example shows tangent reference to 2 circles



Related Topics

[Status Tool Bar](#)

6.6 Properties ...



Information about a selected object will be displayed. This includes the name, layer that it's on, the item's color, number of selected objects, object type, and attributes related to the selected object. These properties can be modified.



Object Properties Dialog

Properties	
General	
Selected Objects Count	1
Active Layer	Default
Objects	
Name	Curve1
Layer	Default
Use Layer Color	☒
Object Type	NurbsCurve
Control Points Count	9
Degree	2
Control Point Number	1
Point	13.750; 2.250; 0.000
X	13.750
Y	2.250
Z	0.000
Periodic	False
Rational	False
Closed	False
Objects	

Object Properties Dialog

The dialog shows the object name, layer that it's on, the item's color, object type, and attributes related to the selected object. It also shows the number of selected objects and the name of active layer.

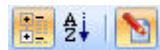
The object name is automatically generated when the object was created but can be changed. Points, lines, arcs, circles, curves default to the geometry-type name (i.e.

points, lines, ...) with a number at the end. The number has no significance; it is just an internally generated number. Surface and poly-surfaces are named as [Shells](#) and polygonal meshes as [Mesh](#).

The layer that the object is on is displayed.

The color of the object defaults to the construction color of the layer; however, it can be changed. Uncheck the “[Use Layer Color](#)” box and click the color bar underneath it. A color-picking dialog will appear. This color change only applies to that object.

This selects which of the existing layers to make the active layer. If that layer was not visible before being selected, it and all of the objects on that layer become visible. Any objects created after that will be the default color for that layer.



The information displayed in the properties dialog can be grouped or listed in alphabetical order.

When 2 or more objects are selected, the property manager displays the selected object count and the active layer information.

Selecting [Edit](#) mode allows editing of curve geometry.



Related Topics

[Status Tool Bar](#)

[Edit Mode](#)

6.6.1 Edit Mode



[Edit Mode](#) can be enabled by clicking on the [Edit Mode](#) icon in the [Properties](#) dialog and can be toggled on and off by clicking it. With [Edit Mode](#) active, the points are visible in the viewport and coordinates displayed in the properties dialog. They are grayed out in the [Properties](#) tab if [Edit Mode](#) is not active.

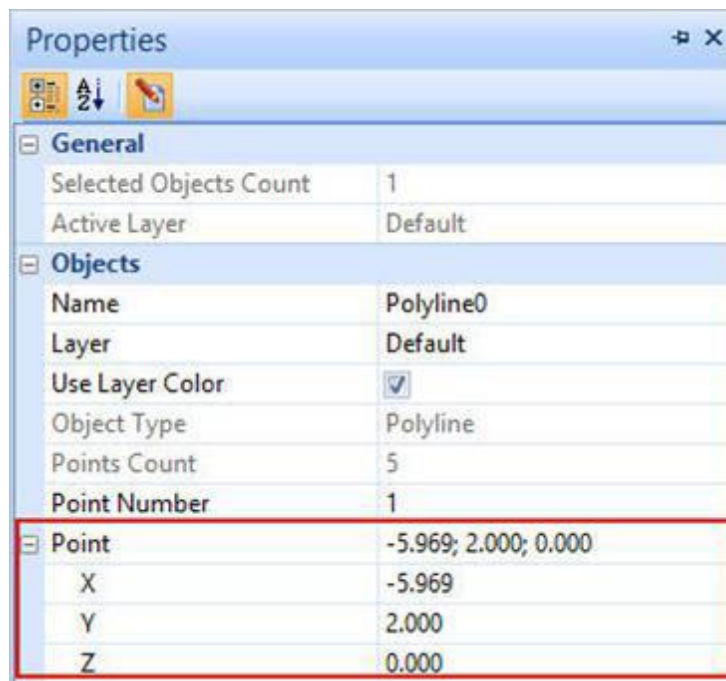


You can use the [Properties](#) dialog to parametrically edit certain types of geometry such as the radius of a circle or the length and width of a rectangle. This allows you to quickly change geometry dimension values!

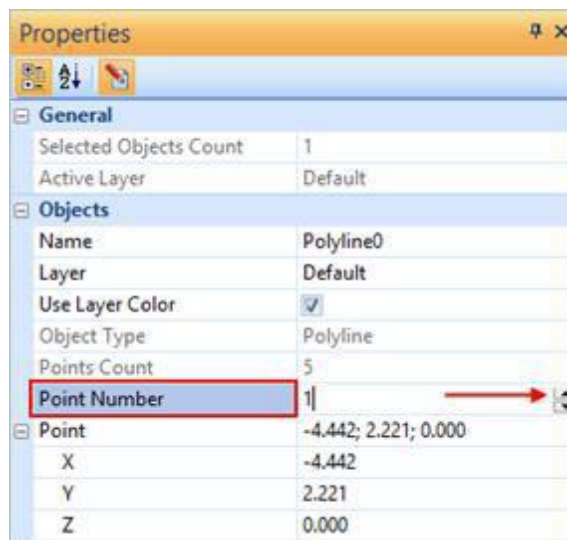
The [Properties](#) tab can be located in the [Status Toolbar](#). The X, Y, and Z coordinates of the geometry can be modified by changing the [Point](#) values within the [Properties](#) tab under [Objects](#) or graphically by dragging them in the viewport. You can cycle through all the edit points and modify the X, Y and Z coordinates for each point by using the spinner increment. Cycling through these points highlights the points on the geometry in the viewport.



Properties Dialog

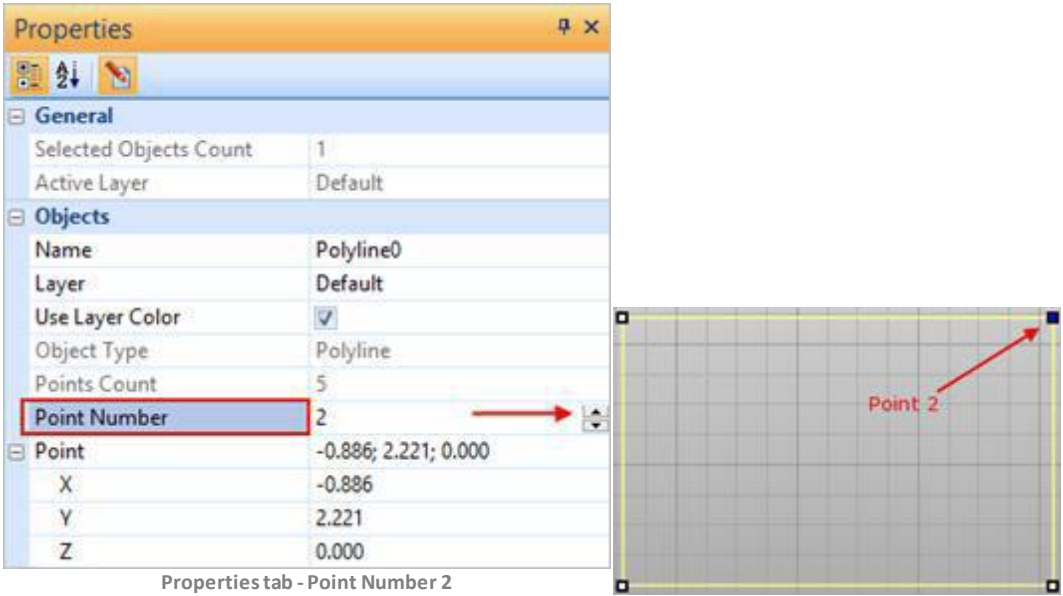


Properties tab



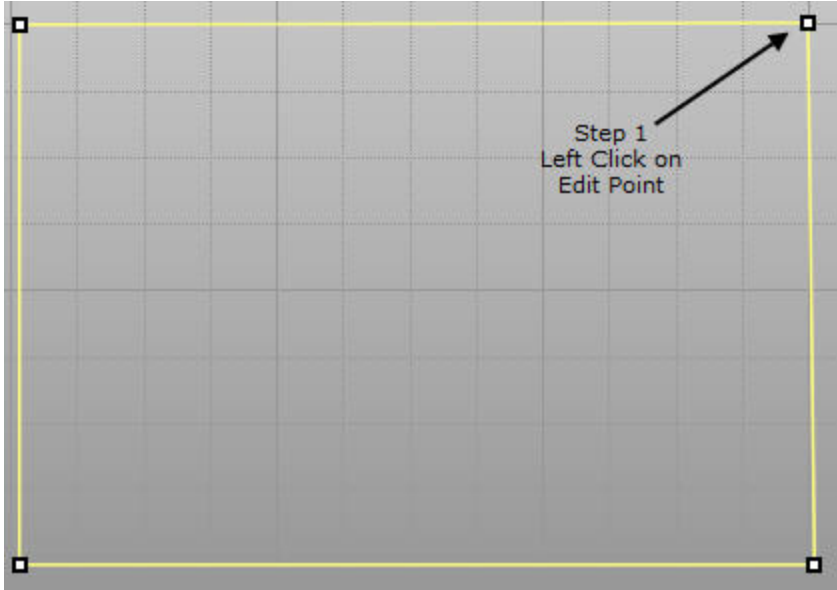
Properties tab - Point Number 1

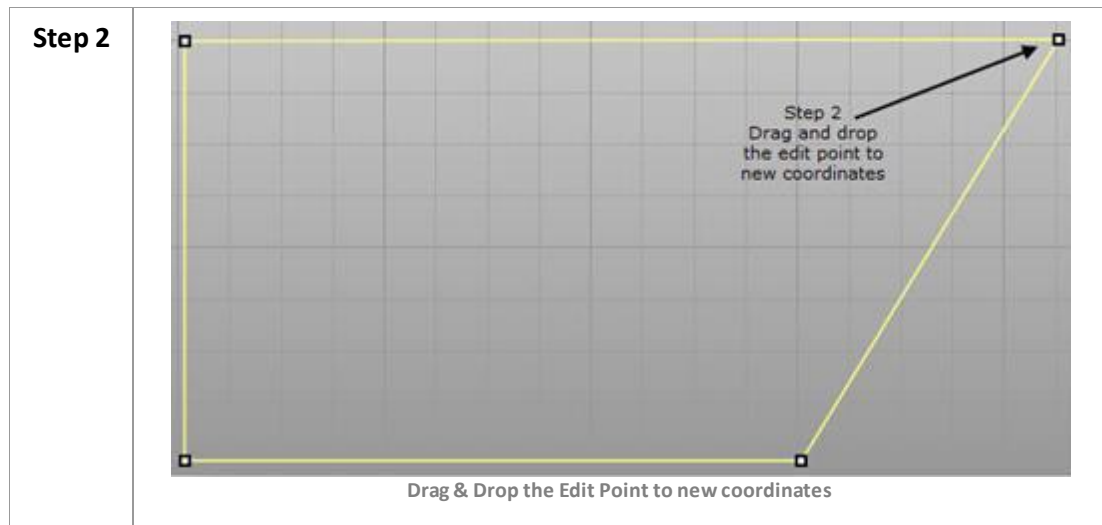




 Basic Procedure

Edit points can also be modified by picking the corner points graphically in the viewport with drag and drop.

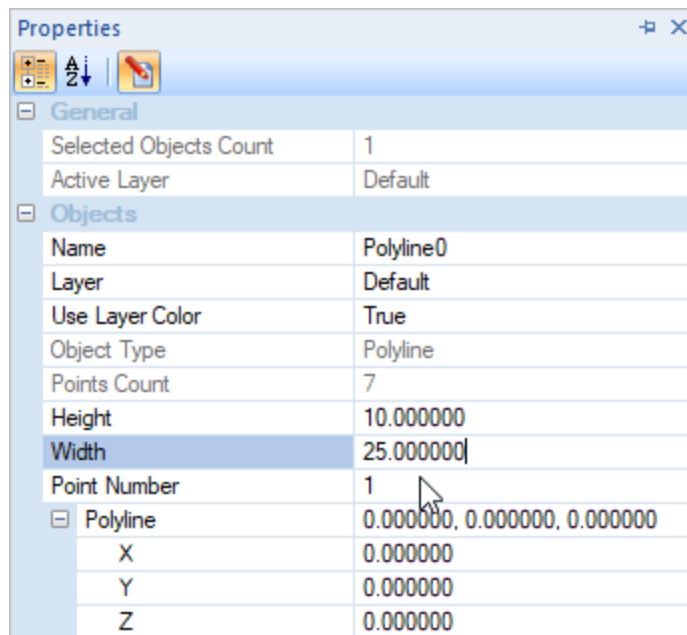
	Screen Pick
Step 1	 Left-click on Edit Point



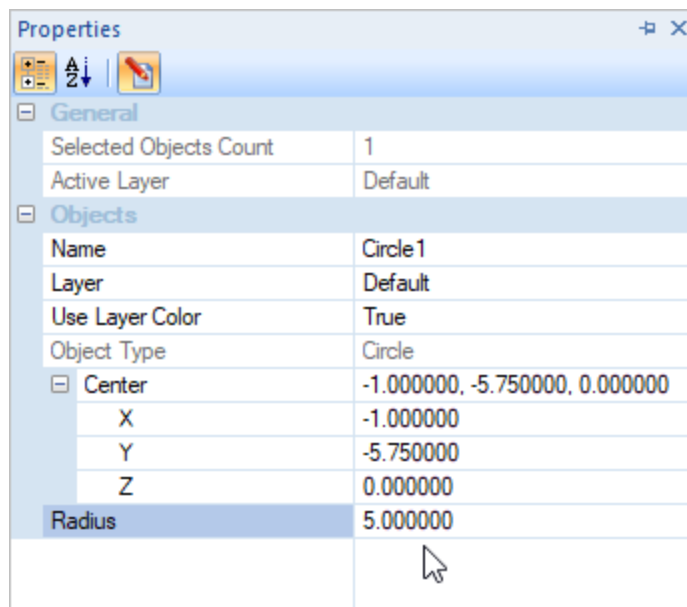
Edit Geometry Parametrically

You can parametrically edit the dimensions of geometry using the [Properties](#) dialog.

Just select the [Edit](#) icon  until the dimension values are activated. When you edit a dimension value and close the [Properties](#) dialog the geometry will update automatically.



Edit the Length & Width of a Rectangle



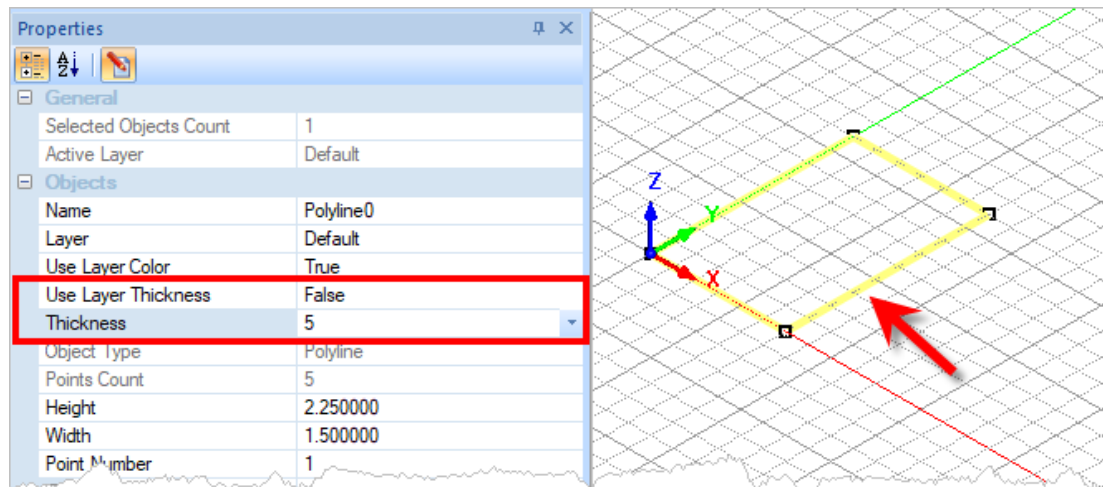
Edit the Radius of a Circle



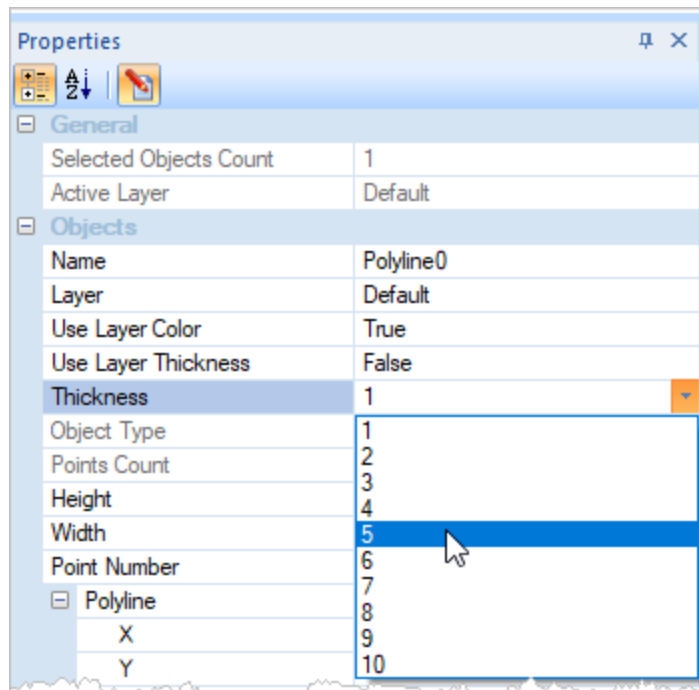
Editing Line Widths

You can edit the width of a line or curve using the [Properties](#) dialog.

Just select the [Edit](#) icon  until the object properties are activated. Then set the [Use Layer Thickness](#) to [False](#). This will activate the [Thickness](#) field. Drop down the [Thickness](#) menu and select a line width. When you edit a dimension value and close the [Properties](#) dialog the geometry to update automatically.



Edit the Width of a line or curve



Line Width Property Selector



Related Topics

[Properties](#)

6.7 Layer Manager



This button calls up a dialog to manage the layers.

Layers					
Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☒	10		☐
Base	☐	☐	1		☐
Main Housing	☒	☒	0		☐
Bars	☐	☒	0		☐
A Table	☐	☒	0		☐
X Metal Head	☐	☒	0		☐
Y Plastic Head	☐	☒	0		☐
X Slider Bar	☐	☒	0		☐
Y Table	☐	☒	0		☐
Z Head	☐	☒	0		☐

Layer Manager

Each layer has a name and color associated with it. There can be 0 or more geometric objects on any layer. A layer and all the geometry on it can be made invisible if you uncheck the **Visible** checkbox. The layer can be turned back on by rechecking the box. All layers are visible by default.



Related Topics

- [Status Tool Bar](#)
- [Layer Visibility](#)
- [Lock Layer](#)
- [New Layer](#)
- [Delete Layer](#)
- [Duplicate Layer](#)
- [Duplicate Layer and Objects](#)

6.7.1 Layer Visibility

Visibility of layers is useful in the construction of complicated models. Create multiple different layers, one for each subsection of the model. Then turn off all but the layer for the subsection currently being modified. This makes very complicated models much easier to see and work with. Otherwise, it can be difficult to see whatever was just created or picking particular items in the middle of lots of other objects from different subsections.

Layers

+

−

Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☒	6		☐
Base	☐	☒	0		☐
Main Housing	☒	☒	0		☐
Bars	☐	☒	0		☐
Layer 04	☐	☒	0		☐
Layer 05	☐	☒	0		☐

Layer Visibility

The visibility of the other layers can be periodically turned on and off to check the positioning of the current subsection with regards to the rest of the model. Visibility of active layer cannot be turned off.

Only one layer at a time is active. Any new objects created will be created on this layer and with the default layer color. Selecting objects by layer will select only the objects on the current layer.

You can change the active layer through this dialog or through the [Status Toolbar](#) drop-down list.

Layer 01  Active Layer

The current number of objects on each layer is also displayed.

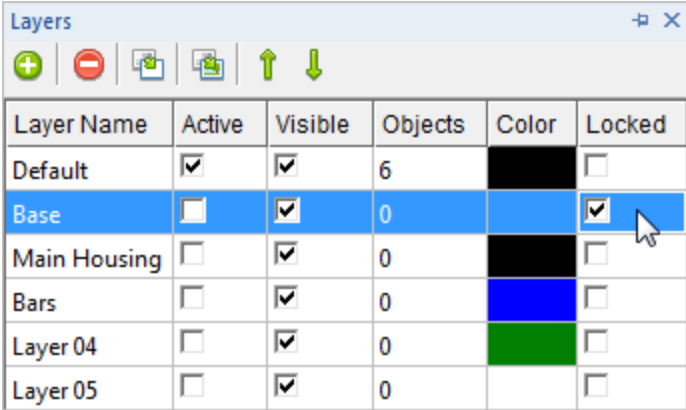


Related Topics

[Layer Manager](#)

6.7.2 Lock Layer

Locks a layer when the **Locked** check box is selected.



Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☒	☒	6	Black	☐
Base	☐	☒	0	Blue	☒
Main Housing	☐	☒	0	Black	☐
Bars	☐	☒	0	Blue	☐
Layer 04	☐	☒	0	Green	☐
Layer 05	☐	☒	0		☐

Lock Layer

Locking a layer does not allow selection, editing and snapping to objects. This would be useful where you would like to have the geometries visible but locked for selection and editing. The layer that is active cannot be locked.



Related Topics

[Layer Manager](#)

6.7.3 New Layer



Creates a new layer. The default name is New Layer, but the name can be changed.



Related Topics

[Layer Manager](#)

6.7.4 Delete Layer

 Deletes the selected layer.

 [Related Topics](#)
[Layer Manager](#)

6.7.5 Duplicate Layer

 Copies the layer selected with its attributes.

 [Related Topics](#)
[Layer Manager](#)

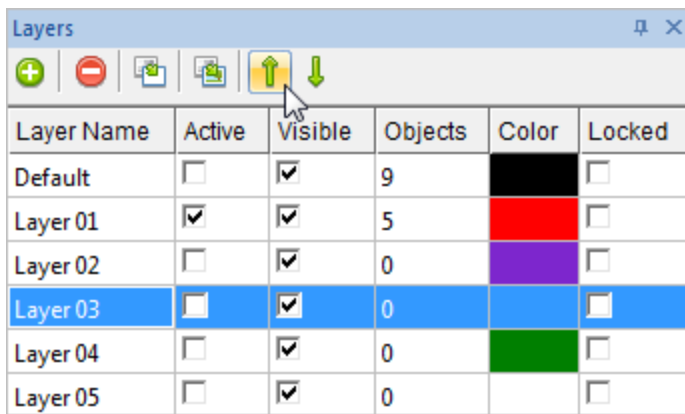
6.7.6 Duplicate Layer and Objects

 Copies the layer selected with its attributes and all of the objects on the layer.

 [Related Topics](#)
[Layer Manager](#)

6.7.7 Reorder Layers

  From the [Layer Manager](#), select these icons to [Reorder Layers](#) within the [Layer Manager](#) list. First select a layer and then pick the [Move Layer Up](#) or [Move Layer Down](#) icon from the [Layer Manager](#) toolbar.



Layers					
Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☒	9	Black	☐
Layer 01	☒	☒	5	Red	☐
Layer 02	☐	☒	0	Purple	☐
Layer 03	☐	☒	0	Blue	☐
Layer 04	☐	☒	0	Green	☐
Layer 05	☐	☒	0		☐

Layer Manager - Reorder Layer

6.8 Background Properties

Performing a Right mouse click in any of the view ports when no geometries are selected and selecting [Properties](#) from the menu display the [Background Properties](#) dialog.



Screen Background Color

Allows user to set the viewport background color. This is the color displayed when no objects are at that position.



Screen Gradient

This is a smooth change of lighting. The direction specified is the lighter side. It starts slightly darker on the opposite side of the screen and gradually gets lighter until it reaches the specified side.



Related Topics

[Layer Manager](#)

Exercises

7.1 #1: VisualCAD Preferences

In this exercise you will learn about many of the most commonly used system options in **VisualCAD** including how to access the online help, set display options, tolerances and units, system options, viewports and other **VisualCAD** display functionality.



What you will learn:

In this exercise you will perform the following **VisualCAD** tasks:

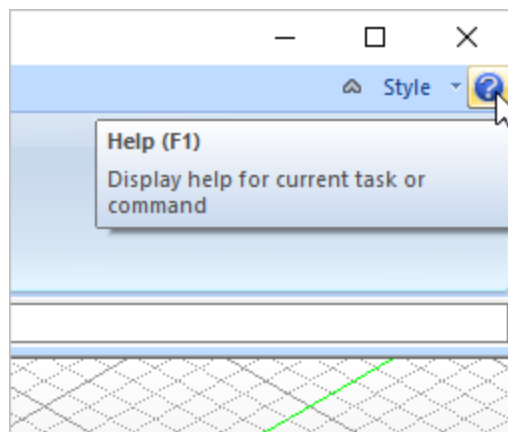
1. [Access the online help.](#)
2. [Set the Display Style.](#)
3. [Set the Units to Inches.](#)
4. [Set System Options.](#)
5. [Set to Quad Viewports.](#)
6. [Viewing the Command Prompts.](#)
7. [The Status Bar.](#)

7.1.1 Accessing the Online Help



Accessing the Online Help

At any time you can display the **VisualCAD Online Help** by selecting this icon or pressing the <F1> key during any command prompt or by selecting the **Help** icon shown below.

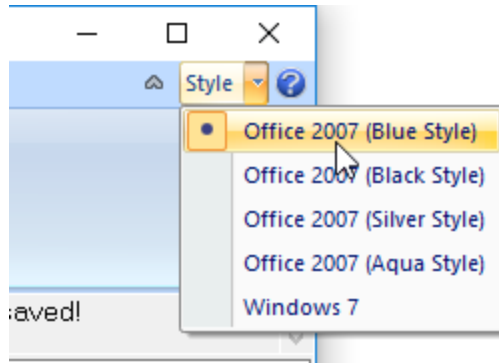


7.1.2 Set the Display Style



Set the Display Style

VisualCAD allows you to change the [Style](#) of the display. At the very top right of the VisualCAD display window, select the [Style](#) drop-down menu and select [Office 2007 \(Blue Style\)](#).

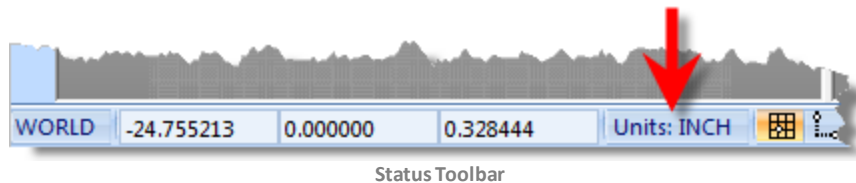


7.1.3 Set the Units to Inches



Set the Units to Inches

Open [VisualCAD](#) and check to see if the part unit is set to Inch.



If [Units](#) is set to [MM](#), double-click on it to change to [INCH](#).

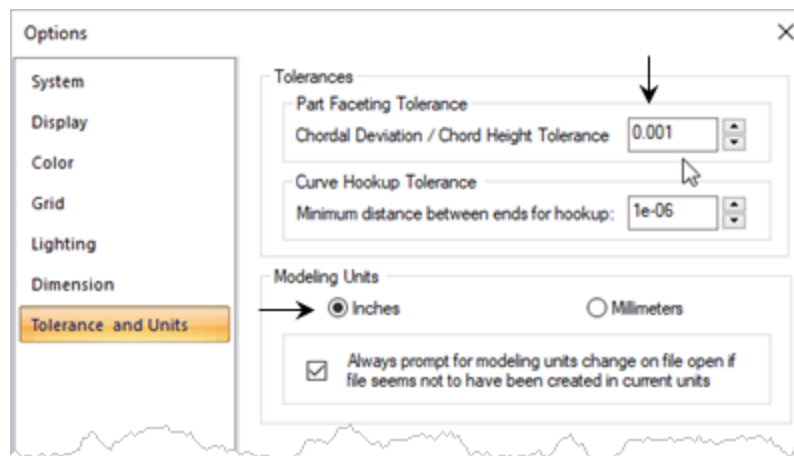
7.1.4 Set Systems Options



Set Systems Options

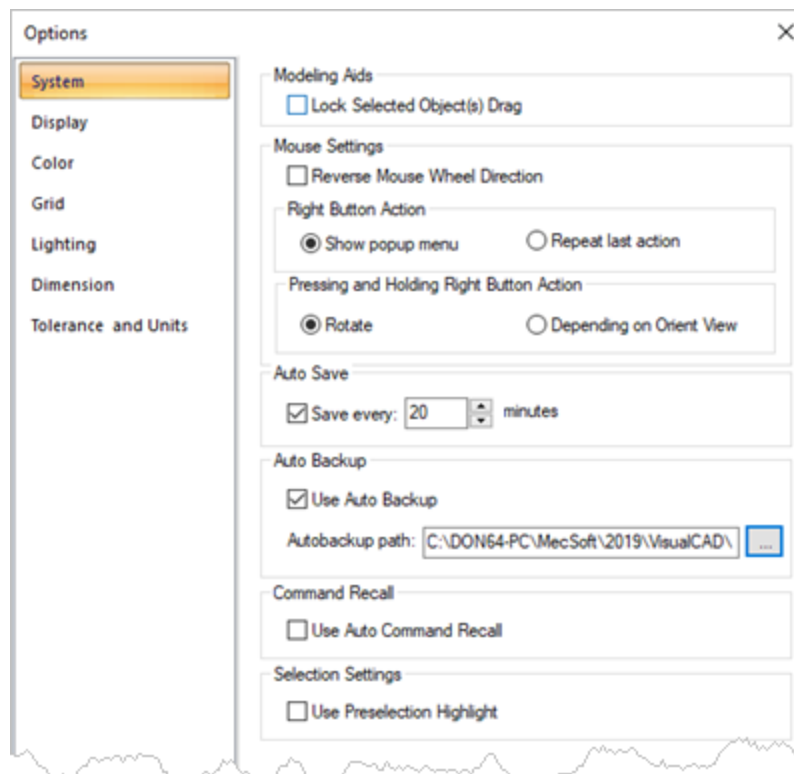
In this exercise you will learn how to set some of the systems options in [VisualCAD](#).

1. Select the [Home](#) tab.
2. Now select the [Options](#)  icon to display the [Options](#) dialog. This icon is also located on the Status Bar.
3. Select [Tolerance and Units](#) from the left side of the dialog.
4. Under [Part Faceting Tolerance](#) set the [Chordal Deviation / Chord Height Tolerance](#) to [0.001"](#).
5. Set the [Units](#) to [Inches](#).

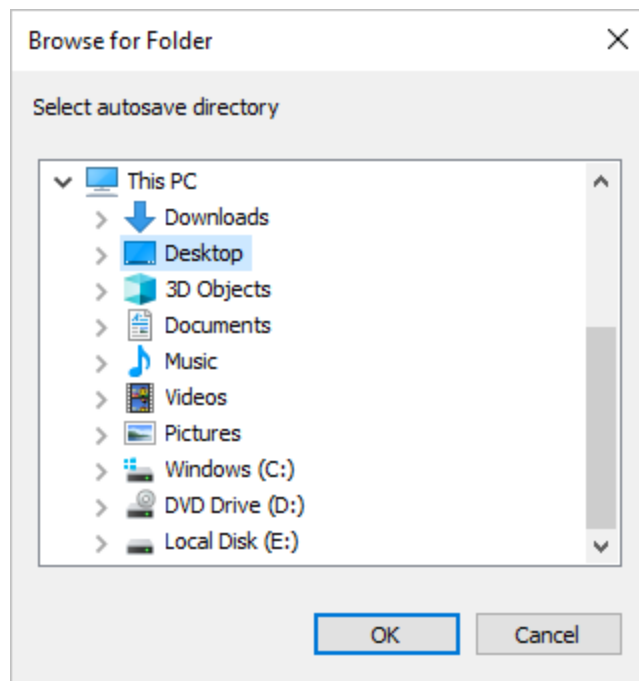


System Options Dialog

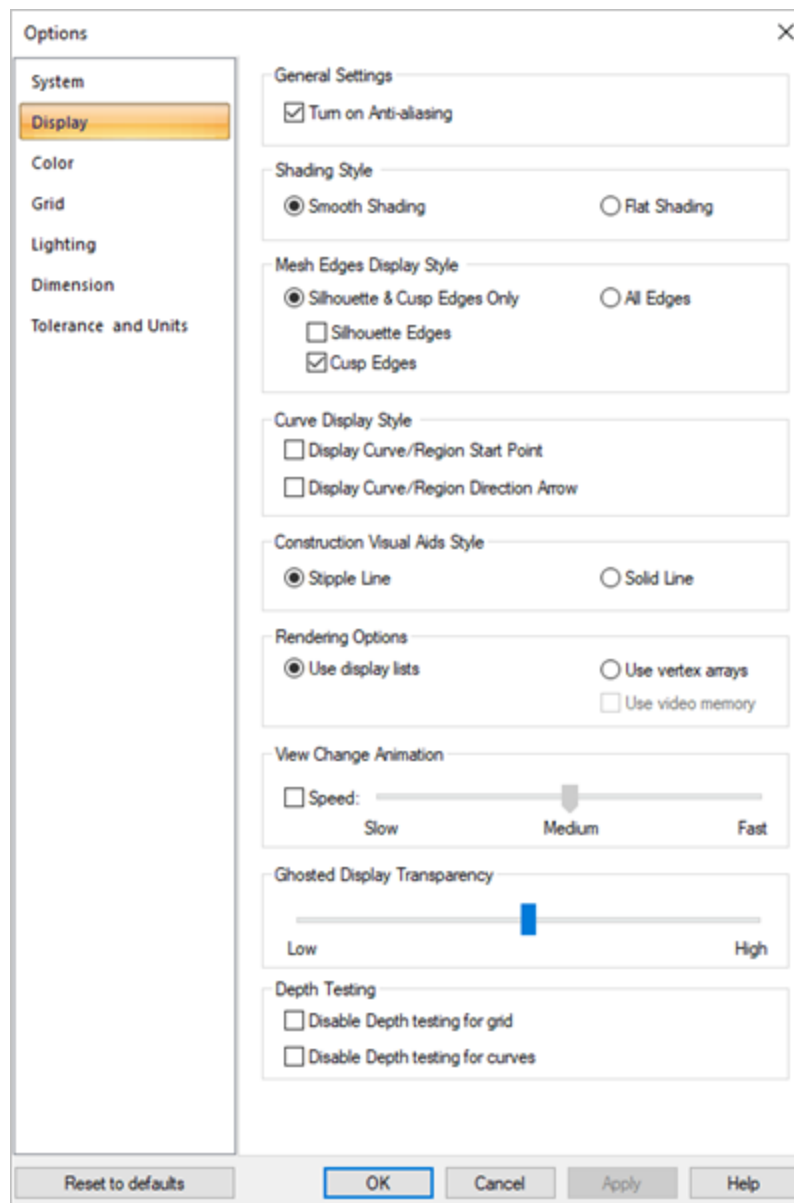
6. Select **System** from the left side of the dialog.



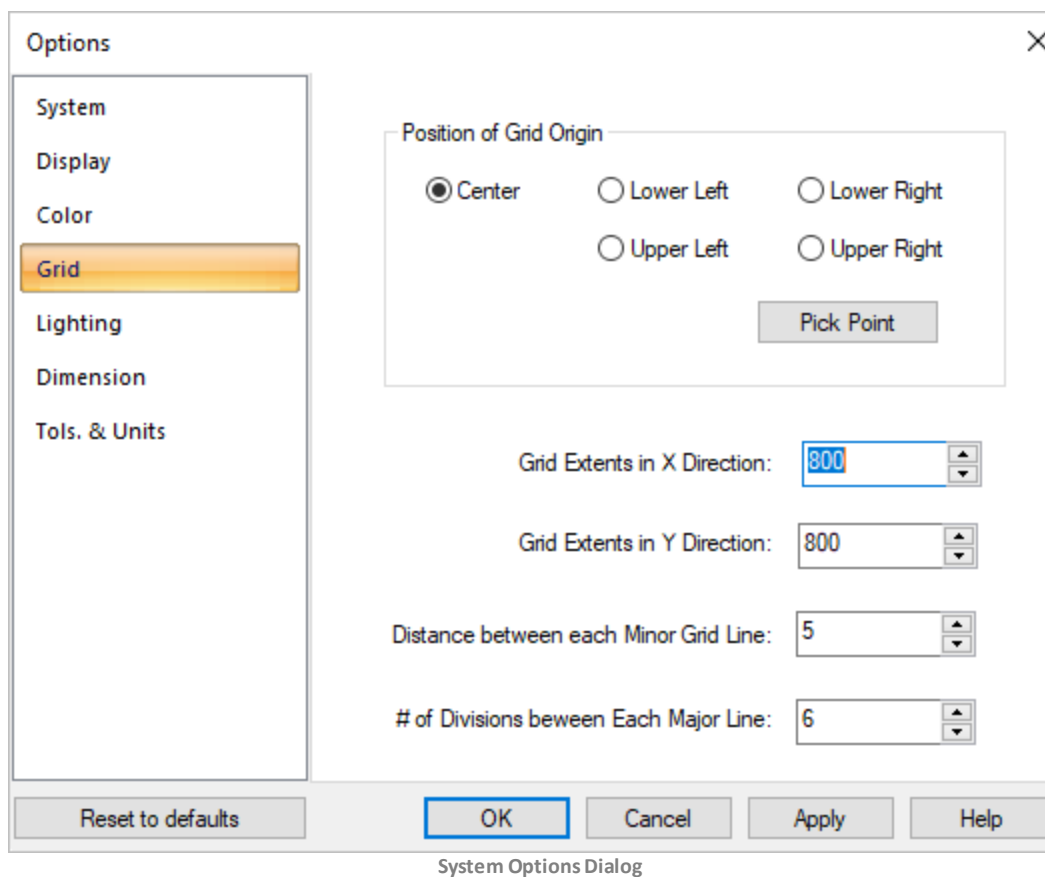
7. Under **Auto Save**, check the box and then set the value to save every **10** minutes.
8. Check the box to use **Auto Backup** and then select the **...** box to display the **Browse for Folder** dialog.
9. Select the folder where you want backup files to be saved and then pick **OK**.



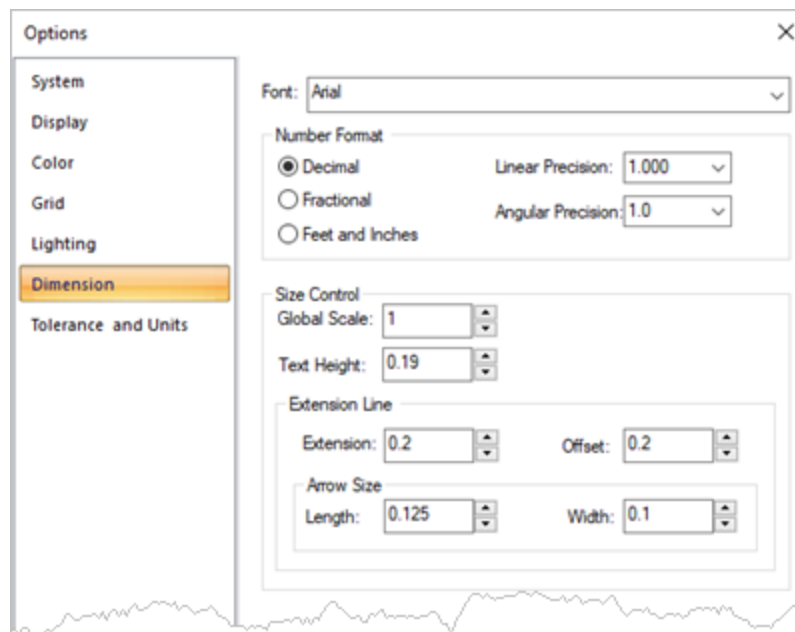
10. Set the remaining [System Options](#) as shown in the dialog above.
11. Now select [Display](#) from the left side of the dialog.
12. Under [View Change Animation](#) uncheck the box next to [Speed](#).



13. Set the remaining [Display Options](#) as shown in the dialog above.
14. Select [Grid](#) from the left side of the dialog. In these exercises we use the following [Grid](#) options.



15. Select [Dimension](#) from the left side of the dialog.
16. Set the [Dimension Preferences](#) to those shown in the dialog below.
17. Pick [OK](#) to close the [Options](#) dialog.



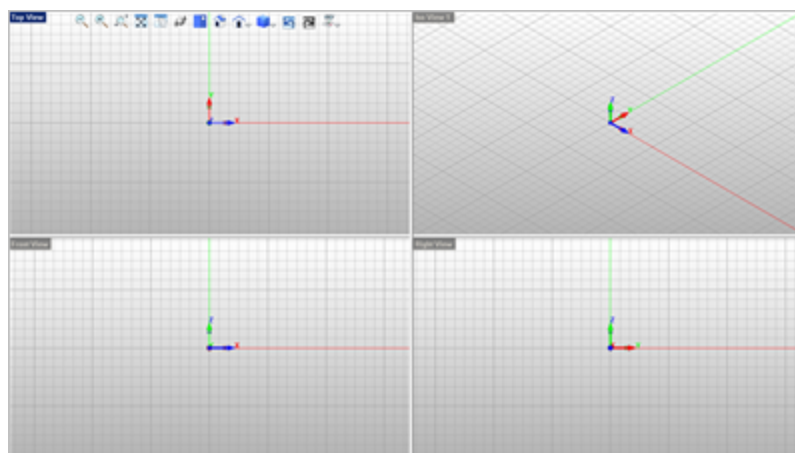
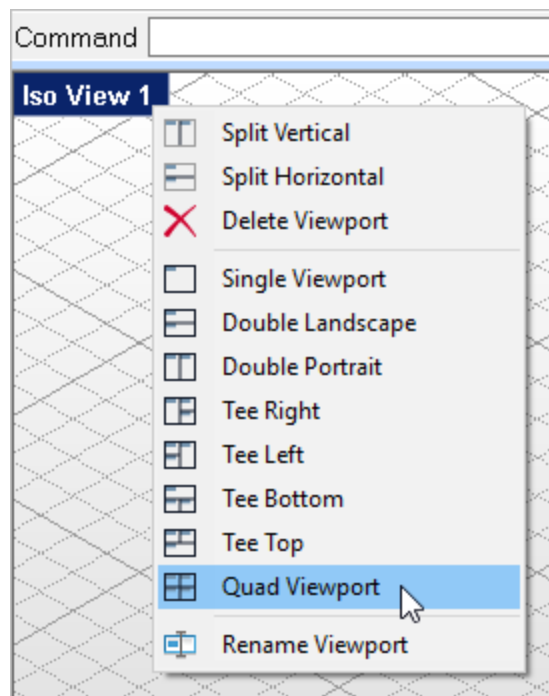
7.1.5 Set to Quad Viewports

Set to Quad Viewports

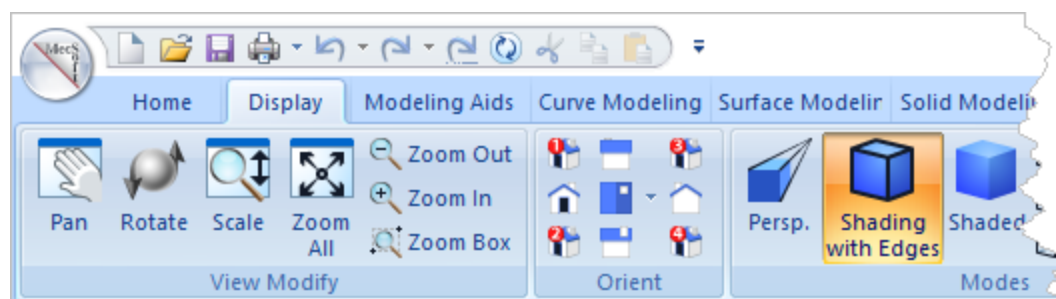
It is much faster to draw and model in [VisualCAD](#) if you have multiple [Viewports](#) displayed.

Select the [Home](#) tab.

1. Right-click on the Viewport tab located in the upper left side of the window and select [Quad Viewport](#).



2. You can also select [Display](#) and [Viewport](#) commands from the [Display](#) tab of the VisualCAD Ribbon Bar.



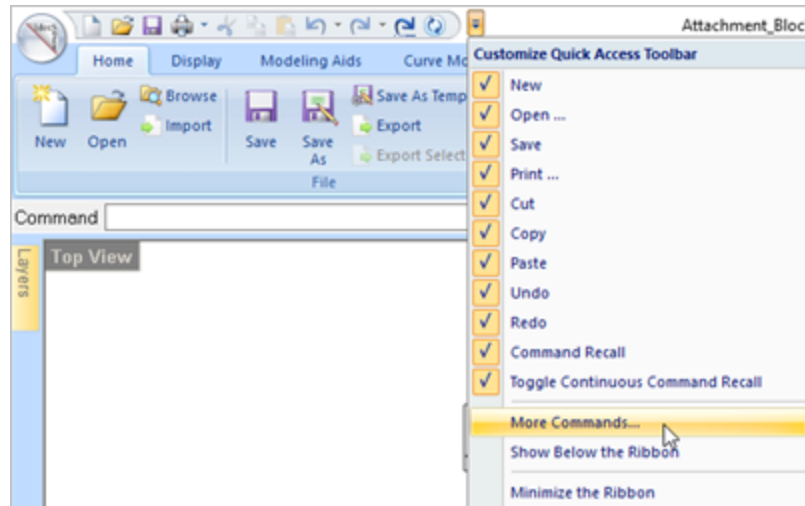
7.1.6 The Quick Access Toolbar



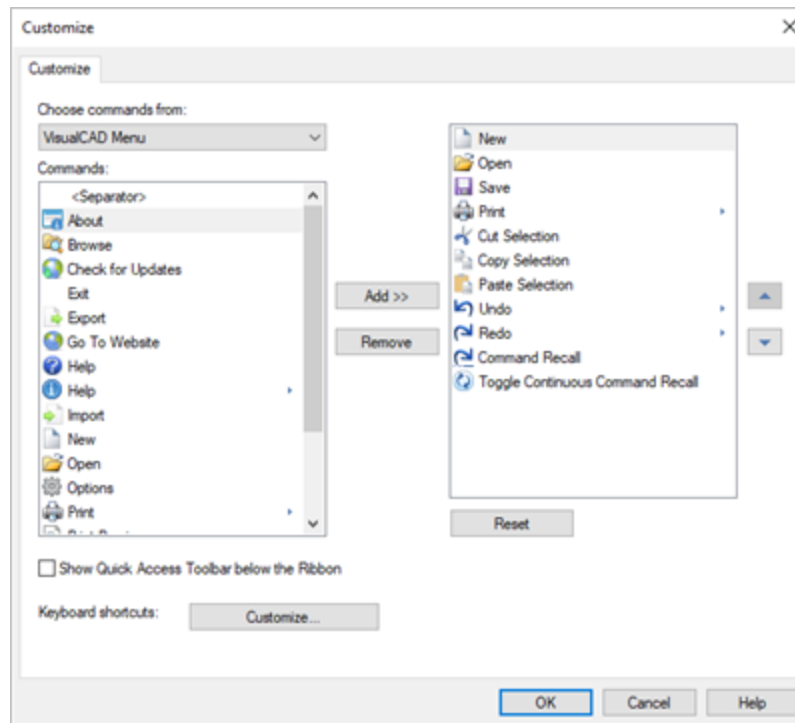
The Quick Access Toolbar

Located at the very top left of the [VisualCAD](#) window you will find the [Quick Access Toolbar](#). It contains many of the most commonly used commands such as [Cut](#), [Copy](#), [Paste](#), [Save](#), [Undo](#), [Redo](#), etc. The cool thing is that you can customize this toolpath to add commands that YOU use regularly.

1. Pick the drop-down menu to the right of the [Quick Access Toolbar](#).



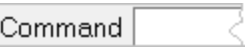
2. Select [More Commands...](#) from the menu to display the [Customize](#) dialog. You can use this dialog to add or remove commands to the [Quick Access Toolbar](#).

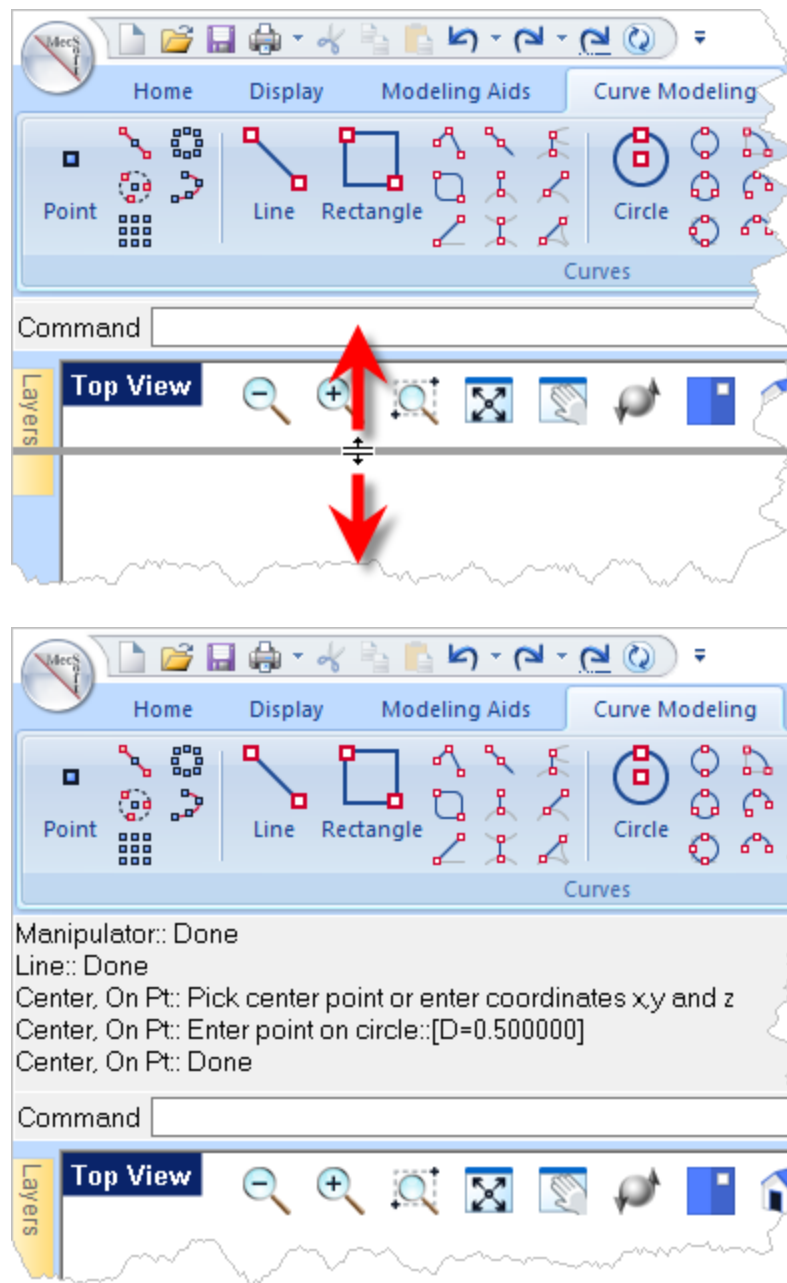


7.1.7 Viewing the Command Prompts

Viewing the Command Prompts

The **Command Input** bar  is located just below the ribbon bar. You can drag the bar down to see the current and previous command prompts. This is helpful while learning how to use **VisualCAD**.

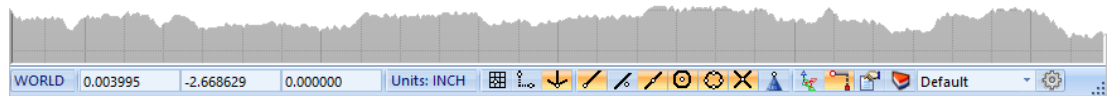
1. Move the cursor onto the bottom of the **Command Input** bar  until it changes.
2. Then left-click and drag the **Command Input** bar  down to reveal to review the history of commands.



7.1.8 The Status Bar

The Status Bar

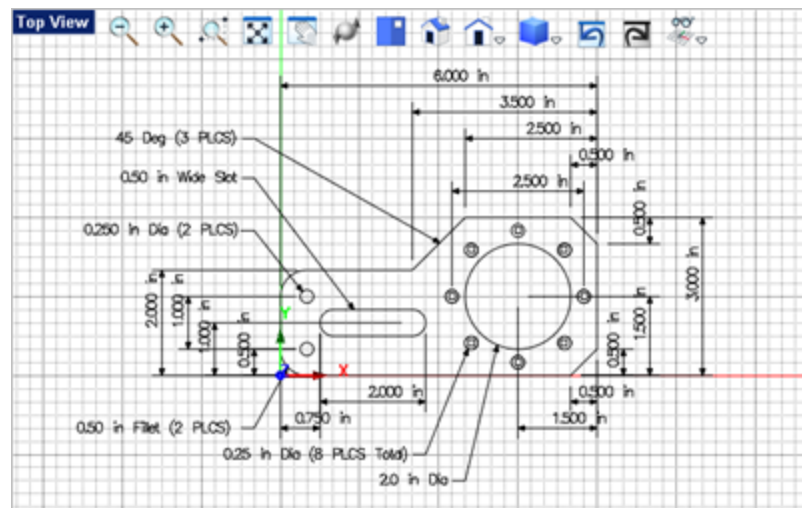
Located across the very bottom of the [VisualCAD](#) display you will find the [Status Bar](#). It contains information and quick access to some very helpful commands. From left to right on the Status Bar you will find This is where you access the Layer Manager, Properties dialogs, [Graphic Manipulator](#) and more. Here is the list:



1. [World Coordinates](#) tracker.
2. [Units](#).
3. [Grid](#), [Ortho](#) and [Object Snaps](#).
4. [Graphic Manipulator](#).
5. [Construction Visual Aids](#).
6. [Properties Manager](#).
7. [Layer Manager](#).
8. [Active Layer Selector](#).
9. [System Options](#).

7.2 #2: 2D Drawing & Dimensioning

In this exercise you will learn about the [Layer Manager](#) and how to create and work with layers. You will also learn how to draw quickly in [VisualCAD](#) using the menus and command line shortcuts. You will also learn how to take advantage of the [Visual Aids](#) feature to speed up your drawing creating tasks including lines, arcs curves, fillets, chamfers, trimming, dimensioning and more.



2D Drawing & Dimensioning



What you will learn:

In this exercise you will perform the following [VisualCAD](#) tasks:

1. [Create Layers](#).

2. [Curve Drawing.](#)
3. [Using Visual Aids.](#)
4. [Dimensioning.](#)

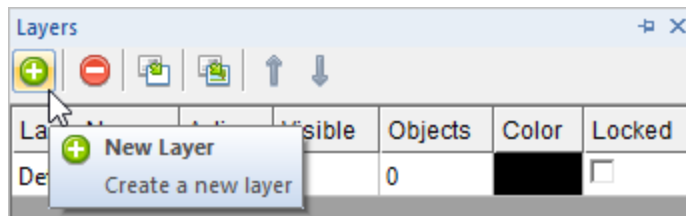
7.2.1 Create Layers



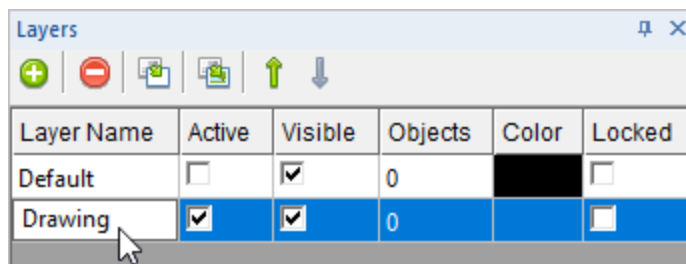
Create new Layers

In this step you will use the [Layer Manager](#) to create some new layers and then set the active layer.

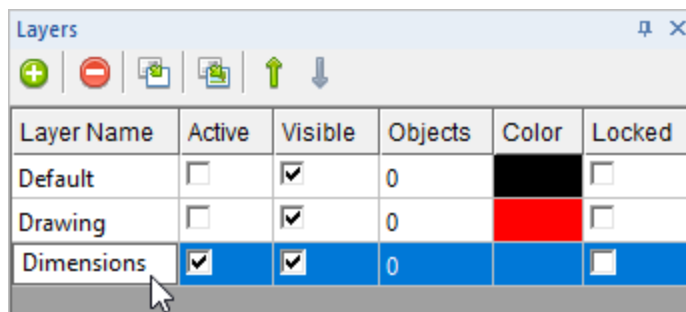
1. Display the [Layer Manager](#). You can pick the [Layer Manager](#) icon  located on the [Status Bar](#).
2. From the [Layer Manager](#) select the [Add Layer](#) icon  to add a new layer.



3. Now let's rename the new layer to [Drawing](#). First double-left-click in the [Name](#) field to activate it, and enter [Drawing](#) as the new layer name.



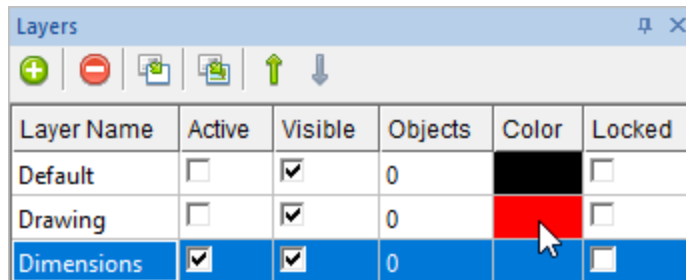
4. Repeat the procedure to create a new layer, this time named [Dimensions](#).



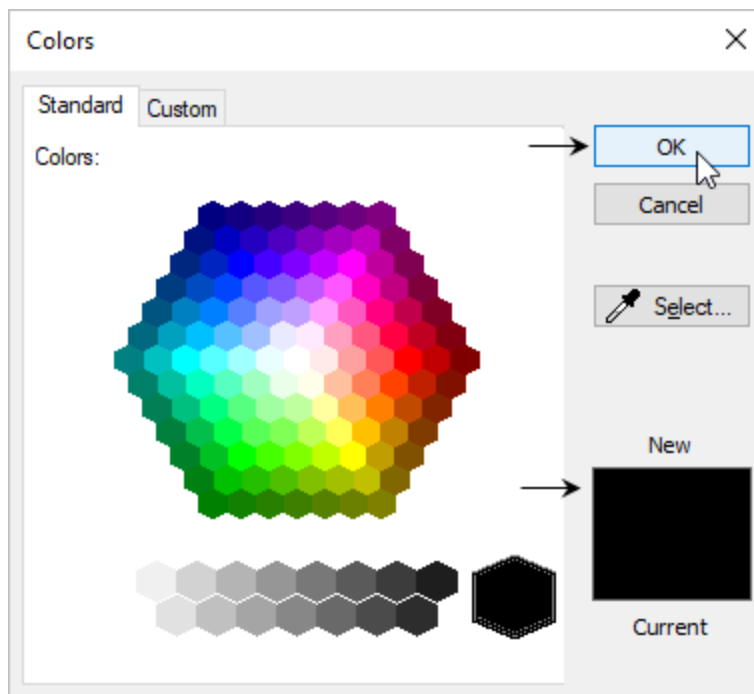
5. If the [Layer Manager](#) keeps [Auto-Hiding](#) to the left side of the display, you can select the [Auto Hide](#) pin icon  at the top of the [Layer Manager](#). to toggle this feature.

The pin down icon means that the dialog will stay displayed. The pin left icon means that the dialog will auto-hide.

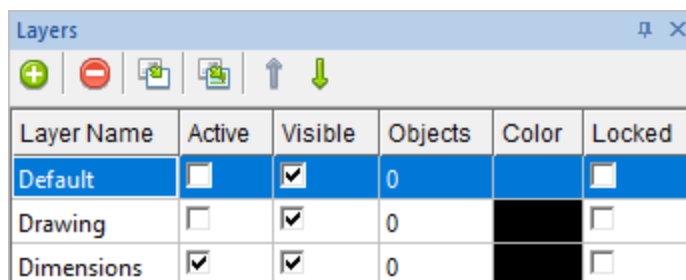
- Now let's change the color of these two layers. In the **Color** field left-click on the color box for the layer named **Drawing**. Again, this will display the **Colors** dialog.



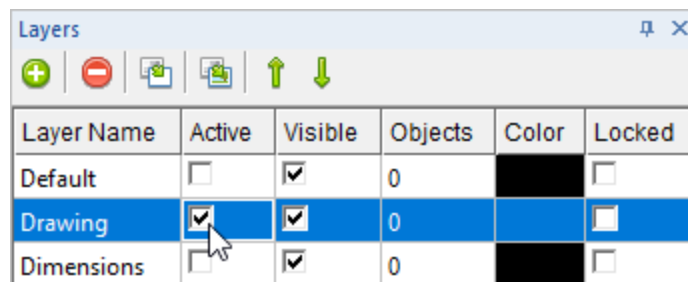
- From the **Colors** dialog that displays, accept the default color black by pick **OK** to close the dialog.



- Repeat the procedure for the layer named **Dimensions**.



- Now from the **Active** column, check the box to make the layer named **Drawing** as the **Active Layer**.



Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☒	0	Black	☐
Drawing	☒	☒	0	Blue	☐
Dimensions	☐	☒	0	Black	☐

7.2.2 Curve Drawing

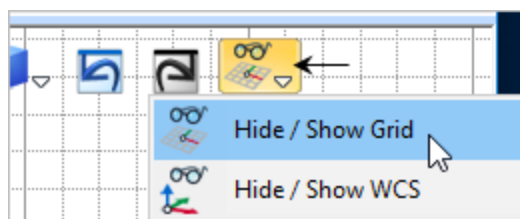
Curve Drawing

In this step you will learn how to use the keyboard to quickly drawing a polyline and then create some fillets and chamfers.

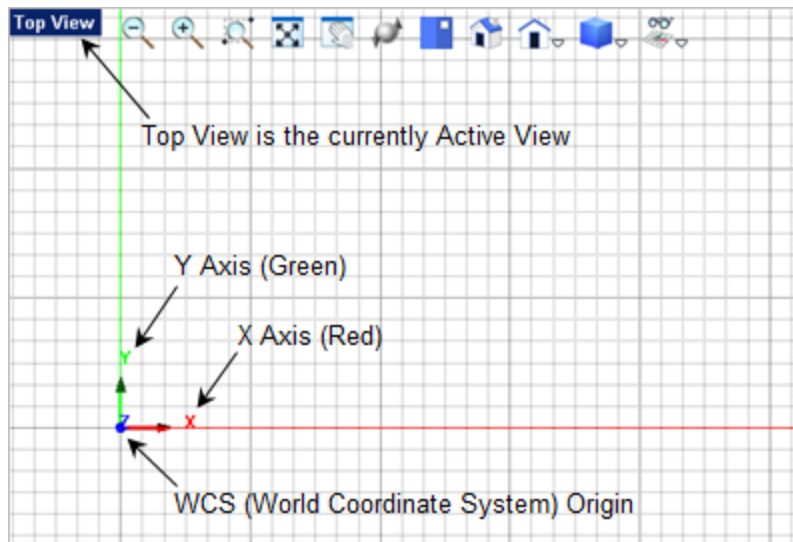
- You only need the **Top View** **Top View** displayed for this exercise so if you have multiple **Viewports** displayed, double-left-click on the **Top View** tab to change the display to that **Viewport**.
- Alternately you can right-click on the **Top View** tab and select **Single Viewport**.
- If you do not see the **Top View** **Top View** tab on any of your **Viewports**, simply double-left-click on any viewport tab to set the display to that single **Viewport** and then select the **Top View**  icon from the **View Toolbar**.

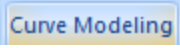


- For visual purposes, we are displaying the construction **Grid** and the **Grid** options are set to those in the [Preferences Exercise](#).
- If the **Grid** is not displayed you can toggle it on by selecting **Hide / Show Grid** from the **View Toolbar**.

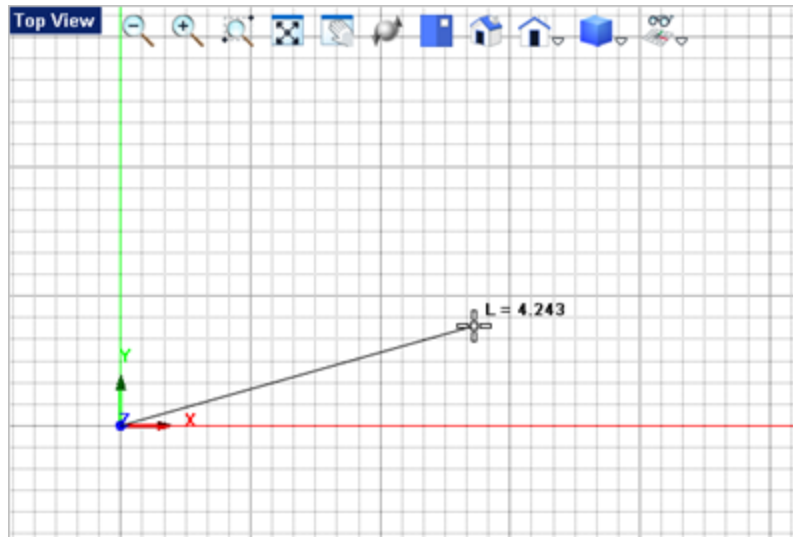


- Scroll the middle mouse button to zoom in/out so that you see the **World Origin WCS** triad toward the bottom left of the screen. If you do not see the **X (Red)** and **Y (Green)** axes displayed, make sure you are in the **Top View**.

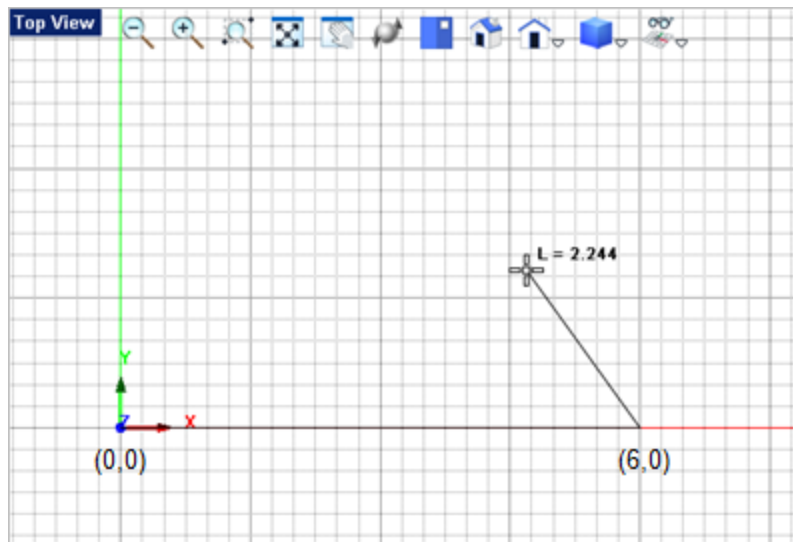


7. Now we can start curve drawing. From the **Curve Modeling**  tab, select the **Polyline**  command.
8. The command prompt says:
Polyline:: Pick point or enter coordinates x,y and z
 For the start point of the polyline, enter **0,0** in the command window
 Command and press **<Enter>**.

You will see the polyline is starting at the XY origin on the left.



9. For the next point in the **Polyline**, enter **6,0** Command and press **<Enter>**. This is in **Absolute World Coordinates**, 6 units in **X** and 0 units in **Y** measured from the **World Origin**.



10. Now if you are drawing and you do not know the exact absolute coordinate values you can enter **Relative Coordinate** values in the command window.

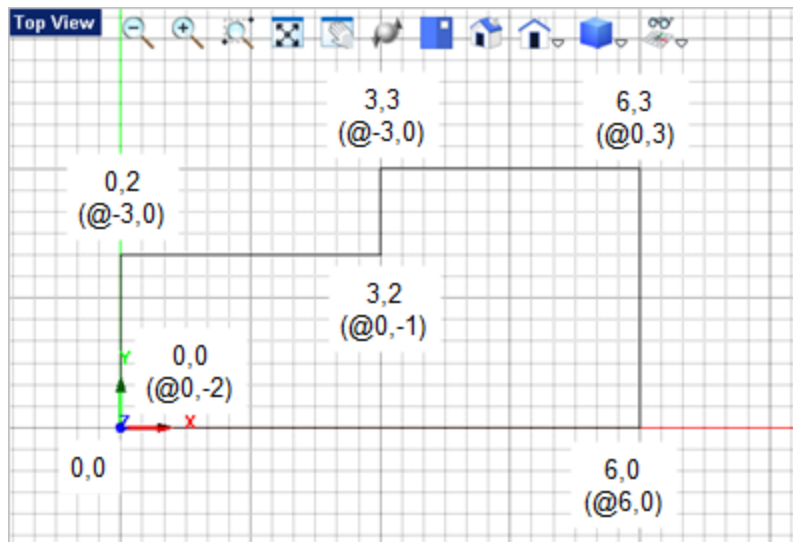
For the next coordinate enter **@0,3** in the command window and press **<Enter>**. This will place the next point in the polyline 3" from the last point in the positive **Y Axis** direction.

Listed below are the absolute and relative coordinate values for the entire polyline. Use them to complete the polyline, pressing **<Enter>** after each coordinate entered. If you make a mistake, just Undo and start again.

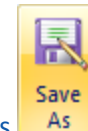
Polyline Absolute (Relative) coordinate values

0,0
6,0 (@6,0)
6,3 (@0,3)
3,3 (@-3,0)
3,2 (@0,-1)
0,2 (@-3,0)
0,0 (@0,-2)

Your polyline should like this:



Note: In the future you can also specify a point at an angle and length from the previous point using the following format: `@6<45` where the length of the line segment is 6 and the direction is 45 degrees from the previous point.



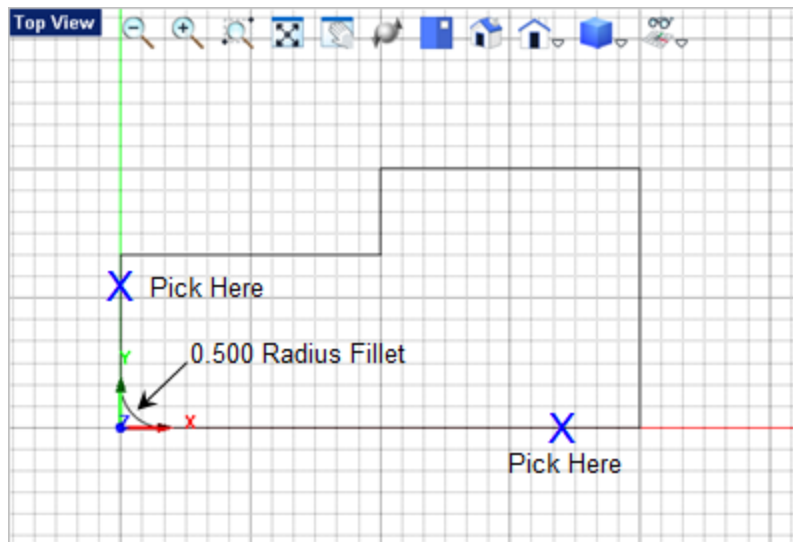
11. Always **Save** your work! Select the **Save** or **Save As** command from the **Home** tab or the **VisualCAD Main Menu** or press `<Ctrl+S>`.

12. Now let's add some fillets. From the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab select the

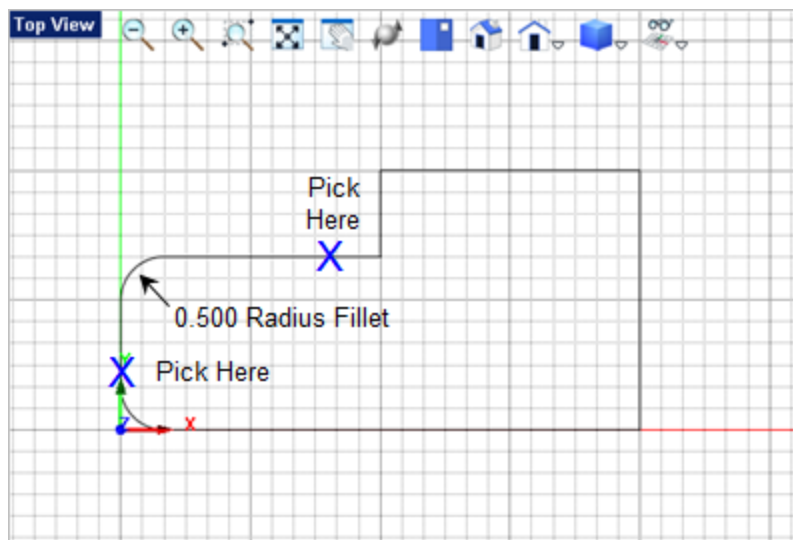


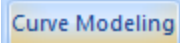
Fillet command.

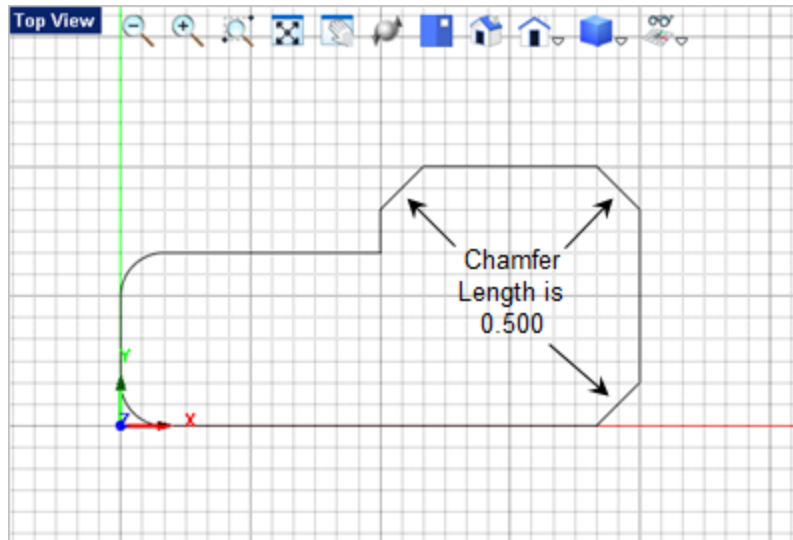
13. For the fillet radius, enter **0.5** in the command window and press `<Enter>`.
14. For the two lines to fillet, select the lines marked in the illustration below. For filleting it is best to select the line on the end furthest from the end you want to fillet.



15. Press <Enter> to repeat the [Fillet](#) command.
16. The default fillet radius is now 0.5 so proceed directly to picking the two lines to fillet and press <Enter>.

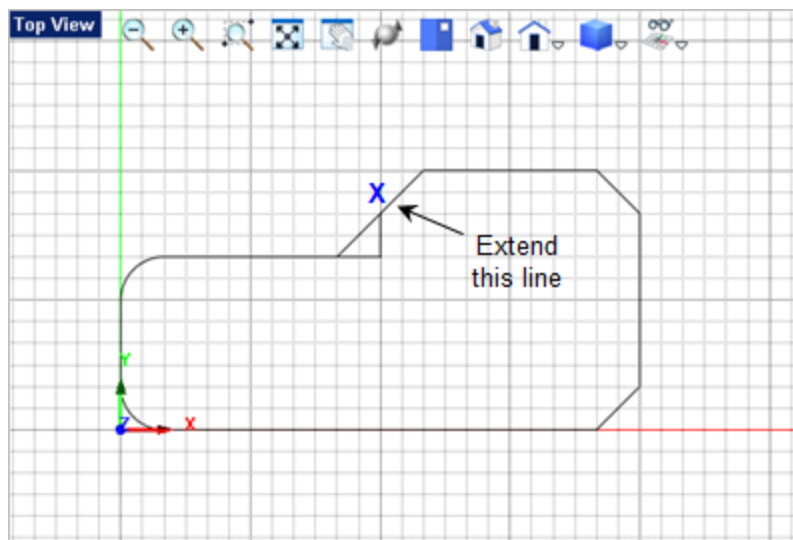


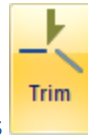
17. Next we will chamfer the three remaining outer corners. From the [Curve Modeling](#)  tab select the [Chamfer](#)  command.
18. For the chamfer length, enter 0.5 in the command window  and press <Enter>.
19. For the lines to chamfer, select lines marked in the illustration below. For chamfers it is best to select the line on the end furthest from the end you want to chamfer.



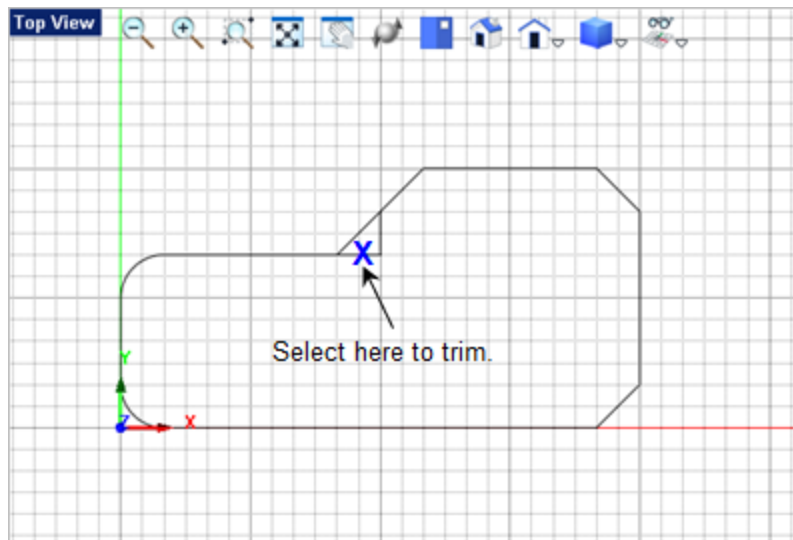
20. Currently our curves are still are one polyline. For this next step we need to explode the polyline. From the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Explode curves**  command.
21. Select the polyline and the right-click the mouse or press **<Enter>**. The polyline is now individual curves.

22. Now from the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Extend Curves**  command.
23. Select the change line marked below to extend it to the horizontal line.

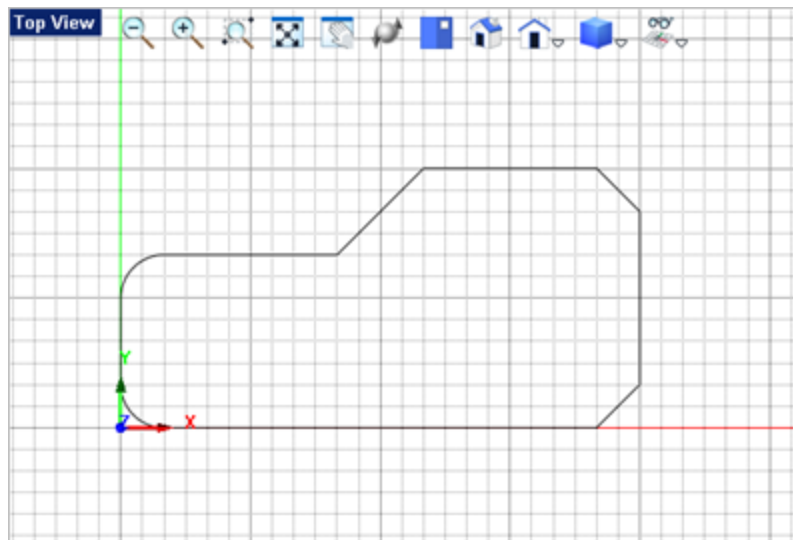




24. Now from the [Curve Modeling](#) **Curve Modeling** tab select the [Trim Curves](#) command.
25. Pick the line segment to trim. When using the [Trim](#) command, you do not need to select the trimming curve. Just select what curve you want trimmed.



26. Next, delete the unneeded line. Just select it and then press the key or select the [Cut](#) **Cut** command icon from the [Quick Access Toolbar](#).



7.2.3 Using Visual Aids

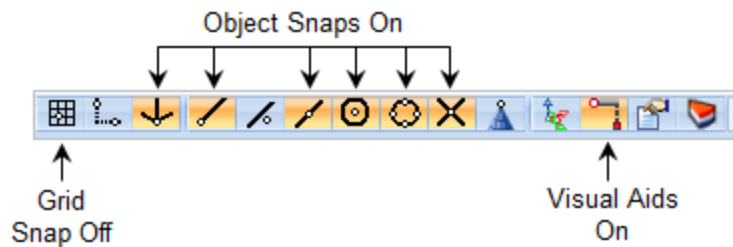
[Using Visual Aids](#)

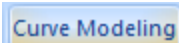
In this step you will learn how to draw with the use of the Visual Aids mode. With **Visual Aids** enabled, construction lines automatically appear as references geometry. This allows for easier visual placement of new geometry. Let's see how it works.

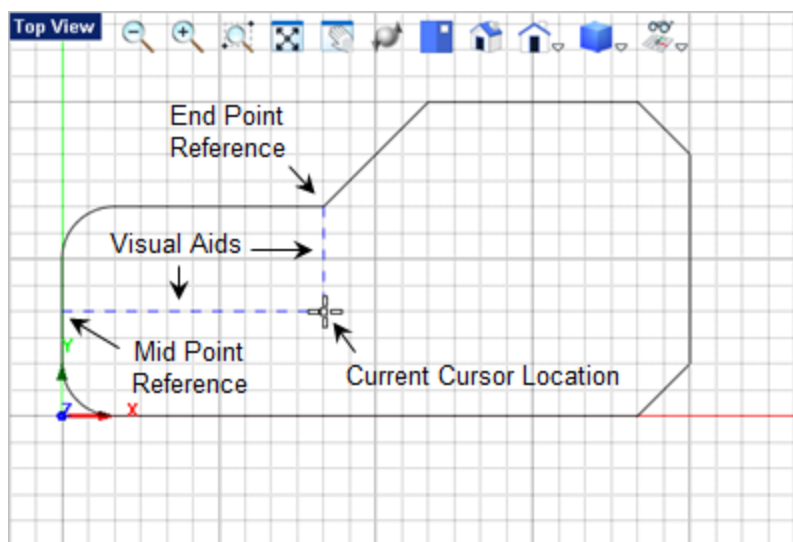
1. Curve creation using **Visual Aids** can be enabled by selecting the **Visual Aids**  icon on the **Status Toolbar**.

While **Visual Aids** is toggled **On**, the currently active **Object Snaps** are referenced visually depending on where the cursor is located on the drawing.

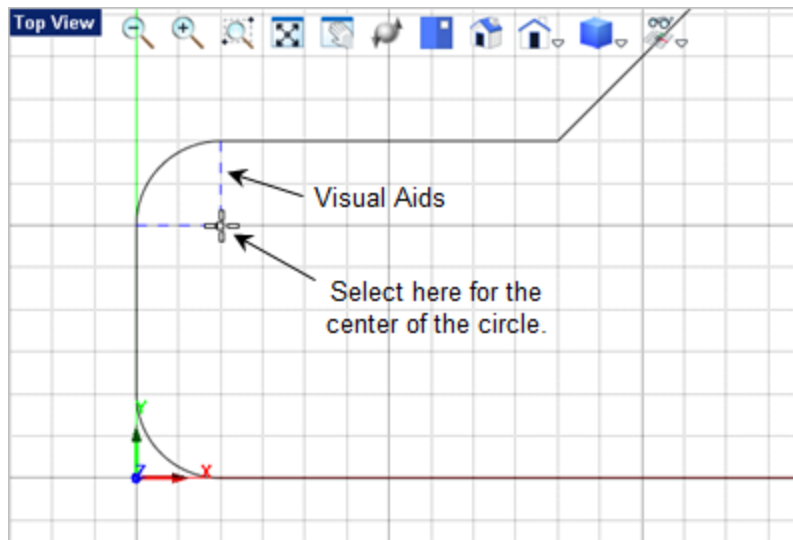
2. For now, enable the **Origin Point Snap** , **End Point Snap** , **Mid Point Snap** , **Center Point Snap**  and **Quad Point Snap** .
3. Also disable the **Grid Snap** . Your **Status Bar** should look like this:



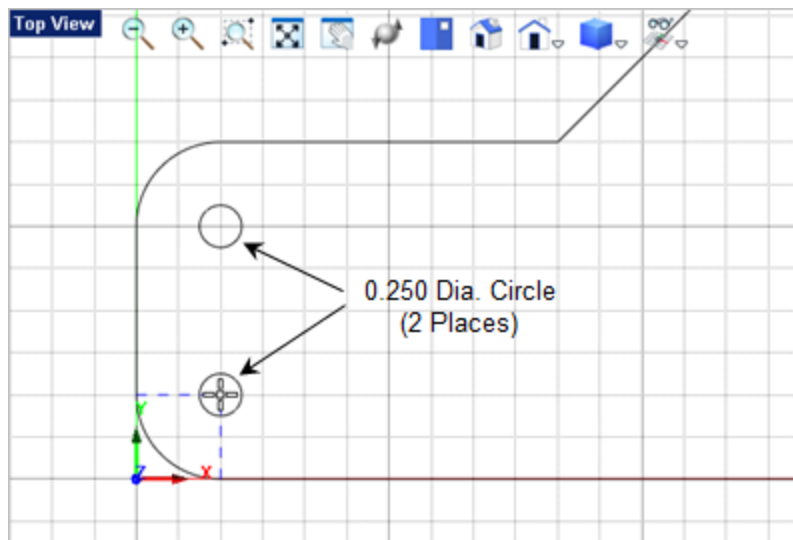
4. Now from the **Curve Modeling**  tab select the **Circle on Point**  command.
5. For the circle center point move the cursor near geometry in your drawing. You will see **Visual Aids** appear (i.e., reference lines).



6. We want to locate the center of circle at the center of the fillet located in the upper left corner of the drawing. Move the cursor to this area and you will see two **Visual Aids** appear when the end points of the fillet are recognized.



7. For the circle diameter enter 0.25 Command and press <Enter>.
8. Press <Enter> to repeat the command and draw a circle at the center of the lower left fillet.

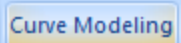


7.2.4 More Drawing Tools



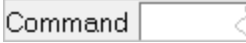
More Drawing Tools

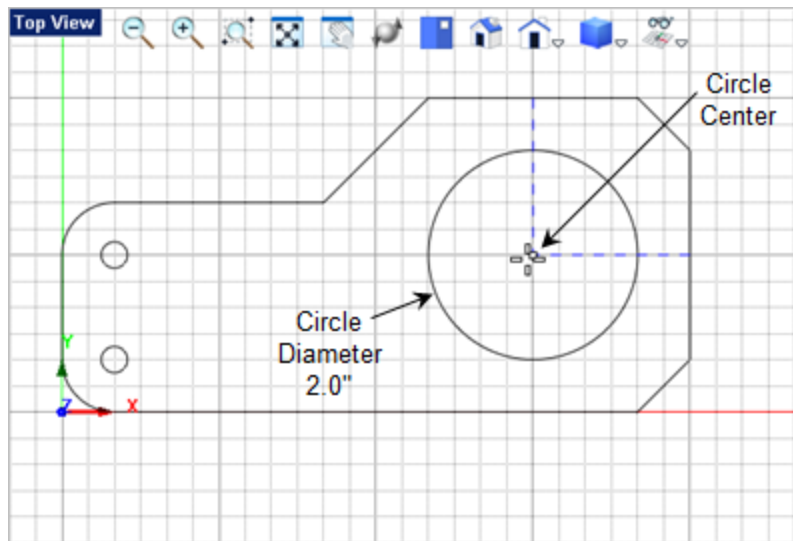
In this step you will learn a few additional curve creation and curve editing commands.

1. Let's draw another circle. From the **Curve Modeling**  tab select the



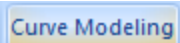
Circle on Point command.

2. For the center point of the circle use the **Visual Aids**  to locate and select the **Mid Point**  intersection of the upper and right side lines.
3. For the circle diameter enter **2.0** in the command window  and press **<Enter>**.

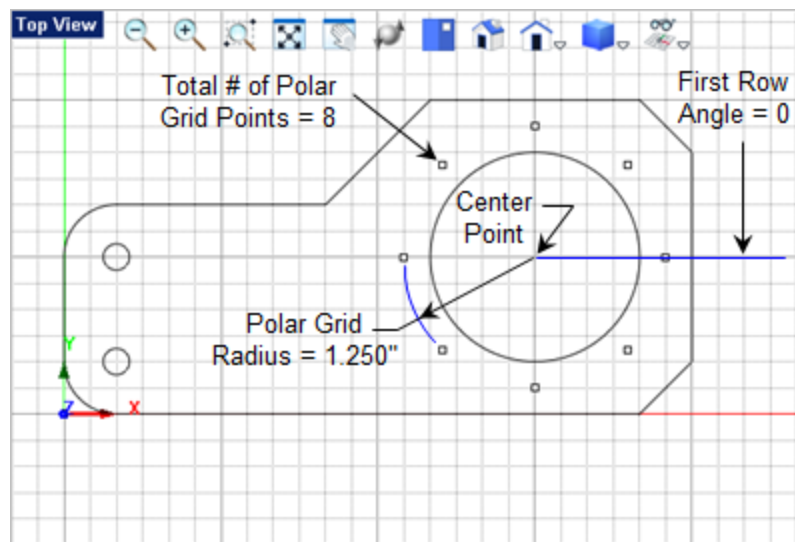


4. Next we will draw a polar array of points around the circle we just drew.

 **Why am I drawing Points?** Because when machining Hole Making operations in CAM such as **Drill**, **Tap**, **Bore**, etc., you can select points as **Control Geometry**! The hole geometry DOES NOT have to be present in the 2D drawing or 3D model in order to drill at that location.

5. From the **Curve Modeling**  tab select the **Polar Grid of Points**  command.
6. For the total number of points on the circumference, enter **8**.
7. For the angle of the first row about the **X Axis** enter **0**.
8. Pick the center point for the polar grid or enter the coordinate values. We want the points centered around the **2"** circle we just drew, so set you **Object Snap** to **Center Point**  and move the cursor over the circle until the center point is highlighted and select it.

9. For the polar grid radius, enter **1.250** and then press **<Enter>**. The polar grid of points will be created around the circle as shown below.

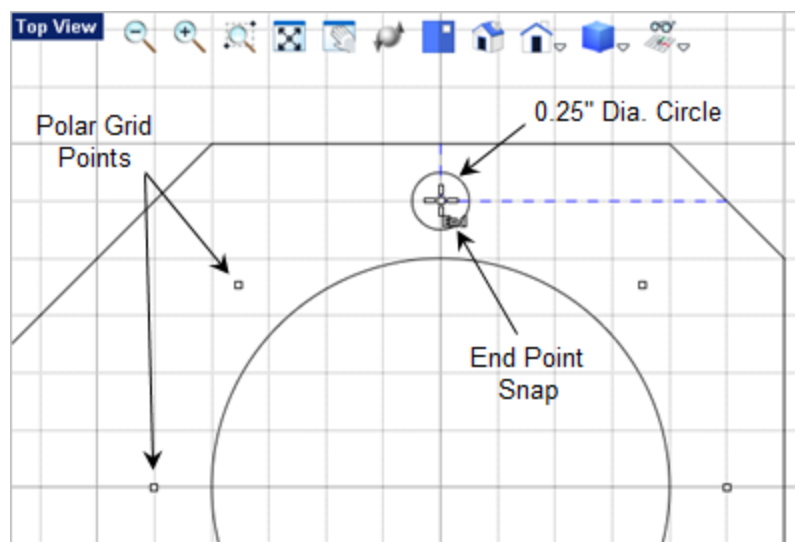


10. For this exercise we will also add the polar array of circles. From the **Curve**

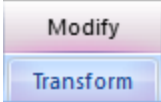


Modeling **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Circle on Point** command.

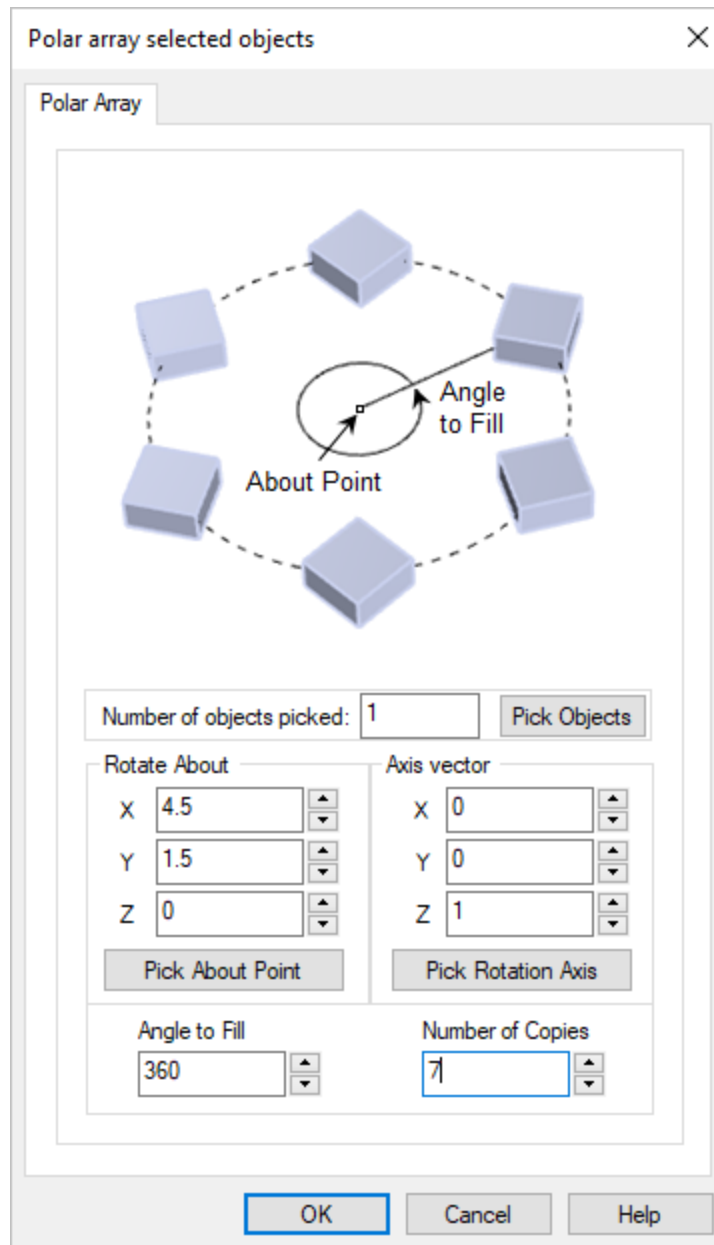
11. For the center point, make sure the **End Point Snap**  is on and then select the end point at the 12 o'clock position.
12. For the circle radius enter **0.25** and then press **<Enter>**.



13. Now we will duplicate the circle by creating a polar array. First select the circle you just created.

14. Then from the [Modify / Transform](#)  tab.

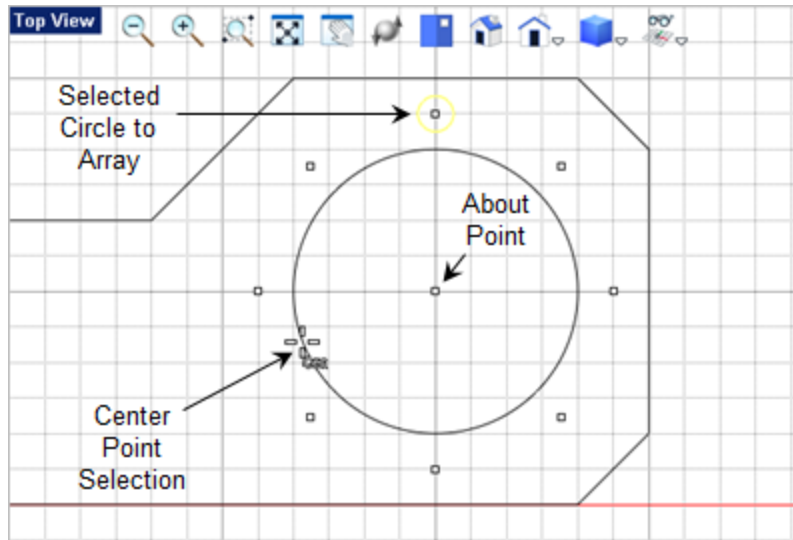
15. Select the [Polar Array](#)  command. The [Polar array selected objects](#) dialog will display.



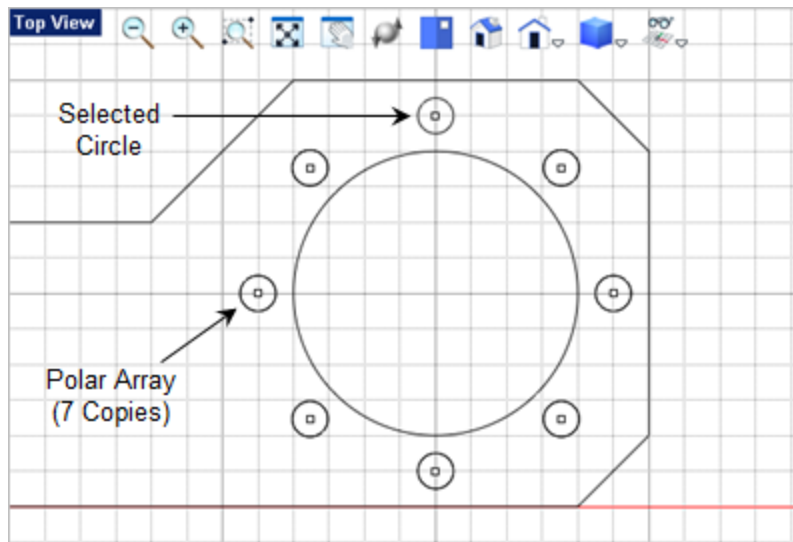
16. The [Number of Objects](#) field should be 1. This represents the circle that you have selected.

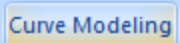
17. Under the [Axis Vector](#), the values should be X0, Y0, Z1.

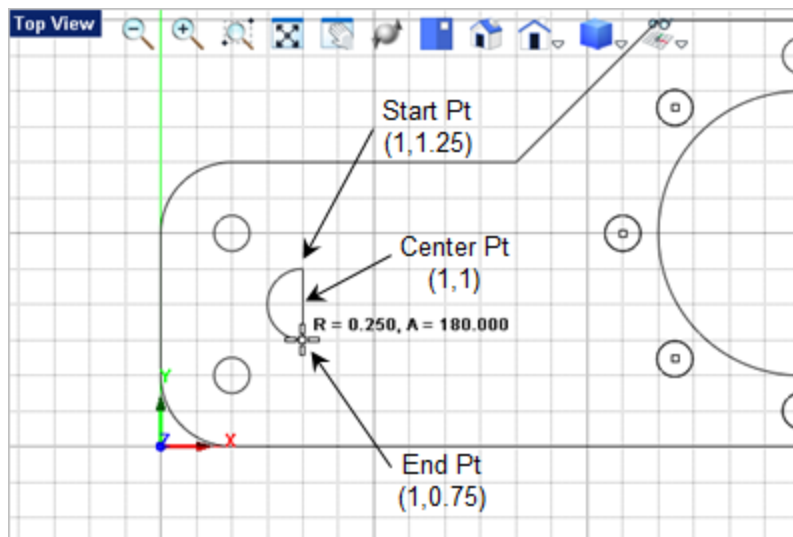
18. Under the [Rotate About](#) section, select the [Pick About Point](#) button. The dialog will minimize and wait for you to select a point.
19. From the [Status Bar](#) activate the [Center Point Object Snap](#) .
20. Now move the cursor over the 2" diameter circle until the center point is displayed and then selected it.



21. The dialog will re-appear with the [XYZ](#) coordinated entered for the [Rotate About](#) section. The value should be [X4.5, Y1.5 and Z0](#).
22. For the [Number of Copies](#) field enter 7.
23. The [Angle to Fill](#) field should be 360.
24. Now pick [OK](#) to close the dialog and the array should be drawn and selected.
25. Press [<Enter>](#) to accept the array and your drawing should look like the illustration below. If not, select the [Undo](#)  command and go back and repeat the previous steps.

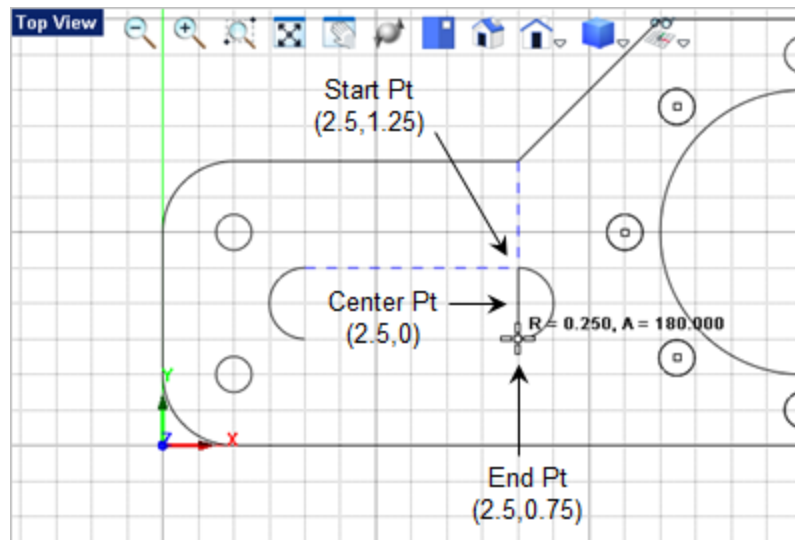


26. Now we will drawing a slot. From the Curve [Curve Modeling](#) tab  select the [Arc Center, Start, Angle](#) command. 
27. In the [Status Bar](#) make sure the [Grid Snap](#) is On .
28. For the center point select the grid point shown below or enter 1,1 in the command window and press <Enter>.
29. Following the command prompts. It says to select the start point of the arc. Locate and select the start point shown below or enter 1,0.75 in the command window and press <Enter>.



30. For the arc end point move the cursor counter-clockwise and pick the end point shown or enter 1,0.75 in the command window  and press <Enter>.

31. Now we want to draw another arc, press **<Enter>** to repeat the command and select or enter the center, start and end points shown below.



32. Now we want to draw a line to connect the two arcs across the top. From the [Curve](#)

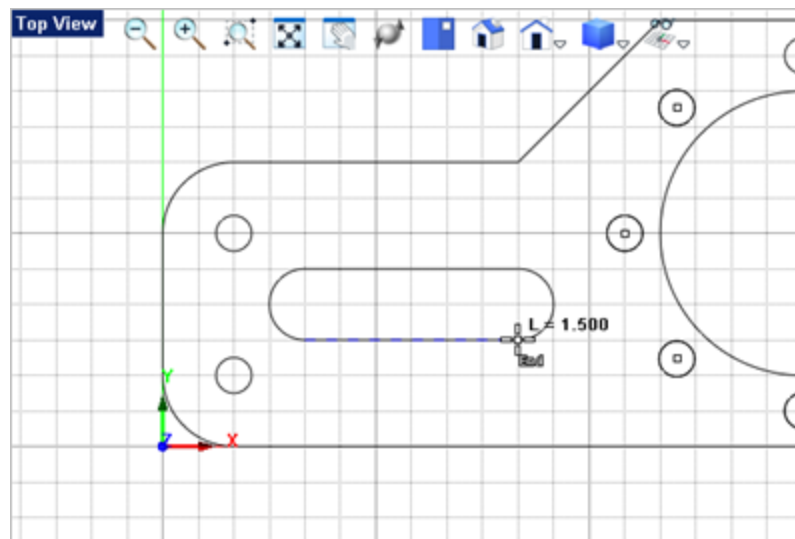
[Modeling](#) tab

[Curve Modeling](#)

select the [Line](#) command



33. For the start point for the line, set the [Object Snap](#) to [End Point](#)  from the [Status Bar](#) and select the start and end of the top line of the slot.
34. Press **<Enter>** to repeat the [Line](#) command and select the start and end of the bottom line of the slot. Your drawing should look like this:

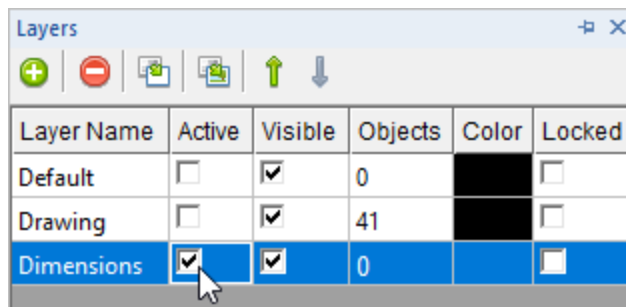


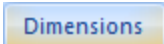
7.2.5 Dimensioning

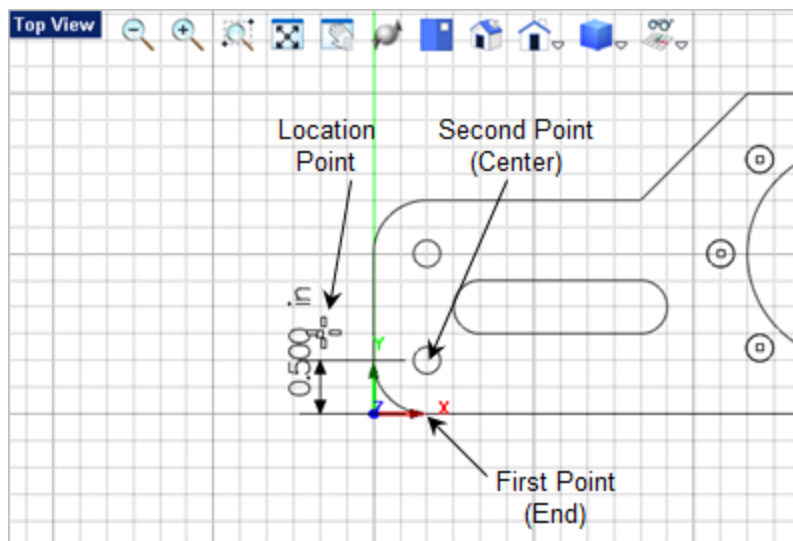
Dimensioning

In this step you will learn how to place dimensions on the drawing.

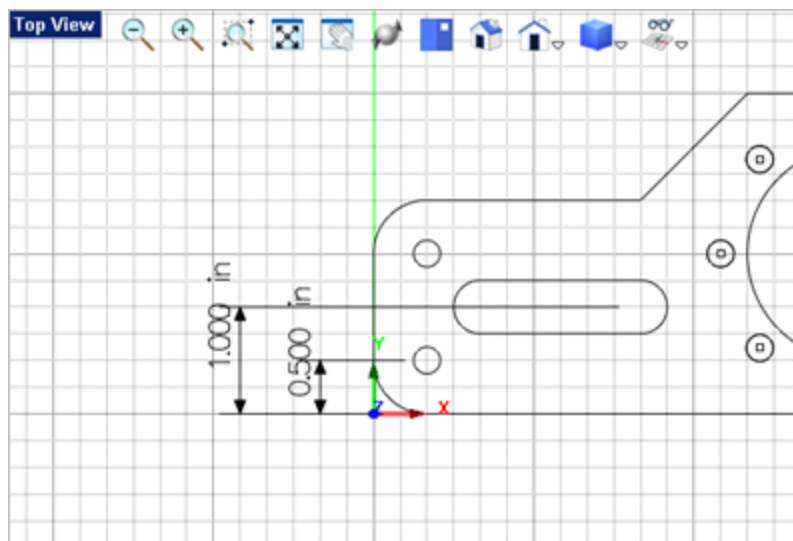
1. Start by using the middle mouse wheel to zoom out to leave yourself plenty of room to place your dimensions. If your mouse does not have a middle wheel, select the **Zoom Out**  icon from the **View Toolbar**. You can also use the **Pan**  icon to pan the drawing within the display window.
2. Now change the active layer. From the **Status Toolbar** select the **Layer Manager**  icon.
3. From the **Layer Manager** go to the **Active** column and check the box next to **Dimensions** to make it the **Active Layer**.



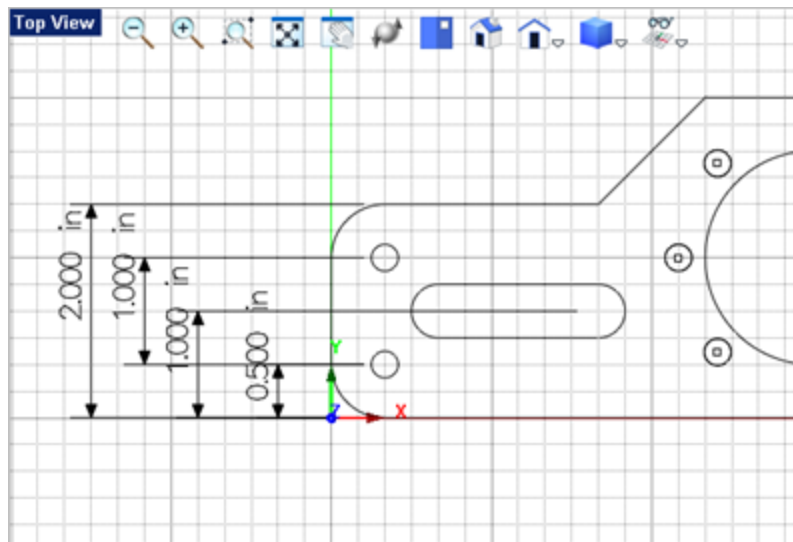
4. From the **Dimension**  tab, select the **Vertical Dimension**  command.
5. Activate the **Object Snaps** required (**End** , **Center**  and **Grid** )
6. Select the first and second points that you wish to dimension.
7. Then select a point to locate the dimension. refer to the illustration below:



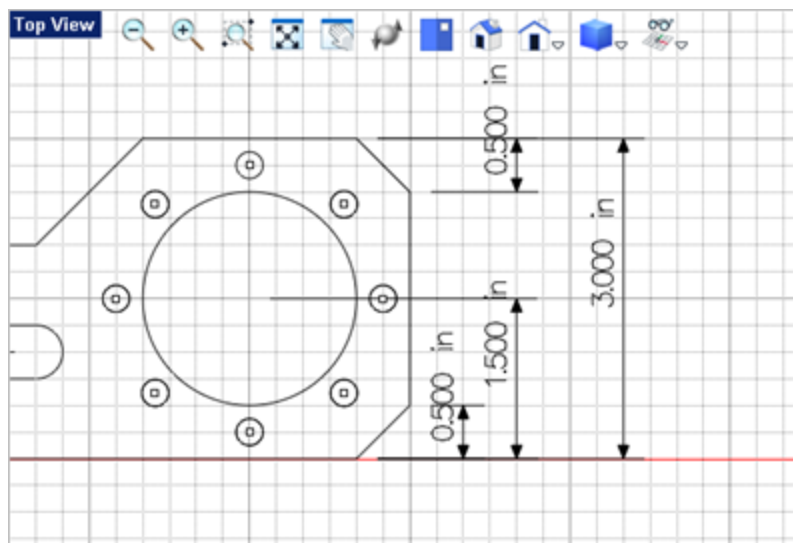
8. Press <Enter> to repeat the command.
9. Select the first, second and location point for the dimension as shown below:



10. Repeat the command to create three additional vertical dimensions on the left as illustrated below:



11. Repeat the command to create three additional vertical dimensions on the right as illustrated below:



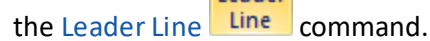
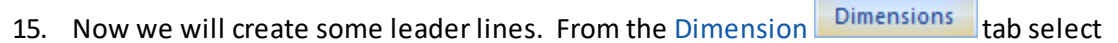
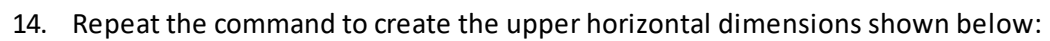
12. Now we will create the horizontal dimensions. From the [Dimension](#)

[Dimensions](#)



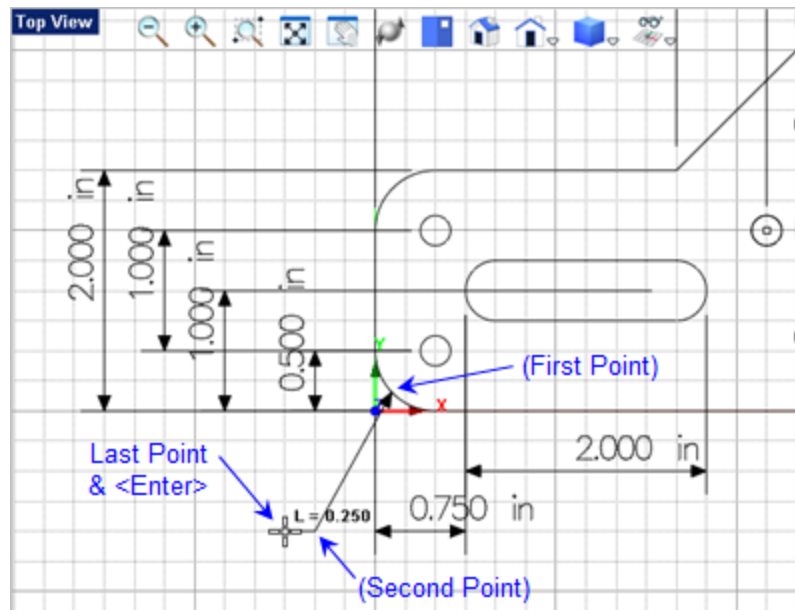
tab select the [Horizontal Dimension](#) command.

13. Select the first second and location points to create the lower horizontal dimensions shown below:

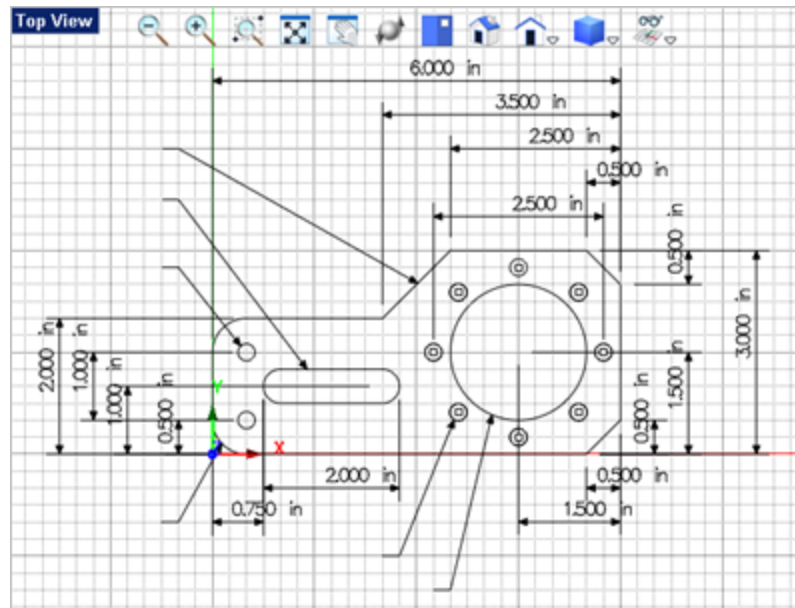


- © 2025 Mecsoft Corporation

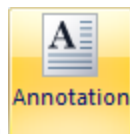
18. Then pick additional points to define the leader line and the press **<Enter>** or right-click to end the command. The points to pick are shown in the illustration below:



19. Now repeat the **Leader Line** command and add the leader lines shown below:

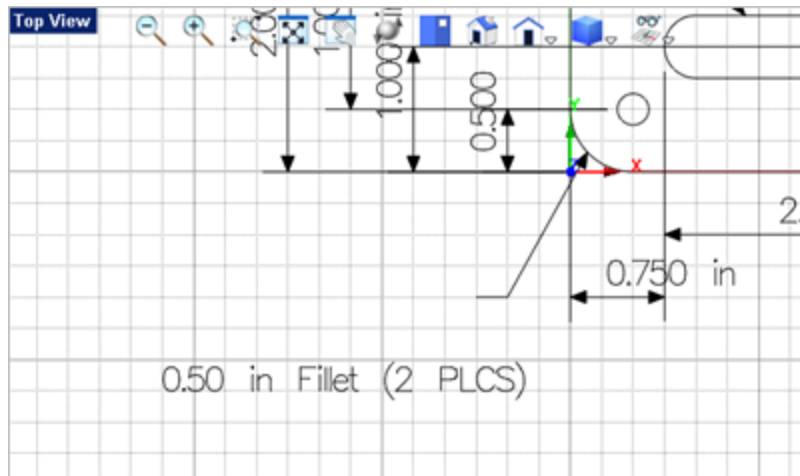


20. Now we will add the annotation text. From the **Dimension** **Dimensions** tab select

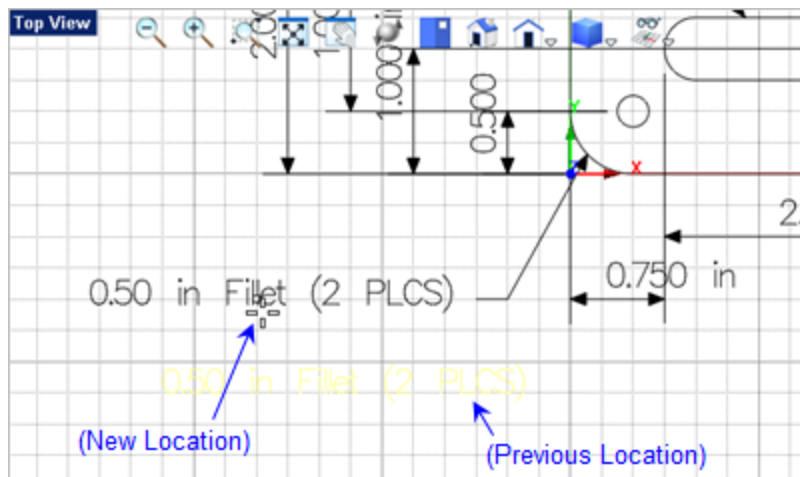


the **Annotation** command.

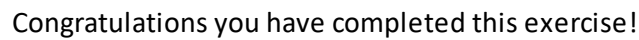
21. For the text string, at the command prompt  enter **0.50 in Fillet (2 PLCS)** and press <Enter>



22. Now select the text you just created and left-click-hold to drag it into position to the left of the leader line as shown below. If you toggle the **Grid Snap**  off you can position the text more precisely.



23. Repeat the **Annotation** command to create the additional leader text shown below:
24. Save the file as **Drawing_and_Dimensioning_Completed.vcp**.



In this exercise you will model the **Spanner Plate** shown below using **Curve Modeling** and **Solid Modeling** tools. The exercise includes the creation of **Points**, **Lines**, **Filletts**, **Mirroring**, **Merging** and **Extruding** curves.



In this exercise you will perform the following **VisualCAD** tasks:

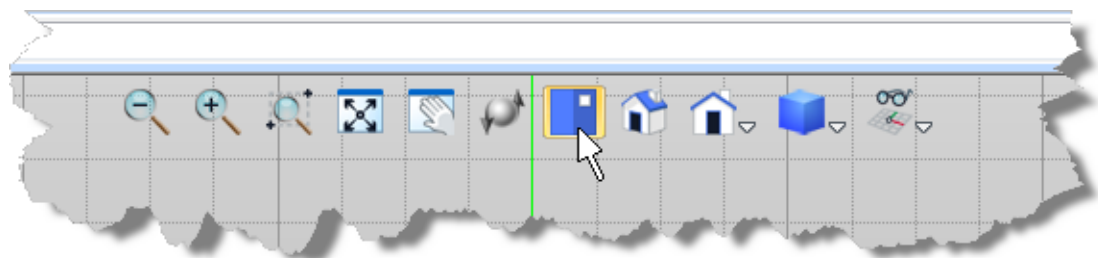
1. [Set to the Top View.](#)
2. [Create Reference Points.](#)
3. [Create Inner Cutouts.](#)
4. [Trim Curves.](#)
5. [Offset, Extend & Trim Curves.](#)

6. [Fillet Curves.](#)
7. [Mirror Curves.](#)
8. [Merge Curves.](#)
9. [Extrude Curves.](#)

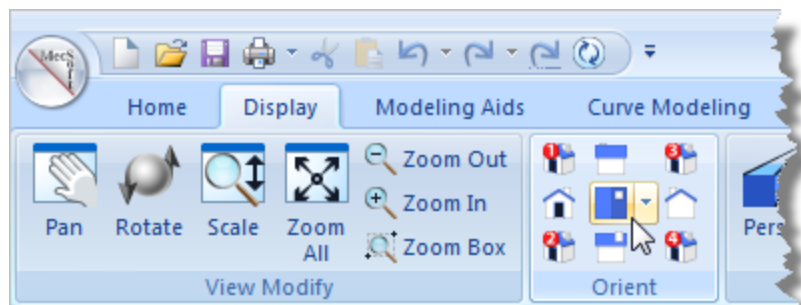
7.3.1 Set to the Top View

Set to the Top View

Set the view to [Top View](#). This can be done by selecting the [Top View](#) icon from the [View Toolbar](#) or the [Orient](#) pane of the [Display Ribbon Bar](#).



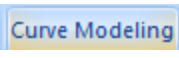
View Toolbar

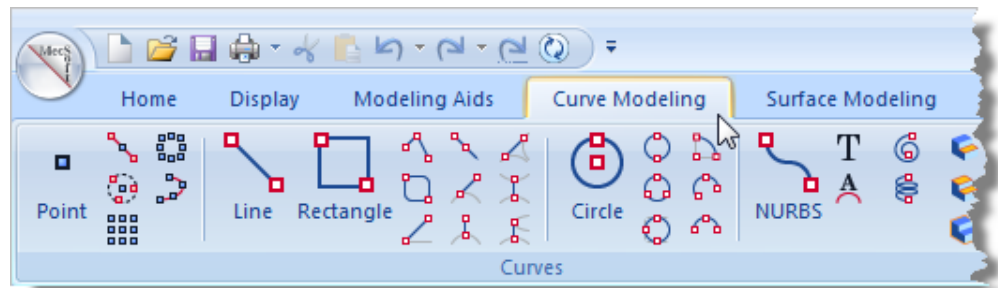


Display Ribbon Bar - Set to the Top View

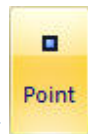
7.3.2 Create Reference Points

Create Reference Points

1. Select the [Curve Modeling](#) tab  from the top [Ribbon Bar](#).
2. Select the [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#):



Select the Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar

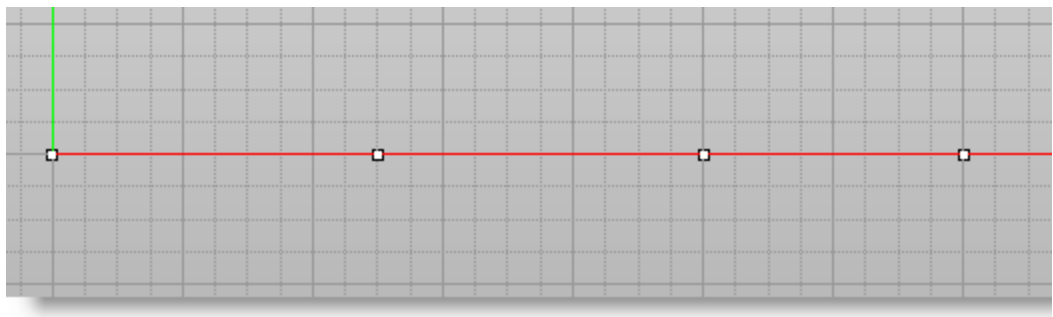


3. Select [Point](#).
4. Place the point at the [Origin](#) by moving the mouse cursor over to origin and with a [Left Mouse Button Click](#) or by entering [0,0](#) in the command bar .
5. As you move the mouse on the viewport, the co-ordinate value at the mouse location is displayed under the status bar.

Create additional points by repeating the [Create Point](#) command at the following coordinate locations.

2.5,0
5.0,0
7.0,0

The created points are as shown below.



7.3.3 Create Inner Cutouts

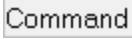


Create Inner Cutouts

1. Select the [Curve Modeling](#) tab from the top [Ribbon Bar](#).
2. Keep the [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) displayed.

3. Select the [Circle Center, Center, On Pt](#) icon.



The command input bar  would now prompt you to specify the center for the circle.

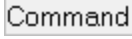
Command Prompt:

[Center, On Pt:: Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z](#)

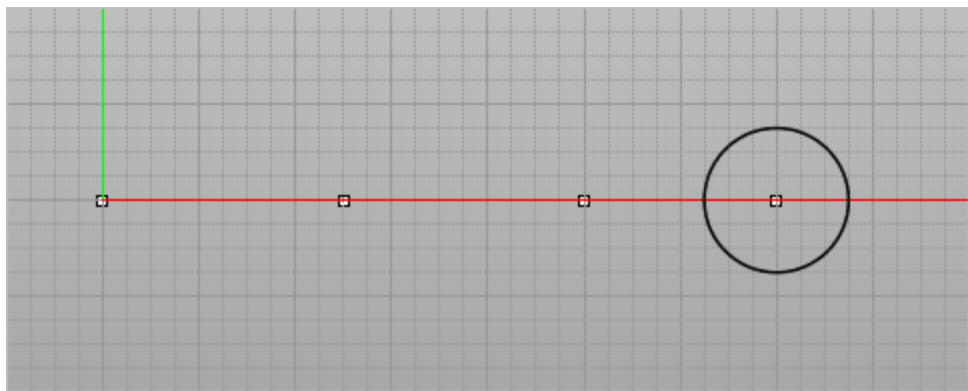
4. For the center point, pick last created point or type [7,0](#)

Command Prompt:

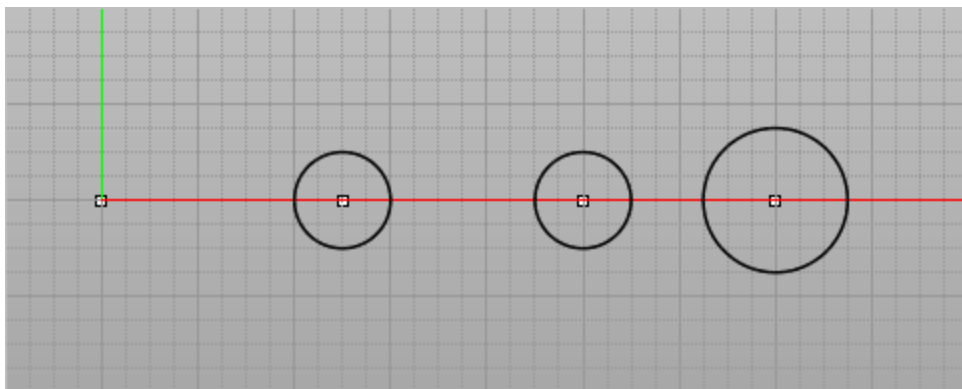
[Center, On Pt:: Enter point on circle::\[D=0.500000\]](#)

5. Specify [1.50](#) for [Diameter](#) in the command bar  and press [Enter](#).

The created circle is as shown below.



6. Repeat the [Circle](#) command to create 2 more circles at the center points [\(2.5,0](#) and [5,0\)](#) enter a [Diameter](#) of [1.00](#) for each circle.



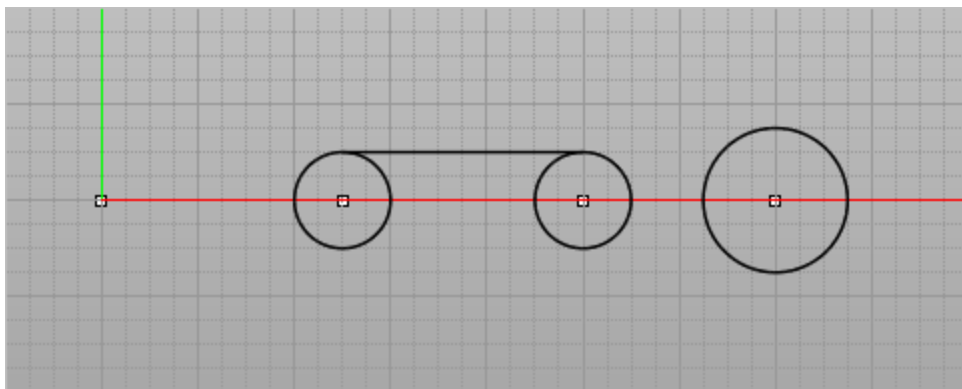
7. From the [Status Bar](#), toggle [Grid Snap](#) off and then toggle [Quad Point Snap](#) on.



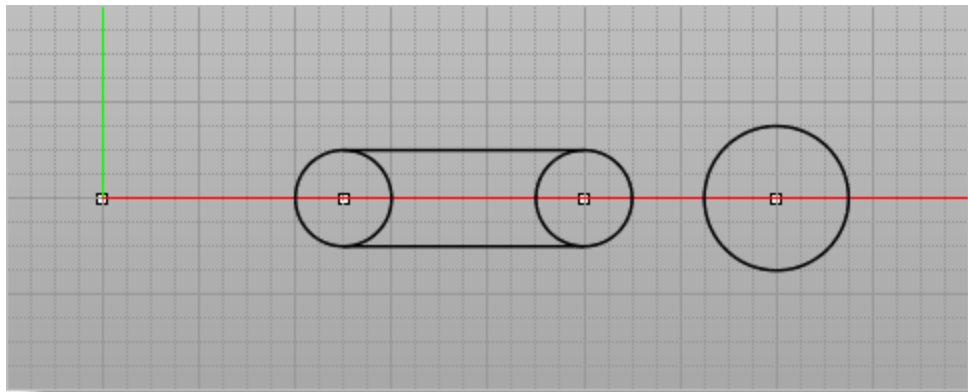
8. Select the [Create Single Line](#) icon.



9. Create a line between the top quadrant points of the smaller circles.



10. Repeat the line for lower quadrant points.

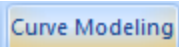


7.3.4 Trim Curves



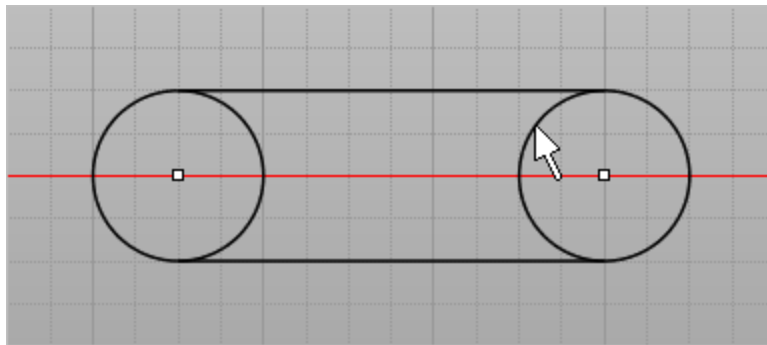
Trim Curves

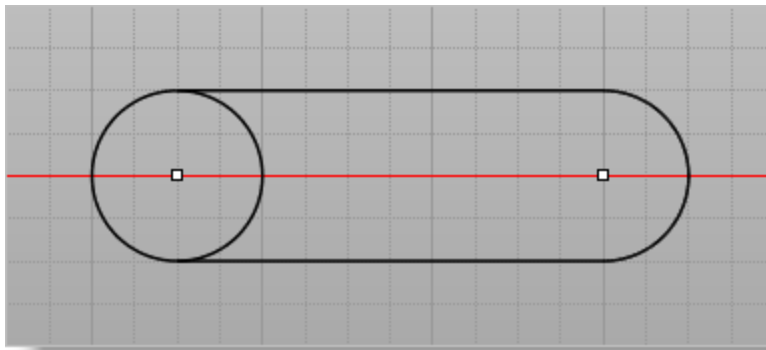
The circles must be trimmed.

1. Select the [Curve Modeling](#) tab  from the top [Ribbon Bar](#).

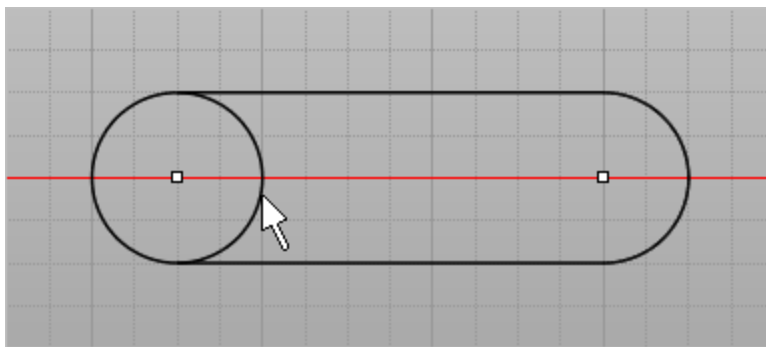


2. Select [Trim](#).
3. Click on the portion of the circle you want to delete.





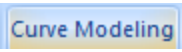
4. Repeat for the circle portion on the other side.



7.3.5 Offset, Extend & Trim Curves



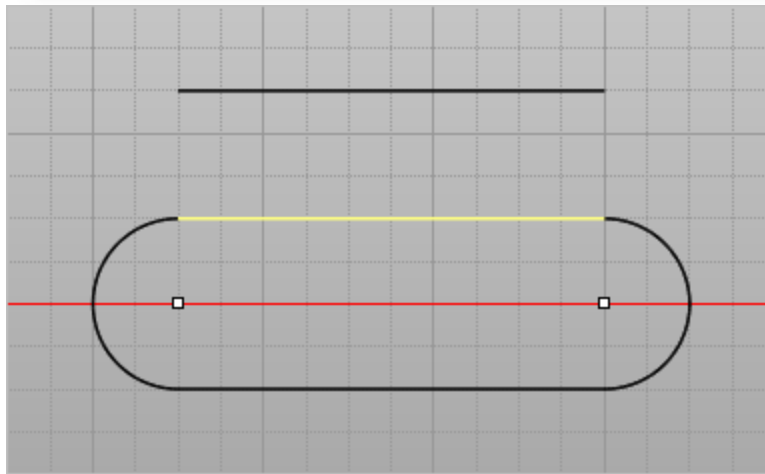
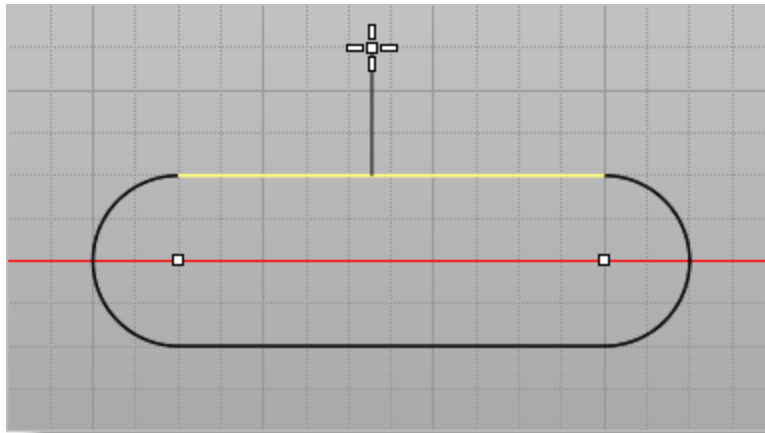
Offset, Extend & Trim Curves

1. Select the [Curve Modeling](#) tab  from the top [Ribbon Bar](#).
2. Keep the [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) displayed and then select the top horizontal line.

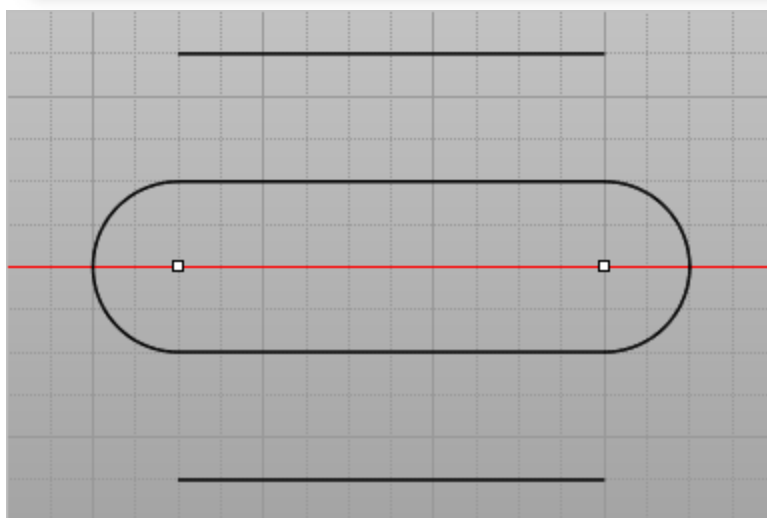
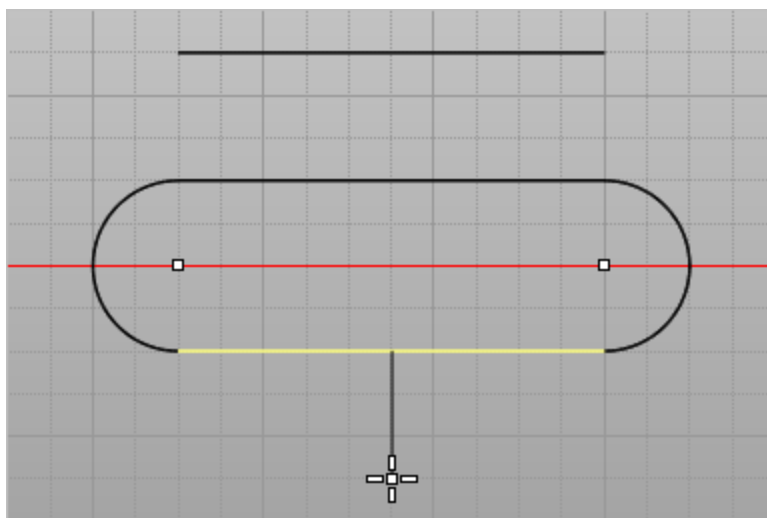


3. Pick the [Offset Curve](#) icon from the [Edit Curves](#) pane. A preview line will appear, indicating the direction of offset. Point the preview line to offset the curve outward and then type **0.75** from the keyboard and press **Enter**.

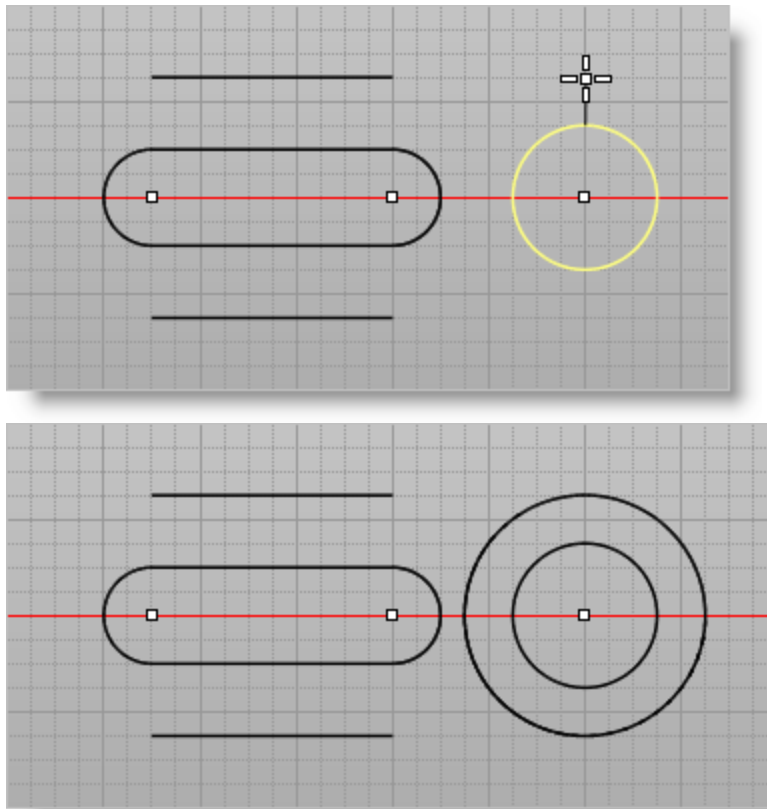
 For [Offset Curve](#), your cursor points to the offset direction, so do not move the cursor to the [Command Prompt](#) field. Simply type **0.75** and press **Enter** to input the value.



4. Repeat the offset for the horizontal line at the bottom, making sure to keep the cursor and directional indicator line pointing downward.



5. Select the larger circle on the right and then pick the [Offset Curve](#) icon again.
6. With the cursor, point the offset direction outward from the circle, type [0.50](#) and press [Enter](#).

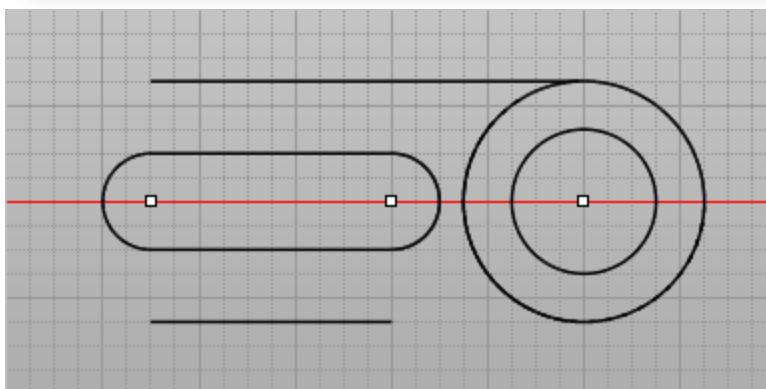
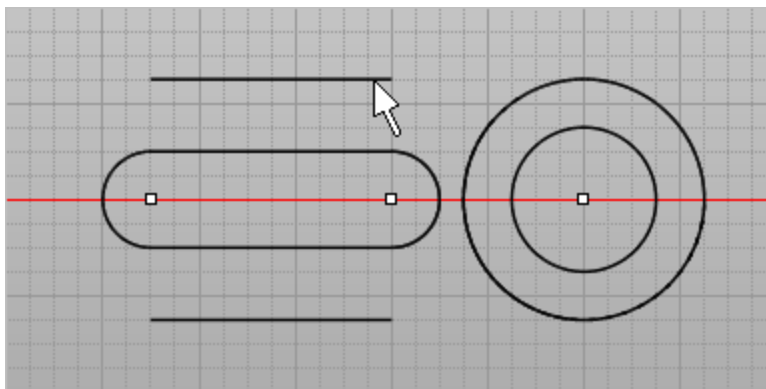


7. To modify the offset lines so that they meet the larger circle, pick the [Extend Curve](#)

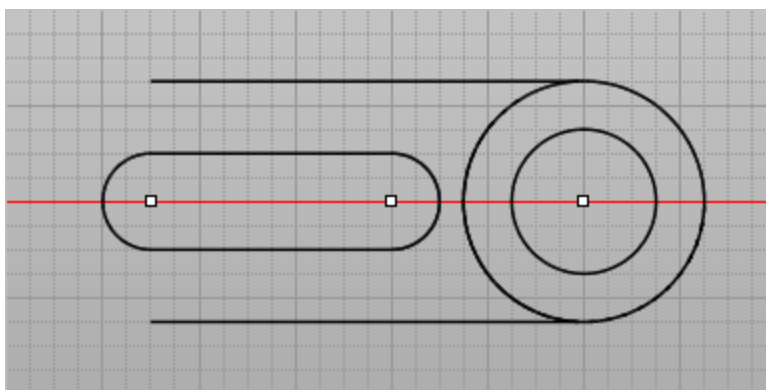


icon from [Edit Curves](#) pane. It is located just to the right of the [Offset Curve](#) icon.

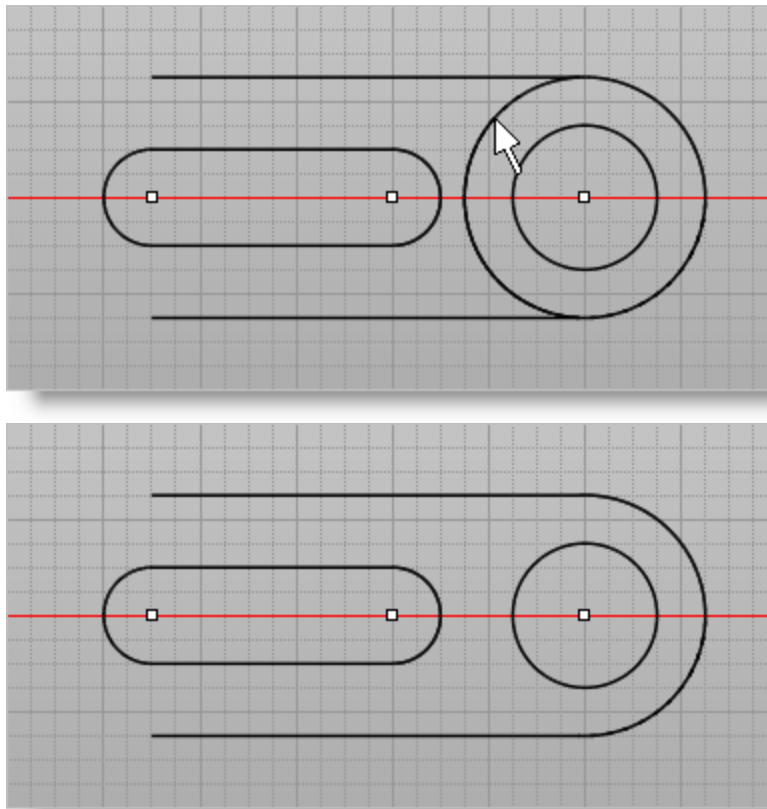
8. Click one of the offset lines towards the right. The line extends to the point where it meets the circle.



9. Repeat the extend curve for the line at the bottom.



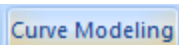
10. Select **Trim** and trim the large circle where it meets the two extended lines.



7.3.6 Fillet Curves

Fillet Curves

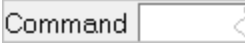
We will now create the left section of the spanner using the filleting and mirroring tools. We will start by creating the arc at the end of the spanner.

1. Select the [Curve Modeling](#) tab  from the top [Ribbon Bar](#).
2. From the [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#), select [Center, Start, Angle Pts.](#) 

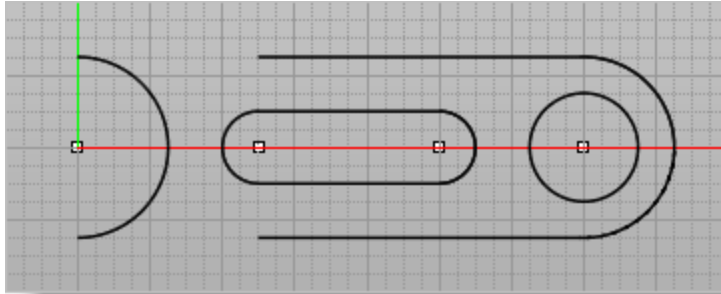
Command Prompt:

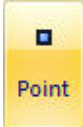
[Center,Start,Angle Pts.:](#) Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

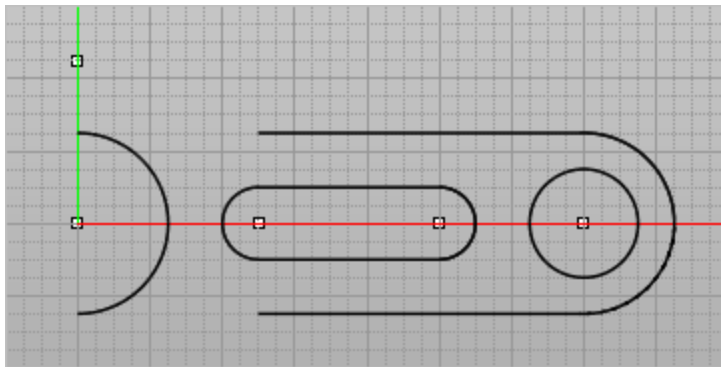
3. For the [Center](#), type 0,0 in the [Command Prompt](#)  and then press [Enter](#).
4. For [Start](#), type 0,1.25 in the [Command Prompt](#)  and then press [Enter](#).

5. For **End**, type **-180** in the **Command Prompt**  and then press **Enter**.

Your drawing should look like the following:



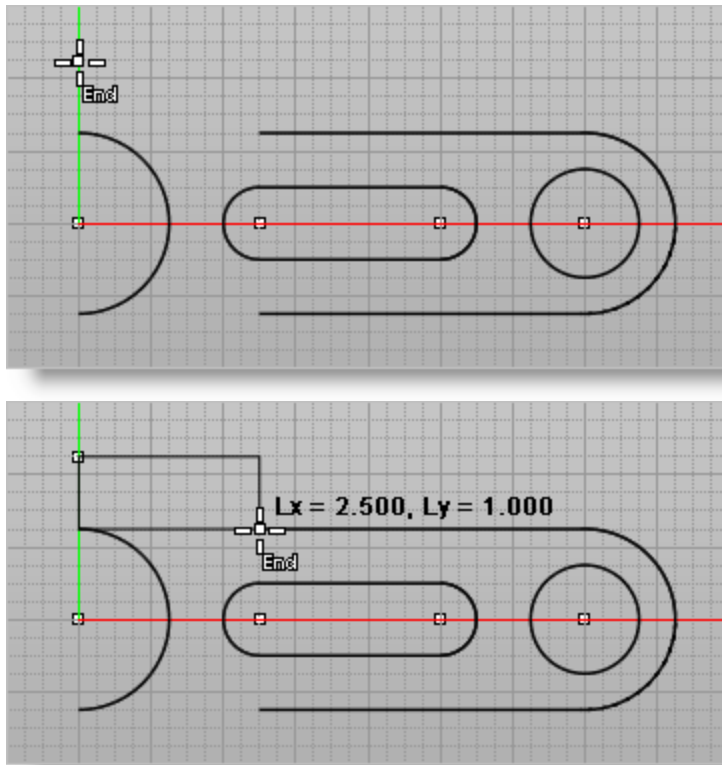
6. Now create a reference point located at **0,2.25** using the **Point**  command. The icon is located on the left side of the **Curve Pane** of the **Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar**.



7. From the **Status Bar**, toggle **End Point Snap**  On.



8. Now, select **Rectangle**.
9. For the **1st corner** pick the point you just created and for the other corner snap to the **End Point** of the horizontal line as shown below.



10. This rectangle is one object – one multi-segmented curve. In order to be able to edit or modify this rectangle, it must be broken into individual lines.



To do this, select the [Explode](#) icon. It is located on the far right side of the [Edit Curves](#) pane of the [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#).

11. Select the rectangle and then [right-click](#) or press [Enter](#). Now each line of the rectangle is a separate object.

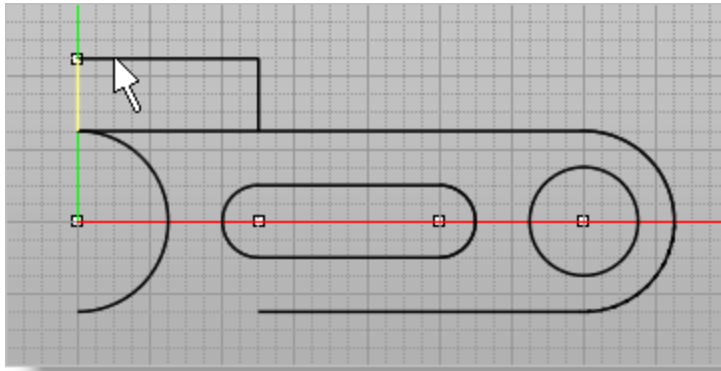


12. Select [Fillet](#).

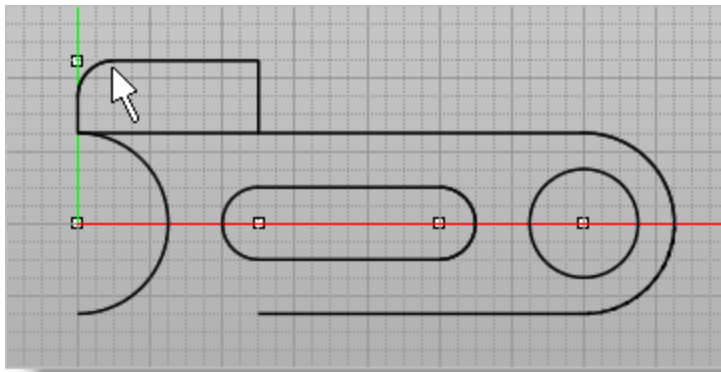
Command Prompt:

[Fillet](#):: Enter fillet radius [R=0.500000]

13. For [Radius](#) enter [0.5](#) and press [Enter](#).
14. Select the 2 curves as shown below to fillet the curves.



The filleted curve is as shown below.

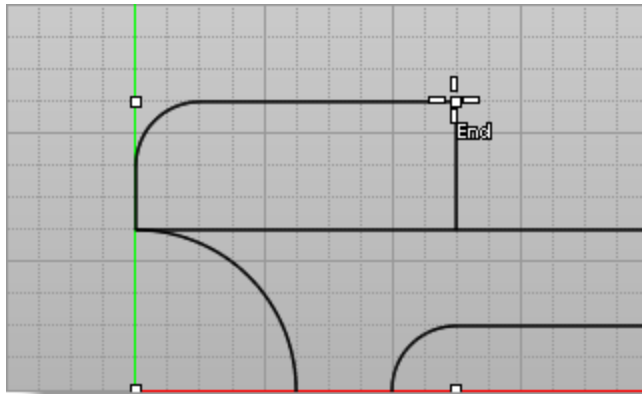


15. Let's now create another arc. Again, from the [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#), select [Center, Start, Angle Pts.](#) 

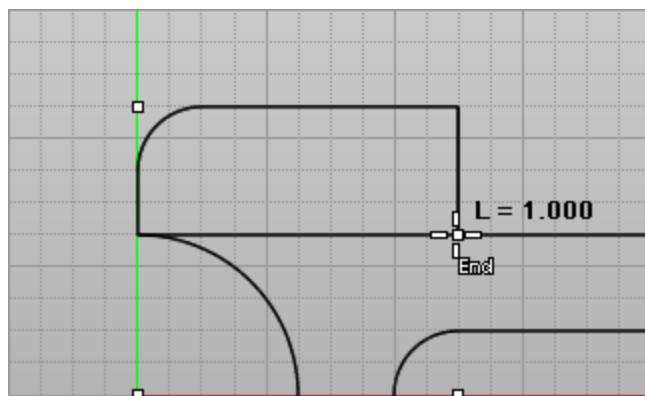
Command Prompt:

[Center,Start,Angle Pts.:](#) Pick center point or enter coordinates x,y and z

16. For [Center](#) pick the end point on the upper right corner of the rectangle.



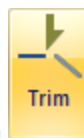
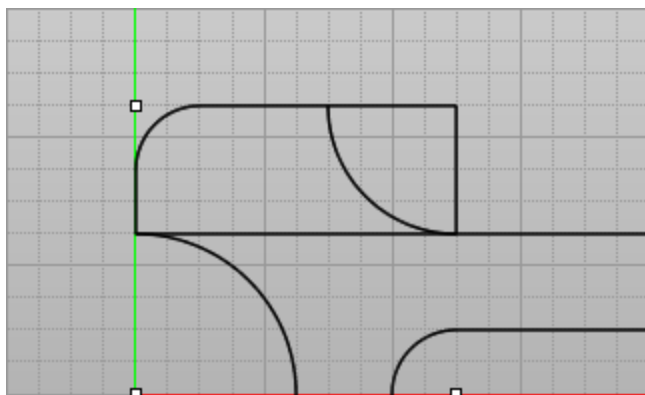
17. For [Start](#) pick the lower right corner of rectangle as shown below.



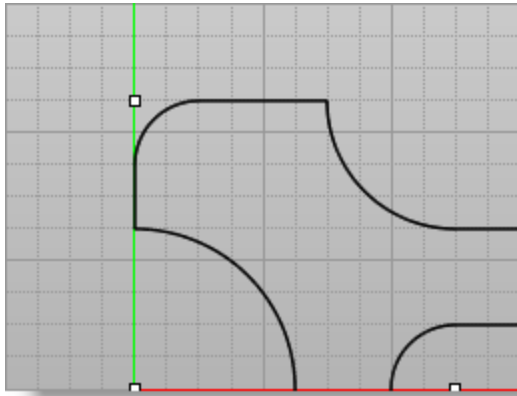
18. For **Angle**, type in **-90** and then press **Enter** to create an arc in the top right corner of the rectangle.

Center,Start,Angle Pts.: Pick arc start point or enter coordinates x,y and z
Center,Start,Angle Pts.: Pick arc end point or enter coordinates x,y and z:[A=-90.000000]
Command -90

The created **Arc** is shown below:



19. To clean up the corners we select **Trim** again.
20. Select trimming curves to obtain the shape as shown below:



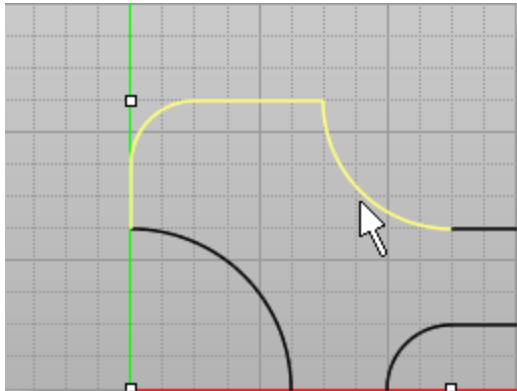
7.3.7 Mirror Curves



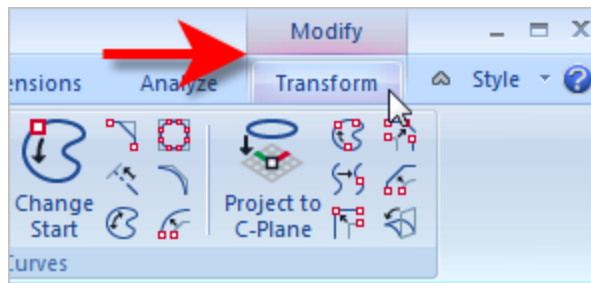
Mirror Curves

We will now select the 4 curves that form the head of the spanner and mirror them.

1. Select the 4 curves as shown below. Hold down the [Ctrl](#) key to select multiple objects.



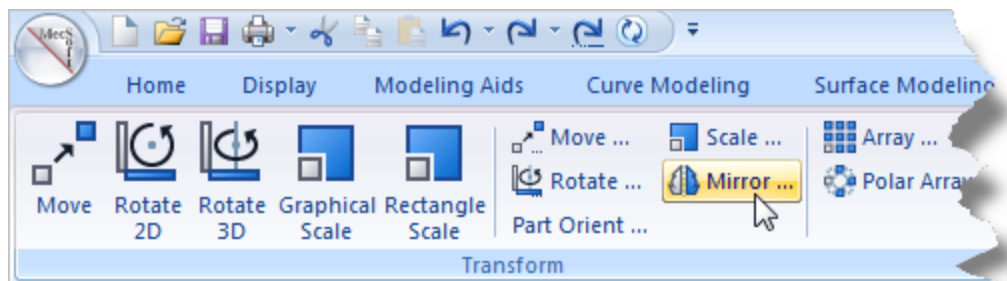
2. With the 4 curves selected, you will notice that [VisualCAD's Modify](#) mode automatically becomes active and that the [Transform Ribbon Bar](#) becomes available. Refer to the menu image below:



The Transform Ribbon Bar is Activated

3. Now there are two methods to activate the [Mirror](#) command. Select the method that suits you best.

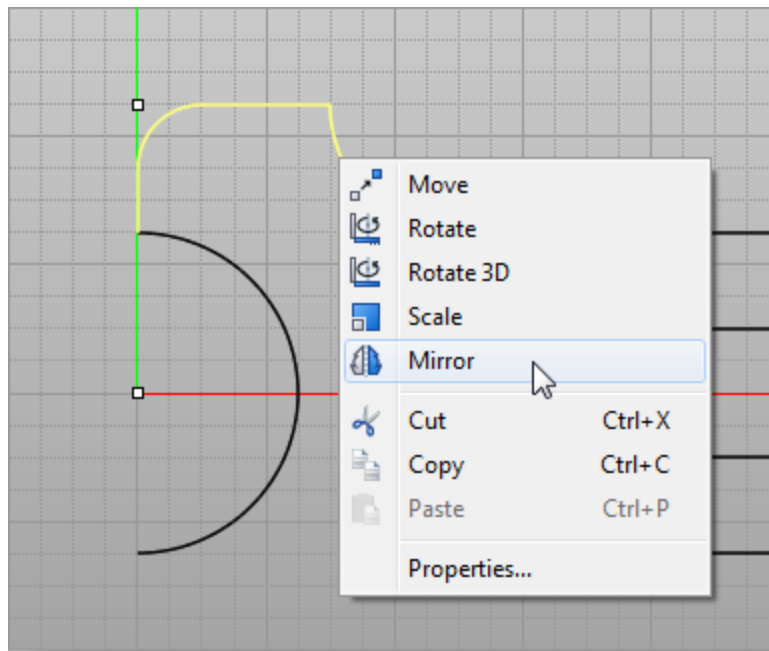
You can select the [Transform Ribbon Bar](#) tab and then select the [Mirror](#) icon as shown:



The Mirror icon on the Transform Ribbon Bar

- or -

While the 4 curves are selected, you can simply [Right-click](#) and select [Mirror](#) from the pop-up menu as shown below:



Right-click Menu for Editing Objects

4. From the [Mirror selected objects](#) dialog box:

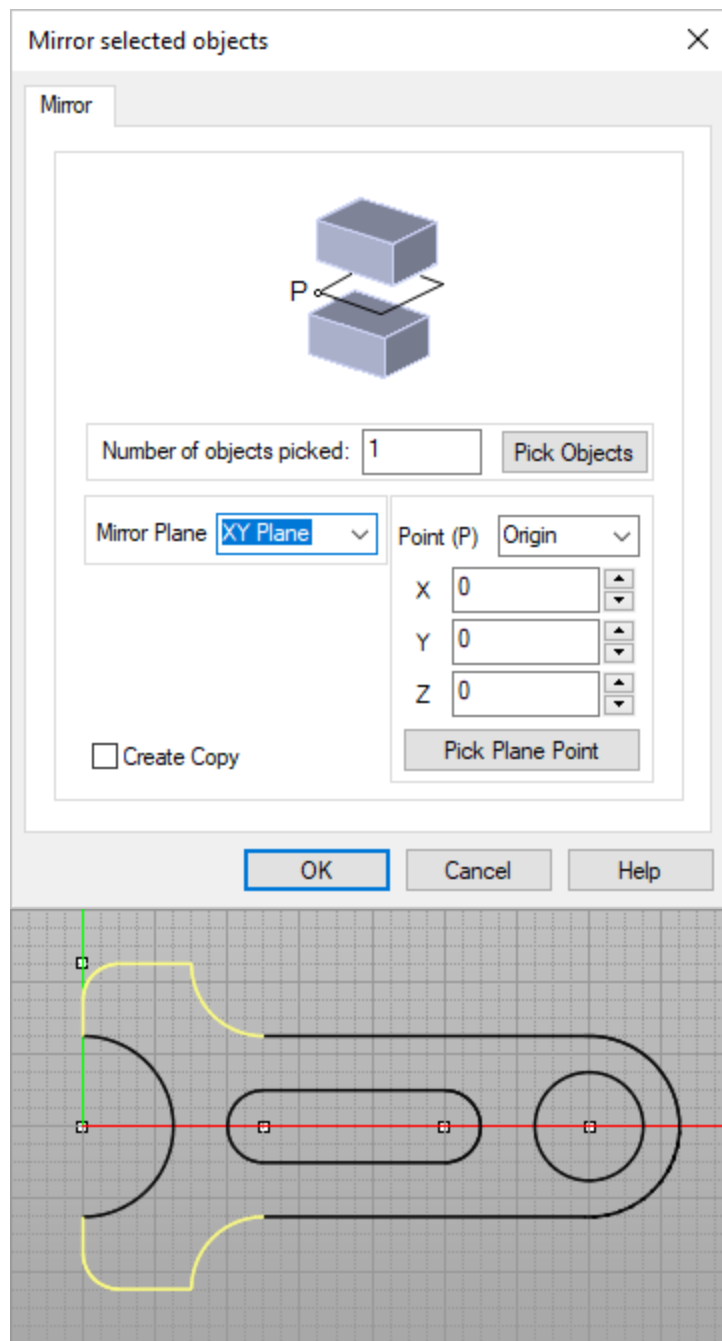
Set the [Mirror Plane](#) to [XZ Plane](#)

Leave [Point \(P\)](#) as [Origin](#) since the origin lies on the center line of the part.

Check [Create Copy](#)

Pick [OK](#).

The curves are mirrored as shown below.

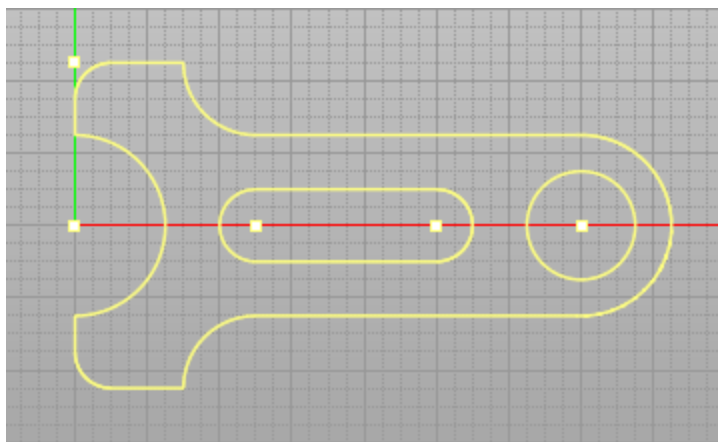
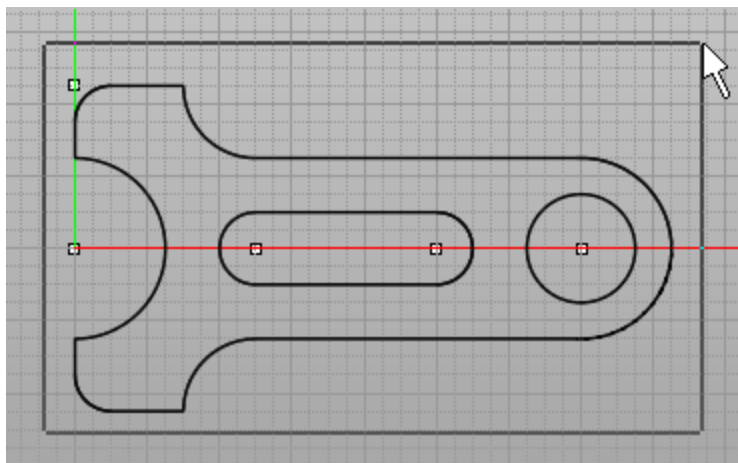


7.3.8 Merge Curves

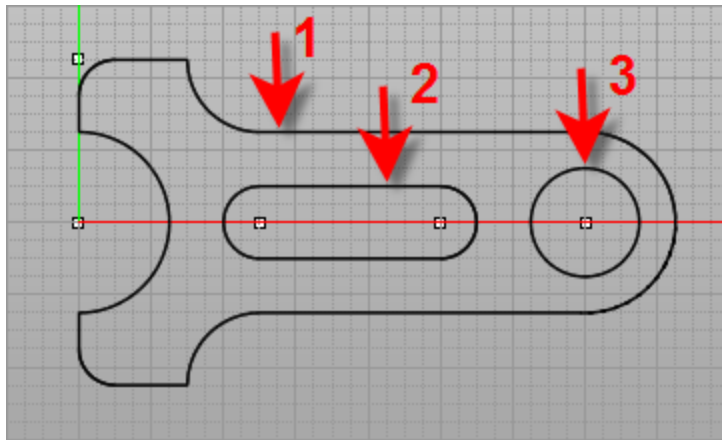
Merge Curves

Now we will merge our curves into three separate closed curves.

1. Select all the curves by using a crossing window selection:



2. Now, go back to the [Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar](#) select the [Merge Curves](#) icon and then [right-click](#) or press [Enter](#). The curves are merged to 3 closed curves as shown below.



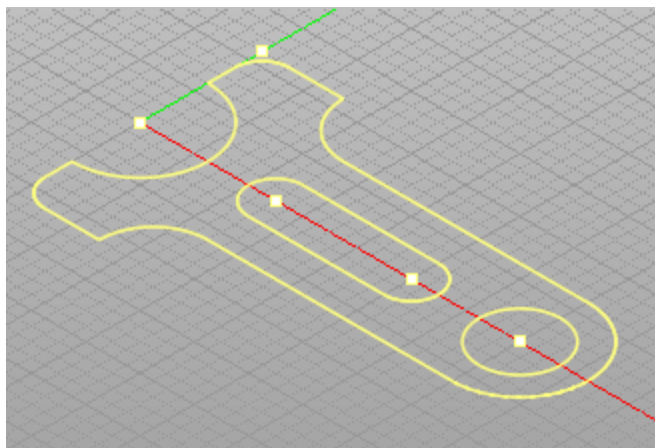
7.3.9 Extrude Curves

Extrude Curves

Now to complete the exercise we will extrude our 3 curves to create the final [Spanner](#) 3D model.

1. Select all the curves by using a crossing window selection:
2. Select the 3 closed curves.

3. Select [Iso](#) from the [View Toolbar](#) 

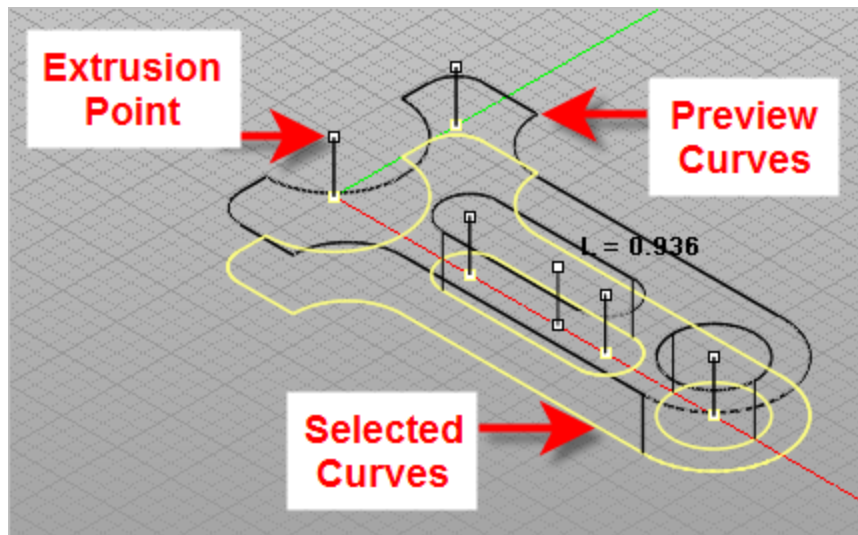


4. From the [Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar](#), select [Extrude](#).

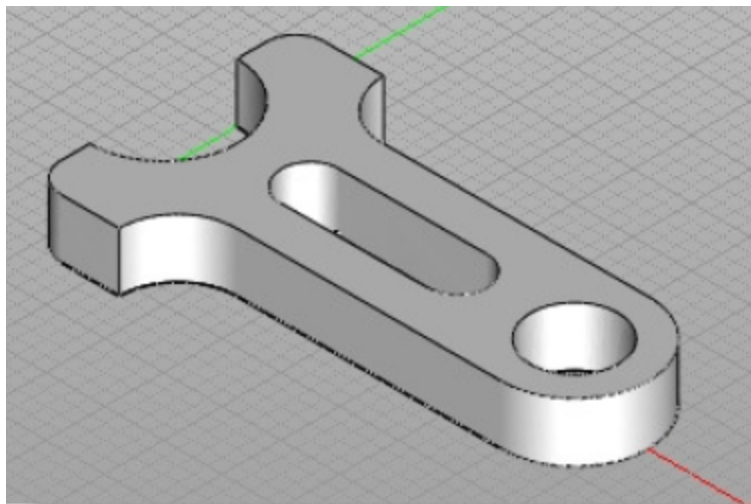
5. Preview curves will appear to determine the direction of extrusion. Set the extrusion to point in the positive Z direction by moving the cursor above the geometry. Then type **1.0** in the command input bar and press the **<Enter>** key.

Command Prompt:

Extrude:: Enter extrusion distance::[L=1.000000]



The curves are now extruded and displayed as shown below.

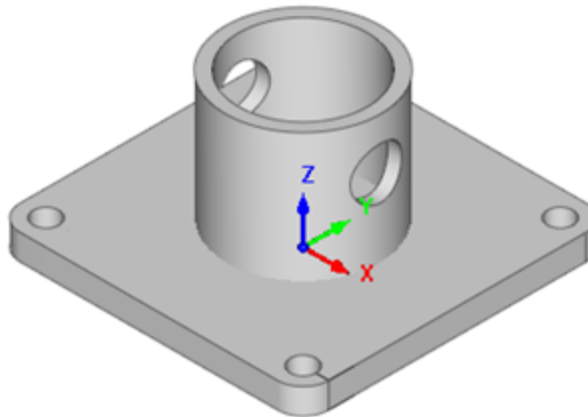


6. Save the file as **Spanner_Completed.vcp**.

This completes this exercise.

7.4 #4: Model a Base Plate

In this exercise you will model something a bit more complicated, the base plate shown below. You will learn how to draw and model basic shapes to create this 3D model.



Model a Base Plate



What you will learn:

In this exercise you will perform the following **VisualCAD** tasks:

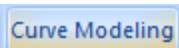
1. [Draw the Base Plate Profile.](#)
2. [Extrude the Base Plate.](#)
3. [Model the Tube.](#)
4. [Create a New Layer.](#)
5. [Edit Geometry Properties.](#)

7.4.1 Draw the Base Plate Profile



Draw the Base Plate Profile

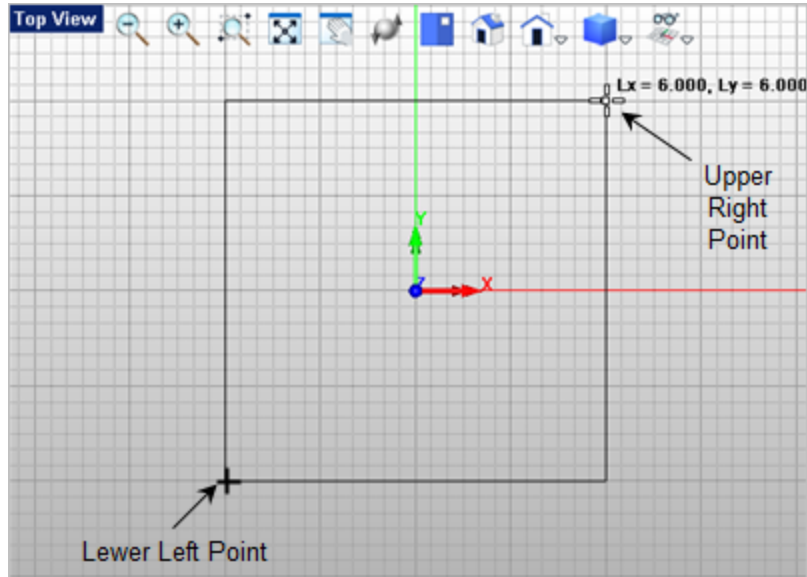
In this exercise you will learn the following **VisualCAD** concepts:

1. Select the [Curve Modeling](#) tab  from the top **Ribbon Bar**.

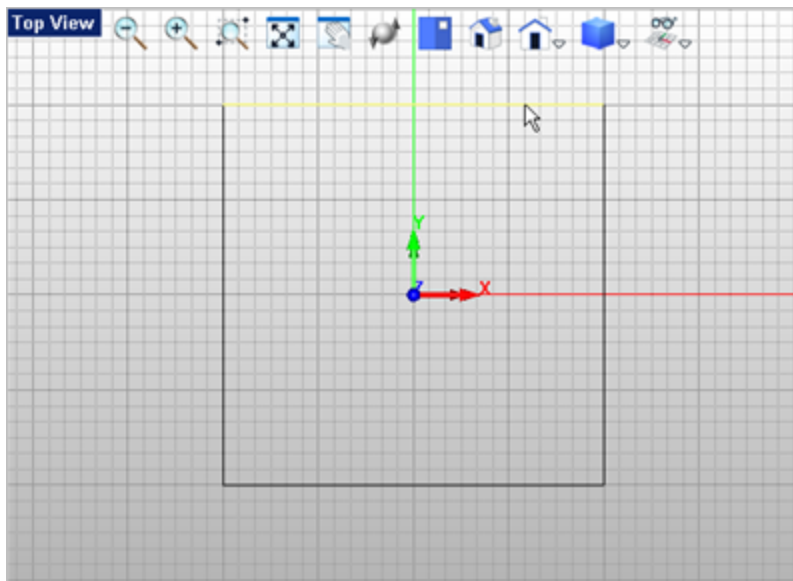


2. Now select the [Rectangle](#) command.
3. For the first corner of the rectangle, select the lower left grid point location shown below or type -3,-3 in the **Command Prompt**  and press **<Enter>**.

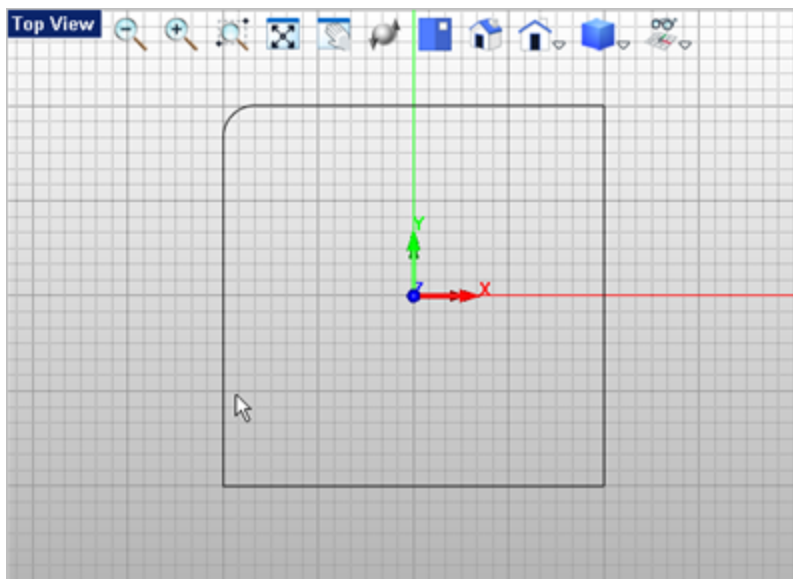
4. For the second corner of the rectangle, select the upper right grid point shown below or type 3,3 in the **Command Prompt** and press <Enter>. This will create a rectangle 6" square.



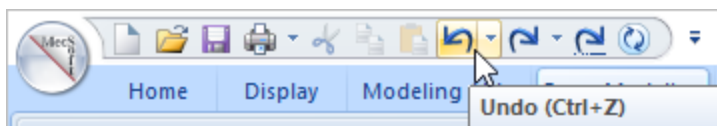
5. To fillet the corners, select the **Fillet** command from the **Curve Modeling** tab.
6. For the fillet **Radius**, enter 0.5 in the command prompt and press <Enter>.
7. Now select the first edge to fillet as shown below. **Note:** When selecting curves to fillet, it is best to select furthest away from the corner that you wish to be filleted.

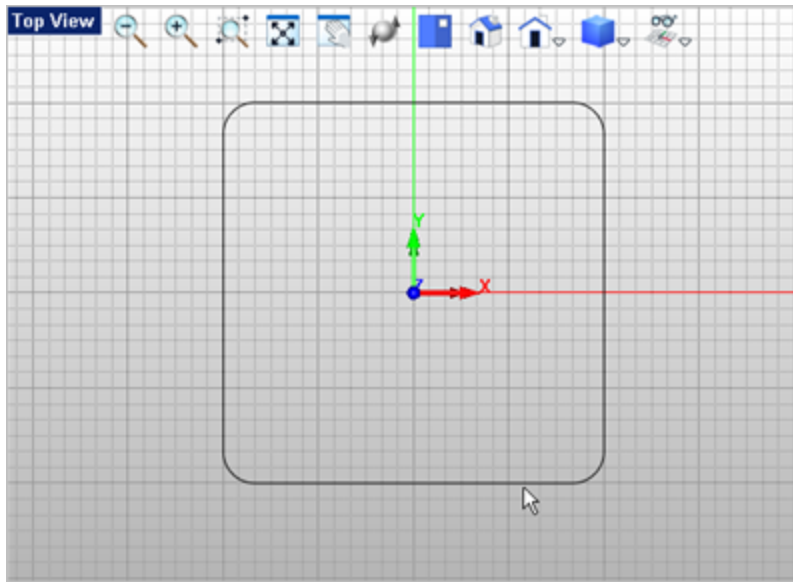


8. Now select the second edge to fillet and a 0.5 radius fillet is added to the rectangle as shown below.



9. Now press <Enter> to repeat the [Fillet](#) command and fillet the remaining 3 corners of the rectangle as shown below. If you make a mistake, you can select the [Undo](#) command located on the [Quick Access toolbar](#) and try again.



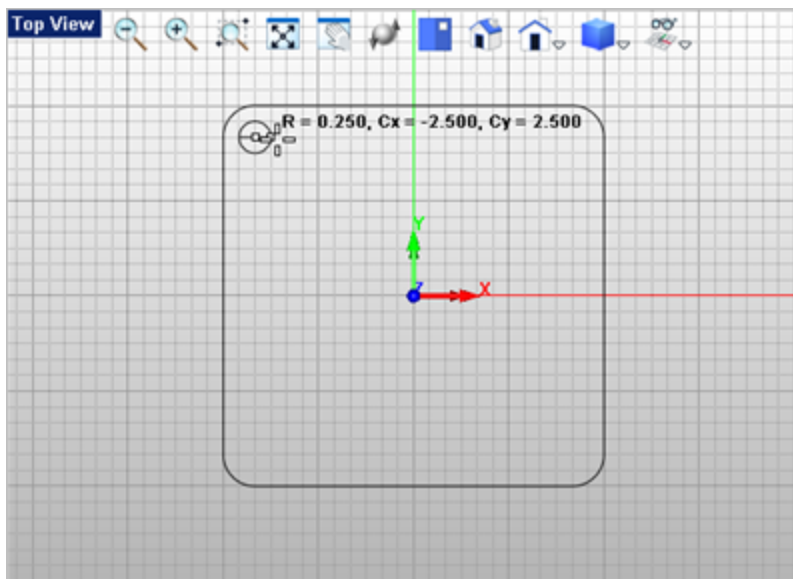


10. Now let's add the mounting holes. From the [Curve Modeling](#) **Curve Modeling** tab,



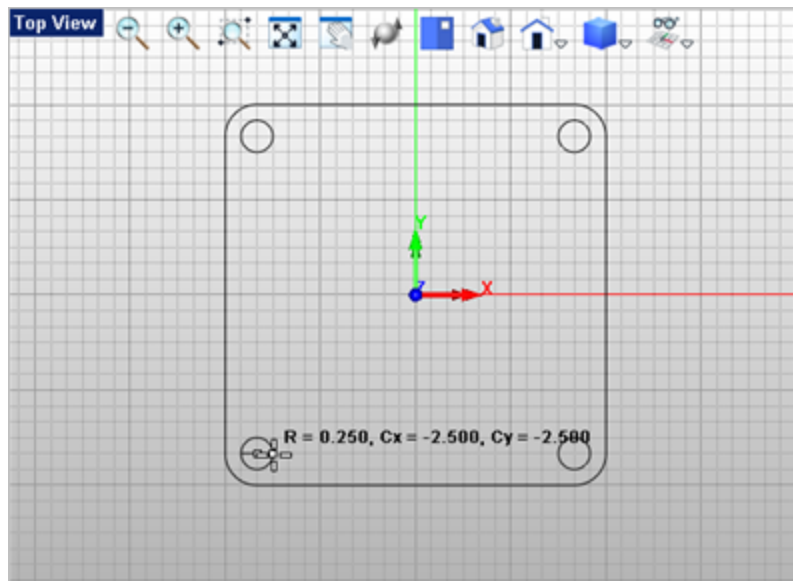
select the [Circle on Pt](#) command.

11. For the center point of the first hole select the grid point shown below or enter - 2.5,2.5 in the command prompt and press <Enter>.



12. Now for the circle radius you can select the next grid point to the right of the center point you just selected or enter 0.5 for the diameter and press <Enter>.

13. Repeat the [Circle on Pt](#) command and draw the other three circles in the locations shown below.



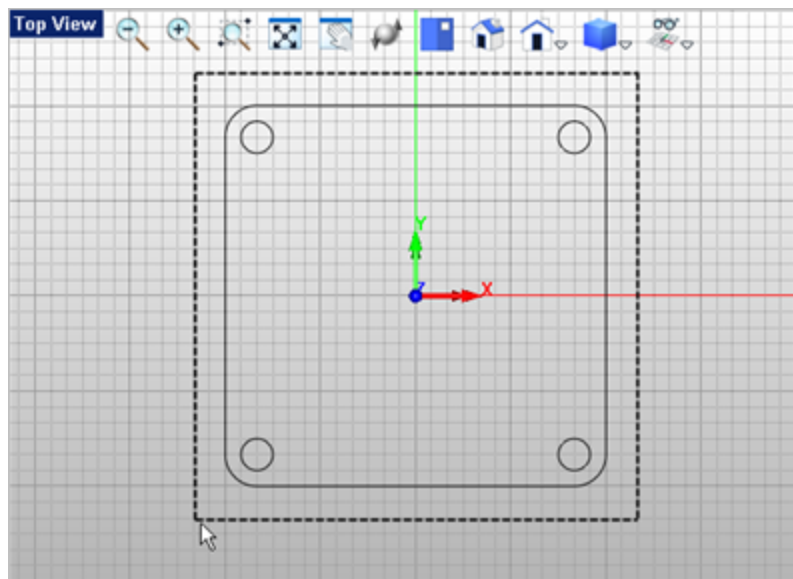
7.4.2 Extrude the Base Plate



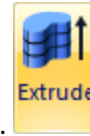
Extrude the Base Plate

In this step we will extrude our drawing to model the base plate in 3D.

1. First, window select the drawing by picking two points. Click and hold the left mouse button to drag a window around the drawing as shown below. If you drag from left to right everything completely the window is selected. If you drag from right to left everything that cross over the window will be selected.

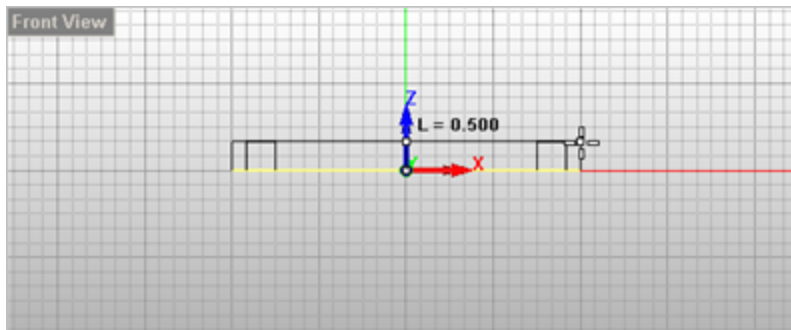


2. After your drawing is selected, go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab **Mesh Modeling** from

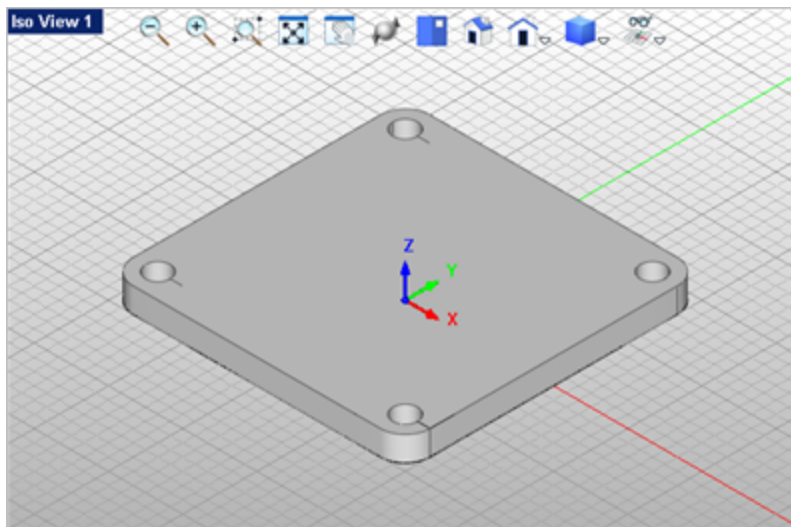


the [Ribbon Bar](#) and select the [Extrude](#) command.

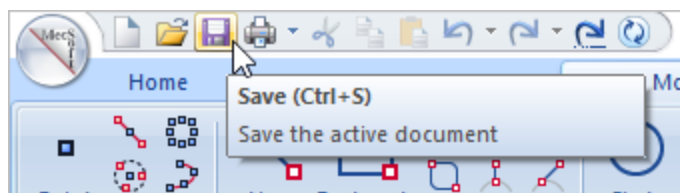
3. Now move the cursor down to the [Front View](#) **Front View** and you will see that you can drag the height of the extrusion. Select the second grid point in the positive Z direction or type [0.5](#) and press [<Enter>](#).



You will see the extrusion display in all four viewports. The [Iso View 1](#) **Iso View 1** view is shown below.



4. [Save](#) your work by selecting the [Save](#) icon from the [Quick Access toolbar](#).



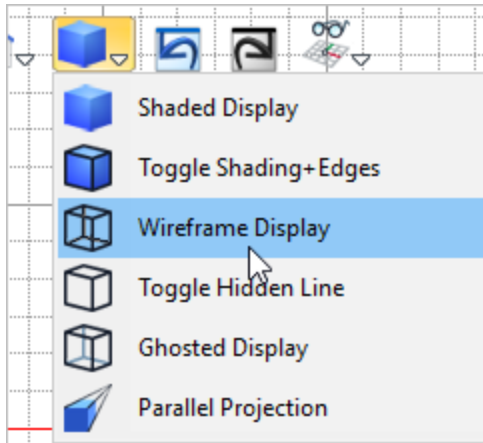
7.4.3 Model the Tube



Model the Tube

In this step we will draw two concentric circles and then extrude them to model the circular tube that sits at the base plate.

1. Select the [Top View](#) **Top View** to activate it.
2. From the [View Toolbar](#) drop down the [Display](#) menu  and select [Wireframe Display](#). This will allow us to better see our next drawing.

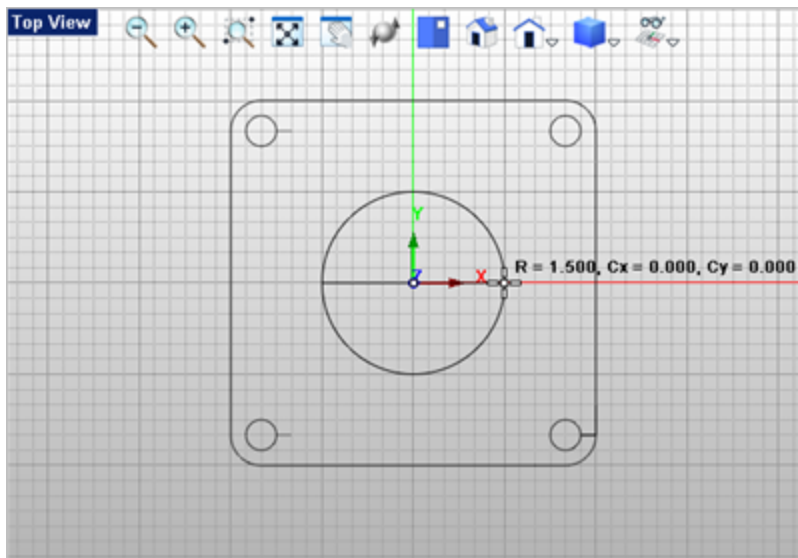


3. Now from the [Curve Modeling](#) **Curve Modeling** tab select the [Circle on Point](#)

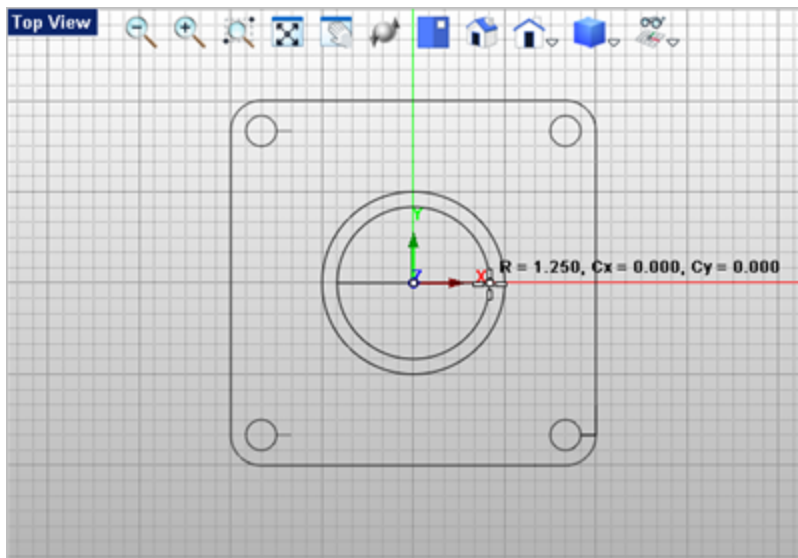


command again.

4. For the center point select the grid point at **0,0** center of the drawing.
5. Now for the circle diameter you can select the grid point shown below or type in **3** and press **<Enter>**. A circle 3" in diameter is drawn.



6. Now repeat the command, this time drawing a circle with a diameter of 2.5" in diameter.

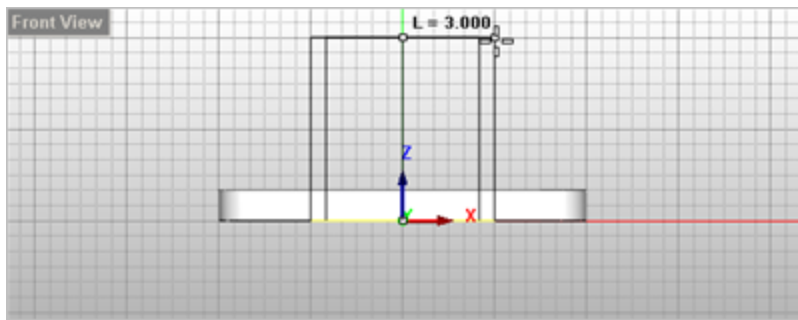


7. Once the two concentric circles are drawn, select them both. You can window select them or while holding down the <Ctrl> key, just pick both of them.
8. With the two circles selected, go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) **Mesh Modeling** tab and

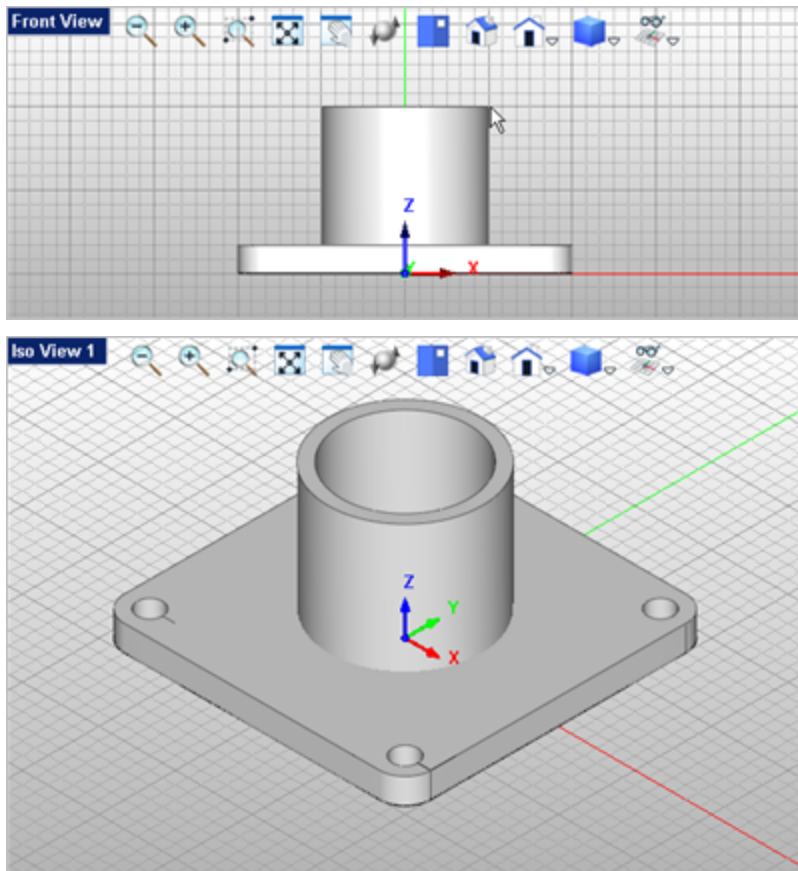


select the [Extrude](#) command again.

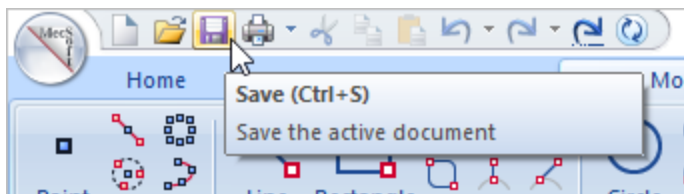
9. Now move the cursor to the [Front View](#) **Front View** and select the grid point located at 3" in the positive Z direction as shown below.



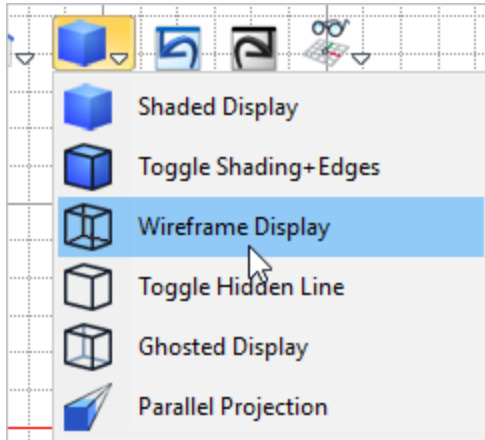
10. The center tube is now created and shown in each window.



11. [Save](#) your work by selecting the [Save](#) icon from the [Quick Access Toolbar](#).



12. Activate the [Right View](#) **Right View** by selecting anywhere on the grid.
13. From the [View Toolbar](#), drop down the [Display](#)  menu and select [Wireframe Display](#). Again, this will allow us to better see our next drawing.



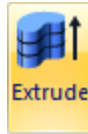
14. From the [Curve Modeling](#) **Curve Modeling** tab, select the [Circle on Pt](#) command again.
15. For the center point of the circle, select the grid point shown below.



16. Now for the circle diameter you can select the grid point shown below or enter 1.0 for the diameter.

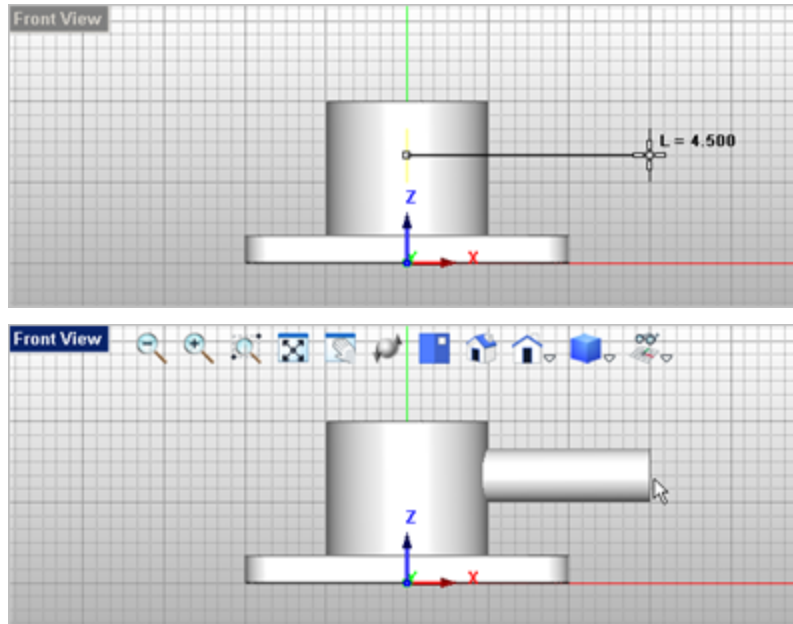


17. Now select the circle you just created, then go to the [Mesh Modeling](#)

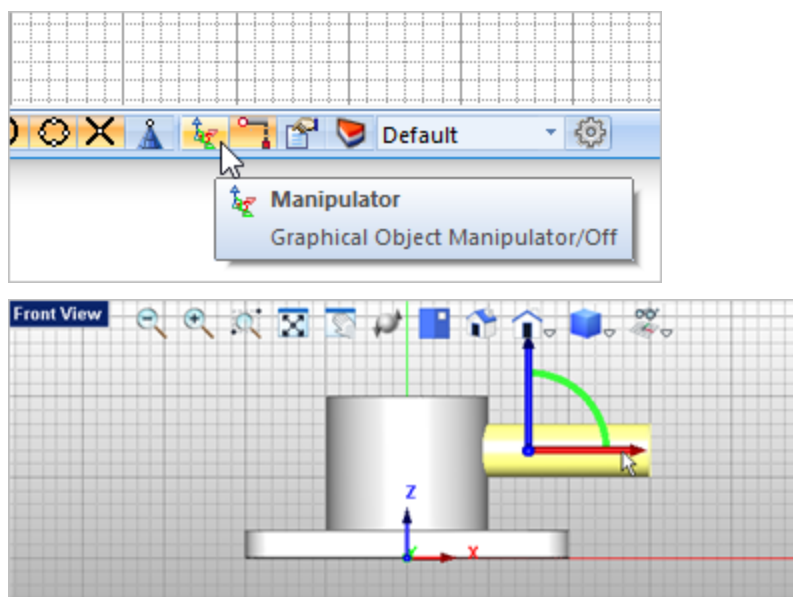
[Mesh Modeling](#)

tab and select the [Extrude](#) command again.

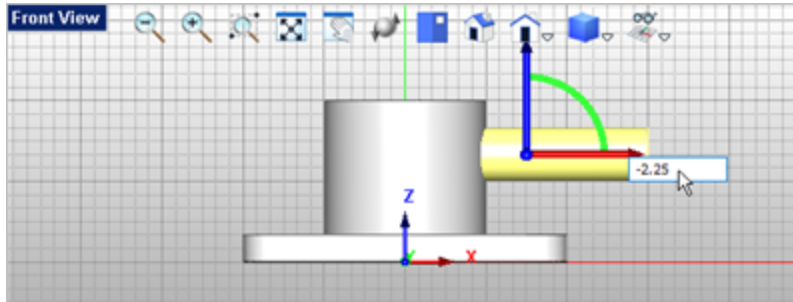
18. For the length of the cylinder move the cursor over to the [Front View](#) and select the grid point shown below.

[Front View](#)

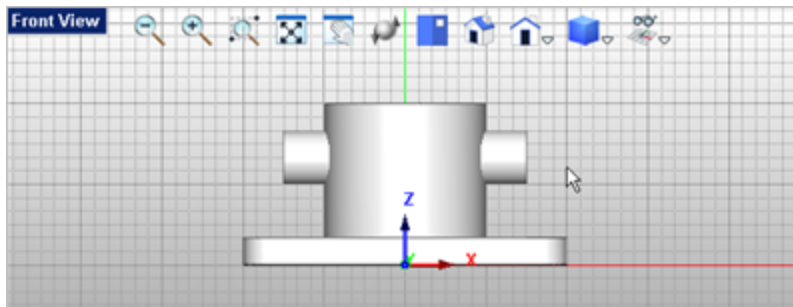
19. Now select the cylinder and toggle the display of the [Graphic Manipulator](#) on. This toggle icon is located on the [Status Bar](#) at bottom of the display.



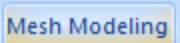
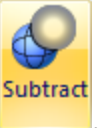
20. With the cylinder selected pick on the red X axis of the [Graphic Manipulator](#) to display the input box and enter -2.25  and press <Enter> as shown below.



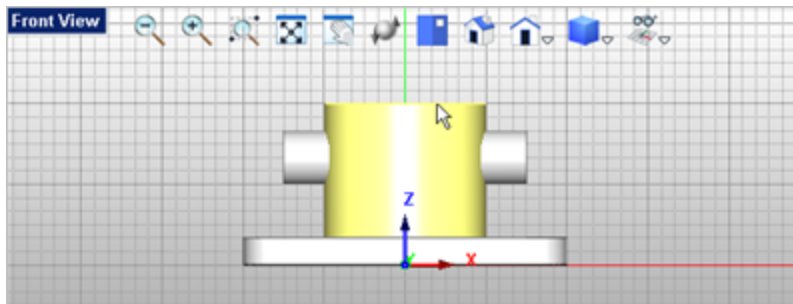
The cylinder is translated to the left negative X direction by 2.25 inches so that it passes complete through the tube on both sides.



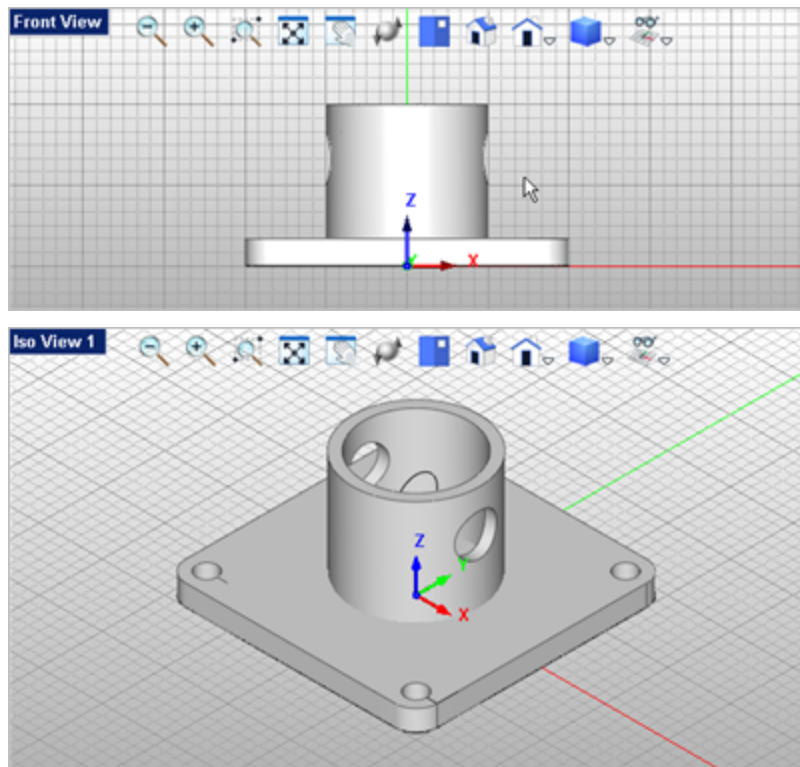
21. You can toggle the [Graphic Manipulator](#)  off.

22. From the [Mesh Modeling](#)  tab, select the [Subtract](#) command . It's located in the [Edit Meshes](#) pane. We are going to [Subtract](#) the cylinder from the tube.

23. For the first mesh select the tube.



24. For the second mesh select the cylinder. The hole is created in both sides of the tube.

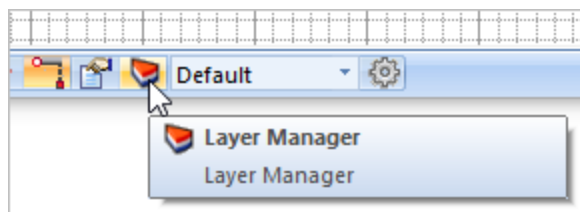


7.4.4 Create a New Layer

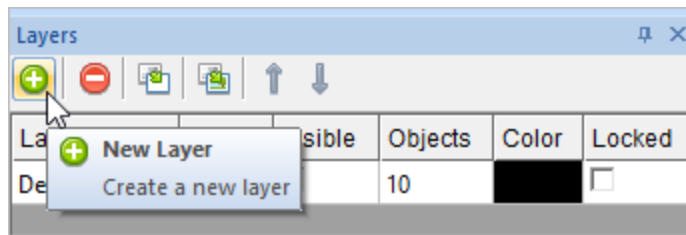
Create a New Layer

In this step we will create a new layer, turn it off and then move our curves to it to hide them from the display.

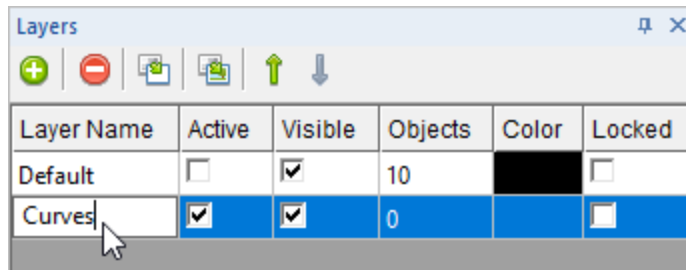
1. From the [Status Toolbar](#), select the icon to display the [Layer Manager](#) .



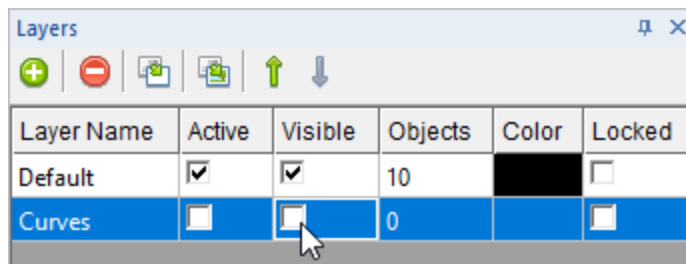
2. At the top of the [Layer Manager](#) select the [New Layer](#) icon and a new layer will be added to the list.



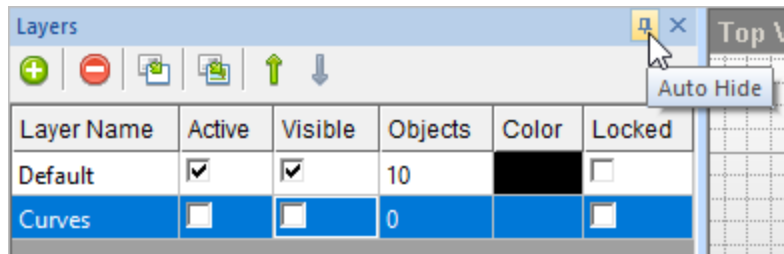
3. Now double-left click on the [New Layer](#) name and type in the names "Curves" and press <Enter>.

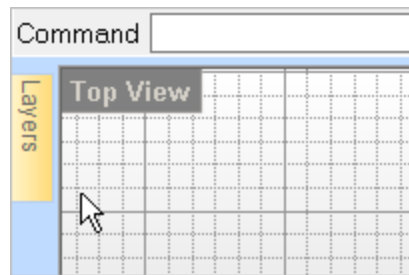


4. Now to hide the [Curves](#) layer first check the box to make the [Default](#) layer the [Active](#) layer.
5. Then uncheck the box to make the [Curves](#) layer hidden.



6. Now let's [Auto Hide](#) the [Layer Manager](#). Select the [Auto Hide](#) pin  icon located at the top right of the [Layer Manager](#) and will see that the dialog disappears to the left side of the screen.



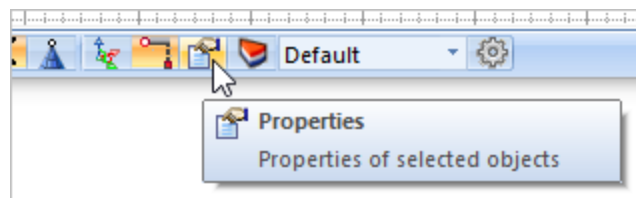


7.4.5 Edit Geometry Properties

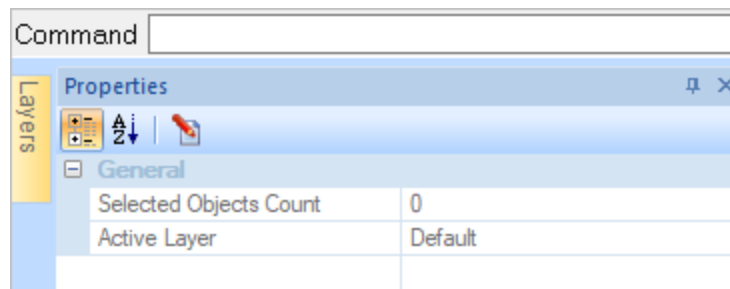
Edit Properties of Geometry

In this final step we will select all of our reference curves and edit their properties so that they are moved to a layer whose visibility is currently off.

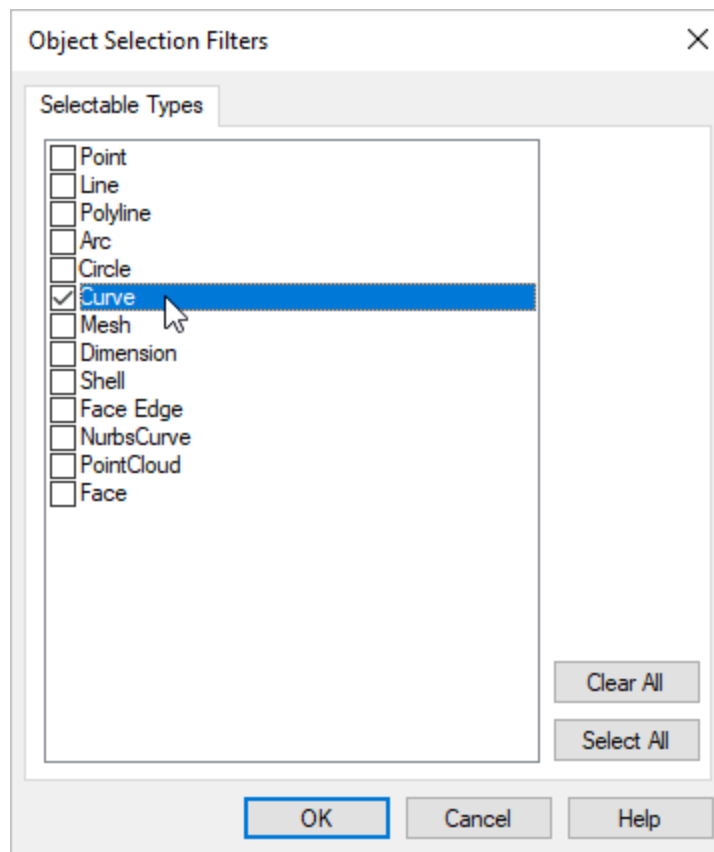
1. Let's start by selecting the [Properties](#) icon  located on the [Status Toolbar](#) at the bottom of the display (just to the left of the [Layer Manager](#)  icon).



2. You will see the [Properties Manager](#) dialog display on the left side of the display.

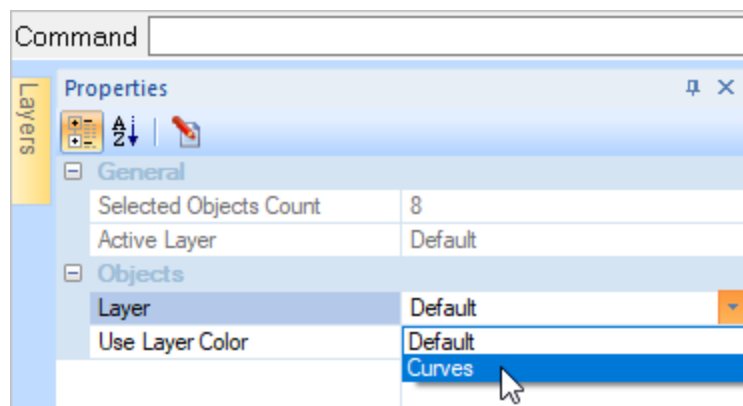


3. Now we will automatically select all of our curve geometry. Go to the [Modeling Aids](#) tab and select pick the [Select by Type](#)  icon. This will display the [Object Selection Filters](#) dialog.

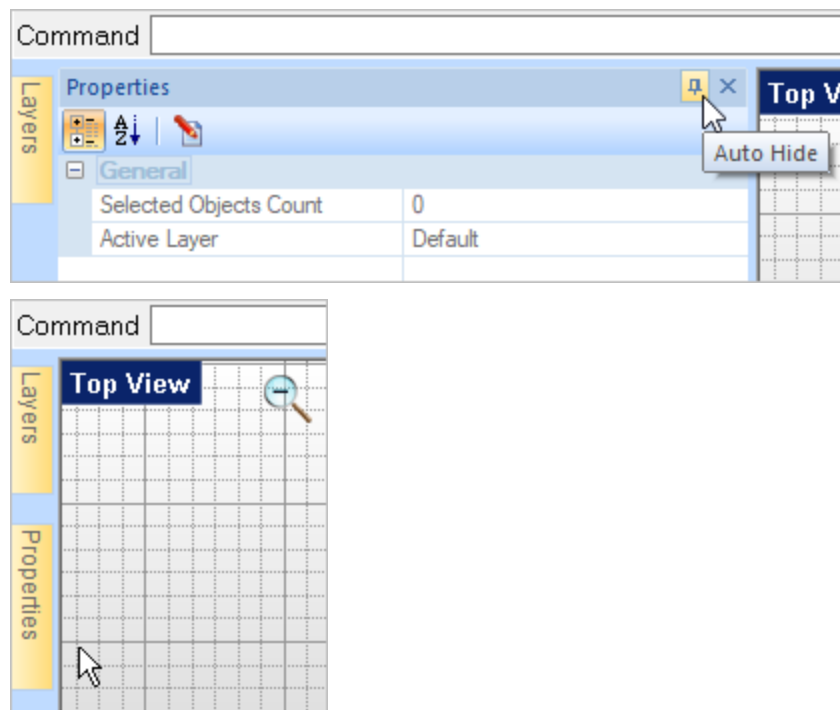


4. From the dialog check the box for **Curves** and uncheck all other boxes and then pick **OK** to close the dialog. You will see that all of the curves are highlighted for selection.

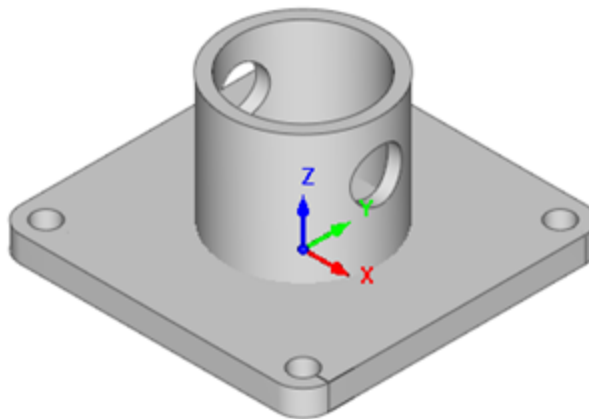
Now go to the [Properties Manager](#) and under the **Objects** section drop down the menu for **Layer** and select **Curves**.



5. Now close the [Properties Manager](#) by selecting the **Auto Hide** pin located at the top right of the [Properties Manager](#).

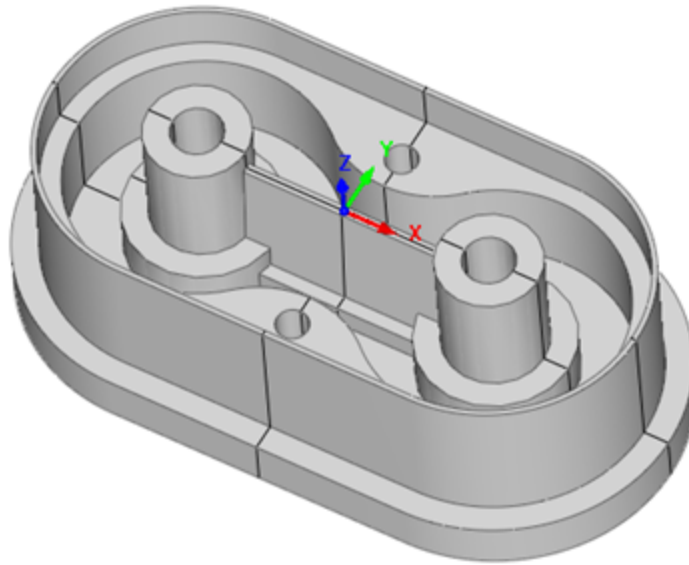


6. This exercise is complete and your part now looks like this:
7. Save the file as [Base_Plate_Completed.vcp](#).



7.5 #5: Model a Mold Insert

In this exercise you will model something a bit more complicated, the mold insert shown below. It builds upon the tasks you have learned in the previous exercises. You will draw curve profiles and then turn them into part features. The [Graphic Manipulator](#) is used extensively in this exercise as well as modeling from multiple viewports. Just go slowly and save your work often and [Undo](#) if needed.



Model a Mold Insert

**What you will learn:**

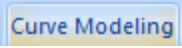
In this exercise you will perform the following VisualCAD tasks:

1. [Extrude the Body.](#)
2. [Extrude the Flange.](#)
3. [Extrude the Upper Pocket.](#)
4. [Extrude the Lower Pocket.](#)
5. [Revolve the Center Bosses.](#)
6. [Extrude the Connection Bar.](#)
7. [Extrude the Connection Wall.](#)
8. [Extrude Ejector Pin Holes.](#)
9. [Change Geometry Layer.](#)
10. [Create Section Curves.](#)

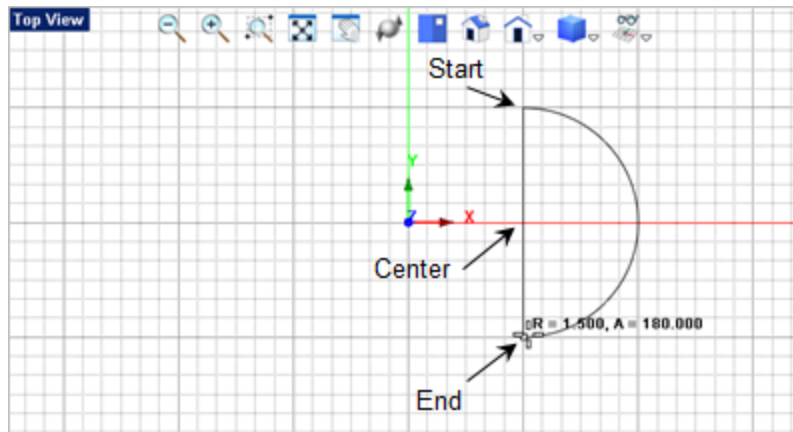
7.5.1 Extrude the Body

**Extrude the Body**

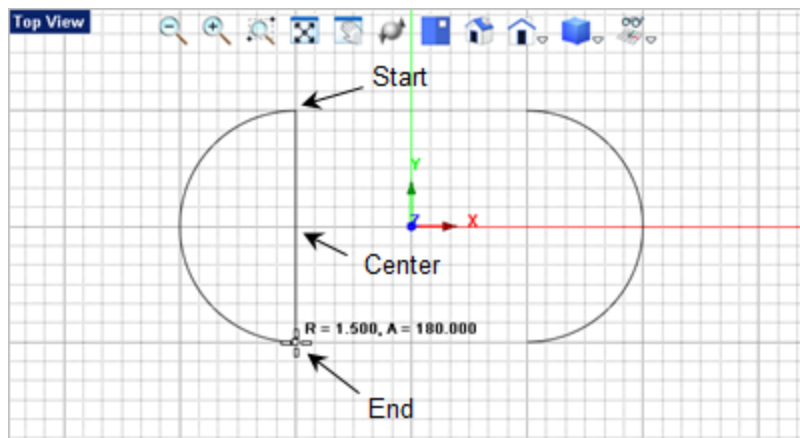
In this step we will model the body by creating an extrusion.

1. Activate the **Top View**  tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.
2. Select the **Curve Modeling**  from the top Ribbon Bar.
3. Now select the [Arc Center, Start, Angle](#)  command.

4. In the [Status Bar](#) make sure the [Grid Snap](#) is On .
5. For the center point select the grid point shown below. The status bar will track where your cursor is located in [World Coordinates](#). Move the cursor until the grid point at 1.5,0,0 is located and pick it.
6. Following the command prompts . It says to select the start point of the arc. Locate and select the start point shown below.



7. For the arc end point move the cursor clockwise and pick the end point shown. You will see that the arc is previewed as you move the cursor.
8. Now we want to draw another arc, press [Enter](#) to repeat the command and select the center, start and end points shown below.



9. Now we want to draw a line to connect the two arcs across the top. From the [Curve](#)

[Modeling](#) tab

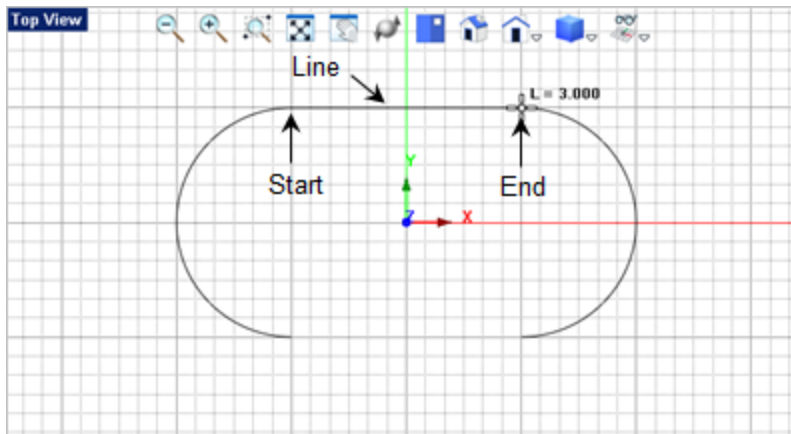
[Curve Modeling](#)

select the [Line](#) command

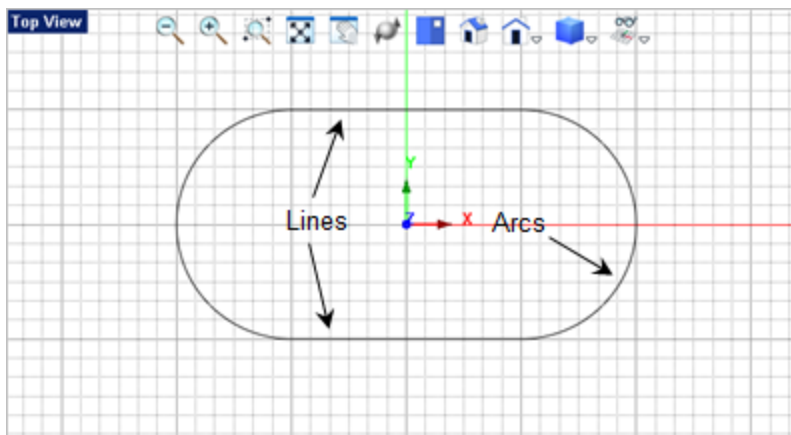


10. For the start point for the line select the grid point located at the top end of the arc of the left and then for the end point of the line select the top end of the arc on the

right. Optionally, you can set the [Object Snap](#) to [End Point](#)  from the [Status Bar](#) and select the end points of the arcs to draw the line.



11. Press <Enter> to repeat the [Line](#) command and draw the second line connection the two arcs across the bottom. Your drawing should look like the image below.



12. For modeling its best that you merge your profile geometry into a single curve entity.
13. Window select the geometry (both arcs and both lines) and from the [Curve](#)



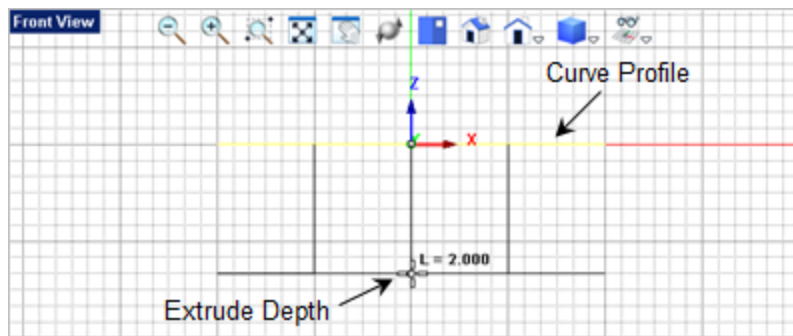
[Modeling](#) tab [Curve Modeling](#) select the [Merge Curves](#) command and then right-click the mouse to merge them. If you pick anywhere on the geometry you will see that one curve is now defined.

14. Now let's create the body by extruding our profile curve. With the curve selected, change to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab **Mesh Modeling** and select the [Extrude Mesh](#)

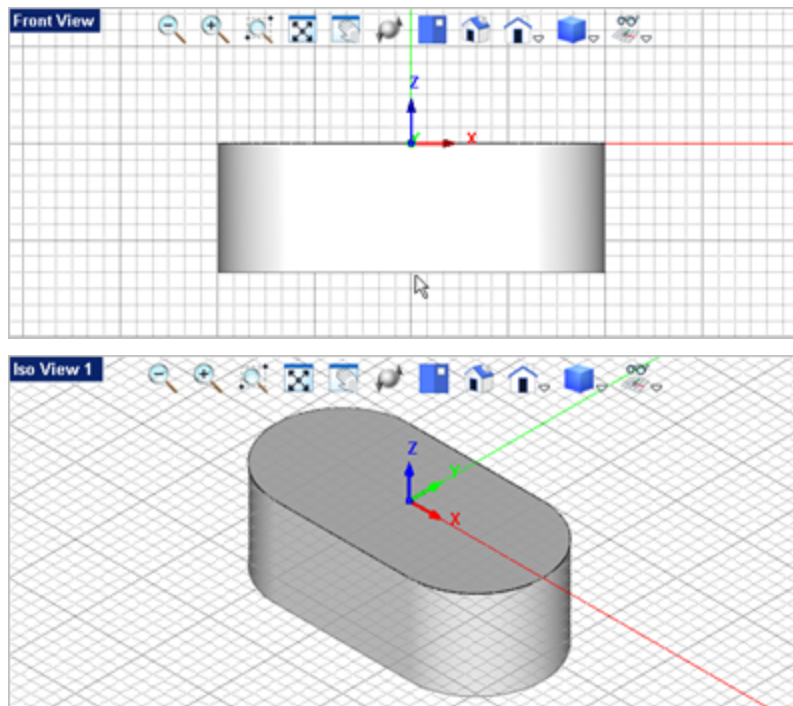


command.

15. For the extrusion distance, drag the cursor down to the [Front View](#) **Front View** and select the grid point shown below. It's located at 2.0" below the selected curve.



The Mesh Solid is created and shown below.



7.5.2 Extrude the Flange

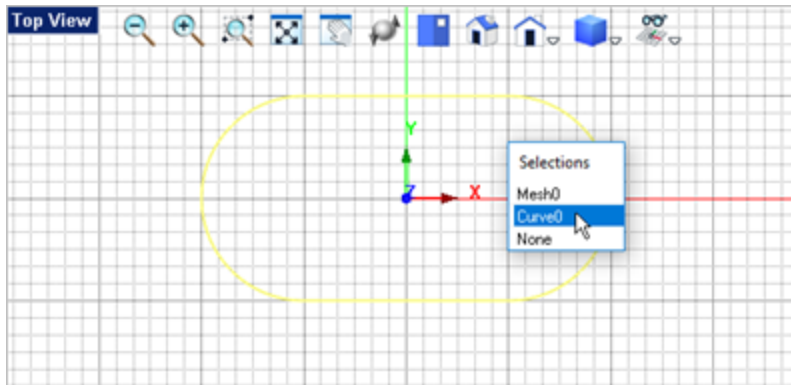


Extrude the Flange

Now we will extrude the flange.

1. Activate the **Top View** **Top View** by selection the profile curve you just created. You will notice that a selection list pops up because there is now more than one entity in the same located.

Note: If the Selections menu shown below does not display, go to the **Home** tab in **VisualCAD** and select **Options**. Then under **System** clear the check box next to **Use Preselection Highlight**.

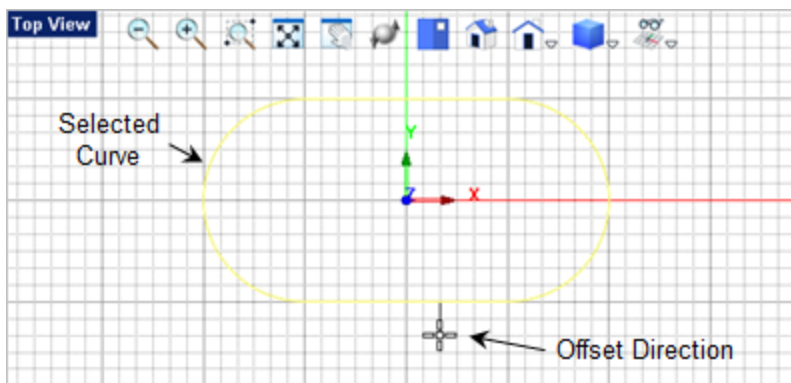


2. From the selection list pick **Curve**. The number value to the right of the curve may change depending on when the entity is created.
3. With the curve selected, from the **Curve Modeling** tab **Curve Modeling** select the



Offset Curve command.

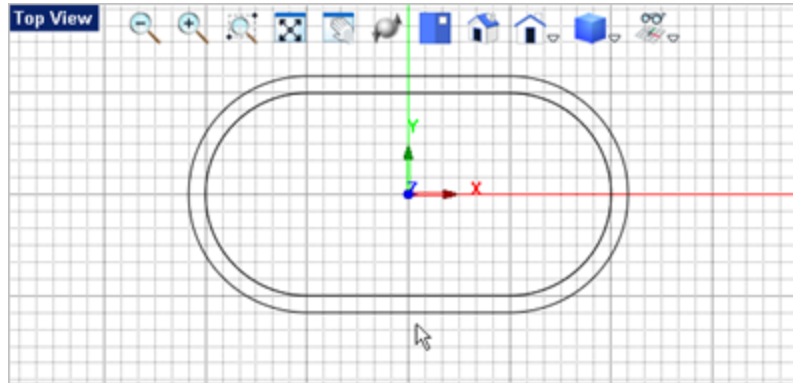
4. If you move the cursor you see that an offset direction is indicated. Move the cursor below and on the outside of the curve as shown below.



5. Most of the time in this exercise we are selecting grid points. The distance between each grid point is **0.25"**. For the offset distance you can select the next grid point below the curve.

Optionally, while the offset direction is displayed you can enter **0.25**

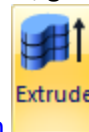
Command and press <Enter> to create the offset curve shown below.



6. Now select the offset curve you just created, go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab

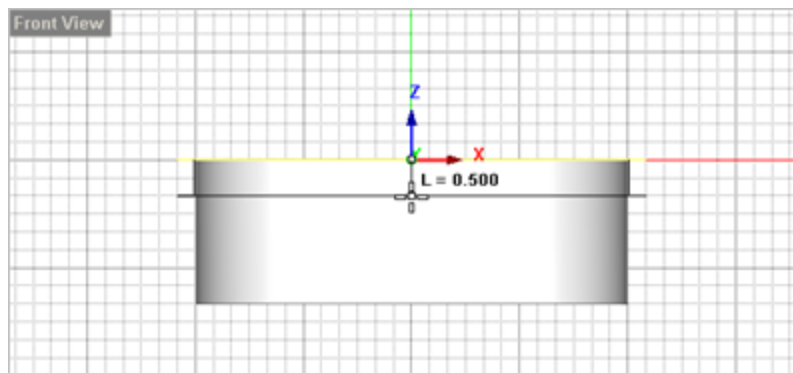
Mesh Modeling

and pick the [Extrude Mesh](#)

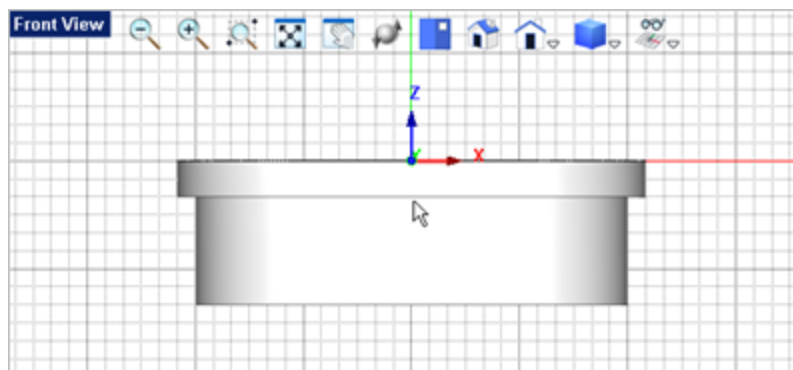


command again.

7. Drag the cursor to the [Front View](#) **Front View** and pick the second grid point below the selected curve. The cursor indicates that the extrusion length is **0.500"**.



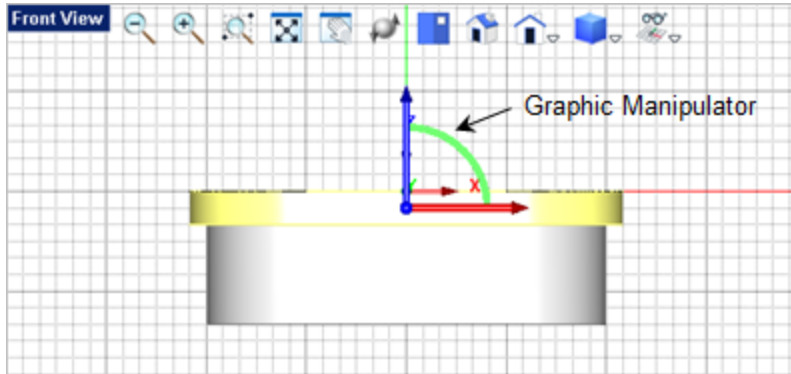
The flange is created and displayed.



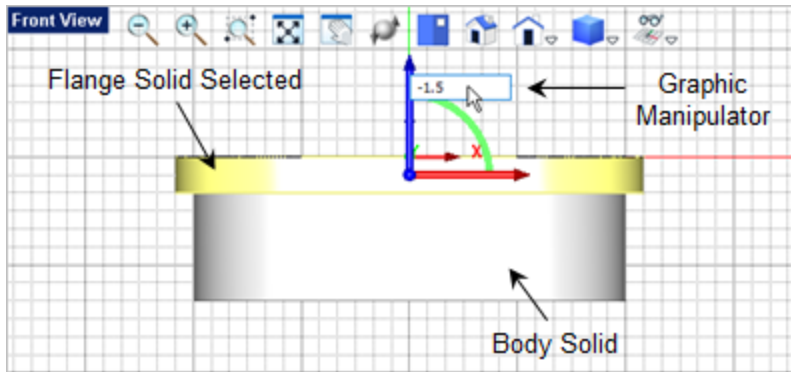
8. Now let's move the flange to the bottom of the body. To do this we will use the [Graphic Manipulator](#). To toggle the [Graphic Manipulator](#) on, go to the [Status Bar](#) and select the icon .

The [Graphic Manipulator](#) allows you to easily translate or rotate a selected entity in or about the X, Y or Z of the [World Axis](#).

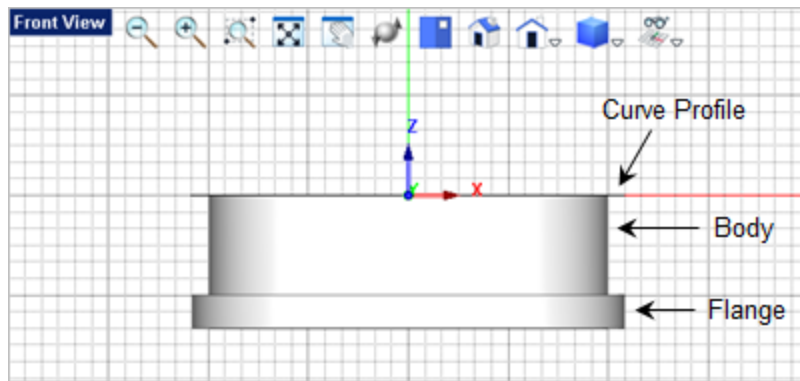
9. Now select the flange and you will see that the [Graphic Manipulator](#) is displayed on top of the selected entity.



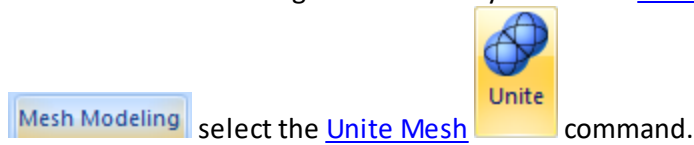
10. Pick on the blue [Z Axis](#) arrow to display the input window.
11. Enter [-1.5](#) Command and press [<Enter>](#).



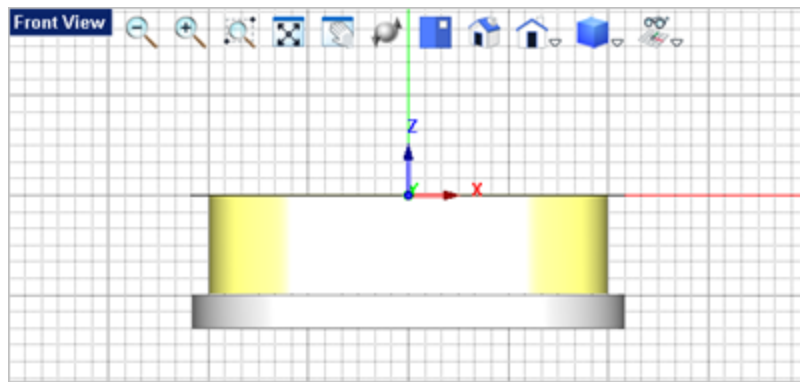
The flange is moved [1.5"](#) in the negative Z direction.



12. Now let's unite the flange with the body. From the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab,



13. For the first mesh solid select the body.



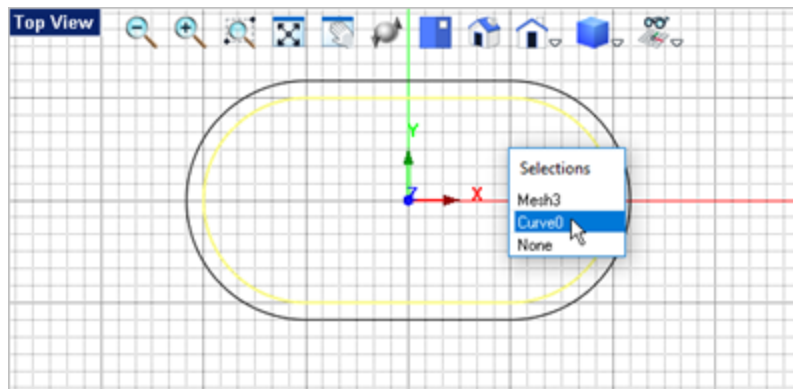
14. For the second mesh solid select the flange. The two will be joined into one mesh solid.

7.5.3 Extrude the Upper Pocket

Extrude the Upper Pocket

In this step we will create the upper pocket and subtract it from the body.

1. From the [Top View](#) **Top View** select the profile curve of the body by clicking on it and selecting [Curve](#) from the selection list.

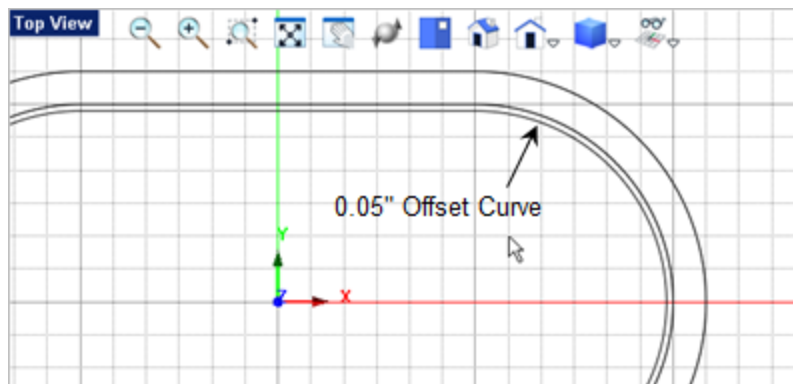
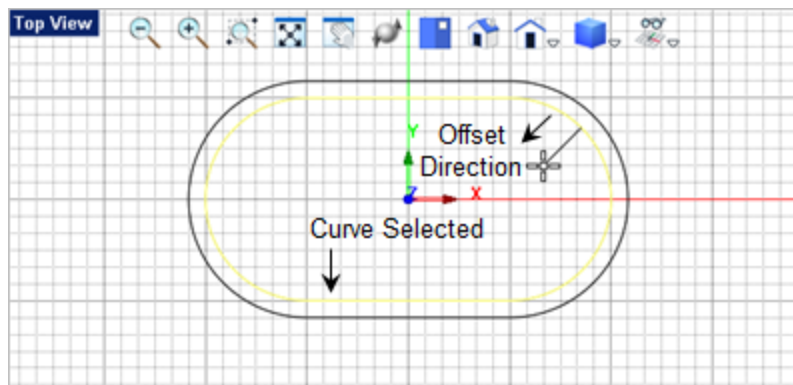


2. With the curve select, go to the [Curve Modeling](#) tab **Curve Modeling** and select the



[Offset Curve](#) command.

3. Drag the offset direction to the inner side of the curve and then enter **0.05**
Command and press <Enter>.

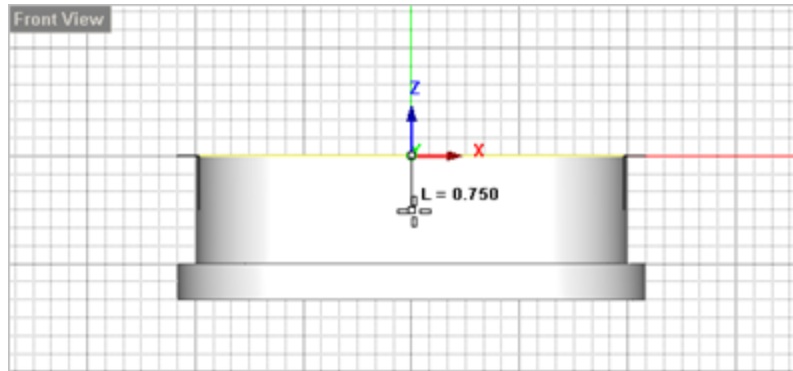


4. Now select the offset curve, go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab **Mesh Modeling** and select

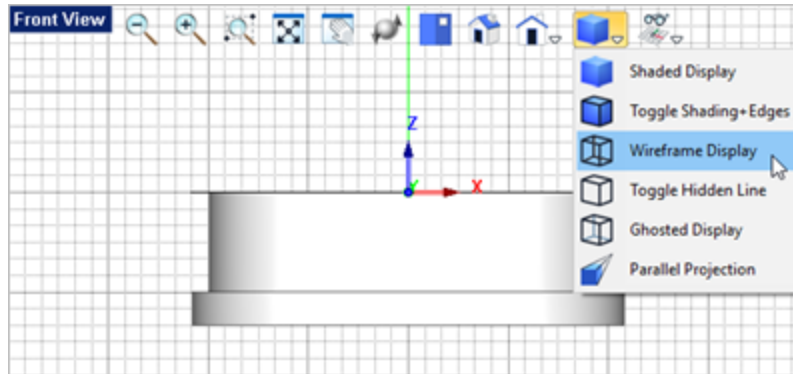


the [Extrude Mesh](#) command.

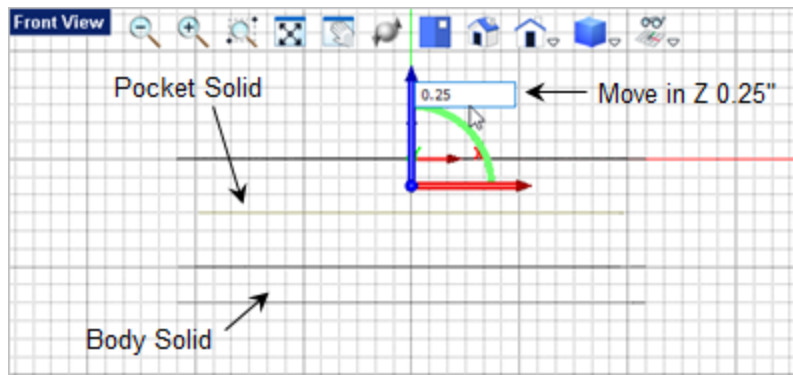
5. Drag the cursor down to the [Front View](#) **Front View** and select the grid point at [0.750"](#) as shown below.



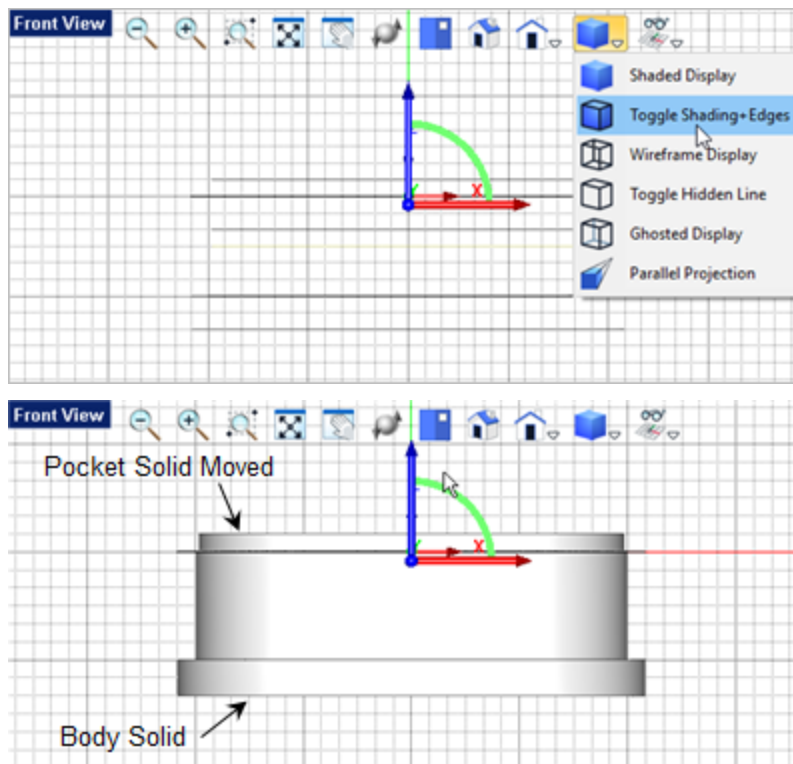
6. Now to see the pocket mesh solid, from the [View Toolbar](#) select the [Wireframe Display](#) item from the display menu.



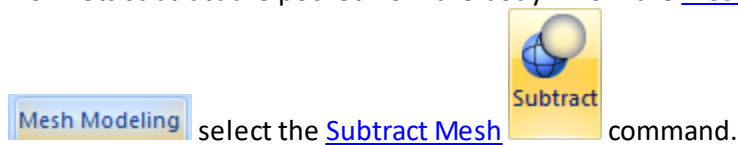
7. We want to move the pocket mesh solid so make sure the [Graphic Manipulator](#) icon (it's located on the [Status Bar](#) remember?).
8. With the [Front View](#) **Front View** set to [Wireframe display](#) you can see to select the pocket mesh solid. Select it now and the [Graphic Manipulator](#) will display on it.
9. Select the blue [Z Axis](#) arrow and enter [0.25](#) and press [<Enter>](#). The pocket mesh solid will move upward [0.25"](#).



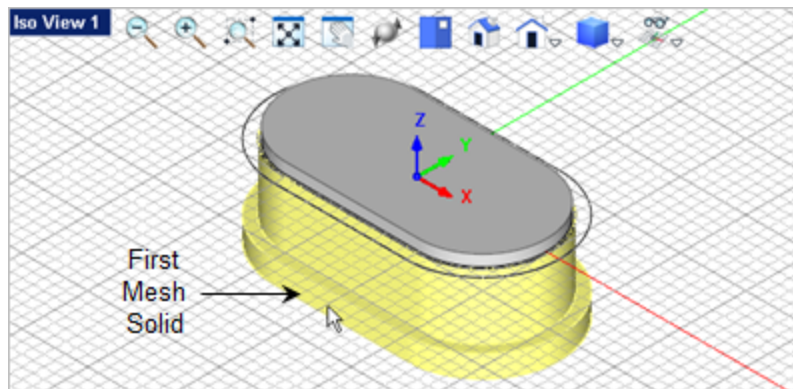
10. From the [View Toolbar](#)  drop down the display menu and select [Toggle Shading + Edges](#).



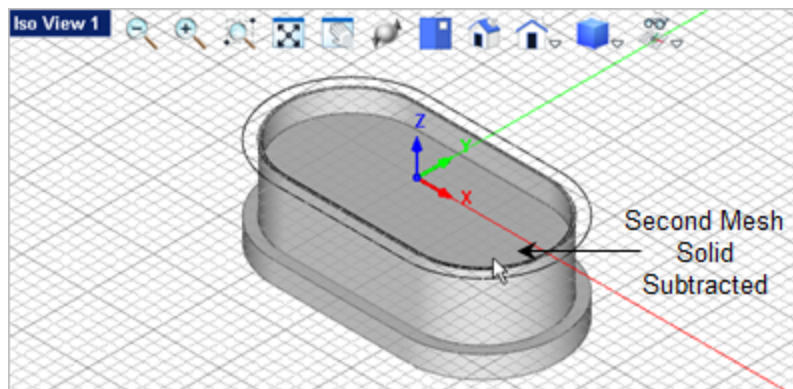
11. Now let's subtract the pocket from the body. From the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab



12. For the first mesh solid select the body. This is the solid that will be subtracted from. You can do this from any [Viewport](#). We will select it from [Iso View 1](#) **Iso View 1**.



13. Now for the second mesh solid, select the pocket solid and it will be subtracted from the body.



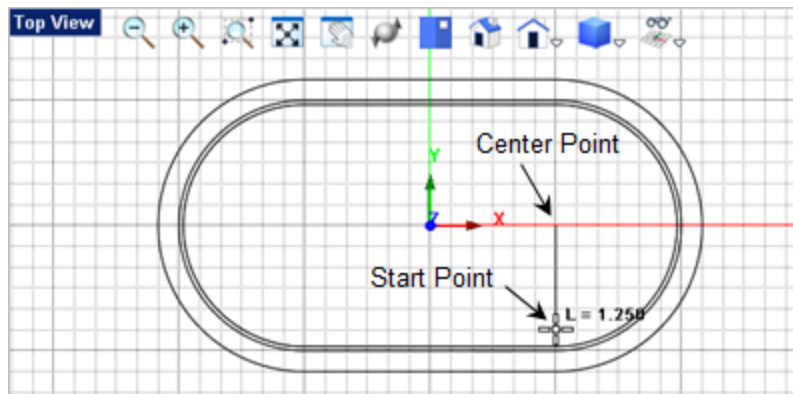
7.5.4 Extrude the Lower Pocket



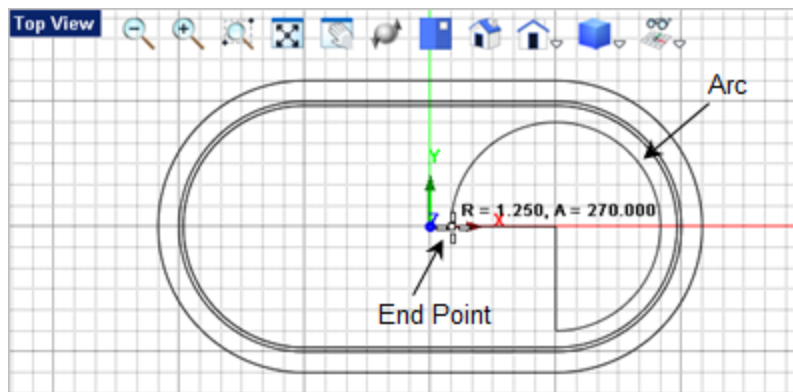
Extrude the Lower Pocket

In this step we will create the lower pocket mesh solid and subtract it from the body.

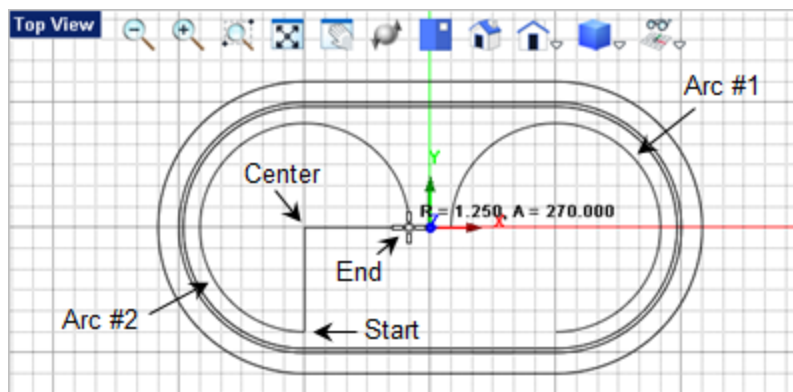
1. We will start in the **Top View** **Top View** so select anywhere in that view to activate it.
2. Now we will create two partial arcs, each 270 degrees. From the [Curve Modeling](#) tab **Curve Modeling**, select the [Arc Center, Start, Angle](#) command  again.
3. Select the center point first and then select the start point. Both are shown below.



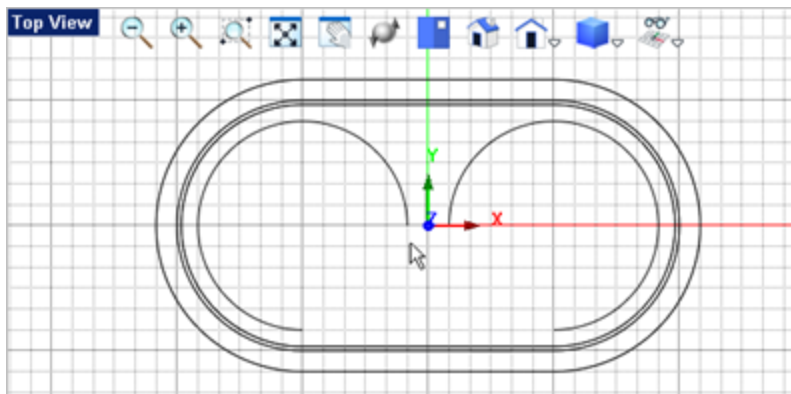
4. Now for the end point of the arc, drag the cursor counter clockwise until the arc preview is at 270 degrees as shown below.



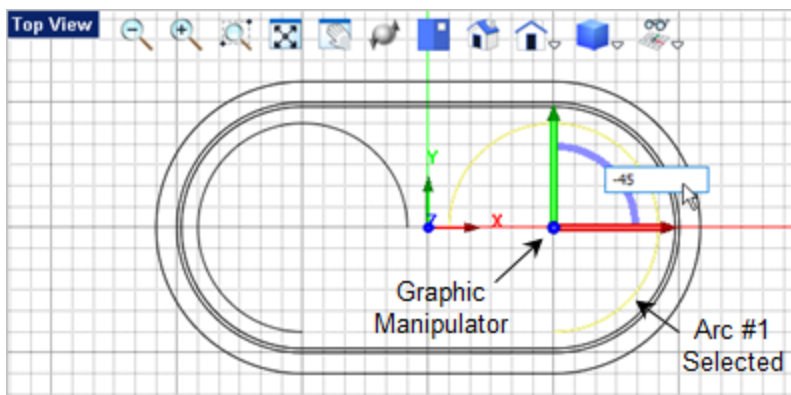
5. Now press the <Enter> key to repeat the command. This time select the center, start and end points shown below.



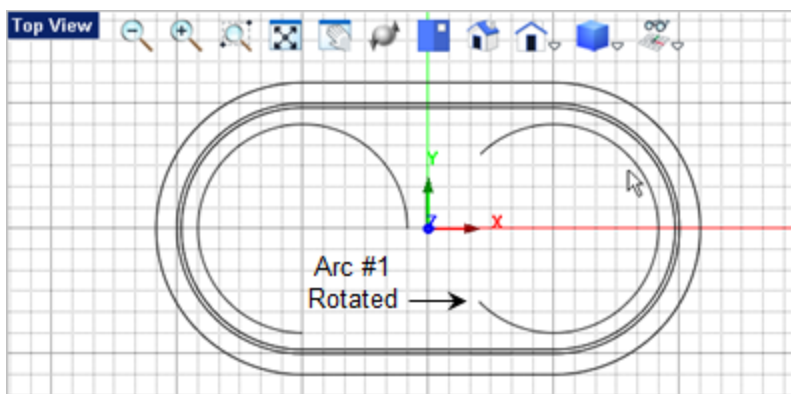
Your drawing should now look like this:



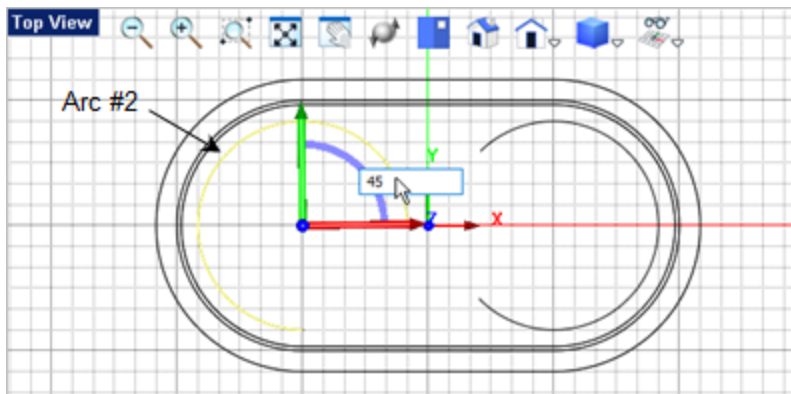
6. Now we will rotate each arc 45 degrees to position them properly. Toggle the [Graphic Manipulator](#) on , select the first arc.
7. This time we will use the [Graphic Manipulator's](#) rotate feature. Select the blue Z Axis arc, enter -45 Command and then press <Enter>.



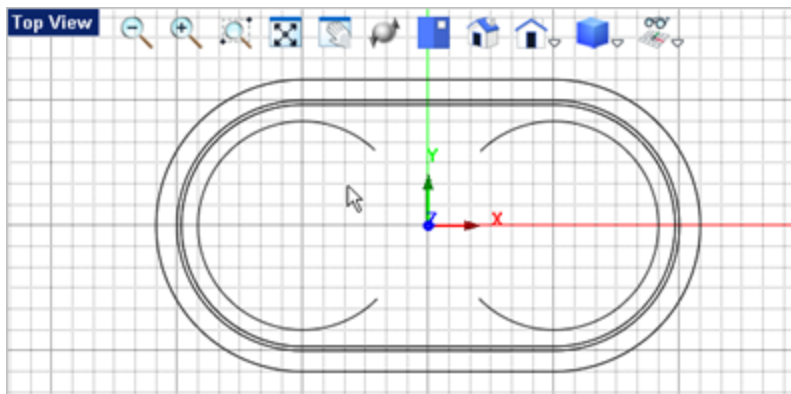
The arc is rotated negative 45 degrees about the Z axis as shown.



8. Now select the second arc, pick the Z axis arc, enter 45 and press <Enter>.



The second arc is rotate 45 degrees about the Z axis as shown.

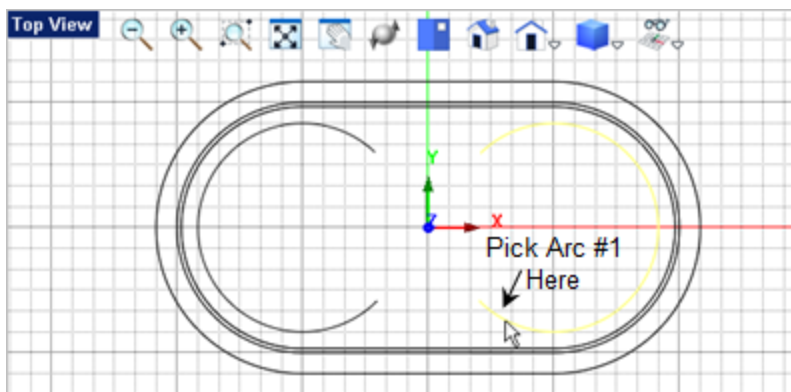


9. To complete the second pocket profile we will fillet the two arcs. From the [Curve](#)

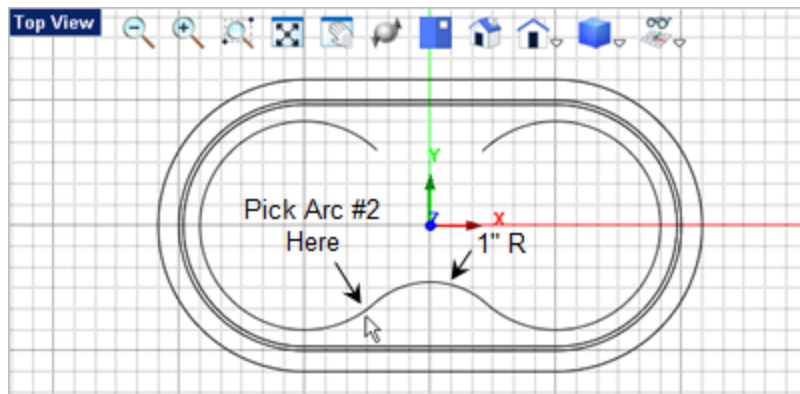
[Modeling](#) tab [Curve Modeling](#) select the [Fillet](#) command.



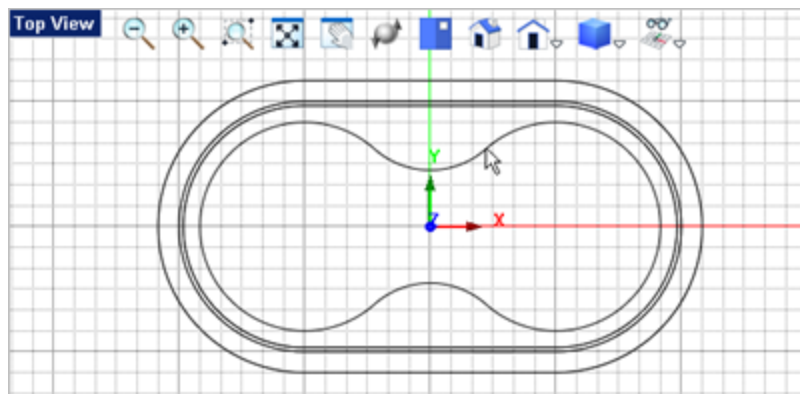
10. Enter 1.0 for the fillet radius and press <Enter>.
11. Now pick the first arc near the end shown.



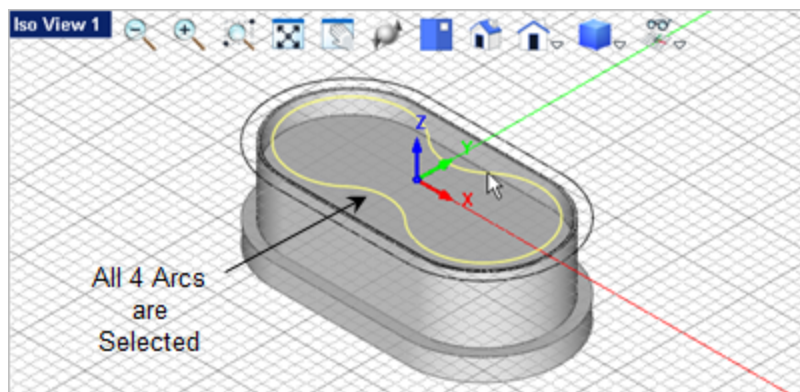
And then pick the second arc near the end shown to create the 1" fillet between the two arcs.

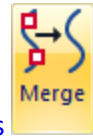


12. Press <Enter> to repeat the [Fillet](#) command.
13. Select the two arcs near their ends to create the second fillet as shown.



14. Now select the four arcs. You can press the <Ctrl> key to select multiple entities.





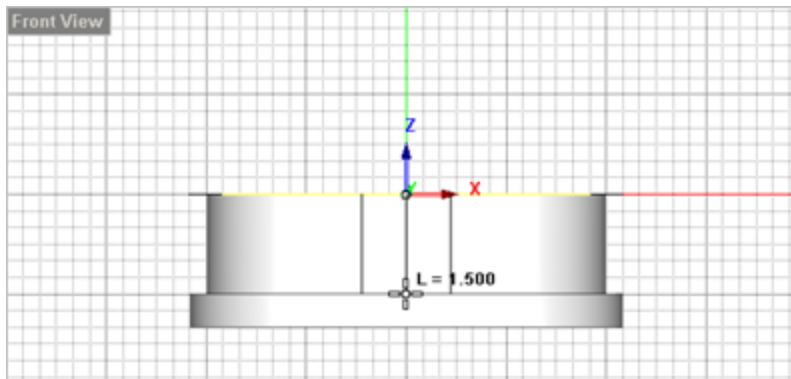
15. Now from the [Curve Modeling](#) tab [Curve Modeling](#) select the [Merge Curves](#) command and then right-click or press <Enter> to merge them into one curve.

16. With the curve still selected go the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab [Mesh Modeling](#) and select

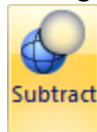


the [Extrude Mesh](#) command one again.

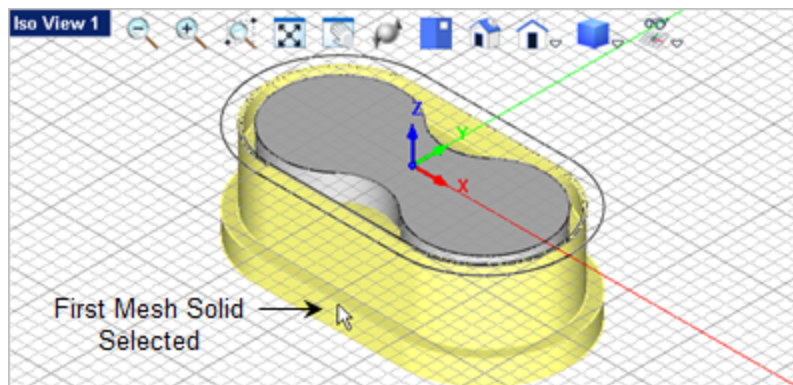
17. Drag the cursor down to the [Front View](#) [Front View](#) and select the grid point that is 1.50" below the selected curve to create the second pocket mesh solid.



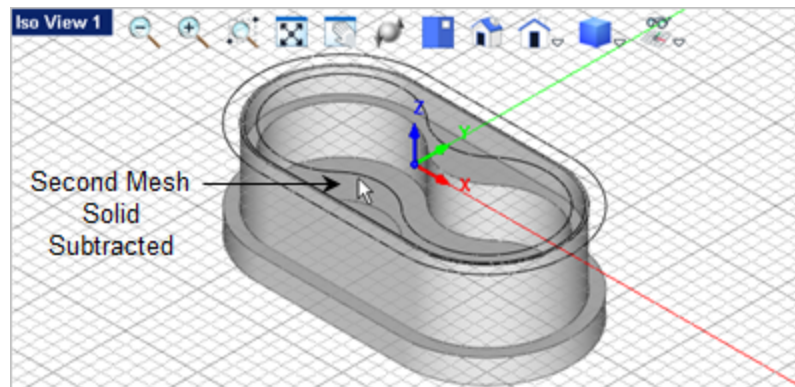
18. Now once again from the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab [Mesh Modeling](#) select the [Subtract](#)



[Mesh](#) command and for the first solid, pick the body.



19. Now for the second solid pick the second pocket mesh solid and it will be subtracted from the body as shown.

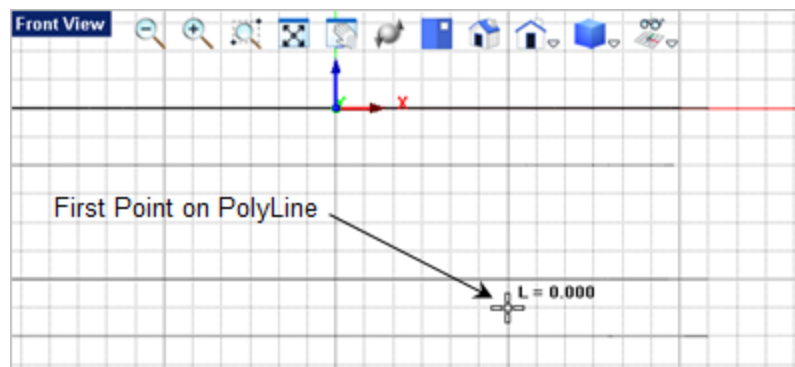


7.5.5 Revolve the Center Bosses

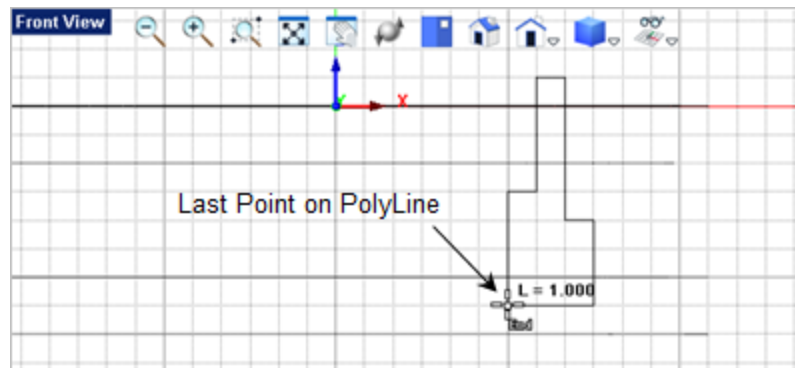
Revolve the Center Bosses

In this step we will create the two center bosses by revolving a profile to create a mesh solid, mirror it to create the second boss and then add both bosses to the body.

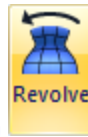
1. From the **Front View**, **Front View** select **Wireframe Display** from the **Display**  menu on the **View Toolbar**.
2. From the **Curve Modeling** tab, **Curve Modeling** select the **Polyline**  command.
3. Pick the grid point shown below for the first point on in the polyline.



4. Then pick the remaining 9 grid points to complete the closed polyline. The last grid point is the same as the first grid point. This forms a closed polyline.

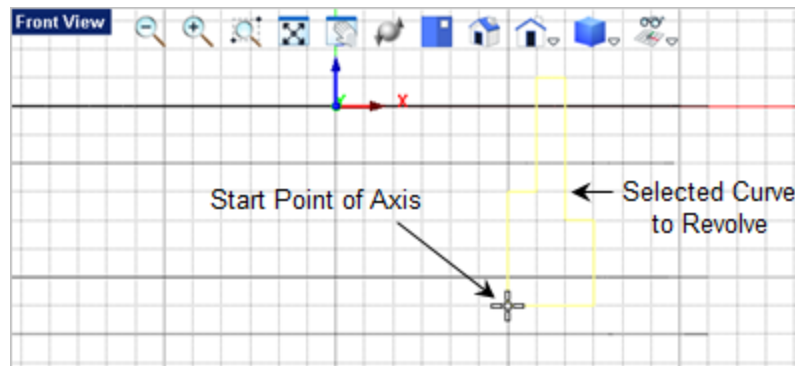


5. Now select the polyline, and then go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab **Mesh Modeling** and

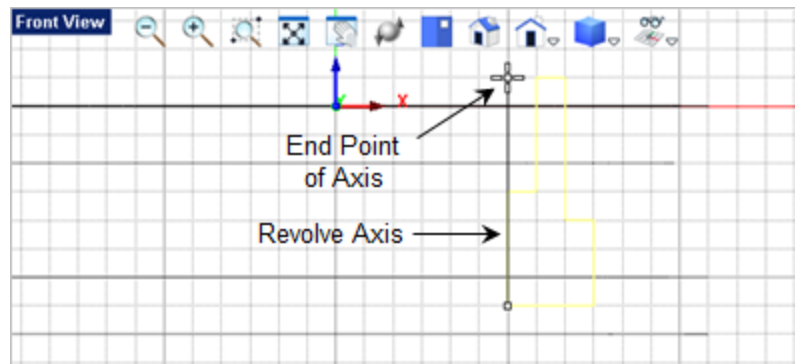


select the [Revolve Mesh](#) command. You can toggle off the [Graphic Manipulator](#) as we do not need it here.

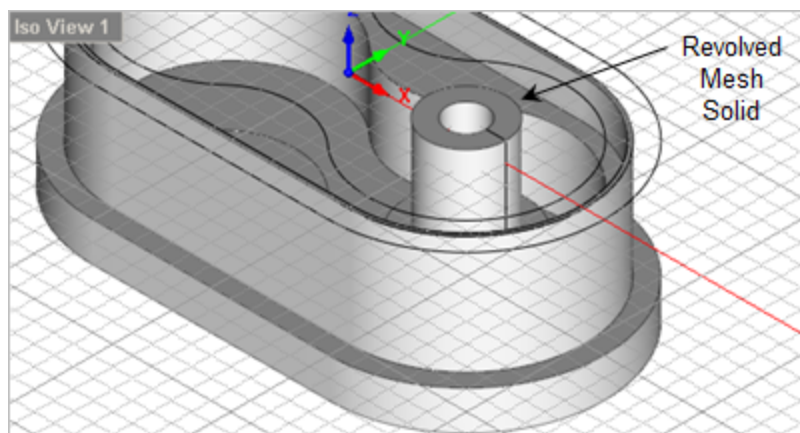
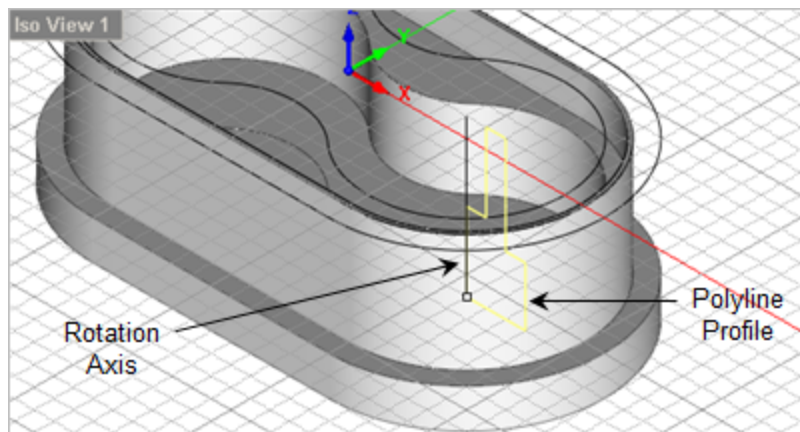
6. The command prompt `Command` says to pick the start point of the axis of rotation.



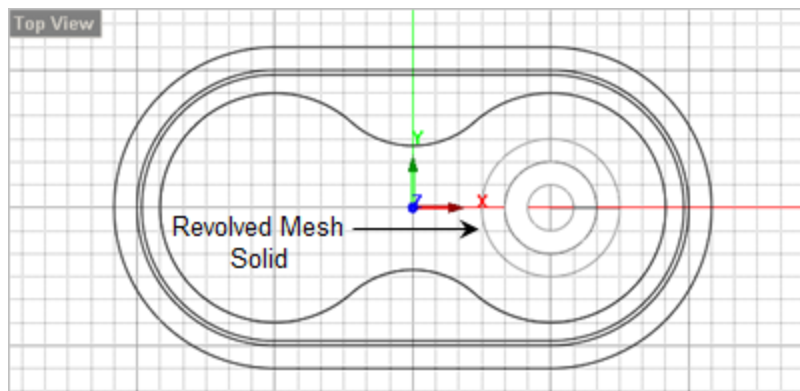
7. Now pick the second point on the axis of rotation as shown.



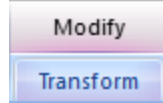
8. The revolved mesh solid is created and can be best viewed from [Iso View 1](#).
Iso View 1



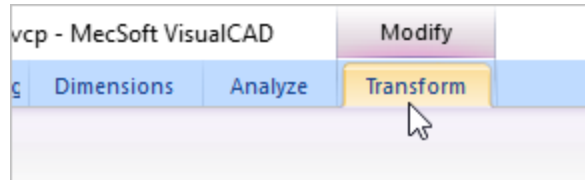
9. Now go to the [Front View](#) **Front View** and select the boss mesh solid we just created.

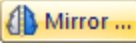


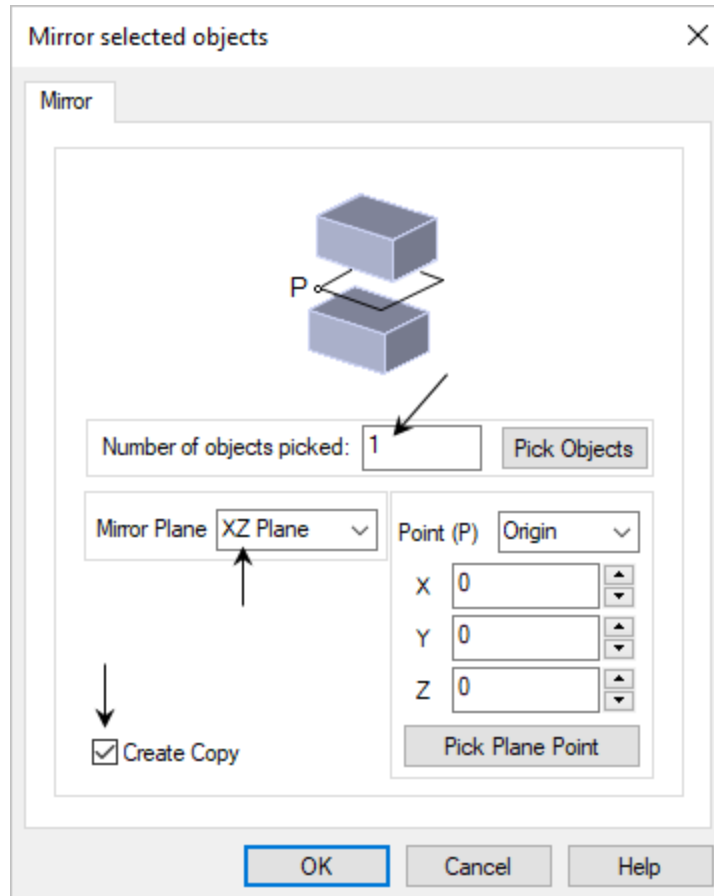
10. With the boss mesh solid selected you will see the [Modify / Transform](#) tab



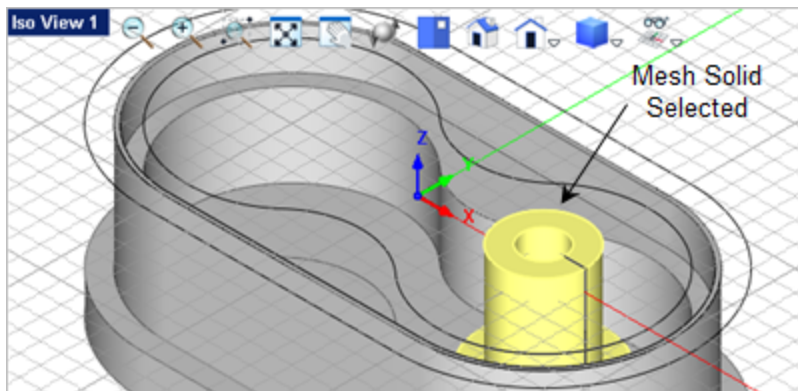
appear on the right end of the [Ribbon Bar](#). It ONLY appears when an entity is selected.



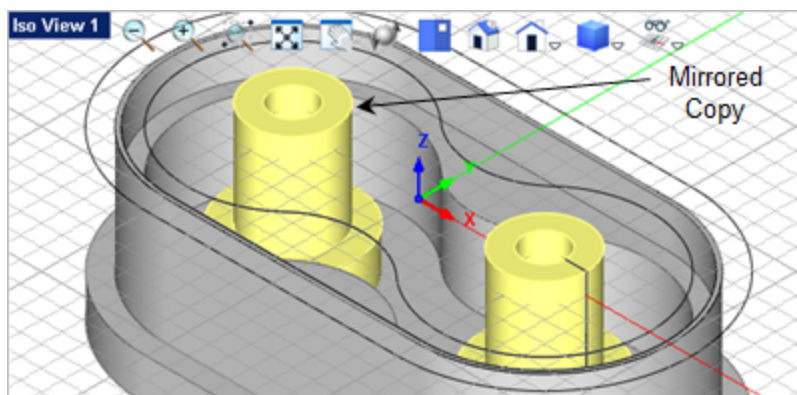
11. From the [Transform](#) tab, select the [Mirror](#)  command to display the [Mirror](#) selected objects dialog.
12. In this dialog, set the [Mirror Plane](#) to [YZ Plane](#), check the box next to [Create Copy](#), verify that the [Number of objects](#) picked value is [1](#) and then pick [OK](#).



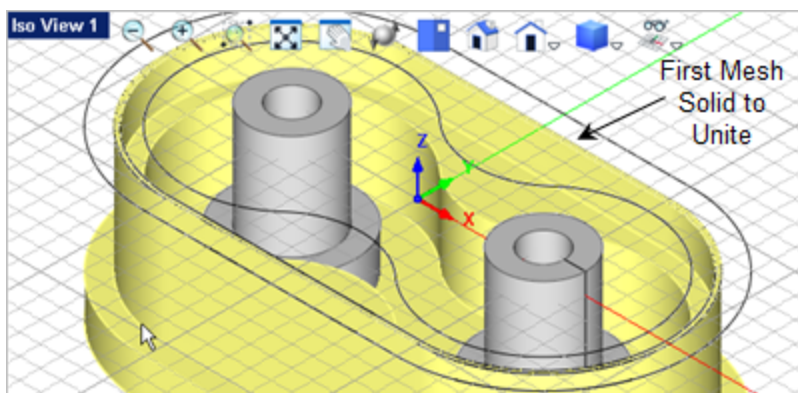
The mesh solid you selected:



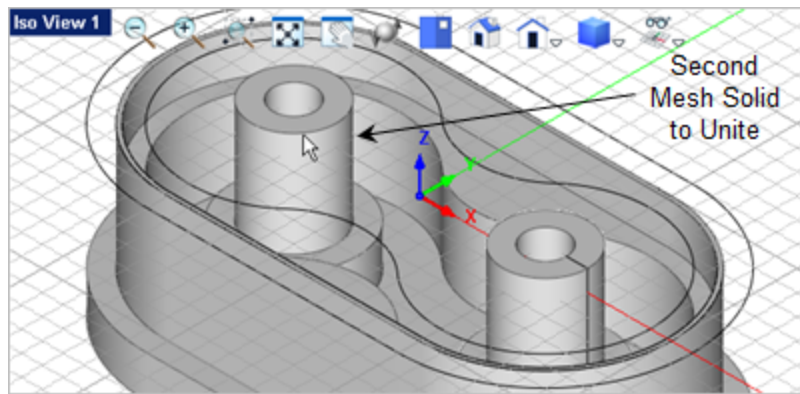
Has now been mirrored about the **YZ plane** creating a second copy as shown.



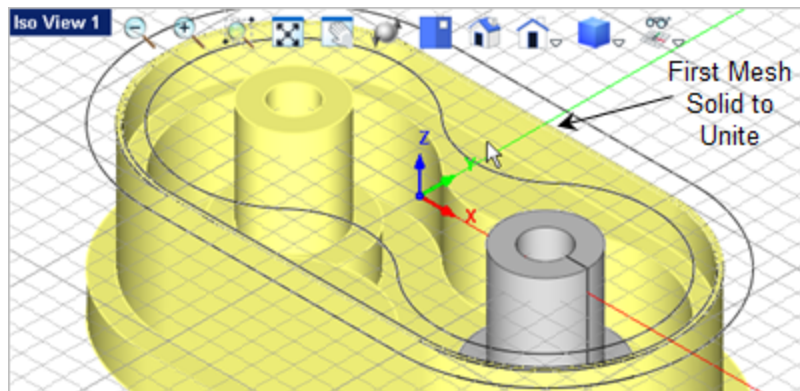
13. Now let's unite the two bosses with the body. From the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab,



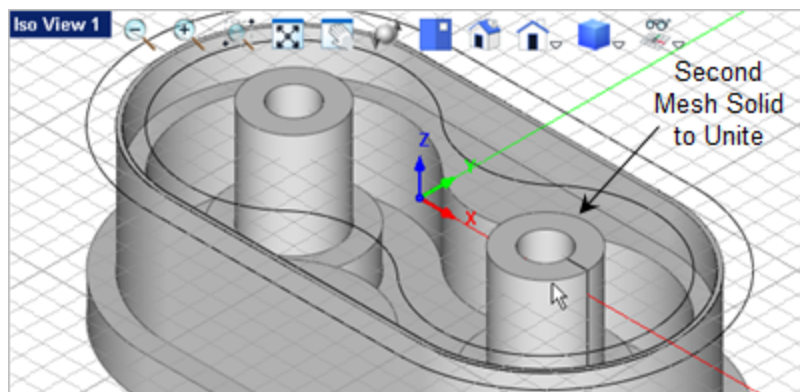
14. Now select the second solid to unite (i.e. the one of the two bosses we just created.)



15. Now press <Enter> to repeat the [Unite Mesh](#) command and select the body solid one again.



And then select the other boss solid to unite them.



7.5.6 Extrude the Connection Bar



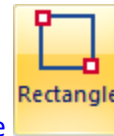
[Extrude the Connection Bar](#)

In this step we will create the square bar that connects the two bosses at the base of the second pocket.

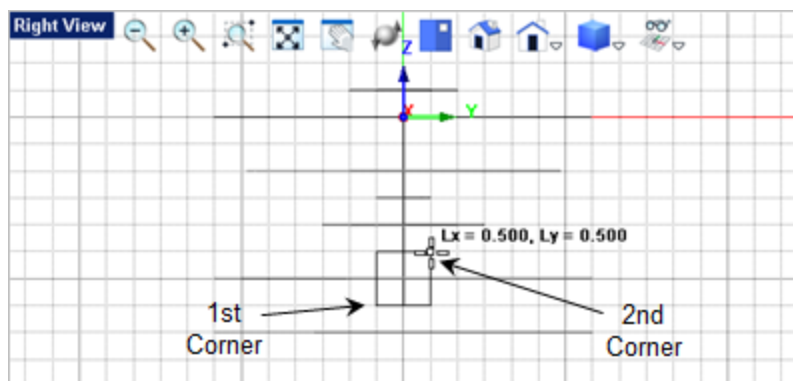
1. First activate the **Right View** and then from the **Display** menu on the **View Toolbar**, select **Wireframe Display**.



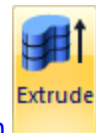
2. From the **Curve Modeling** tab, select the **Rectangle** command.



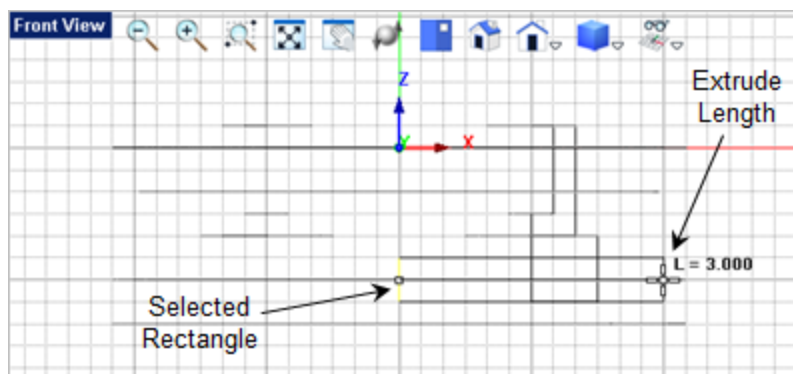
3. Select the grid points for the 1st and 2nd corners of the rectangle as shown.

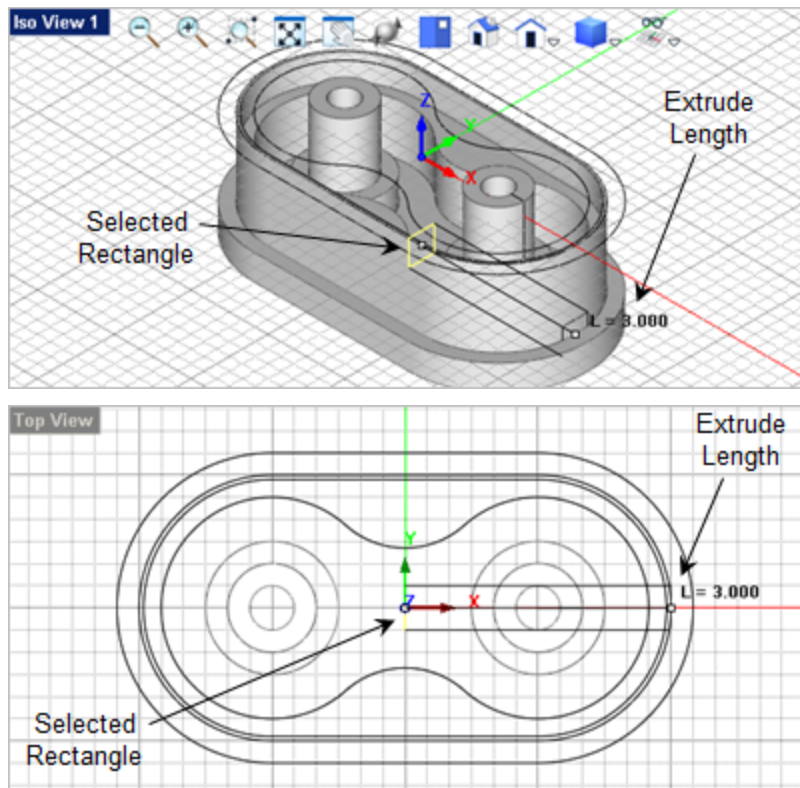


4. Now from the **Mesh Modeling** tab, select the **Extrude Mesh** command.

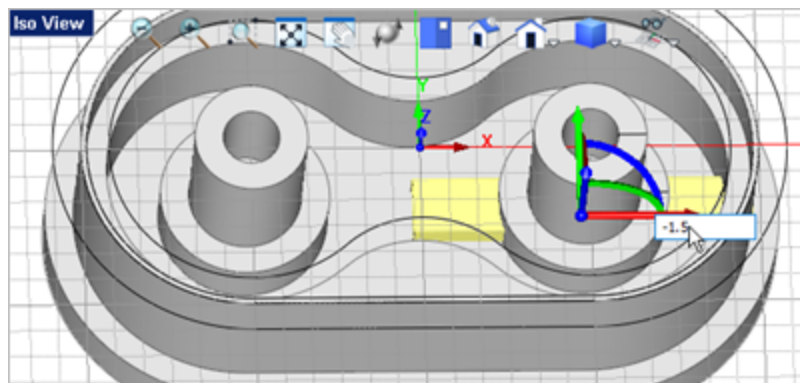


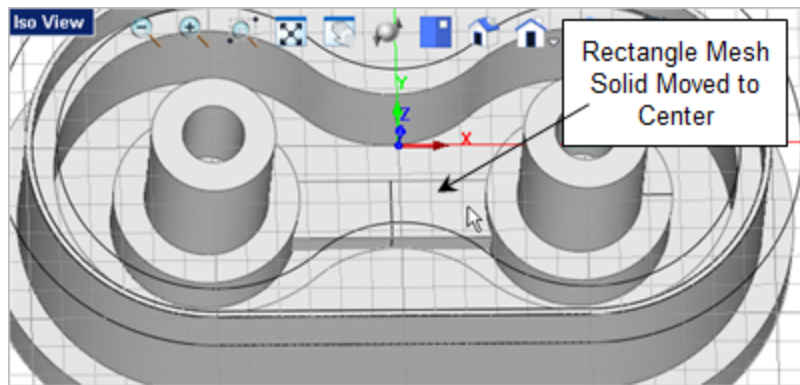
5. Pick the rectangle we just created and drag the cursor over to the **Front View** and pick the **Grid** point located 3.00" to the right as shown below.





6. Now we want to use the [Graphic Manipulator](#) again so go to the [Status Bar](#) and make sure it is toggled On .
7. Select **Iso View 1** **Iso View 1** and right-click the mouse and drag rotate the part until you get a good view of the Connection Bar and select it.
8. From the [Graphic Manipulator](#) pick the red X axis arrow, enter -1.5
 Command and then press <Enter> to see the Connector Bar move to the left to line up on center between the two bosses as shown.

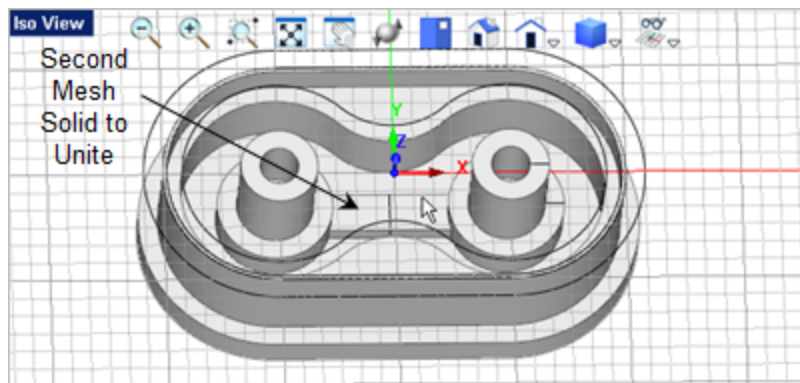
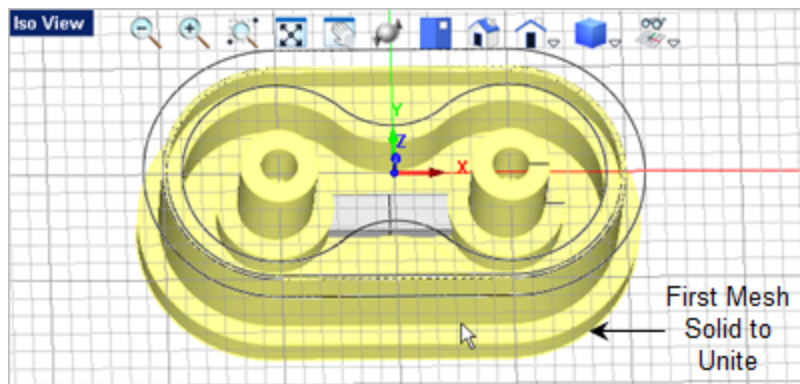




9. Now again we will unite the Connector Bar with the Body. From the [Mesh Modeling](#)



tab, [Mesh Modeling](#) select the [Unite Mesh](#) command and select the body for the first mesh solid and the then select the Connector Bar to unite them.



7.5.7 Extrude the Connection Wall



Extrude the Connection Wall

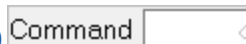
In this step we will create the wall that pass between the two center bosses.

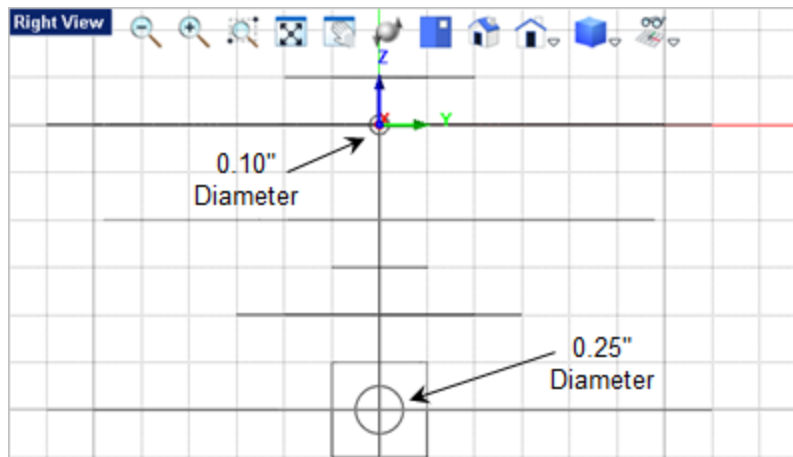
1. Again, activate the [Right View](#) **Right View** and then from the [Display](#)  menu on the [View Toolbar](#), select [Wireframe Display](#).

2. From the [Curve Modeling](#) tab, [Curve Modeling](#) select the [Circle on Point](#)  command.

3. For the center point select the grid point shown below.

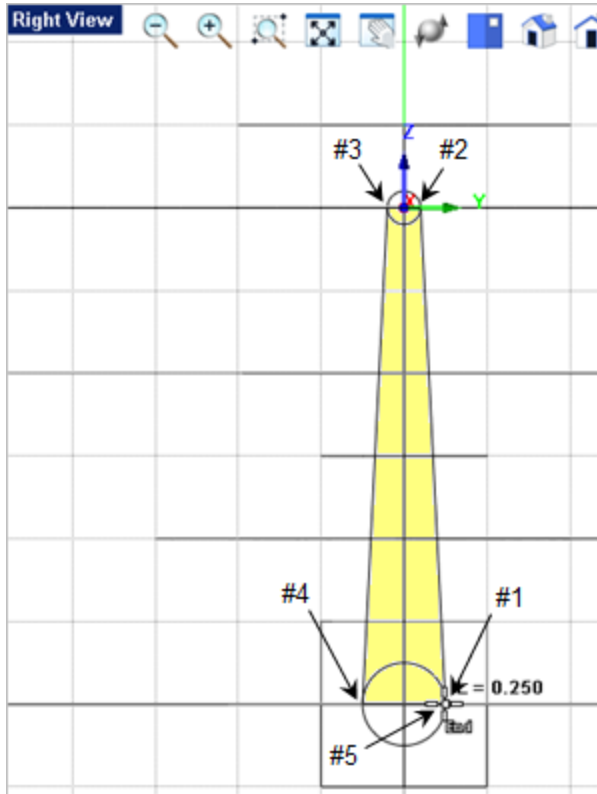
4. Enter [0.25](#)  for the diameter and press [<Enter>](#).

5. Press [<Enter>](#) again to repeat the command. For the second circle select the grid point shown below and then enter [0.10](#)  for the diameter and press [<Enter>](#). We will use these two circles to locate the corners of a polyline that defines the cross-section of the connection wall.

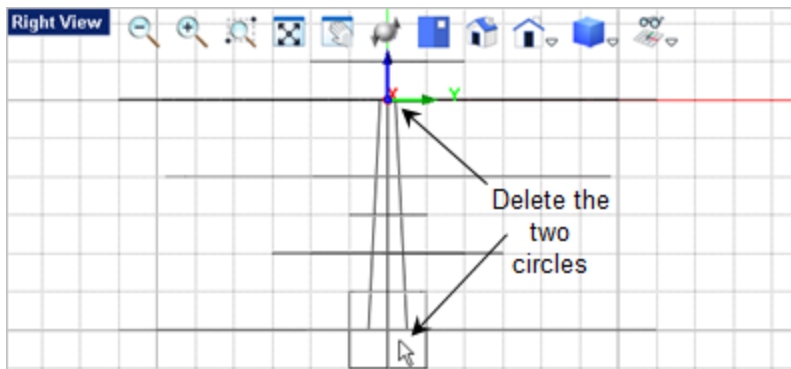


6. Now from the [Curve Modeling](#) tab, [Curve Modeling](#) select the [Polyline](#)  command.
7. From the [Status Bar](#) toggle on the [Quad Point Snap](#)  and toggle off all of the other object snaps.
8. We will be drawing a 4-sided closed polyline that encompasses the yellow area shown in the image below. For the start point of the polyline select the quad point on the right side of the lower [0.25"](#) diameter circle at the [#1](#) location shown.
9. Then continue, by selecting the [Quad](#) point located at the right side of the upper [0.10"](#) diameter circle.
10. For the next point in the polyline select the [Quad](#) point on the left side of the upper [0.10"](#) diameter circle at the [#3](#) location.
11. Then continue by selecting the [Quad](#) point at the [#4](#) location.

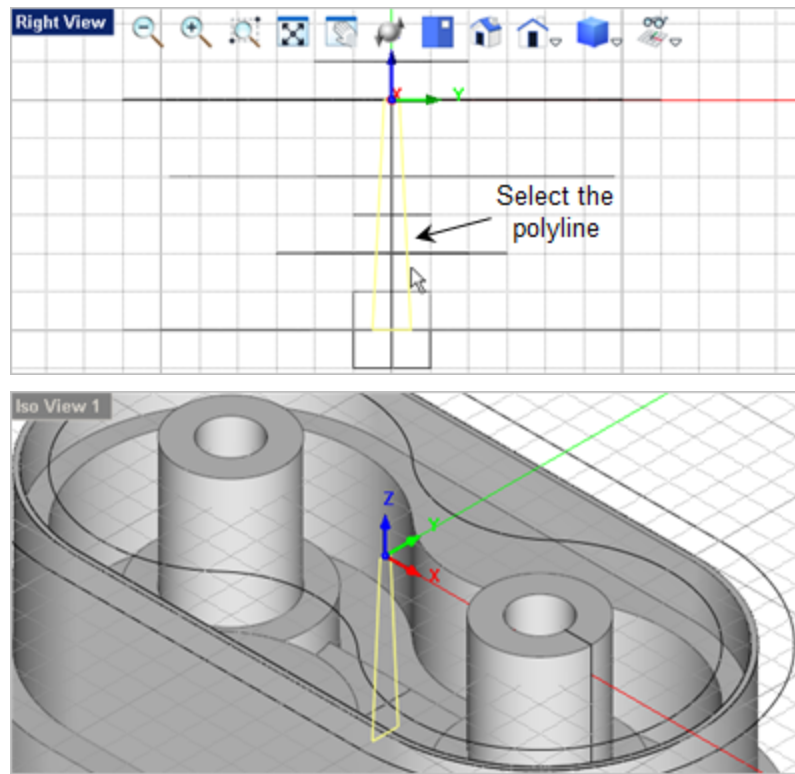
12. To complete the polyline select the [Quad](#) point at the #1 location where the polyline started. The [Polyline](#)  command will end automatically when the end point coincides with the start point.



13. Now you can delete the two circles. Just select them and press the [](#) key.



14. Now we will extrude the 4-sided polyline to create the Connecting Wall. First select the polyline we just created.



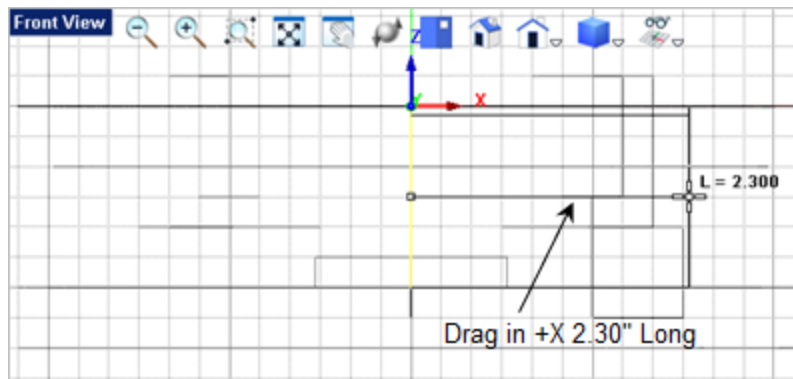
15. Now go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab **Mesh Modeling** and select the [Extrude Mesh](#)



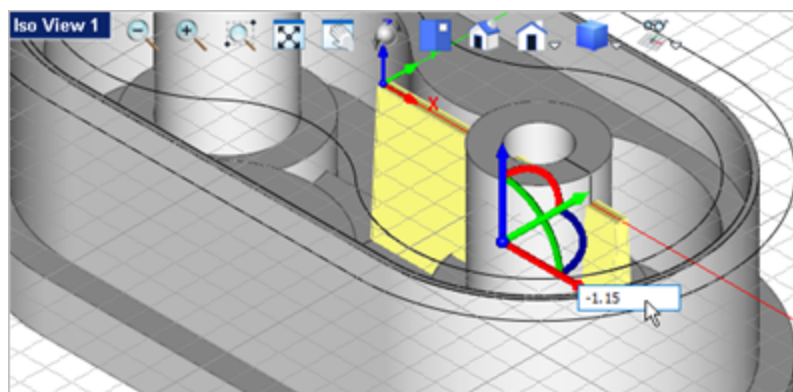
command again.

16. Drag the cursor to the [Front View](#) **Front View** and drag the length of the extrusion to the right of the center line where the selected polyline resides. Refer to the image below.
17. The point we want is not on a grid point, so with the extrusion previewed (do not select a point), go to the command prompt **Command** and type in the distance [2.300](#) and press [<Enter>](#).

The Connection Wall is created.



18. Now from **Iso View 1** select the Connection Wall to display the [Graphic Manipulator](#). If you do not see it, make sure it is toggled on from the [Status Bar](#)



19. Pick the red **X Axis** arrow and type in **-1.15** Command and press **<Enter>**. The Connection Wall should move into place at the center spanning between the two bosses as shown in the image below.
20. Now lets unite the Connection Wall with the body. Go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab

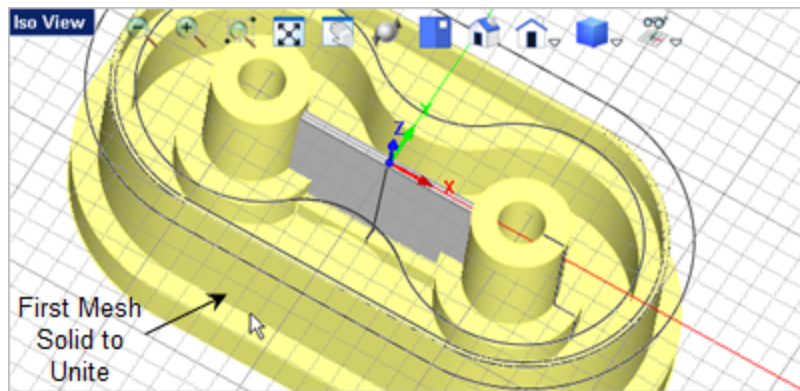
Mesh Modeling

and select the [Unite Mesh](#)

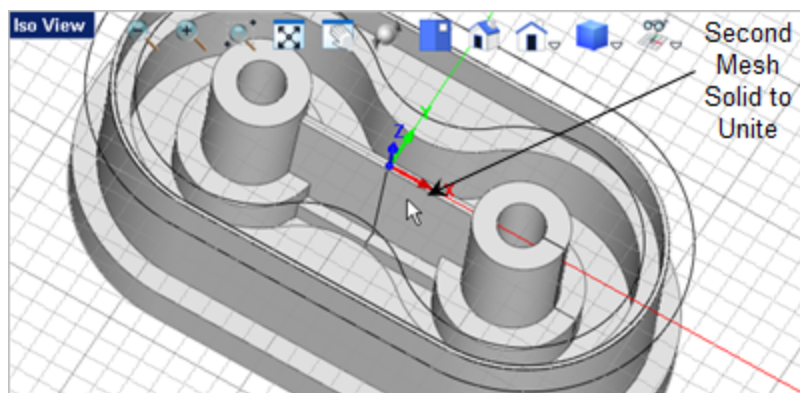


command.

21. For the first mesh solid, select the body.



Then select the Connection Wall to unite it with the body.



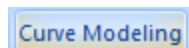
7.5.8 Extrude Ejector Pin Holes



Extrude the Ejector Pin Holes

In mold design, ejector pins are used to eject the molded part from the cavity side of the mold. As the mold press opens, the ejector pins slide and protrude through the cavity forcing the plastic part out of the mold where it falls into a catch bin. The ejector pin holes pass complete through the insert.

1. Activate the [Top View](#) **Top View** and then go to the [Curve Modeling](#) tab

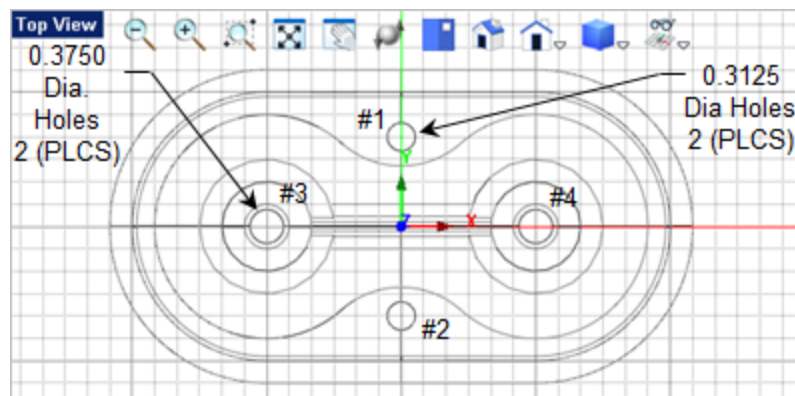


and select the [Circle on Point](#)



command.

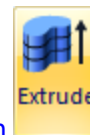
2. We will draw a total of 4 holes. Two will be 0.3125" in diameter (located at #1 and #2) and two will be 0.3750" diameter (located at #3 and #4).



3. Select the grid point at the #1 location and then enter 0.3125 in the command prompt and then press <Enter>.
4. Press <Enter> to repeat the command.
5. Select the grid point at the #2 location and press <Enter> again to accept the new default diameter.
6. Now press <Enter> to repeat the command, select the grid point at the #4 location and then enter 0.375 in the command prompt and then <Enter>.
7. Now press <Enter> again, select the grid point at the #4 location and press <Enter> to accept the new default diameter. The 4 circles are drawn.
8. Now with the <Ctrl> key pressed, select the 4 holes, go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab

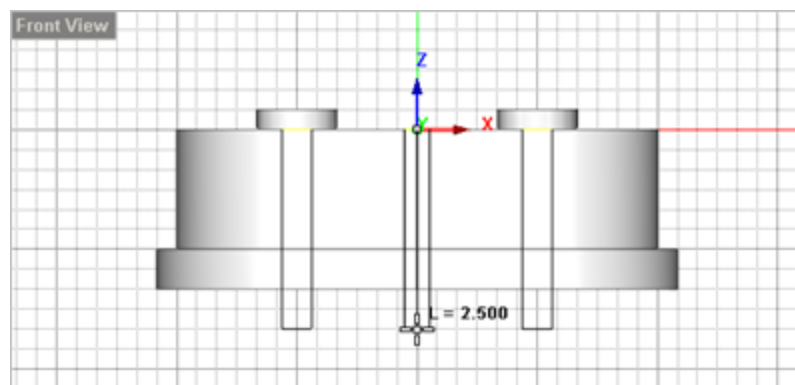
Mesh Modeling

and select the [Extrude Mesh](#)

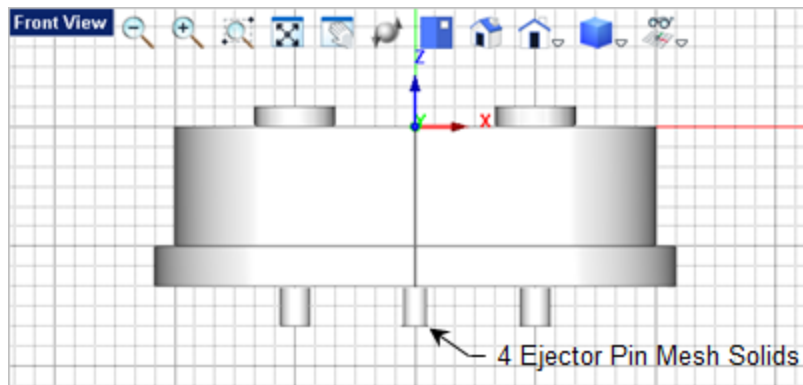


command.

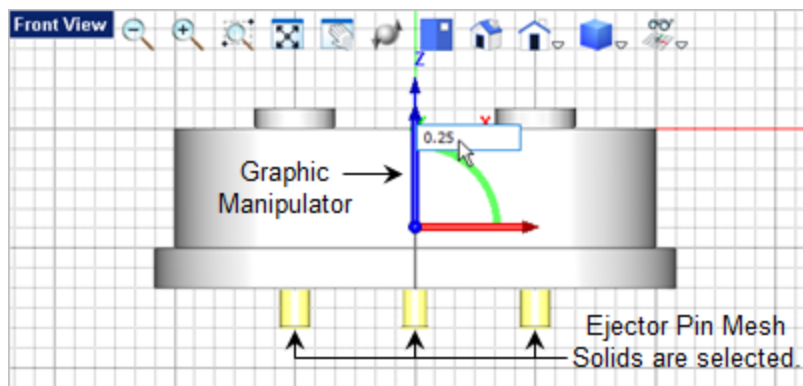
9. Now move the cursor down to the **Front View** [Front View](#) and drag the extrude length down past the bottom of the body and pick the grid point located at 2.500" below the part.



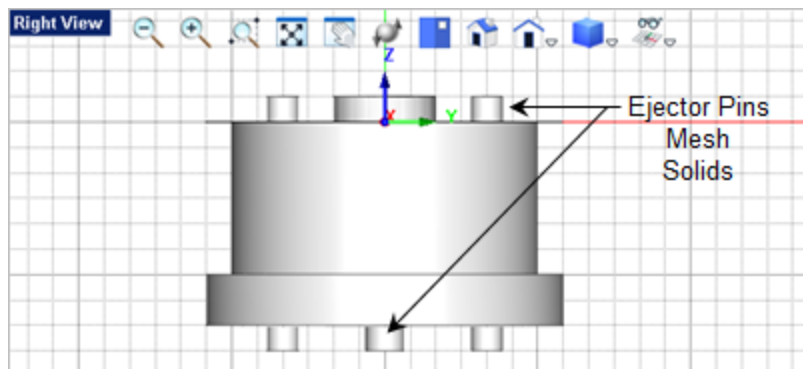
The 4 mesh solids are created:



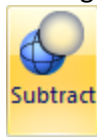
10. Now let's move the 4 ejector pin holes upward to pass through the body completely.
Window select right to left so that the cross-hatched window passes through all 4 ejector pin mesh solids.
11. If the [Graphic Manipulator](#) does not display, pick the icon on the [Status Bar](#) to toggle it on .
12. Select the [Blue Z arrow](#) and in the input window enter [0.25](#) and press the [<Enter>](#) key twice. The first accepts the value and the second to move the mesh solids.



Activate the [Right View](#) **Right View** and we see the ejector pin mesh solids.

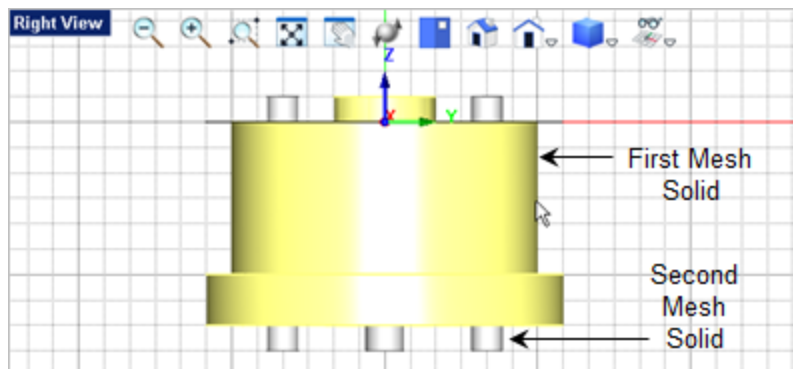


13. Now to subtract the ejector pin mesh solids from the body to create the ejector pin holes go to the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab [Mesh Modeling](#) and select the [Subtract Mesh](#)

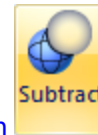


command.

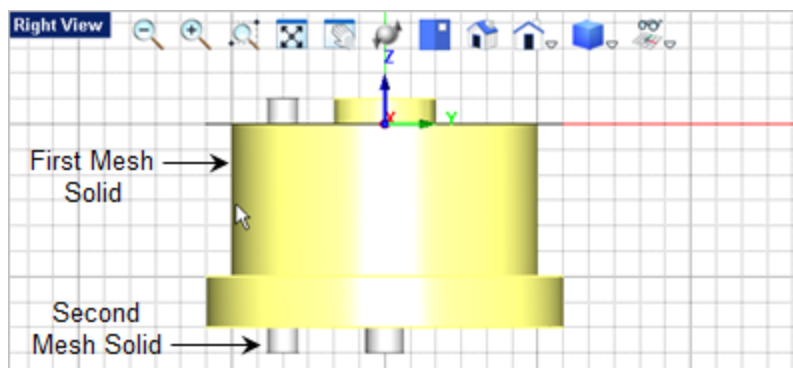
14. Select the body as the first mesh solid.



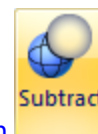
15. Then select the 0.3125" ejector pin mesh solid on the right to subtract it from the body.



16. Press the <Enter> key to repeat the [Subtract Mesh](#) command and select the body again as the first mesh solid.

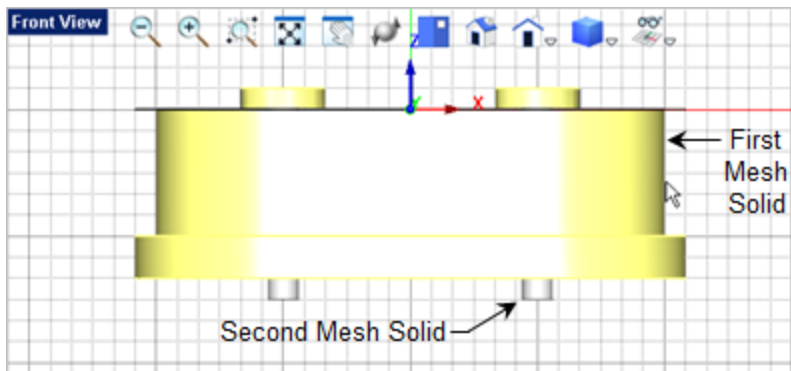


17. Then select the 0.3125" ejector pin mesh solid on the left to subtract it from the body.



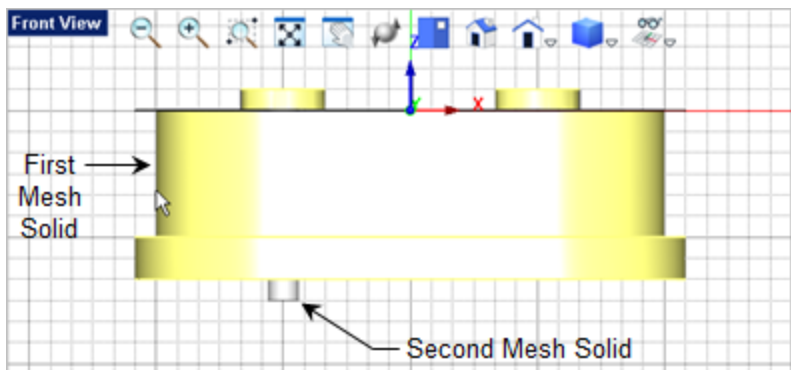
18. Press the <Enter> key to repeat the [Subtract Mesh](#) command and this time to subtract the 0.3750" ejector pins move to the [Front View](#) [Front View](#).

19. Select the body again as the first mesh solid.



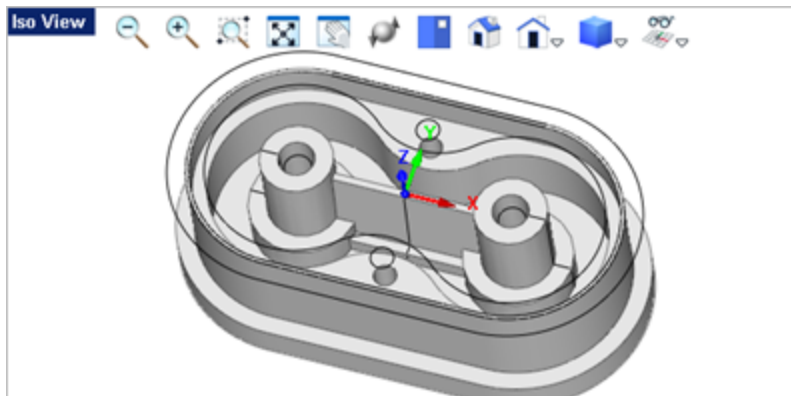
20. This time select the 0.3750" ejector pin mesh solid on the right to subtract it from the body.

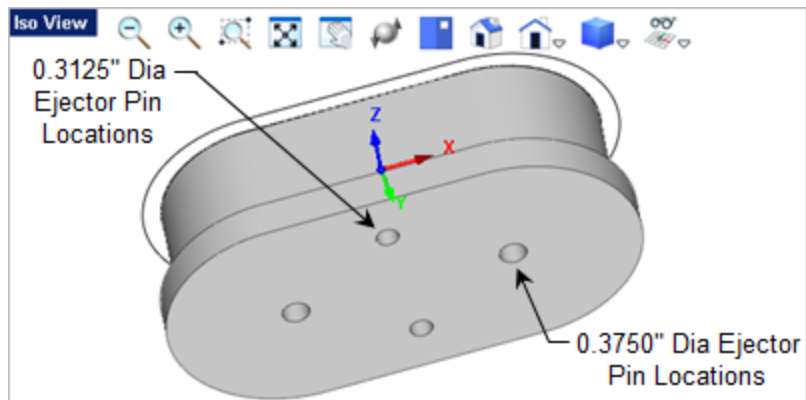
21. Press the <Enter> key again to repeat the command and then select the body mesh solid.



22. Now select the remaining 0.3750" ejector pin mesh solid to subtract it from the body.

You will now see that the 4 ejector pin hole locations pass completely through the mold insert as shown in the images below:



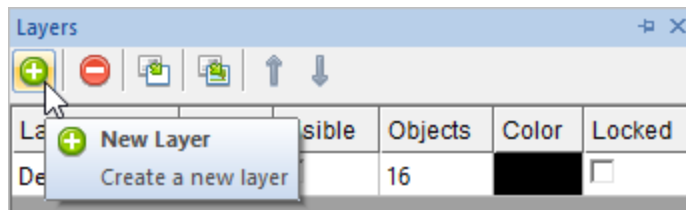


7.5.9 Change Geometry Layer

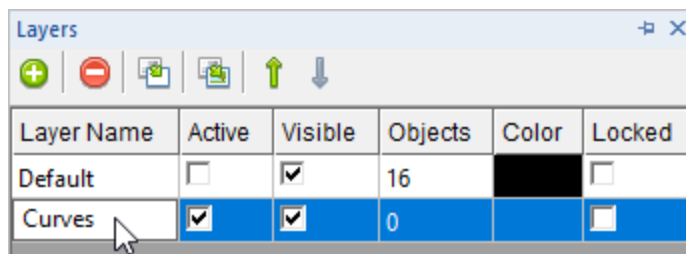
Change Geometry Layer

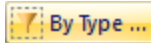
We have a lot of curves displaying on the part. Let's clean them up.

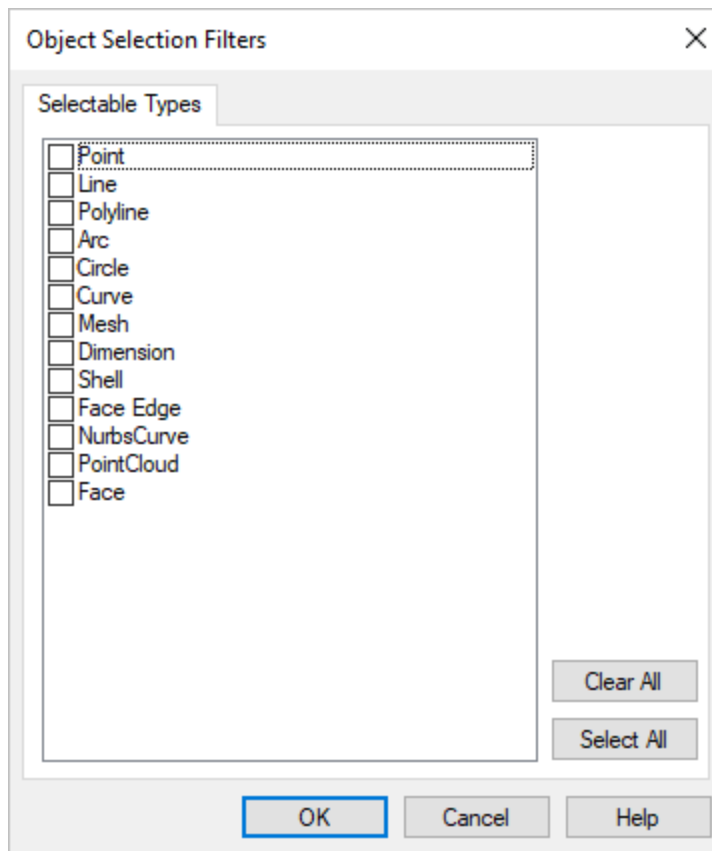
1. Display the [Layer Manager](#). You can pick the [Layer Manager](#) icon  located on the [Status Bar](#) or select the [Layers](#) fly-out tab located on the left side of the drawing window. If you recall we unpinned the [Layer Manager](#) allowing it to collapse to the side of the screen.
2. From the [Layer Manager](#) select the [Add Layer](#) icon  to add a new layer.



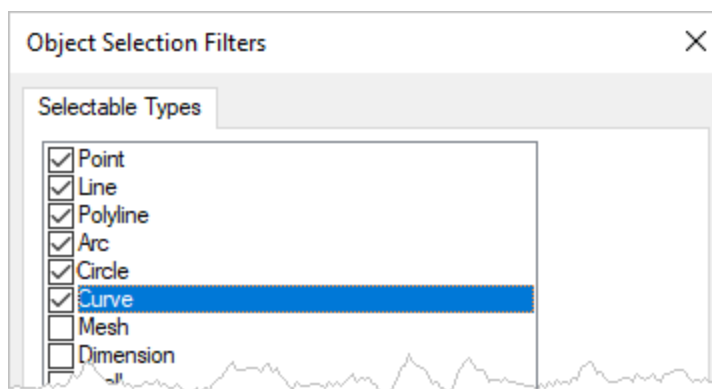
3. Now let's rename the new layer to [Curves](#). First double-left-click in the Name field to activate it, and enter [Curves](#) as the new layer name.
4. Next let's make the [Default](#) layer the [Active Layer](#) by checking the box in the [Active](#) column for the layer [Default](#). The Default layer is now the active layer. Let's also uncheck the box in the visible column for the [Curves](#) layer. Now any geometry placed on the [Curves](#) layer will be hidden from view. Your [Layer Manager](#) should look like the one shown below.



5. Now VisualCAD has a quick way of selecting entities by type. Go to the [Modeling Aids](#) **Modeling Aids** tab and select the [By Type](#)  icon. This command displays the [Object Selection Filters](#) dialog that allows you to check mark the entities that you want to select. That dialog is shown below:

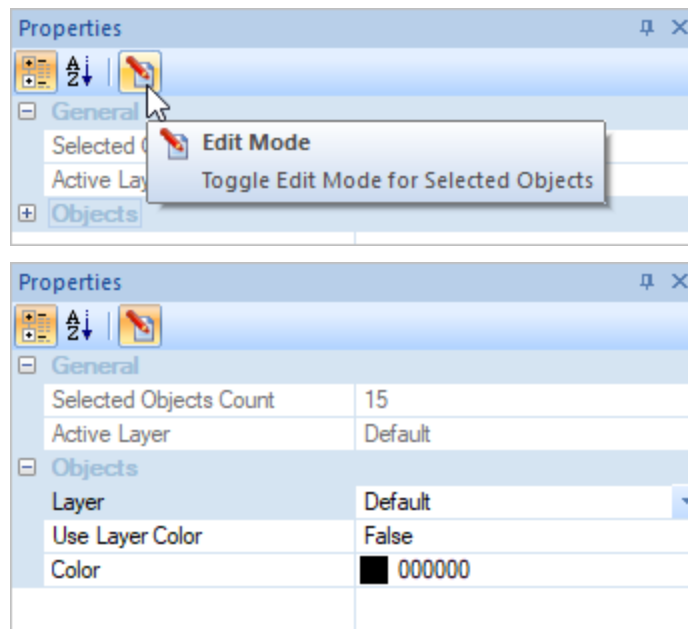


6. Place a check mark in the box for each of the following entity types: [Point](#), [Line](#), [Polyline](#), [Arc](#), [Circle](#), and [Curve](#).

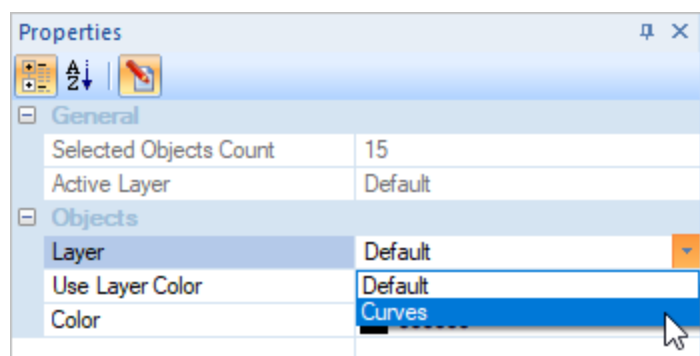


7. Now pick the [OK](#) button. You will see that all of the reference curves we created in this exercise are highlighted for selection.

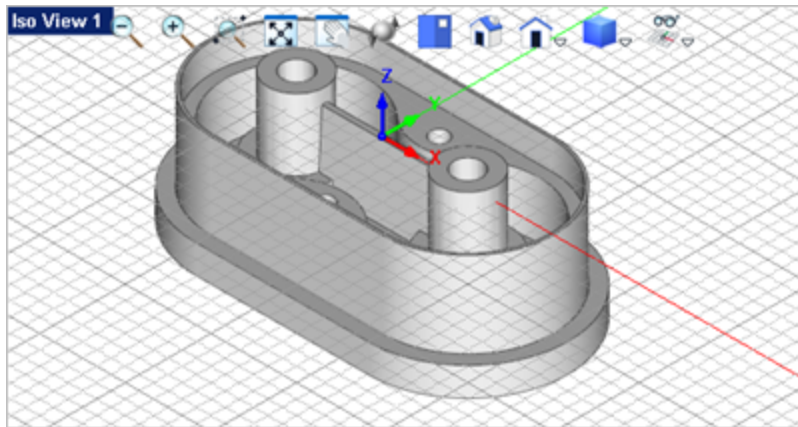
8. With the entitles selected, select the [Properties](#)  icon from the [Status Bar](#). Its located just to the left of the [Layer Manager](#)  icon.
9. The [Properties Manager](#) will display on the left side of the screen similar to the [Layer Manager](#).
10. At the top of the [Properties Manager](#) select the [Edit](#)  icon. This will display additional fields that you can edit.



11. We want to change the layer of the curves so drop down the layer menu by selecting the menu indicator  on the right side in the [Layer](#) row and select the new layer named [Curves](#) that we recently created and hidden.



12. Now when you click anywhere in the drawing window you will see that all of the curves have been moved to the [Curves](#) layer and are not hidden from view.



7.5.10 Create Section Curves



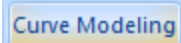
Create Section Curves

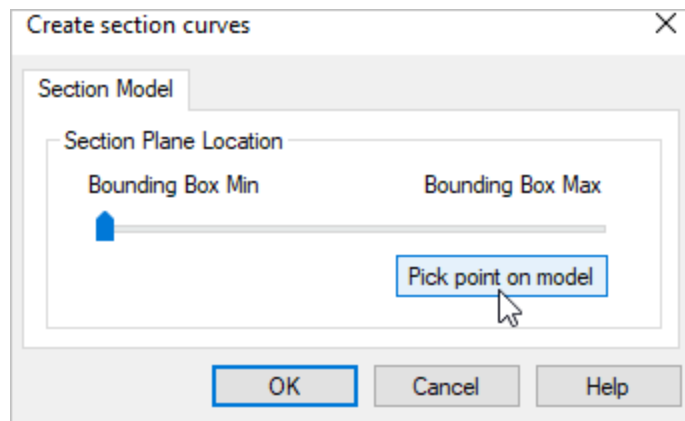
Congratulations, our part is now nearly complete! However, we do want to create cross-section curves that will aid you when it comes time to create a detail drawing of the part.

Section curves are drawn parallel to the active **Viewport**. So the first step is to select the view that you want the section to be parallel to. We want to create three sections, one through the center parallel to the **Front View** and another two through each boss parallel to the **Right View**.

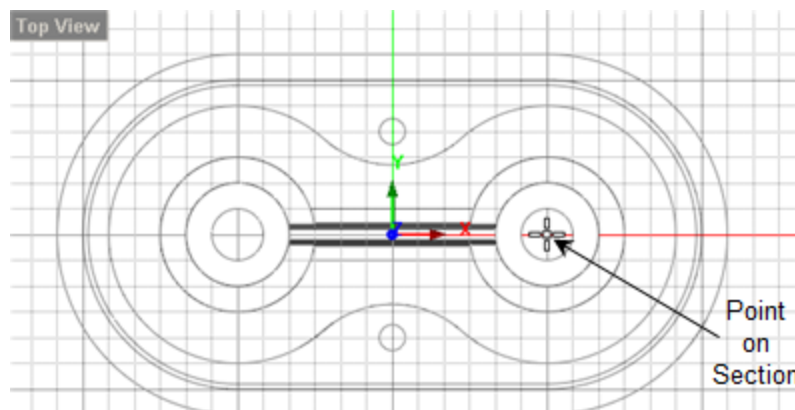
1. First let's again create a new layer and make it the active layer so that the section curves will be assigned to that layer automatically when they are created.
2. Display the **Layer Manager**  one again.
3. Create a new layer and name it **Sections** and also make it the active layer. The **Layer Manager** should look like this:

Layers					
Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☒	1		☐
Curves	☐	☐	10		☐
Sections	☒	☒	12		☐

4. Now go to the **Curve Modeling** tab  and select the **Section Curve**  command. The Create section curves dialog will display.

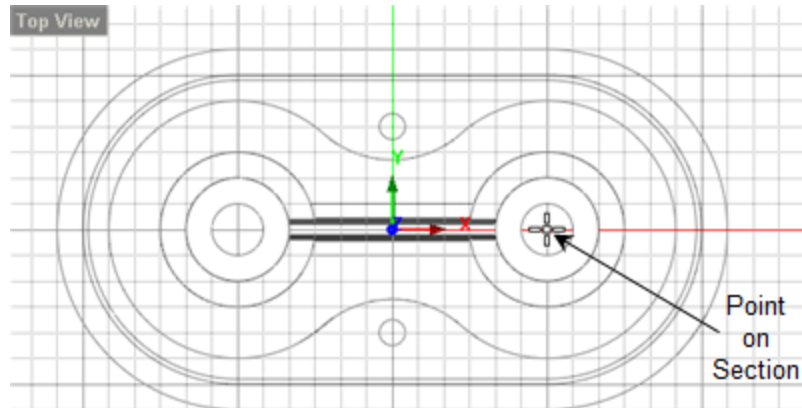


5. First select anywhere in the **Front View** to activate it.
6. Now if you move the slider in the dialog you will see the section curves move along the part.
7. We want the location of the section to be precise so let's pick the button that says "Pick point on model".
8. Now from the **Top View** pick the grid point location at the center of one of the two bosses as shown below. Notice that the Top View IS NOT ACTIVE. We want the **Front View** to stay active while the section point is picked.

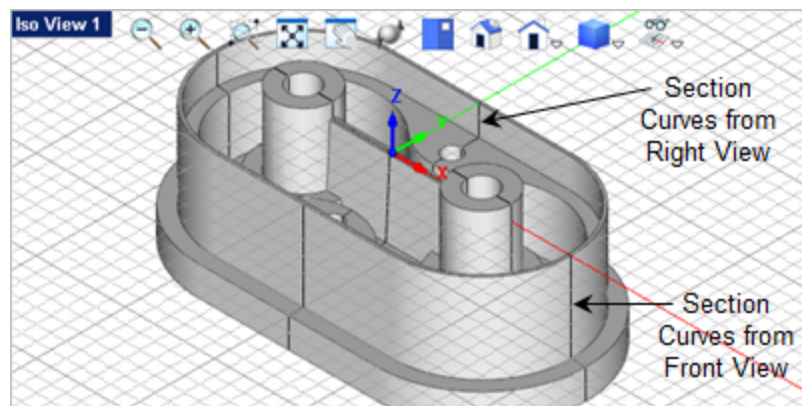


9. When you pick the point at the center of the boss, you will see the section curves display on the part. They pass through the center parallel to the Front View just like we want.
10. Now press the <Enter> key to repeat the section command and then activate the **Right View**.
11. From the **Create** section curves dialog select the button again that says "Pick point on model".

12. Now from the **Top View** **Top View** pick the grid point location at the center of the boss on the right side. Notice that the **Top View IS NOT ACTIVE**. We want the **Right View** **Right View** to stay active while the section point is picked.



13. When you pick the point at the center of the boss, you will see the section curves display on the part. They pass through the center of the boss parallel to the **Right View** just like we want.

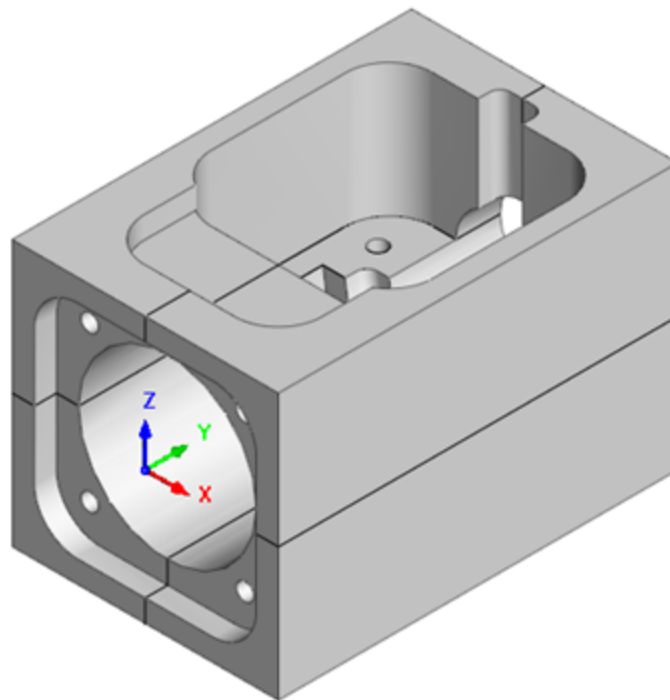


Congratulations!! You modeled your Very first mold insert using VisualCAD!

14. Save the file as **Insert_Completed.vcp**.

7.6 #6: Model a Connector Block

In this exercise you will model the Connector Block shown below. It too builds upon the tasks you have learned in the previous exercises. You will draw curve profiles and then turn them into part features. The **Graphic Manipulator** is again used extensively in this exercise as well as modeling from multiple viewports. Again, just go slowly and save your work often and **Undo** if needed.



Model a Connector Block

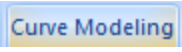
**What you will learn:**

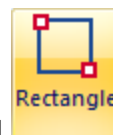
In this exercise you will perform the following **VisualCAD** tasks:

1. [Model the Main Body.](#)
2. [Model the Front Access.](#)
3. [Model the Top Access.](#)
4. [Model the Mounting Holes.](#)
5. [Modify the Top Access.](#)
6. [Create Section Curves.](#)

7.6.1 Model the Body

**Model the Main Body**

1. Select the **Curve Modeling** tab  from the top **Ribbon Bar**.

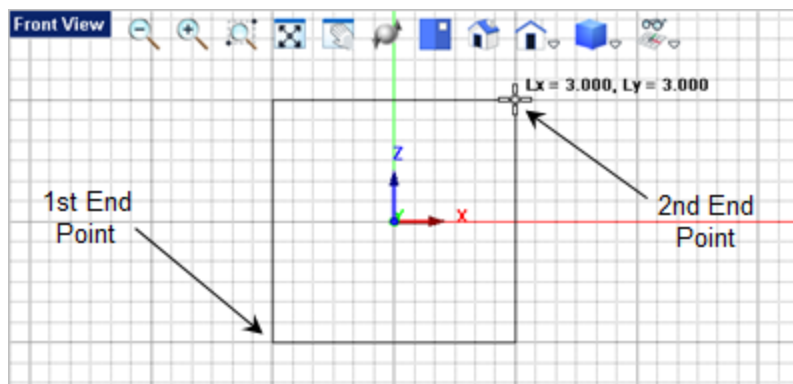


2. Now select the **Rectangle** command.

3. Turn on [Grid snap](#)  and turn off all other object [Snaps](#). [Object Snap](#) toggles are located on the [Status Toolbar](#) at the bottom of the display.



4. For the first corner of the rectangle, select the lower left grid point location shown below or type **-1.5, 0, -1.5** in the [Command Prompt](#) and press **<Enter>**.
5. For the second corner of the rectangle, select the upper right grid point shown above or type **3,3** in the [Command Prompt](#) and press **<Enter>**. This will create a rectangle 3" square.



6. Now select the rectangle you just drew and then from the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab select

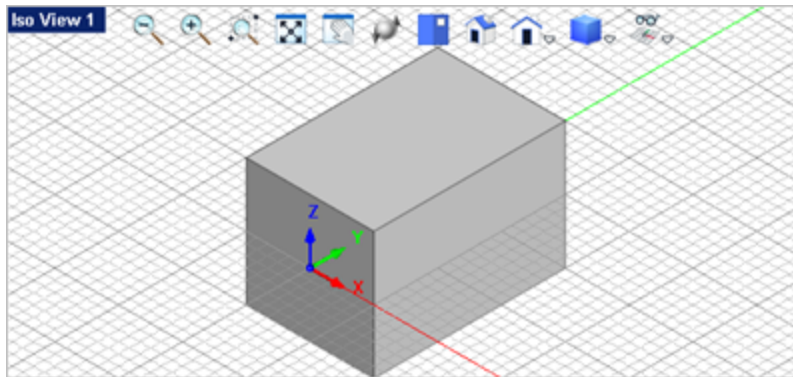


the [Extrude Mesh](#) command.

7. Now drag the cursor over to the [Right View](#) and select the grid point at **4.5** or just enter **4.5** in the command prompt and press **<Enter>**.



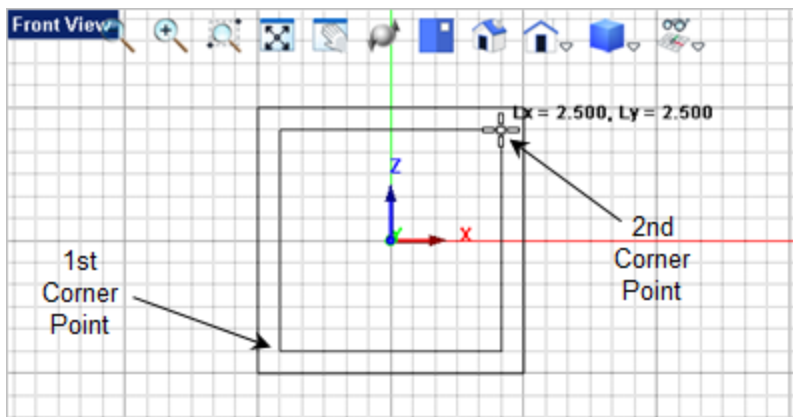
Your part should look like this in [Iso View 1](#):



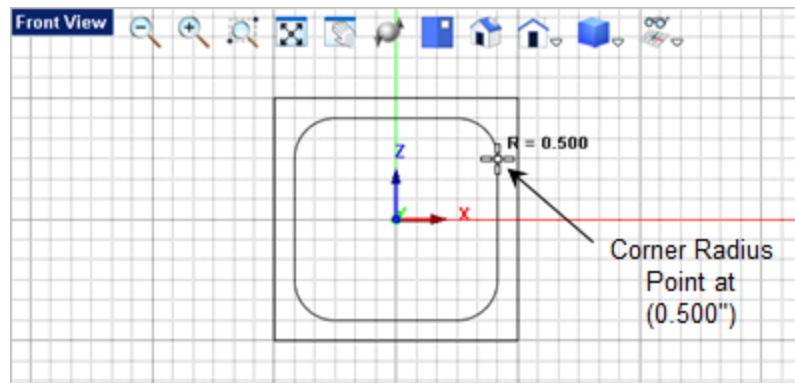
7.6.2 Model the Front Access

Model the Front Access

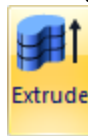
1. Activate the **Front View**.
2. From the tab **Curve Modeling** select the **Rounded Rectangle**  command.
3. For the first corner of the rectangle, select the lower left grid point location shown below or type 1.25,1.25,0 in the **Command Prompt** and press **<Enter>**.



4. For the second corner of the rectangle, select the lower left grid point location shown below or type 1.25,1.25,0 in the **Command Prompt** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Now for the corner radius select the Grid point shown below or enter 0.5 in the **Command Window** and press **<Enter>**.

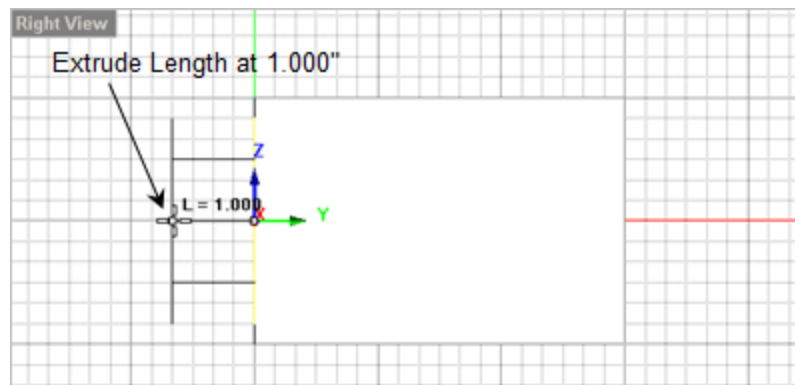


6. Now select the rounded rectangle you just created and from the **Mesh Modeling** tab,

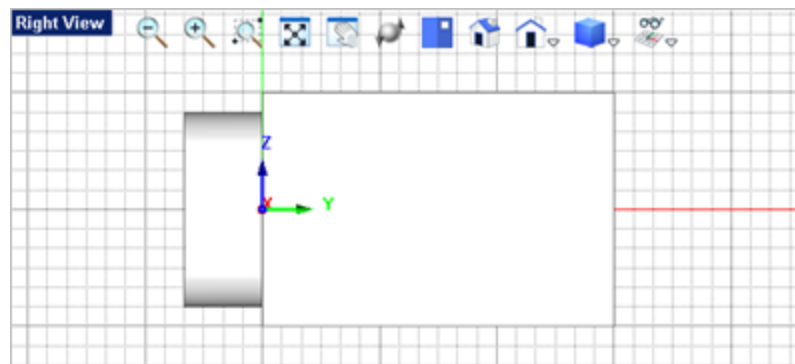


select the **Extrude Mesh** command.

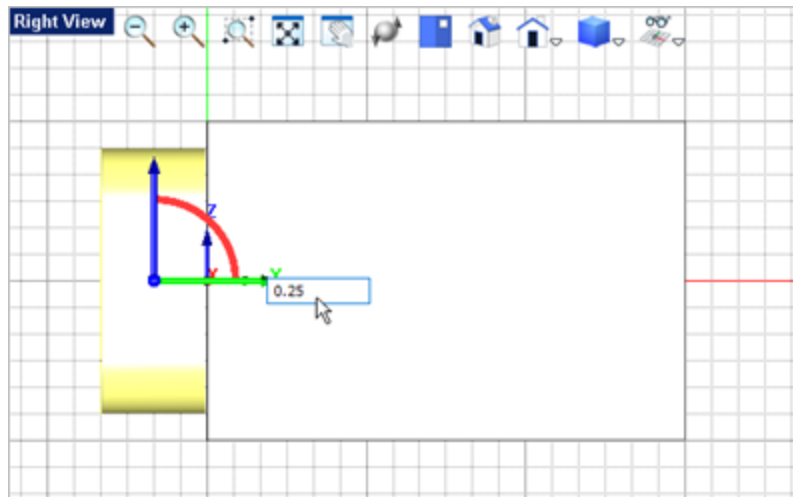
7. Move the cursor over to the **Right View** and select the **Extrude Length** at the 1.000 Grid point or enter 1 in the command window and press **<Enter>**.



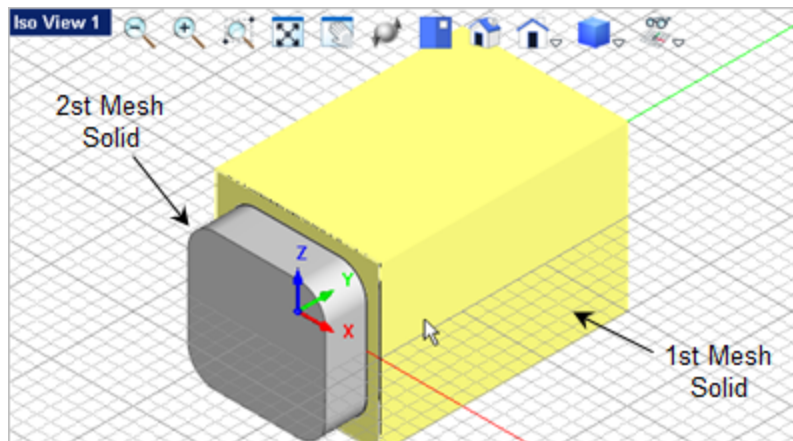
The extruded profile is shown below.



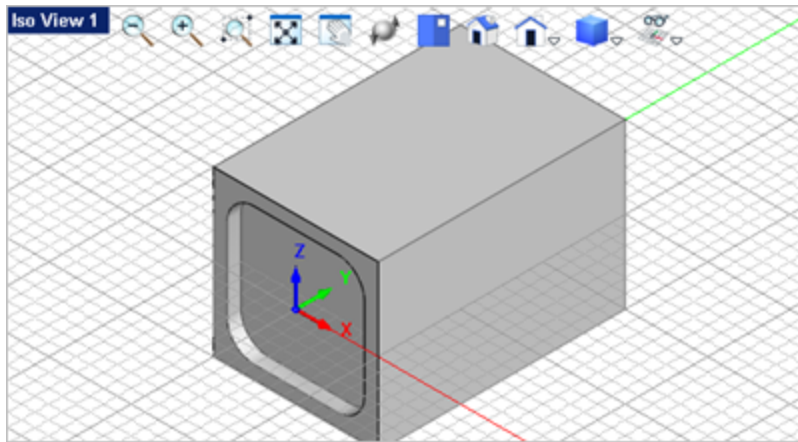
8. Now we will move the extrusion so that it intersects the body. Activate the [Graphic Manipulator](#)  from the [Status Bar](#).
9. Select the extrusion mesh solid to display the [Graphic Manipulator](#) .
10. Pick the [Green Y axis](#) of the [Graphic Manipulator](#)  and enter [0.25](#) in the input field and press [<Enter>](#). The extrusion will move in the Y direction the amount specified.



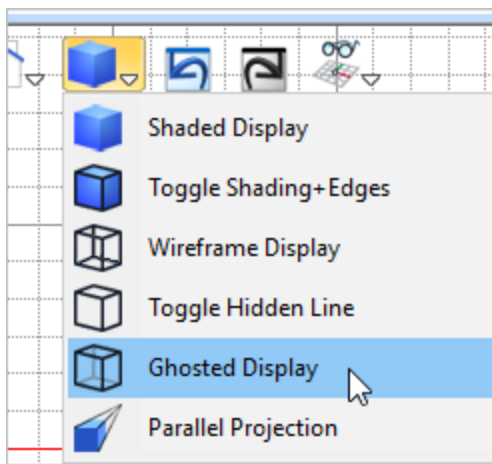
11. Press [<Enter>](#) again to accept the move.
12. Now activate the [Iso View 1](#) window and from the [Mesh Modeling](#) tab select the [Subtract Mesh](#)  command.
13. For the first mesh solid select the Body.



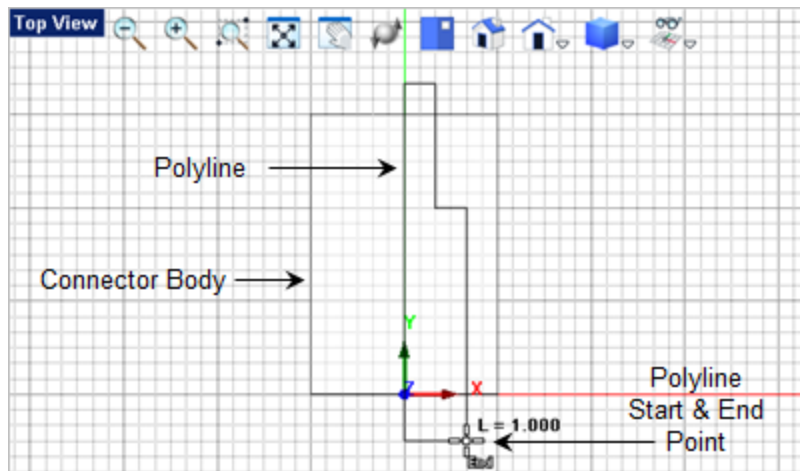
14. For the second mesh solid select the extrusion. The extrusion will be subtracted from the Body as shown below.



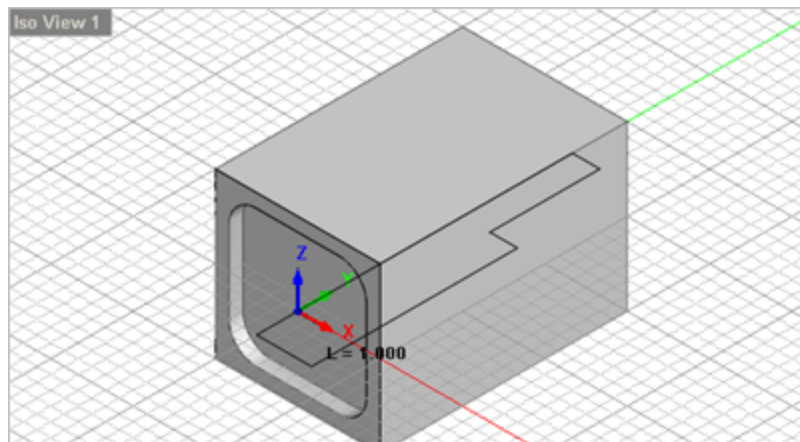
15. Now activate the [Top View](#).
16. Select the [View](#)  menu from the [View Toolbar](#) and then select [Ghosted Display](#). Note: The [View Toolbar](#) will only display in the active viewport.



17. Now from the [Curve Modeling](#) [Curve Modeling](#) tab select the [Polyline](#)  command.
18. You will select the grid points shown below to define a closed polyline. The first grid point is the same as the last grid point.

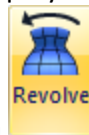


In Iso View 1 the closed curve polyline looks like this:



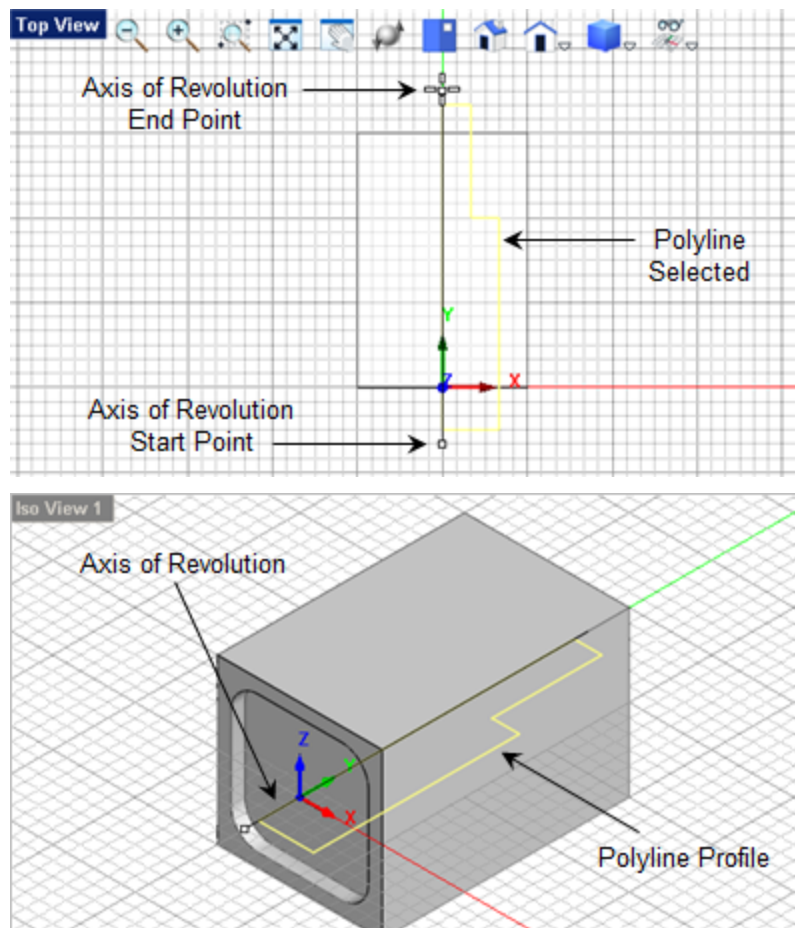
19. Now select the closed curve polyline you just created and from the

Mesh Modeling



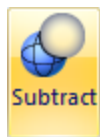
tab select the **Revolve Mesh** command.

20. The command line prompts you to "Pick start point if axis of revolution or enter coordinates x,y and z". Pick the grid points shown below for the start and end points of the axis of revolution.



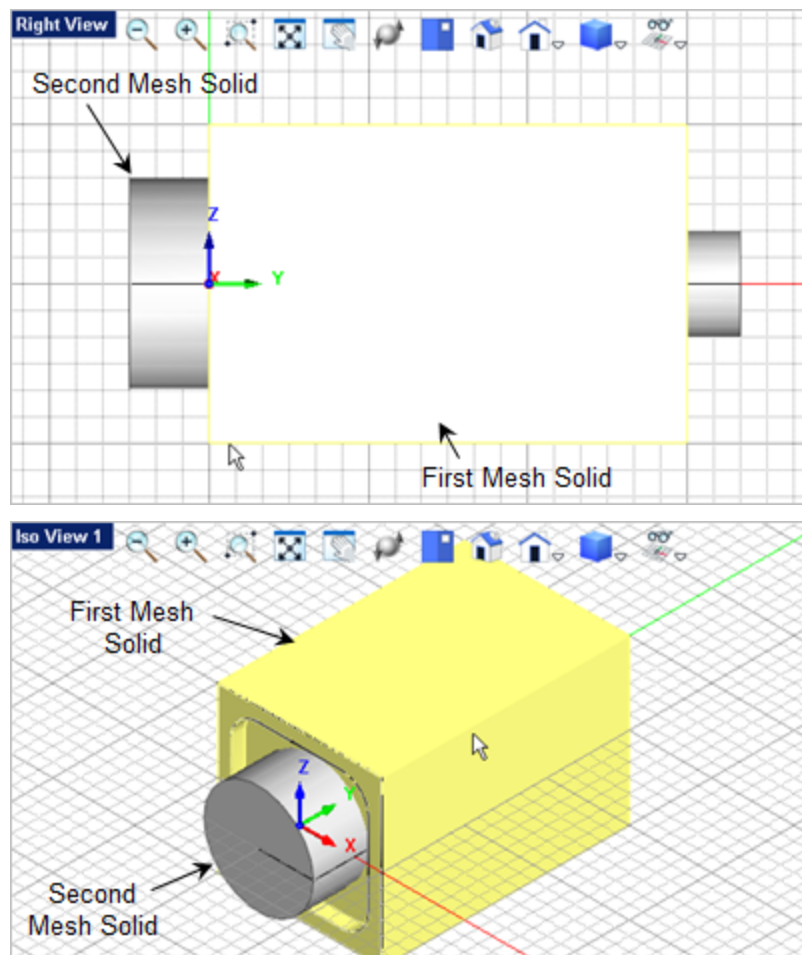
The **Revolve** mesh solid is created.

21. Now you want to subtract it from the Body. From the **Mesh Modeling** tab select the

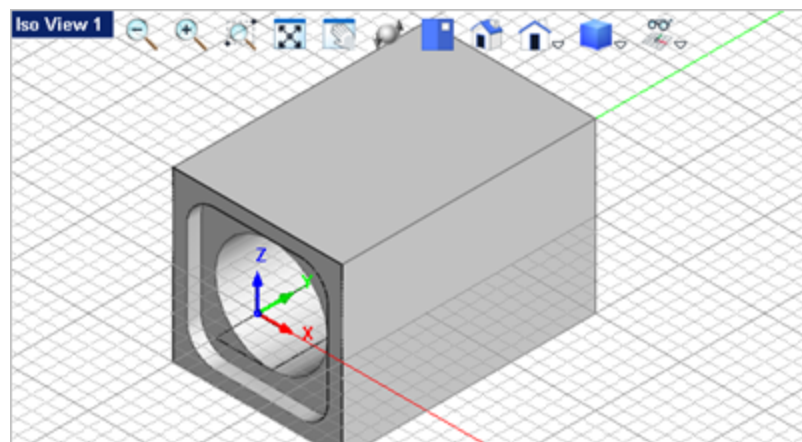


Subtract Mesh command.

22. For the first mesh solid select the Body.
23. For the second mesh solid select the Revolve.



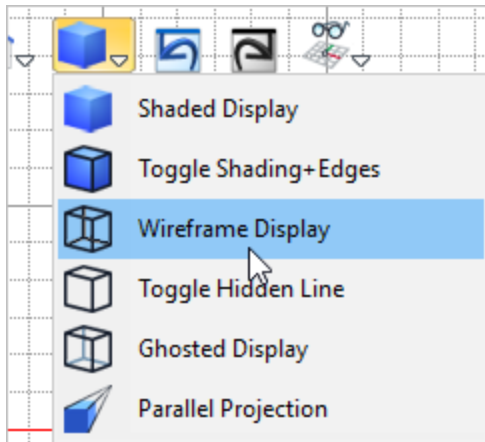
The Body is updated and should look like the image below.



7.6.3 Model the Top Access

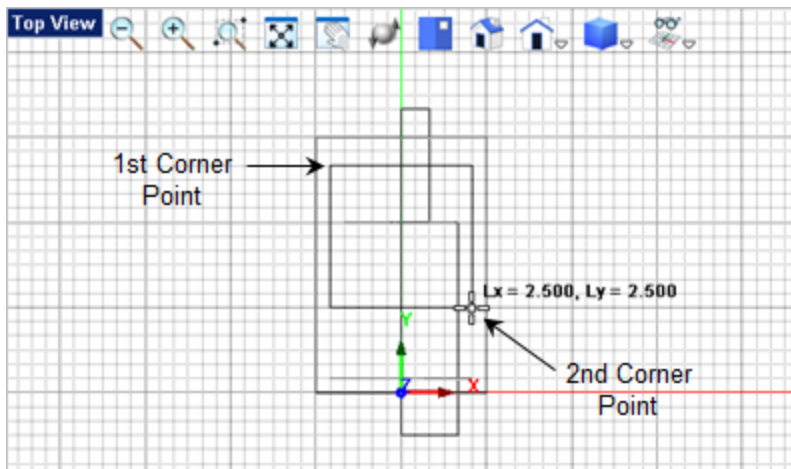
 [Model the Top Access](#)

1. Activate the **Top View**.
2. Select the **View**  menu from the **View Toolbar** and then select **Wireframe Display**. Note: The **View Toolbar** will only display in the active viewport.

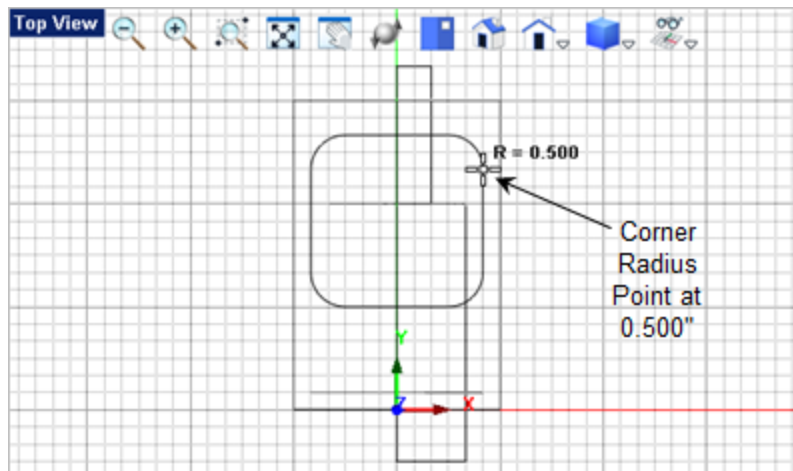


From the **Curve Modeling**  tab select the **Rounded Rectangle**  command.

3. For the first corner of the rectangle, select the upper right grid point location shown below or type **1.25,1.25,0** in the **Command Prompt** and press **<Enter>**.



4. For the second corner of the rectangle, select the lower left grid point location shown below or type **1.25,1.5,0** in the **Command Prompt** and press **<Enter>**.
5. Now for the corner radius select the grid point shown below or enter **0.5** in the **Command Window** and press **<Enter>**.

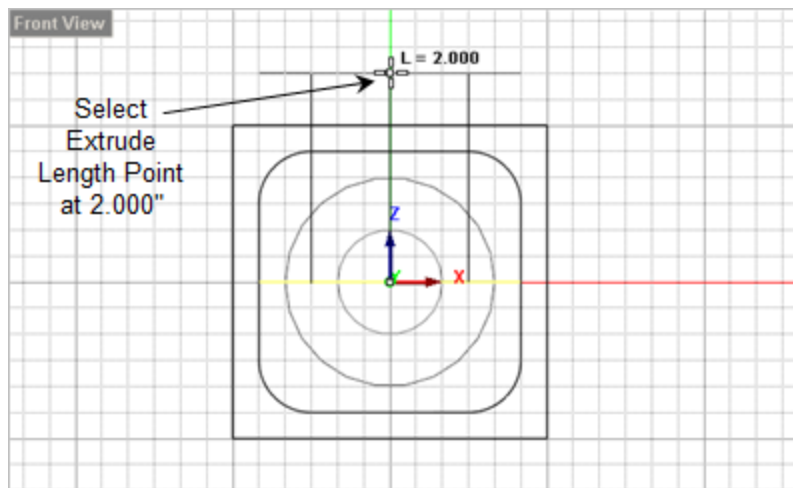


6. Now select the rounded rectangle you just created and from the **Mesh Modeling** tab,



select the **Extrude Mesh** command.

7. Move the cursor down to the **Front View** and select the **Extrude Length** at the **2.000** Grid point or enter 0,0,2 in the command window and press <Enter>.

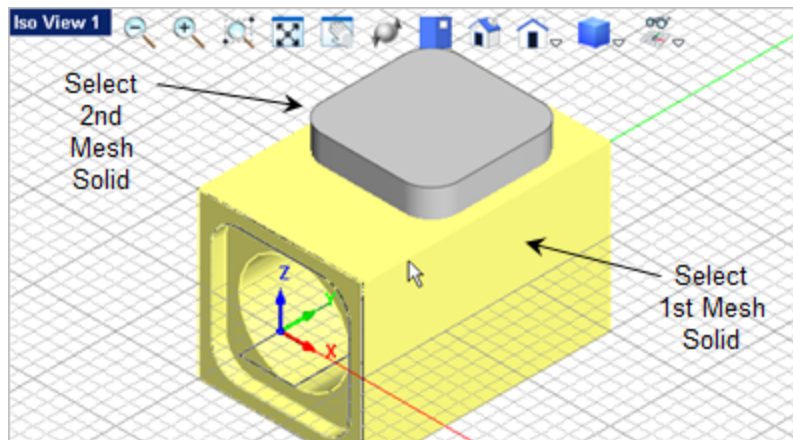


8. Now activate **Iso View 1** and from the **Mesh Modeling** tab select the **Subtract Mesh**

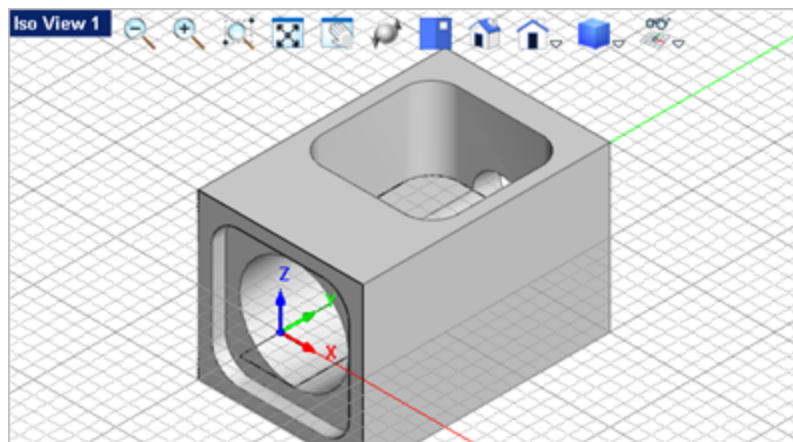


command.

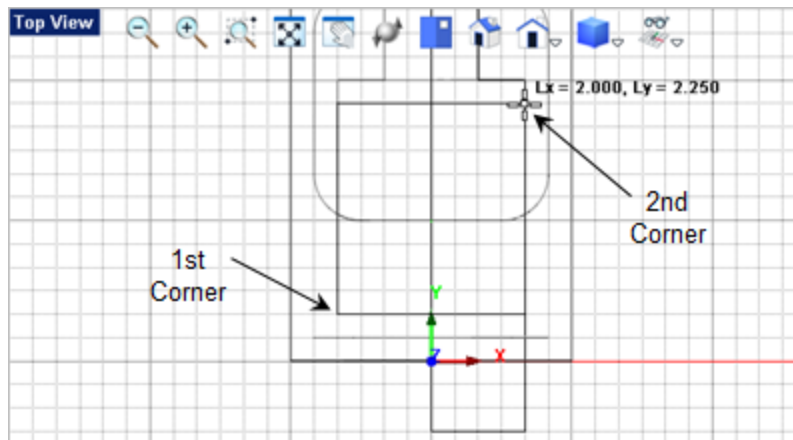
9. For the first mesh solid select the Body.



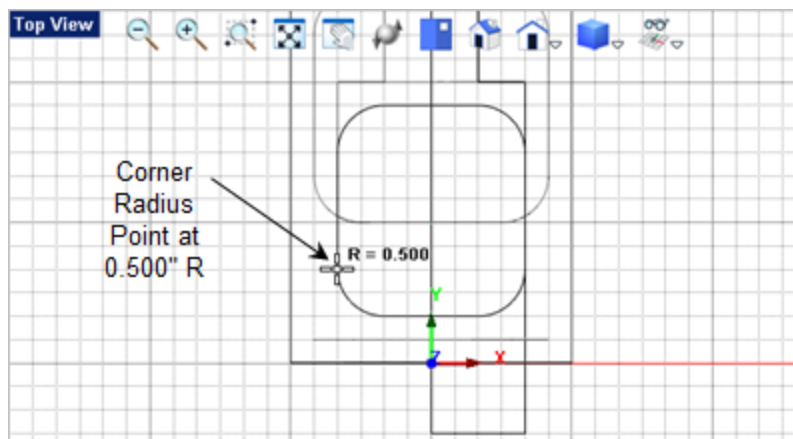
10. For the second mesh solid select the extrusion. The extrusion will be subtracted from the Body as shown below.



11. The top access has an additional pocket near the front of the body that needs to be modeled.
12. Activate the **Top View** again.
13. From the **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Rounded Rectangle**  command.
14. For the first corner of the rectangle, select the lower left grid point location shown below or type -1,0.5,0 in the **Command Prompt** and press **<Enter>**.



15. For the second corner of the rectangle, select the upper right grid point location shown above or type **1,2.75,0** in the **Command Prompt** and press **<Enter>**.
16. Now for the corner radius select the grid point shown below or enter **0.5** in the **Command Window** and press **<Enter>**.

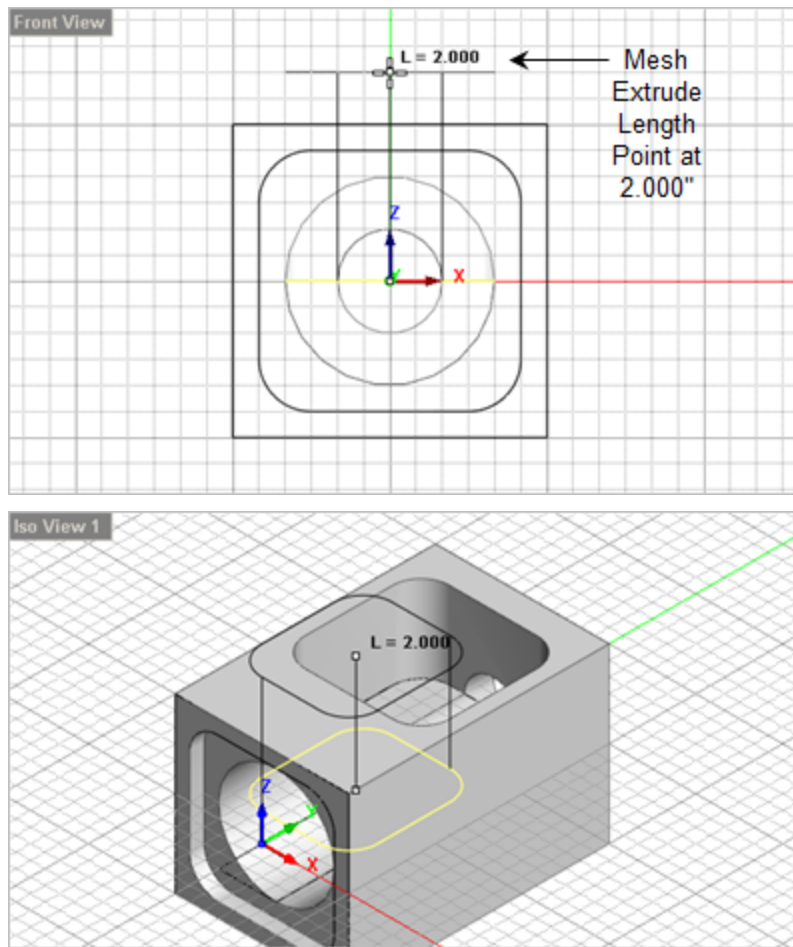


17. Now select the rounded rectangle you just created and from the **Mesh Modeling** tab,

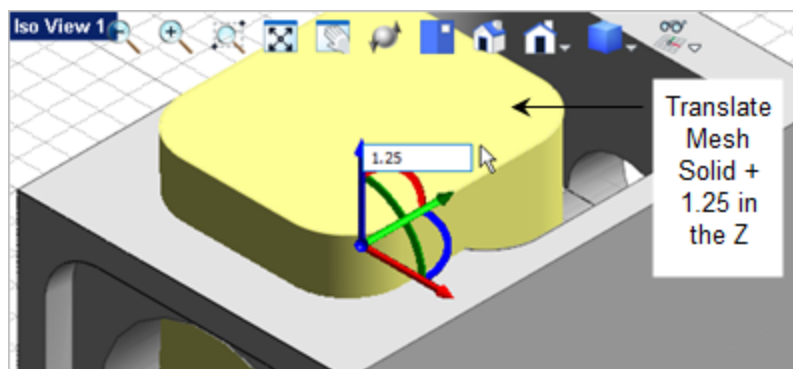


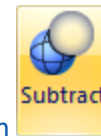
select the **Extrude Mesh** command.

18. Move the cursor down to the **Front View** and select the **Extrude Length** at the **2.000 Grid** point or enter **0,0,2** in the command window and press **<Enter>**.

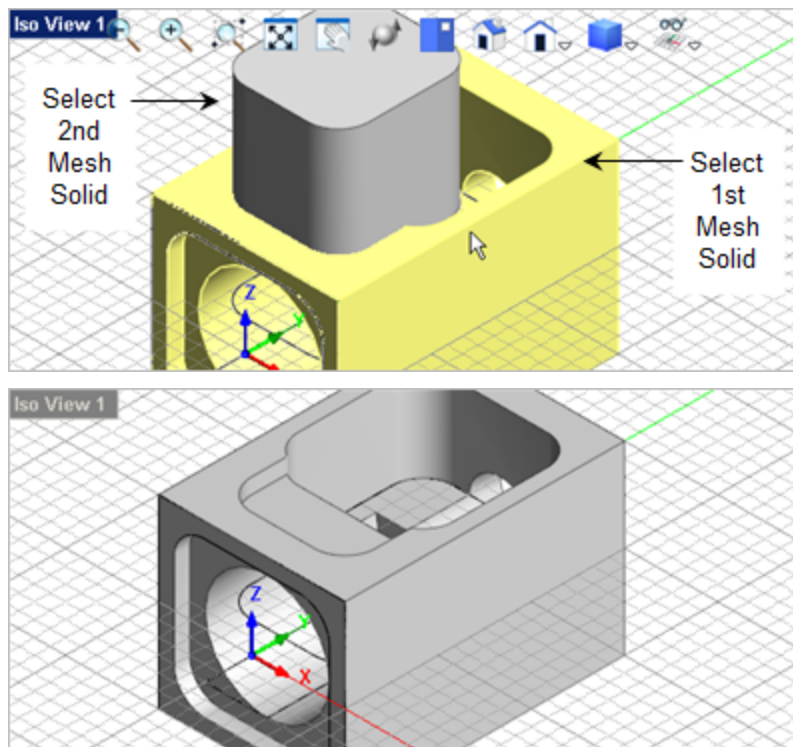


19. Now from **Iso View 1**, select the extrusion you just created to display the **Graphic Manipulator**.
20. Click on the **Blue Z Axis** arrow and enter **1.25** to translate the extrusion upward as shown in the illustration below.





21. From the **Mesh Modeling** tab select the **Subtract Mesh** command.
22. For the first mesh solid select the **Body**.
23. For the second mesh solid select the extrusion you just created.



7.6.4 Model the Mounting Holes



Model the Mounting Holes

In this step we will model the tap drill mounting holes in the front and top access. Note: For machining purposes only a Point is required to perform a hole making operation. We are only modeling the holes here for learning purposes.

1. Activate the **Front View**.
2. To locate the center of the first hole you will draw two lines on the grid. From the

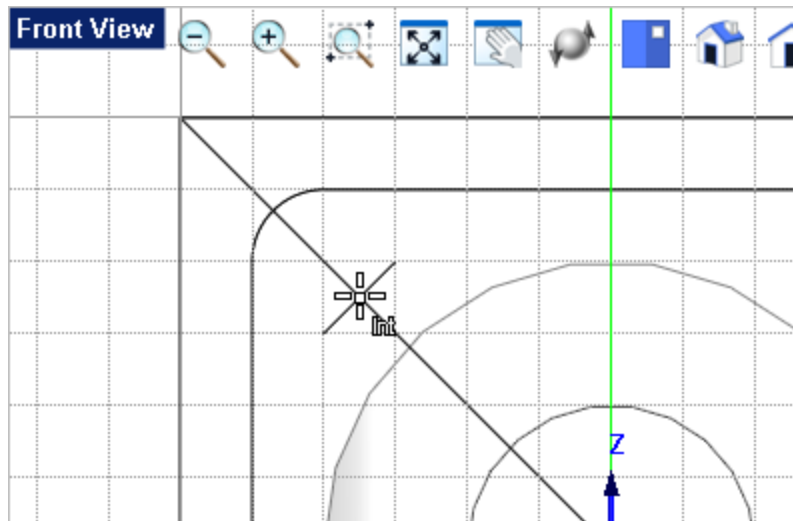
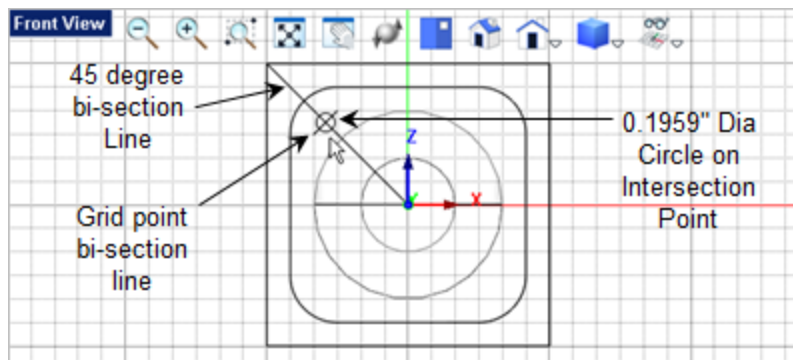


Curve Modeling **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Line** command.

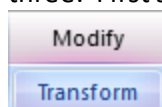
3. Draw the two lines shown below. The first starts at the center and ends at the top left corner. The second passes diagonally across two grid points bisecting the first line at 90 degrees.



4. Now from the **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Circle** command.
5. For the circle center, activate the **Intersect Object Snap** from the **Status Bar** and then move the cursor over the intersection of the two lines until you see Int display next to the cursor and then select the intersection point.



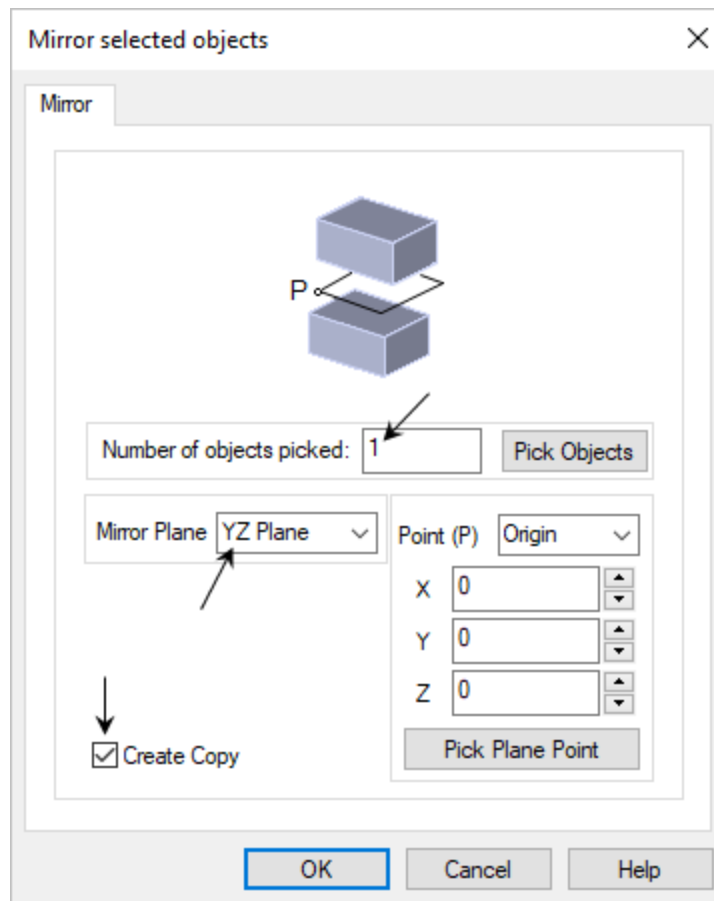
6. For the circle diameter enter 0.1959 in the **Command Window** and press **<Enter>**. This is the #7 drill diameter for a 1/4-20 tap.
7. Now you need 4 of these holes. Let's use the mirror command to create the other three. First select the circle you just created, then go to the **Modify / Transform**



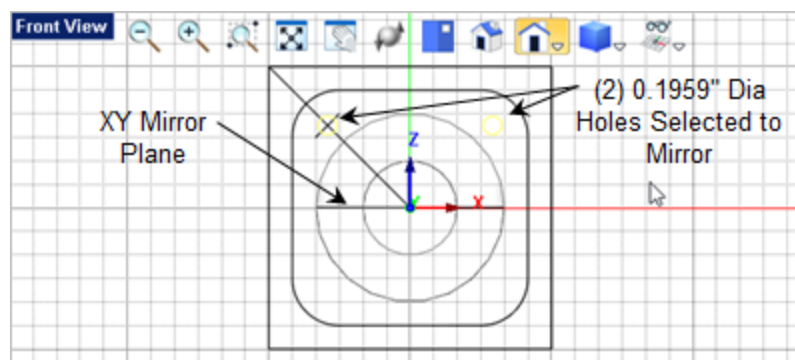
tab and select the **Mirror ...** command.

Note that the **Modify / Transfer** tab ONLY appears when an entity is selected!

8. From the **Mirror selected objects** dialog, the **Number of selected objects** should be 1, The **Mirror Plane** should be **YZ Plane** and box next to **Create Copy** should be checked.

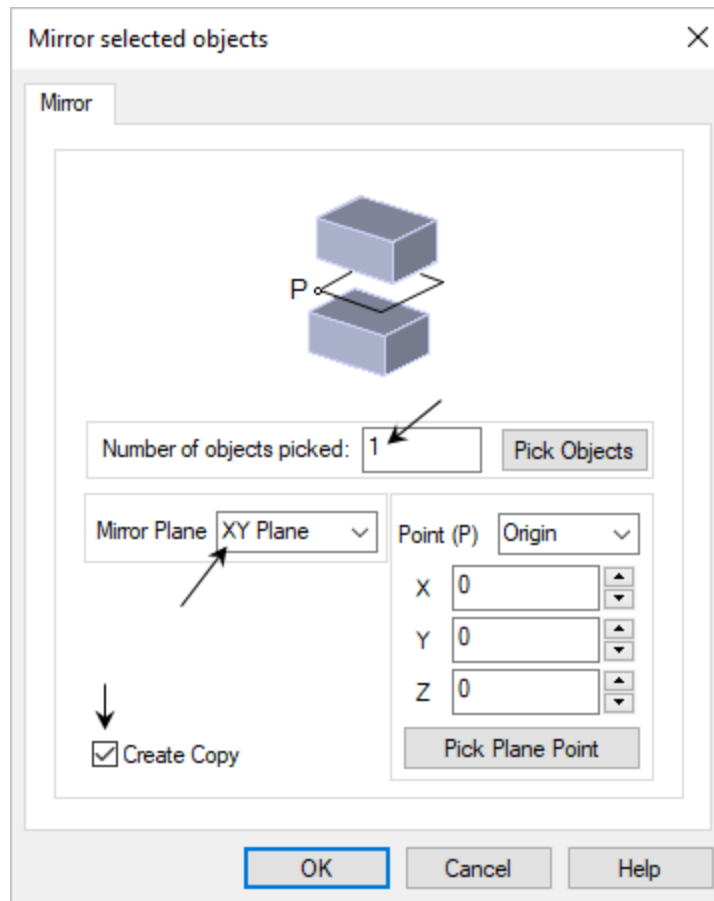


9. Pick **OK** from the dialog and the circle will be mirrored and both circles should be selected automatically. If not, select both of the circles and pick the **Mirror ...** command again.



10. This time from the **Mirror selected objects** dialog, the **Number of selected objects** should be **2**, The **Mirror Plane** should be **XY Plane** and box next to **Create Copy** should be checked.

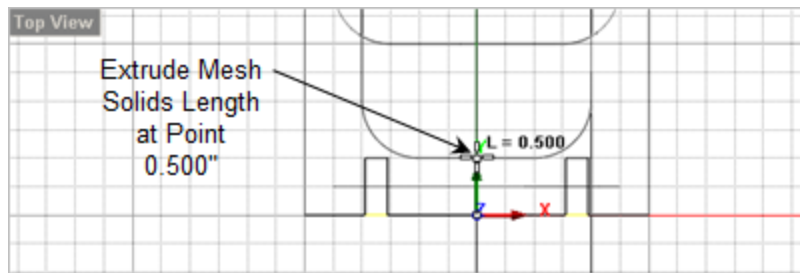
Note: You do not have to select the geometry first, as you can see this dialog has a **Pick Objects** button.



11. Now with all 4 circles drawn, all 4 should be selected automatically. If not select them now.



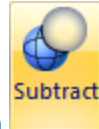
12. Now go to the **Mesh Modeling** tab and select the **Extrude Mesh** command.
13. For the extrude length move the cursor to the **Top View** and select the grid point at **0.500"** in the positive Z direction or simple enter **0.5** in the command window Command and press **<Enter>**.



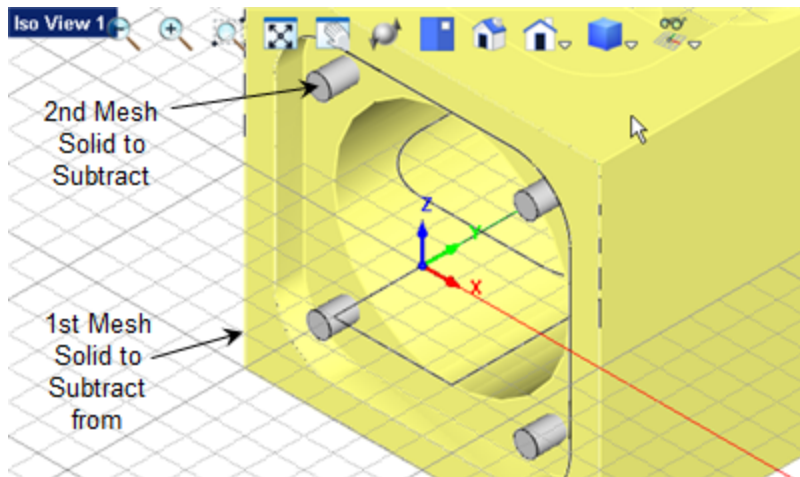
14. Now let's subtract the extrusions from the body to create the holes. Go to

Iso View 1

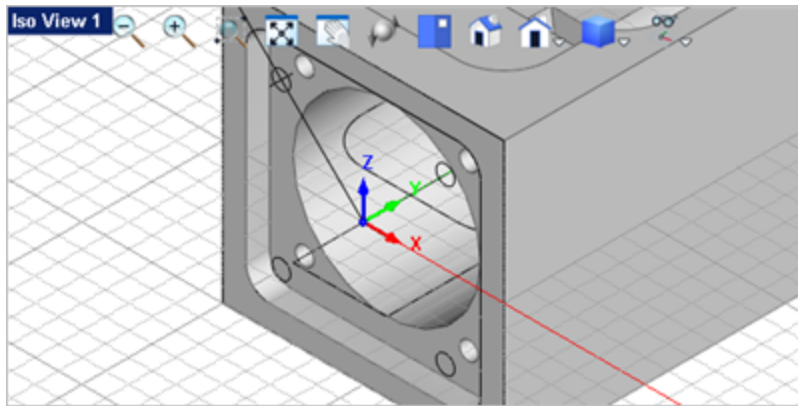
and from the **Mesh Modeling** tab select the **Subtract Mesh** command.



15. For the first mesh solid select the body.



16. For the second mesh solid select one of the extrusions to subtract it.
17. Press the <Enter> key to repeat the command. This time select the body and then the second extrusion.
18. Repeat the command two more time until all 4 extrusions are subtracted from the body as shown below.

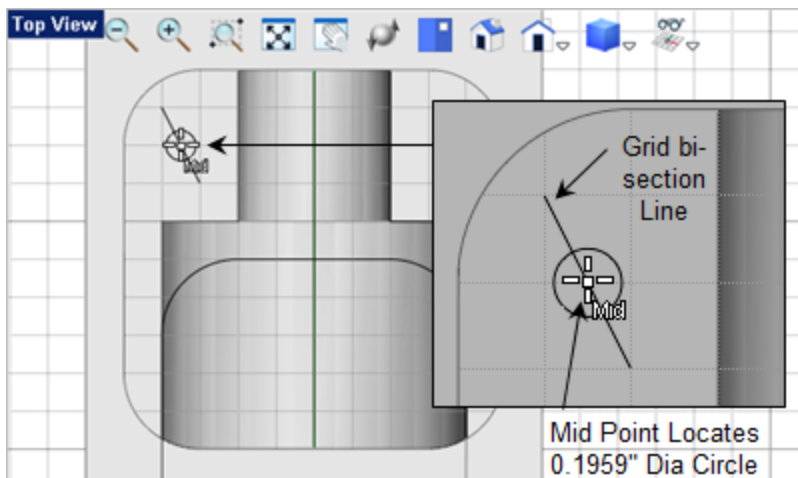


19. Now we have 2 additional holes of the same diameter located in the top access. Activate the **Top View**.
20. Let's change the display mode for the **Top View**. Select the **Display** menu from the **View Toolbar** in the **Top View** and select **Toggle Shaded + Edges**.
21. To locate the first hole, go to the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab and select the



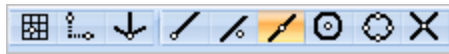
Line command.

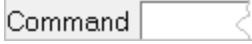
22. Pick the two grid points shown below for the start and end points of the line. The line should bi-section the two grid boxes from left to right as shown below.

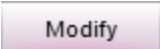
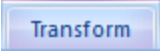


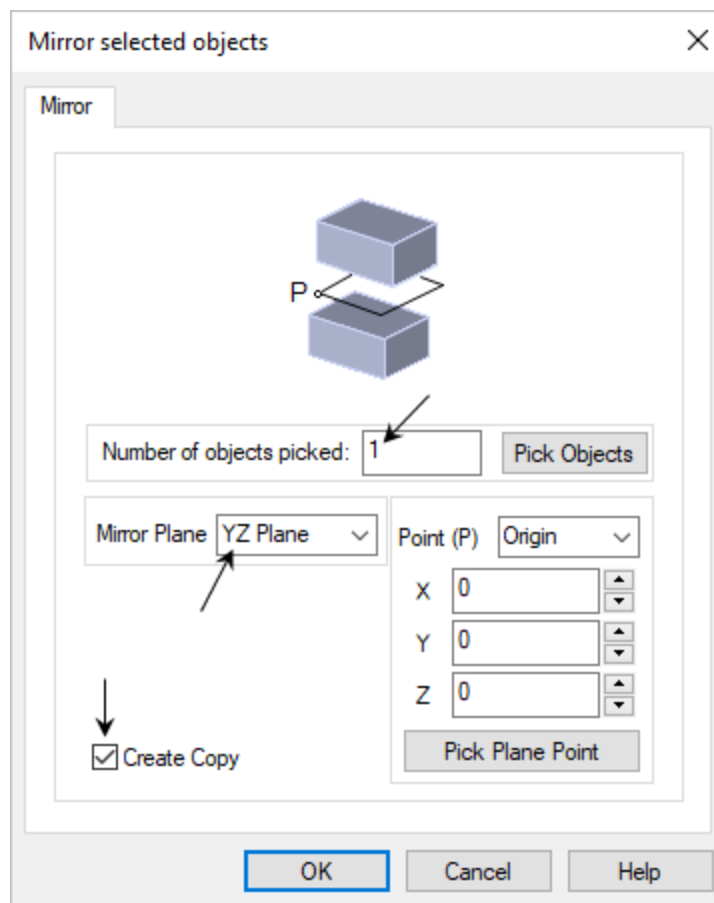
23. Now from the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Circle** command.

24. From the **Stats Bar** activate the **Mid Point Object Snap**  and deactivate all of the others.

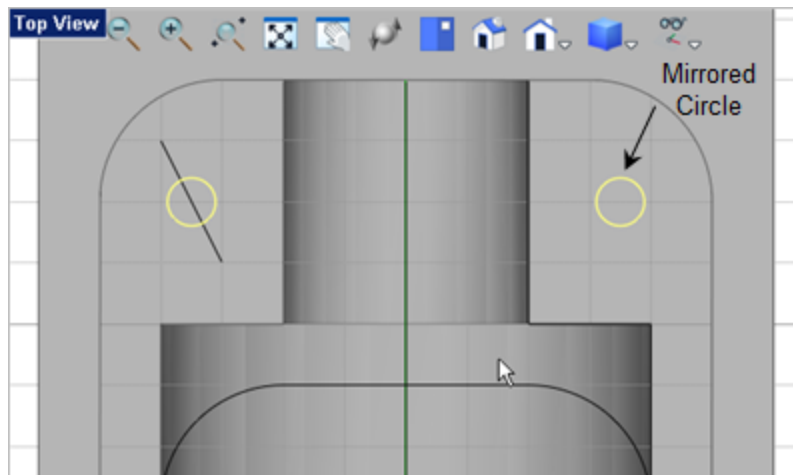


25. For the center point of the circle select the mid point of the line you just created shown in the illustration above.
26. For the circle diameter enter 0.1959 in the **Command Window**  and press <Enter>.

27. Now select the circle you just created and go to the **Modify**  **Transform**  tab and select the **Mirror**  command.



28. From the **Mirror select objects** dialog the **Number of selected objects** should be 1, the **Mirror Plane** should be **YZ Plane** and the **Create Copy** box should be checked.
29. Now pick **OK** to mirror the circle.
30. Both circles should now be selected. If not select them both now.



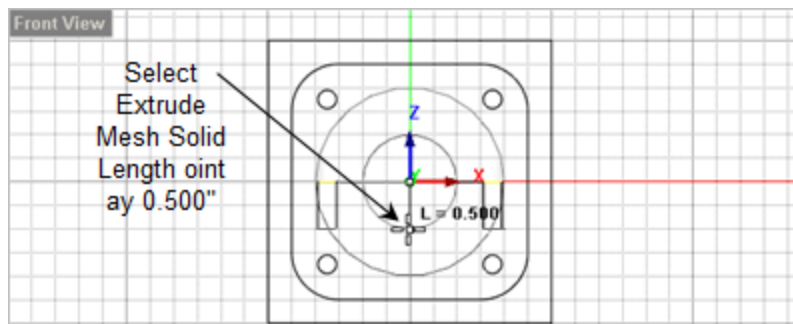
31. With the circles select go to the **Mesh Modeling** tab and select the **Extrude Mesh**



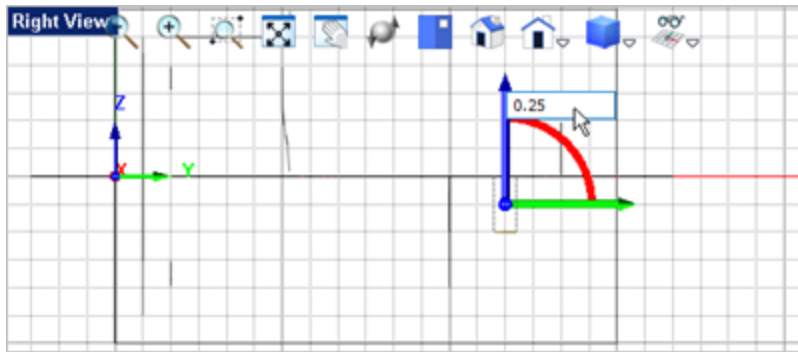
command.

32. From the **Status Bar** activate the **Grid Object Snap**  and deactivate the others.

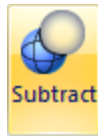
33. Move the cursor down to the **Front View** and select the grid point to set the extrusion length to **0.500"** in the negative Z direction or simply enter **0.5** in the command window **Command** and press **<Enter>**.



34. Now select the two extrusions and go to the **Right View**. Make sure the **Graphic Manipulator**  is toggled **On**.
35. From the **Graphic Manipulator**, pick the **Blue Z Axis** arrow and then enter **0.25** in the input window and press **<Enter>**. The extrusions will translate up in the **Z** axis **0.25"**.

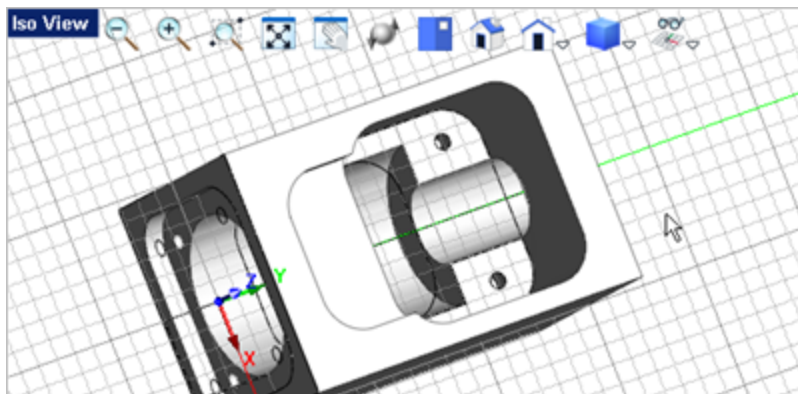
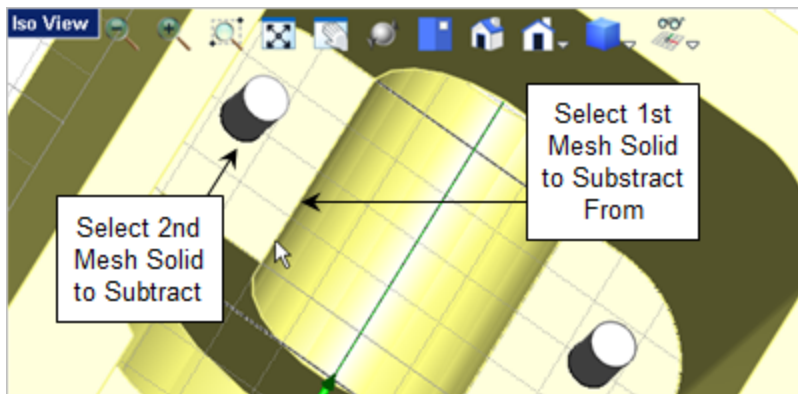


36. Now subtract them from the body. From the [Curve Modeling](#) [Curve Modeling](#) tab



select the [Subtract Mesh](#) command.

37. For the first mesh solid select the body. For the second mesh solid select one of the extrusions.
38. Press [<Enter>](#) to repeat the command and subtract the second extrusion from the body.

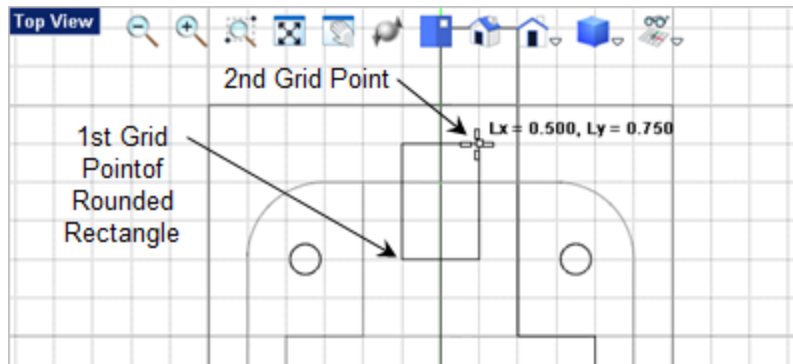


7.6.5 Modify the Top Access

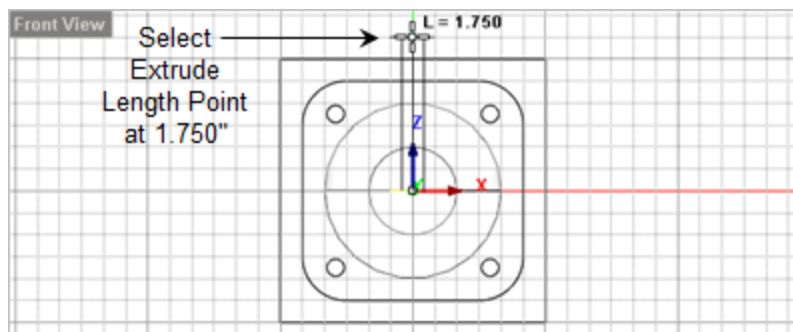
Modify the Top Access

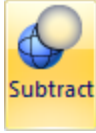
In this step we need to make a few modifications to the top access. The first is an extruded cut at the back of the access. The second is a revolved cut.

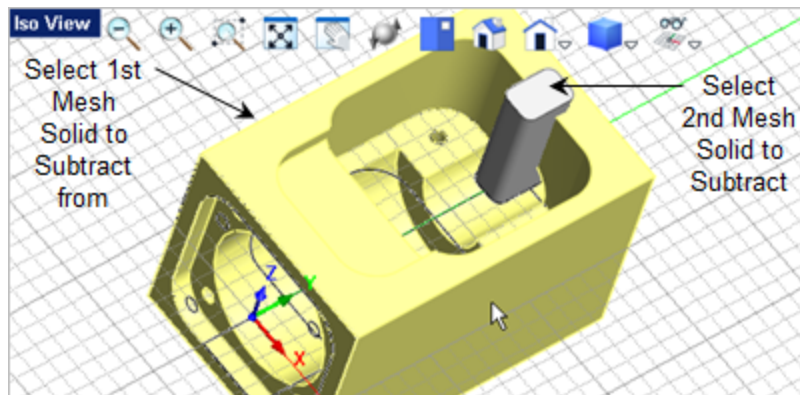
1. Activate the **Top View**.
2. From the **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Rounded Rectangle**  command.
3. For the first and second corners of the rectangle select the grid points shown below.



4. For the corner radius, enter 0.125 in the command window **Command** and press <Enter>.
5. Now select the rectangle and from the **Mesh Modeling** tab select the **Extrude Mesh**  command.
6. Move to the **Front View** and drag the extrude length to 1.750".



7. Now go to the **Mesh Modeling** tab and select the **Subtract** Mesh  command again.
8. For the first mesh solid select the body. For the second mesh solid select the extrusion.

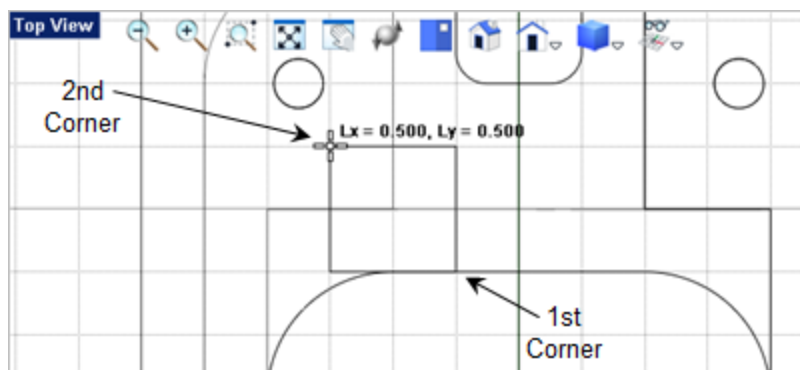


9. For the second modification, got to the **Top View** and from the **Curve Modeling** tab



select the **Rectangle** command.

10. Select the two corner points shown below.



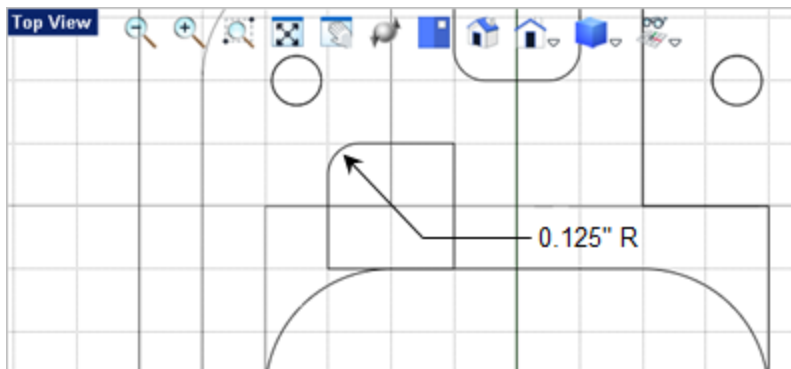
11. Now we need to fillet one of the corners. From the **Curve Modeling** tab select the



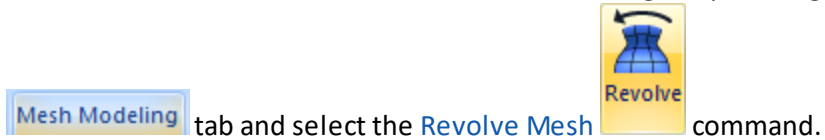
Fillet Curve command.

12. In the command prompt **Command** enter **0.125** for the fillet radius and press **<Enter>**.

13. Now select the top and left side of the rectangle to fillet the upper left corner as shown below.



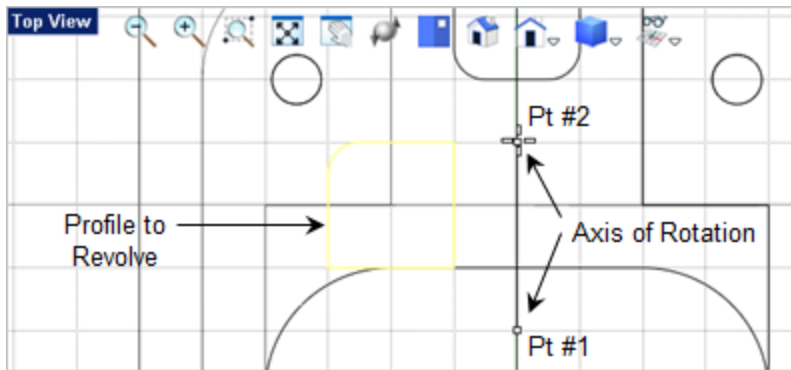
14. We need to revolve this, so select the closed rectangular profile, go to the



Mesh Modeling

tab and select the **Revolve Mesh** command.

15. For the axis of revolution, select the two grid points shown below.

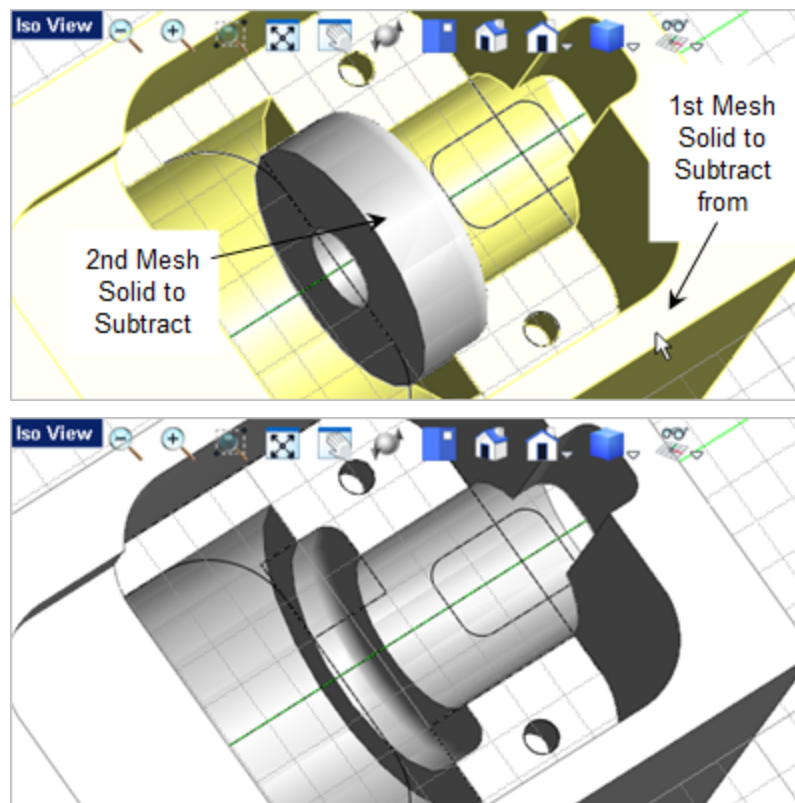


16. Now subtract the revolve from the body. From the **Mesh Modeling** tab select the



Subtract Mesh command.

17. For the first mesh solid select the body and for the second select the revolve.



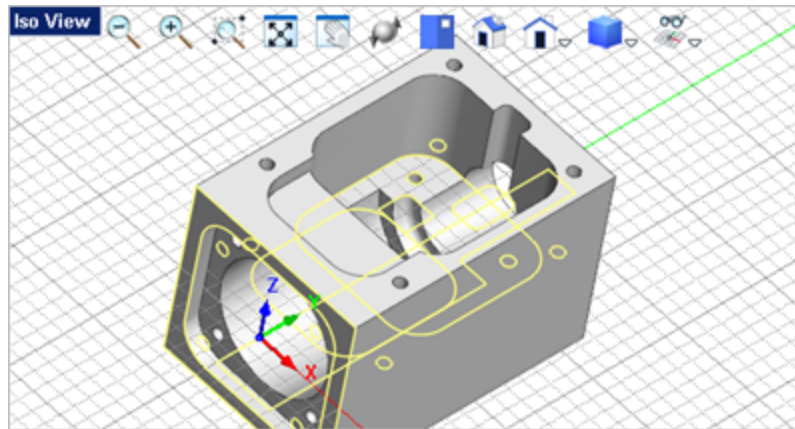
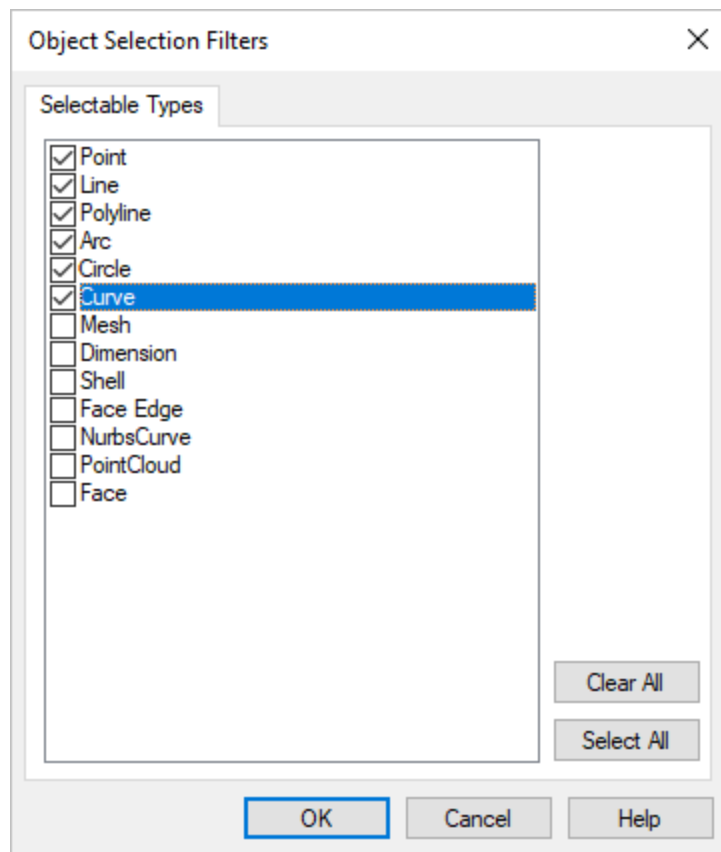
7.6.6 Create Section Curves



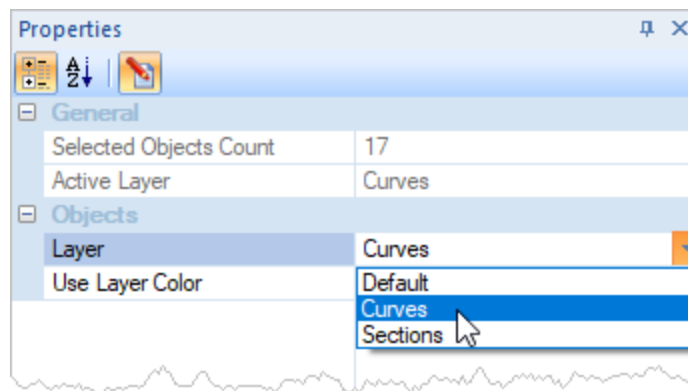
Create Section Curves

You're almost done!! In this step we want to create some section curves in the **Top** and **Right** side views. The section will appear on the **XY Plane** (for the **Top** view) and on the **ZY Plane** for the **Right View**.

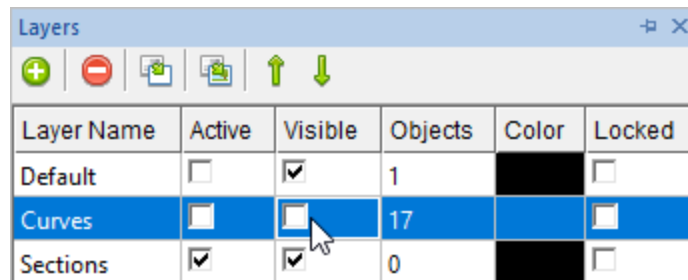
1. First let's move all of our curves onto a separate layer and hide them. From the **Modeling Aids** tab, select the **By Type ...** command. This icon is located on the **Selection** pane of the **Modeling Aids** tab.
2. From the **Object selection filters** dialog, check the boxes next to **Point**, **Line**, **Polyline**, **Arc**, **Circle** and **Curve** and then pick **OK**. All of the curve related entities will now be selected.



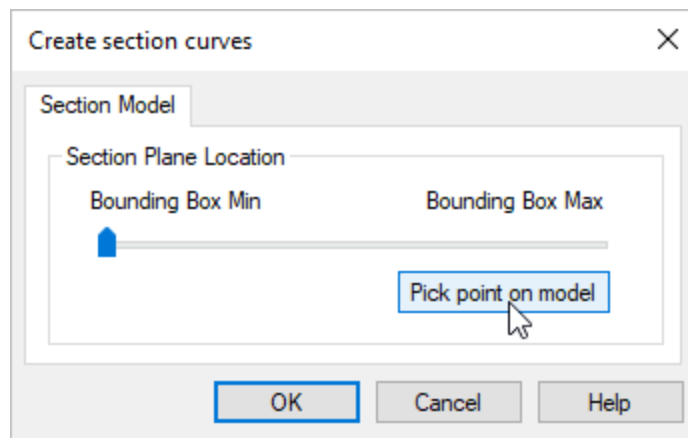
3. From the [Status Bar](#) select the [Properties](#) icon  to display the [Properties Manager](#).



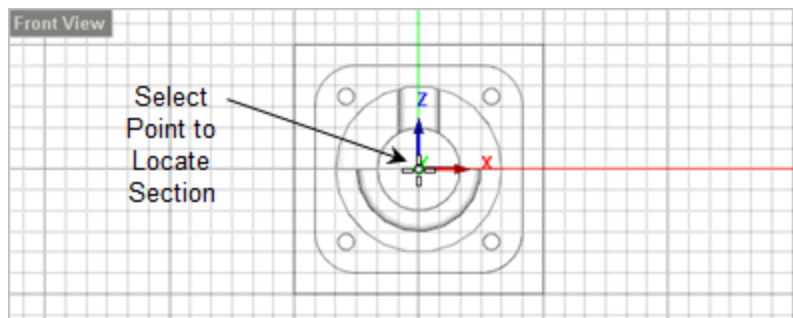
4. This dialog reports that a total of 17 entities are selected. In the **Objects** section drop down the menu for **Layer** and select **Curves** from the list of layers.
5. Now from the **Status Bar** select the **Layer Manager** icon .



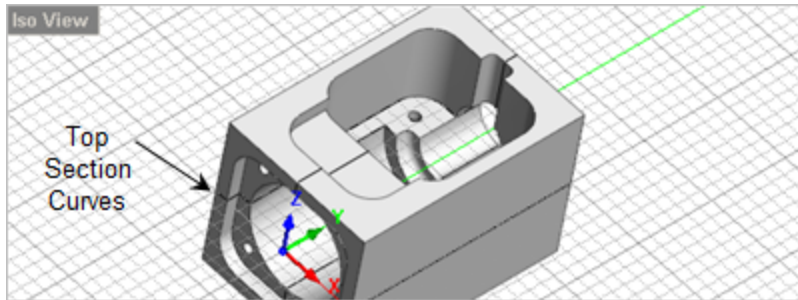
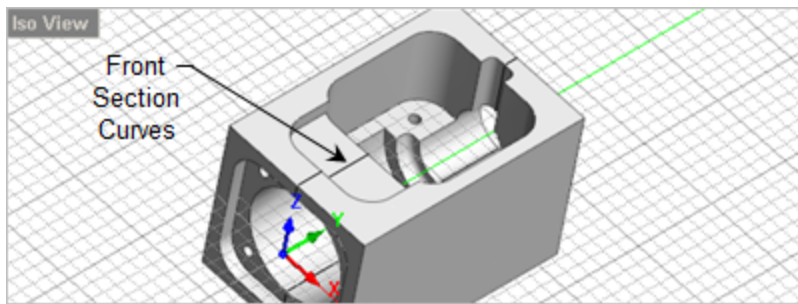
6. From the **Layer Manager**, under the **Active** column, check the box to make the layer named **Sections** the active layer.
7. You can close the **Properties** and **Layer managers** by allowing them to auto-hide or pick the "X" icon to close them.
8. Now we're ready to create the section curves. First activate the **Top View**. Sections are generated for the currently active view.
9. Go to the **Curve Modeling** tab and select the **Section Curves**  command. This will display the **Create section curves** dialog.



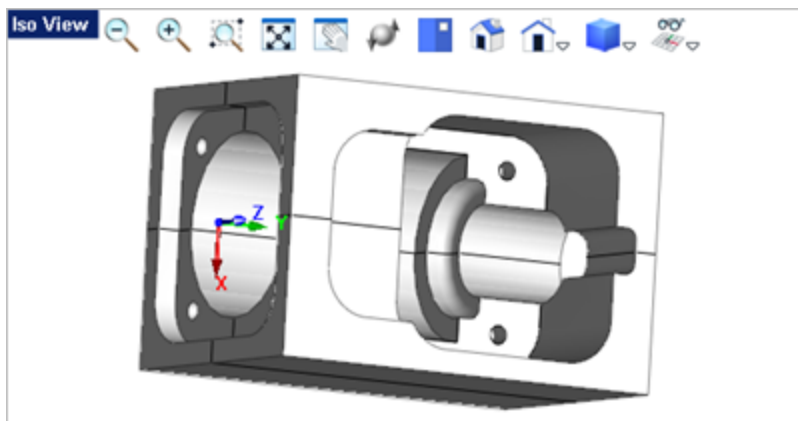
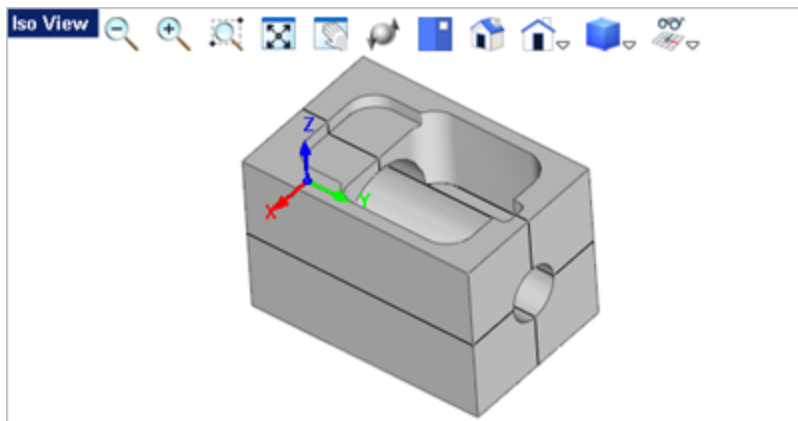
10. If you move the slider you will see a highlight of the section display in all views.
11. Now from the dialog select the **Pick point on model** button. The dialog minimizes allowing you to select a point. From the **Front View**, select the **XY origin** grid point to locate the section.



12. The dialog reappears and you can pick **OK** to close it.
13. Now activate the **Right View**.
14. Go to the **Curve Modeling** tab and select the  command again.
15. From the **Create section curves** dialog, select the **Pick** button and then select the same grid point, **0,0,0** origin in the **Front View**.
16. You will now notice that section curves were created in both the **XY Plane** and the **YZ Plane**.



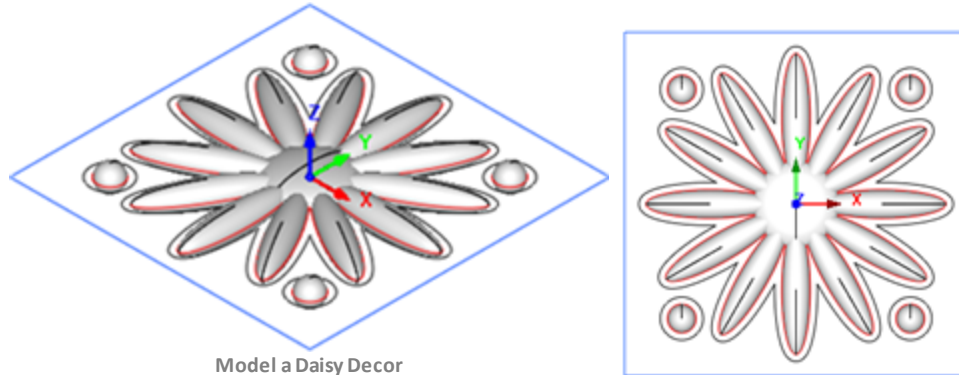
Congratulations!!! You completed the exercise!!



17. Save the file as [Connector_Block_Completed.vcp](#).

7.7 #7: Model a Daisy Decor

In this fun exercise you will use solid (or mesh) spheres, non-uniform scaling, polar arrays, sectioning and offsetting to produce this simplistic decorative design. The offset curves and rectangle are used during machining as containment and stock definition.



Model a Daisy Decor



What you will learn:

In this exercise you will perform the following [VisualCAD](#) tasks:

1. [Create new Layers.](#)
2. [Model & Scale the Body.](#)
3. [Model & Scale the Pedal.](#)
4. [Ghosted Display Mode.](#)
5. [Polar Array the Pedal.](#)
6. [Additional Spheres Accents.](#)
7. [Create & Trim Section Curves.](#)
8. [Create Offset Curves.](#)
9. [Create the Stock Boundary.](#)

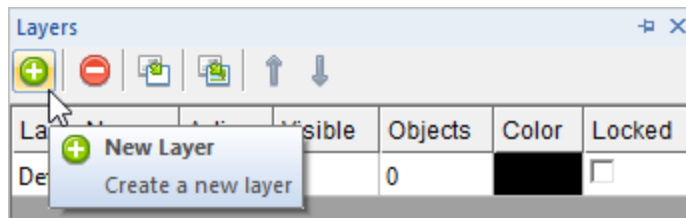
7.7.1 Create new Layers



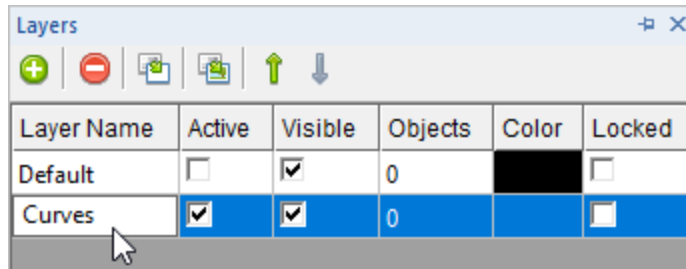
Create new Layers

In this step you will use the [Layer Manager](#) to create some new layers and then set the active layer.

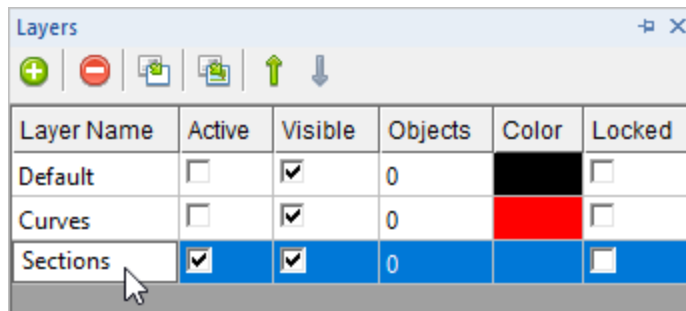
1. Display the [Layer Manager](#). You can pick the [Layer Manager](#) icon  located on the [Status Bar](#).
2. From the [Layer Manager](#) select the [Add Layer](#) icon  to add a new layer.



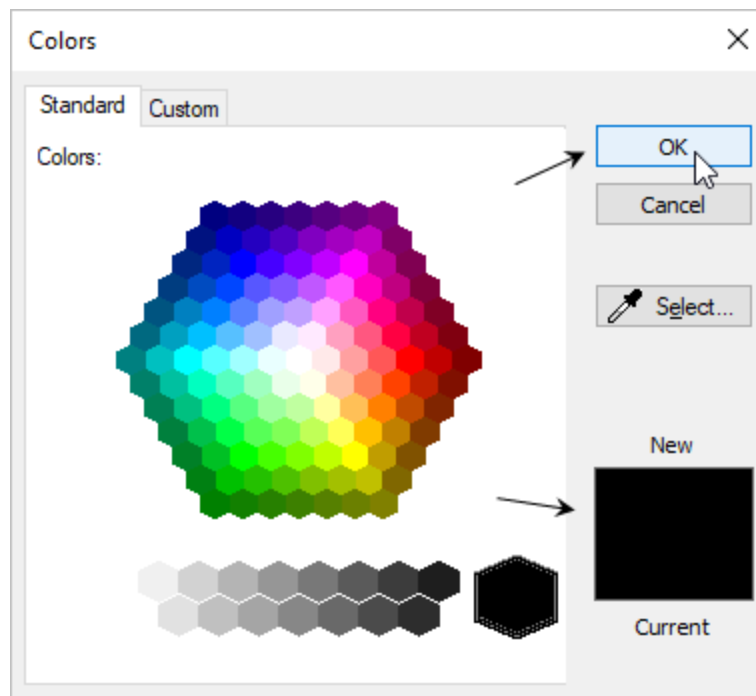
3. Now let's rename the new layer to **Curves**. First double-left-click in the **Name** field to activate it, and enter **Curves** as the new layer name.



4. Repeat the procedure to create a new layer, this time named **Sections**.



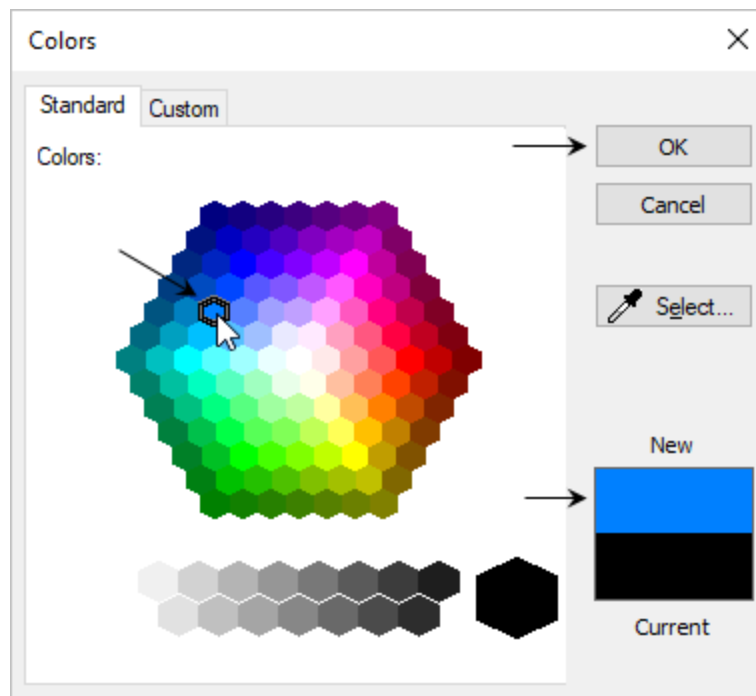
5. Now repeat the procedure again, this time named **Stock**.
6. Now let's change the color of a couple of the new layers. In the **Color** field left-click on the color box for the layer named **Curves**. This will display the **Colors** dialog.
7. Accept the default color **Black** and then pick **OK** to close the dialog.



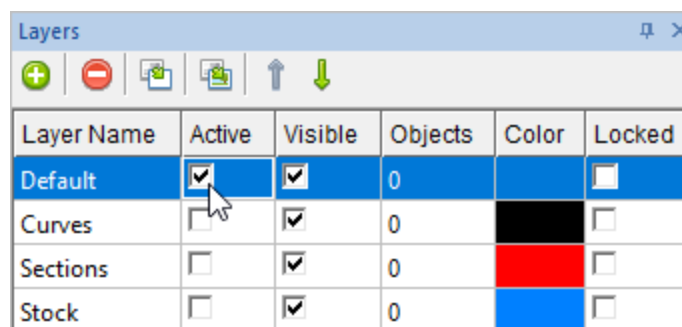
8. If the [Layer Manager](#) keeps [Auto-Hiding](#) to the left side of the display, select the [Auto Hide](#) pin icon at the top of the [Layer Manager](#). You can also see that the layer named [Curves](#) was changed to color black.
9. Now let's change the color of another layer. In the [Color](#) field left-click on the color box for the layer named [Stock](#). Again, this will display the [Colors](#) dialog.

Layers					
+ - ↺ ↻ ↑ ↓					
Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☐	17		☐
Curves	☒	☒	0		☐
Sections	☐	☐	5		☐
	☐	☐	0		☐

10. This time select the [Blue](#) color and then pick [OK](#) to close the dialog. You can use different color if you wish. If you have [Auto Hide](#) pinned, the [Layer Manager](#) will stay displayed.



11. This time let's set the [Active Layer](#). In the [Active](#) column, check the box for the layer named [Default](#). and then unpin the [Layer Manager](#) to close it.



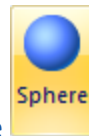
7.7.2 Model & Scale the Body



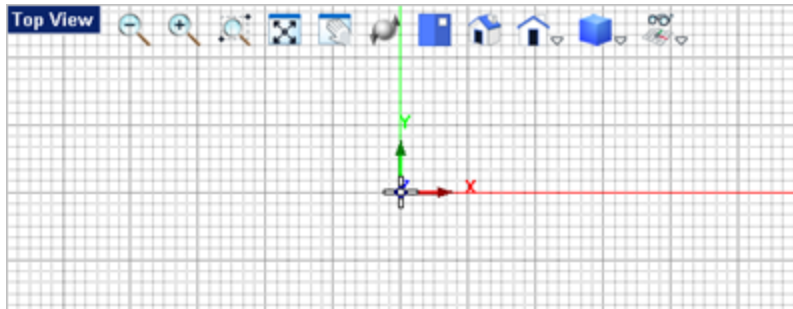
Model & Scale the Body

In this step you will model the center body using a solid sphere and non-uniform scaling.
Note: You can replace the [Solid](#) commands with [Mesh](#) commands if desired.

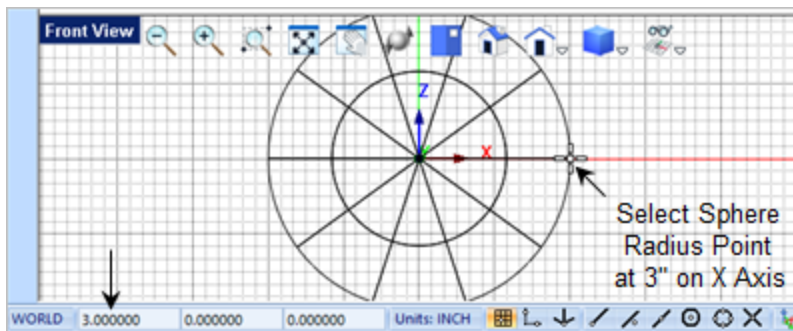
1. Activate the [Top View](#) **Top View** tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.
2. Select the [Solid Modeling](#) **Solid Modeling** tab from the top [Ribbon Bar](#).



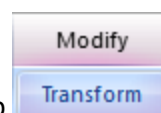
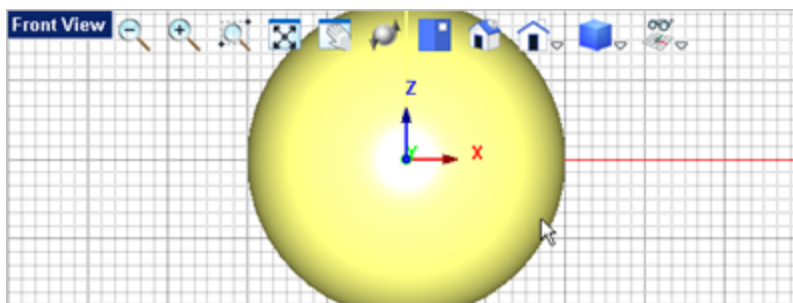
3. Now select the [Sphere](#) command.
4. In the [Status Bar](#) make sure the [Grid Snap](#) is On .
5. For the center point select the grid point at (0,0,0) or just enter the coordinates 0,0,0 in command input bar .



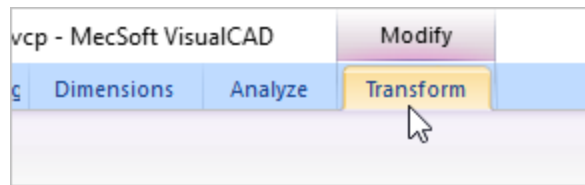
6. For the sphere radius, enter 3,0,0 or select the corresponding grid point and press <Enter>.

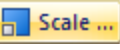


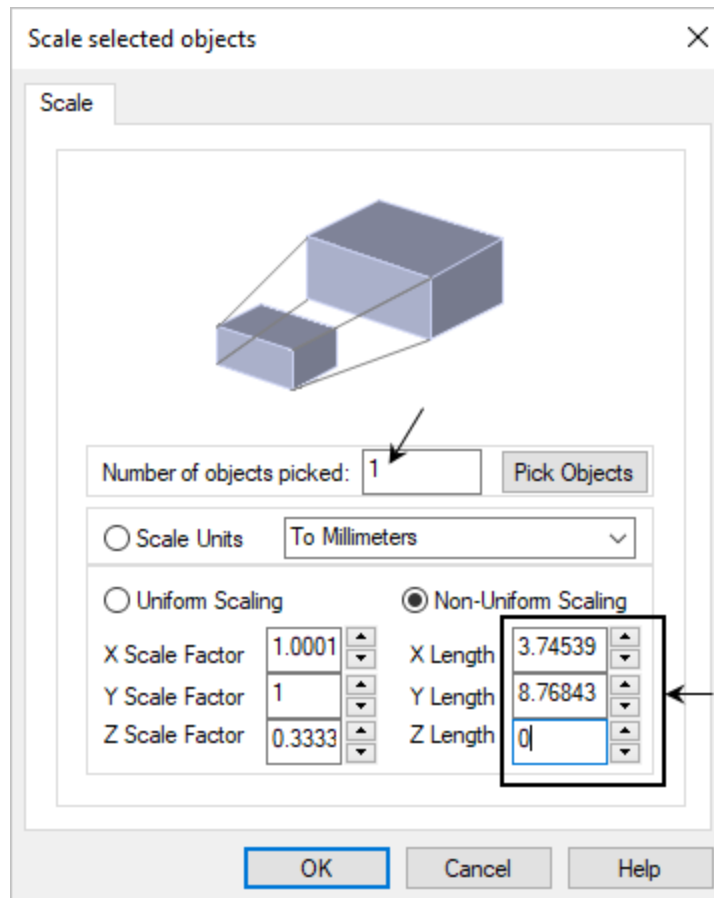
7. Select the solid sphere you just created.



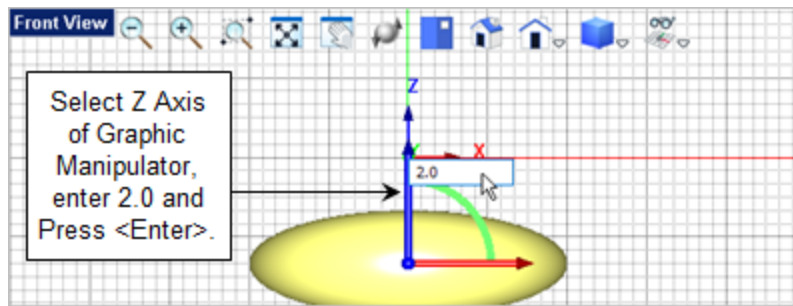
8. You see the [Modify / Transform](#) tab appear on the right end of the [Ribbon Bar](#). It ONLY appears when an entity is selected. Select the [Transform](#) tab.



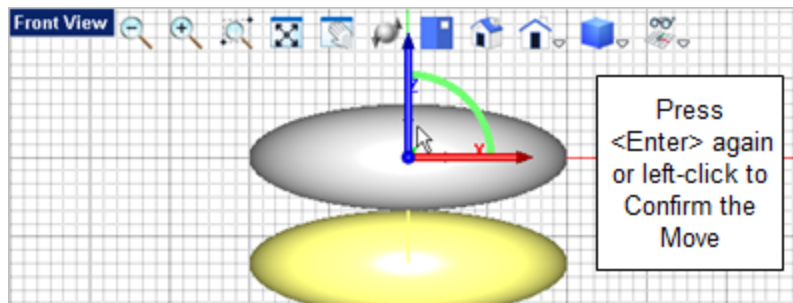
9. Select the [Scale](#)  command.
10. From the [Scale Selected Objects](#) dialog, select the [Non-Uniform Scaling](#) option.



11. Set the [X Length](#) to 6, [Y Length](#) to 6 and the [Z Length](#) to 2.
12. Pick [OK](#) and the sphere is scaled as shown below.
13. Now press [<Enter>](#) to accept the modification.
14. Let's move the scaled sphere up to the origin. First make sure the [Graphic Manipulator](#) is [On](#). The icon is located on the [Status Bar](#) .
15. Now select the sphere.
16. Select the [Blue Z](#) arrow to display the input field, enter 2.0 and press [<Enter>](#). The sphere will move up in the positive [Z Axis](#) to the 0,0,0 origin as shown below.



17. Press **<Enter>** again to accept the move.

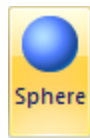


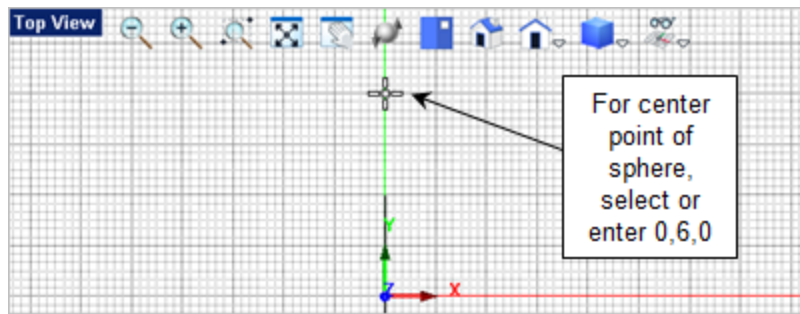
7.7.3 Model & Scale the Pedal

Model & Scale the outer Pedal

In this step you will model and scale one of the outer pedals, again using a solid sphere and non-uniform scaling. Note: You can replace the **Solid** commands with **Mesh** commands if desired.

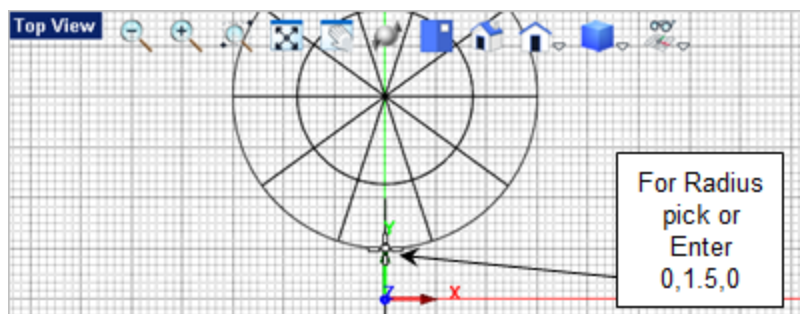
1. Activate the **Top View** **Top View** tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.

2. From the **Solid Modeling** **Solid Modeling** tab select the **Sphere**  command.
3. In the **Status Bar** make sure the **Grid Snap** is On .
4. For the center point select the grid point at (0,6,0) or just enter the coordinates 0,6,0 in command input bar **Command** and press **<Enter>**.

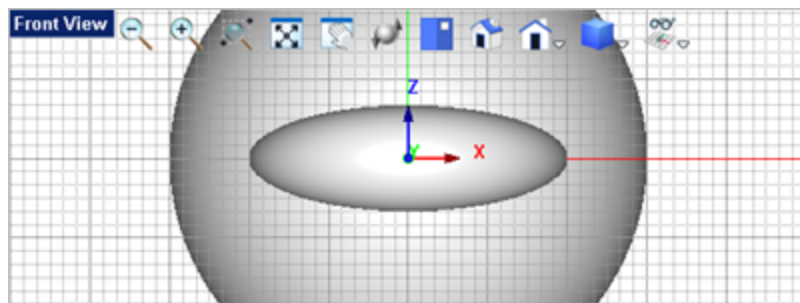


5. For the sphere radius, enter 4.5 in the command input window and press <Enter> or select the grid point located at 0,1.5,0.

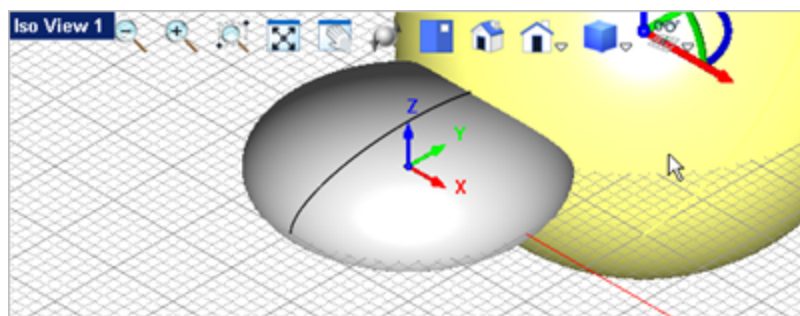
Command

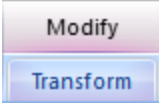
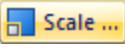


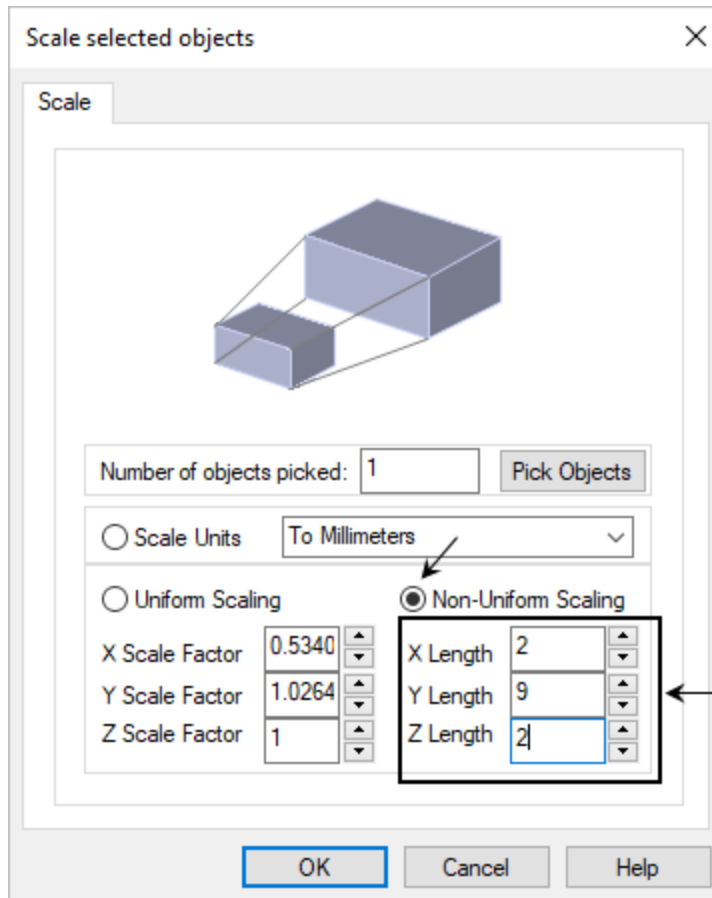
Here is what your part should look like from the [Front View](#):



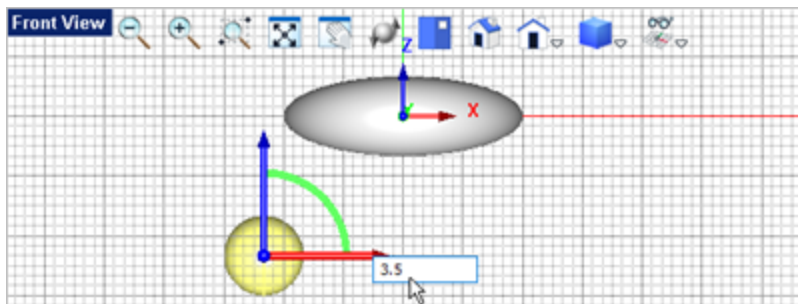
6. From [Iso View 1](#), **Iso View 1** select the solid sphere you just created.



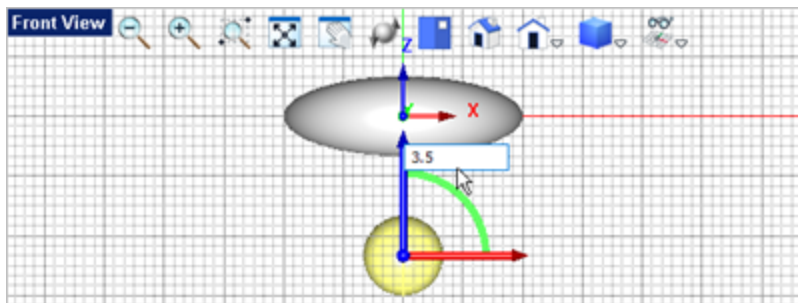
7. Select the [Transform](#)  tab from the ribbon bar.
8. Select the [Scale](#)  command.
9. From the [Scale Selected Objects](#) dialog, select the [Non-Uniform Scaling](#) option.



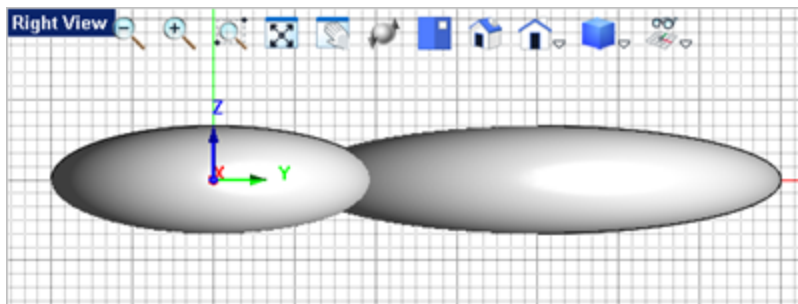
10. Set the [X Length](#) to 2, [Y Length](#) to 9 and the [Z Length](#) to 2.
11. Pick [OK](#) and the sphere is scaled as shown below.
12. Now press the [Enter](#) key to accept the modification.
13. Let's move the scaled sphere into position along the [Y Axis](#). First make sure the [Graphic Manipulator](#)  is [On](#). The icon is located on the [Status Bar](#).
14. From the [Front View](#) , select the [Red X](#) arrow to display the input field, enter 3.5 and press [Enter](#).



15. Press **<Enter>** again to confirm the move and the sphere will move up to the **Z 0** location as shown below.



16. Now select the sphere again.
17. Select the **Blue Z** arrow to display the input field, enter **3.5** and press **<Enter>**.
18. Press **<Enter>** again to confirm the move and the sphere will move to the **X 0** location. If you activate the **Right View** **Right View** your part should look like the image below.



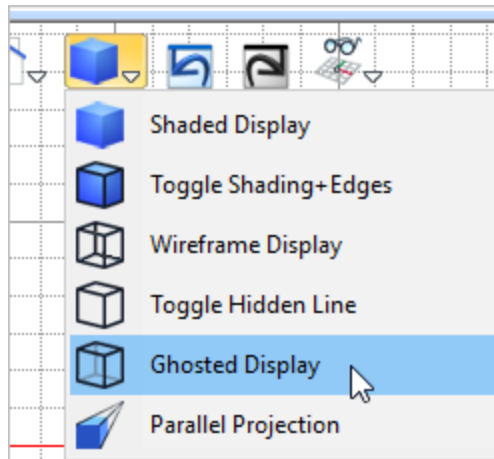
7.7.4 Ghosted Display Mode

Change the Top View to Ghosted Display

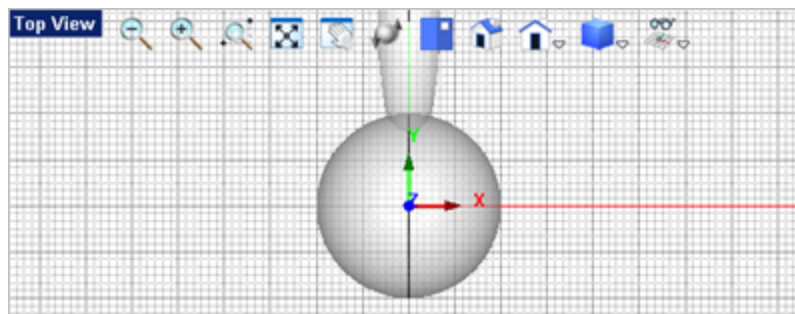
For spheres drawn from the top view, it is best viewed using the ghosted display.

1. Activate the **Top View** **Top View** tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.

2. Select the **View**  menu from the **View Toolbar** and then select **Ghosted Display**. Note: The **View Toolbar** will only display in the active viewport.



The display should now look like this:

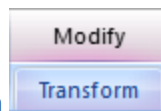
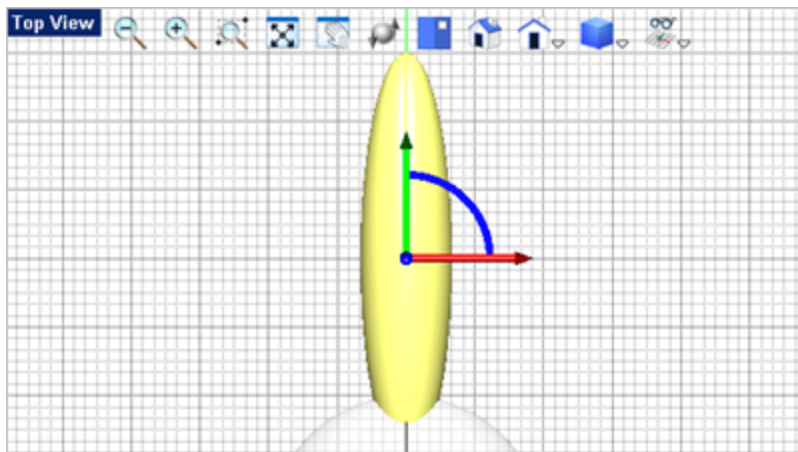


7.7.5 Polar Array the Pedal

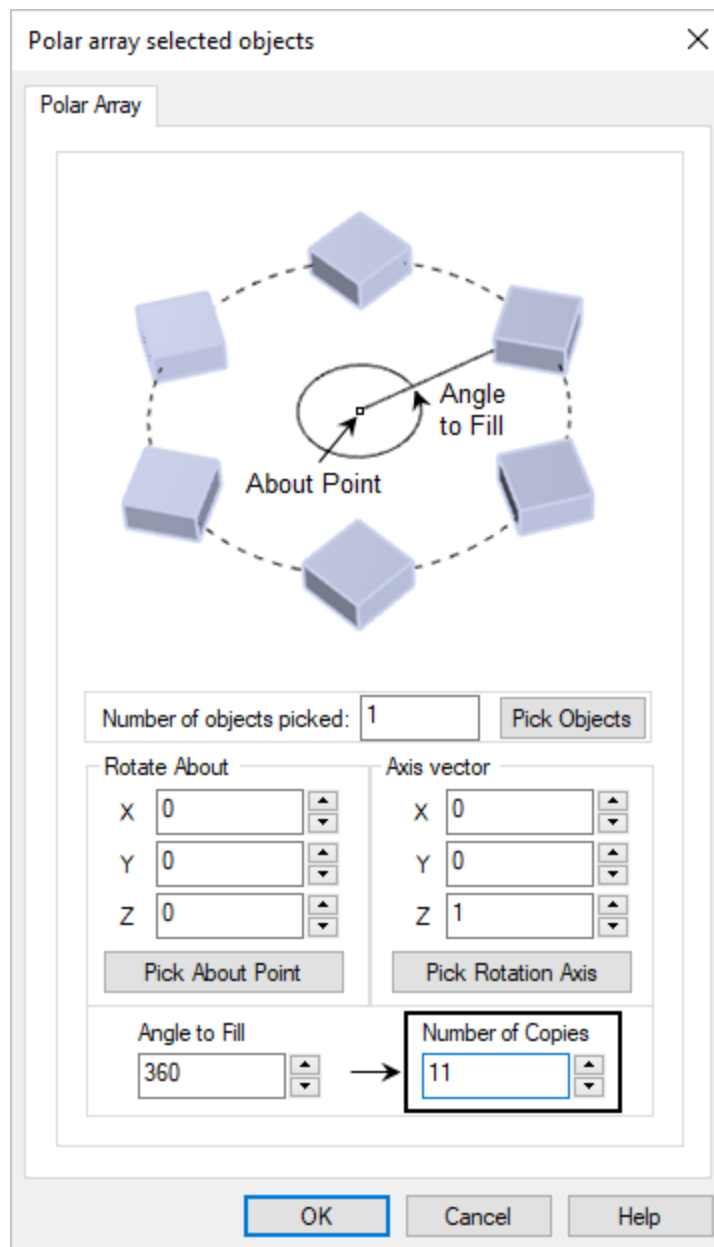
Create the Polar Array

In this step you will create a polar array of the pedal sphere we just created.

1. Activate the **Top View** **Top View** tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.
2. Select the solid sphere pedal you just created in the previous step.

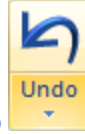


3. Select the **Transform** tab from the ribbon bar.
4. Select the **Polar Array** command. The **Polar array selected objects** dialog will display.

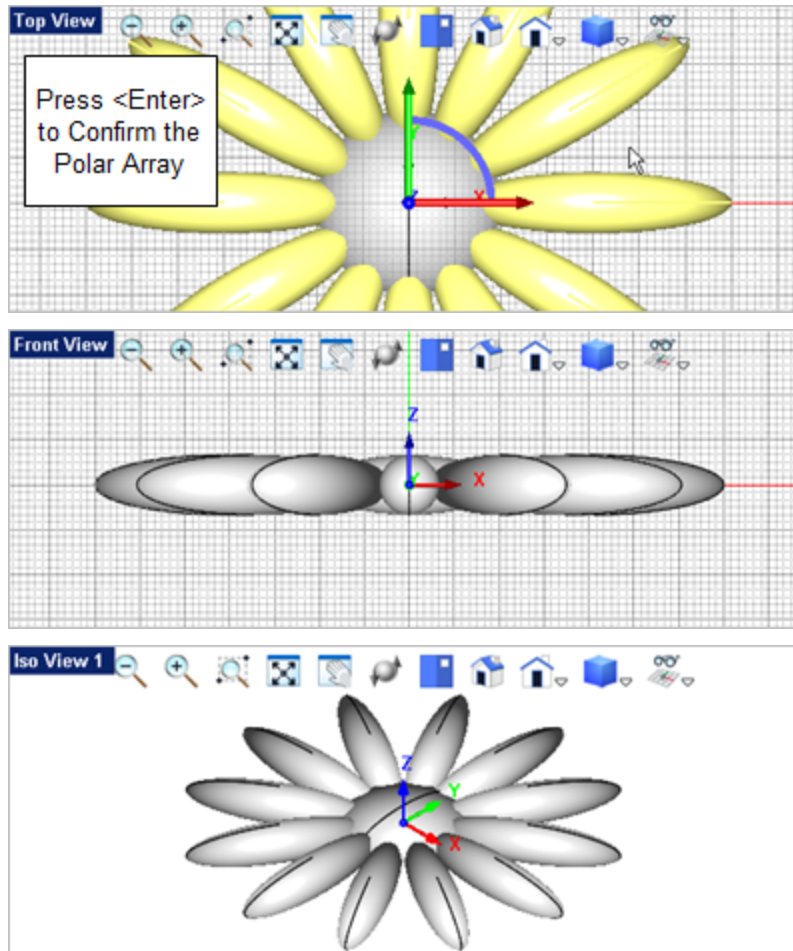


5. In the **Number of Objects** field, enter 11.
6. The remaining options in the dialog should use the default values shown in the dialog above.
7. Pick **OK** from the dialog to create and preview the polar array.

8. Press <Enter> to accept the polar array. Your drawing should look like the images



below. If not, select the [Undo](#) command and go back and repeat the previous steps.



7.7.6 Additional Spheres

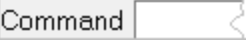


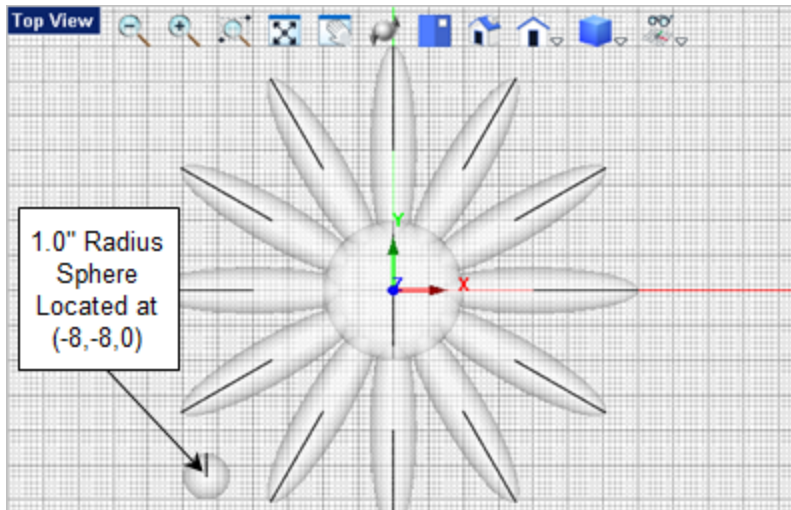
Create the 4 additional Spheres

In this step you will create the four spheres located in the outer corners of the design. Note: You can replace the [Solid](#) commands with [Mesh](#) commands if desired.

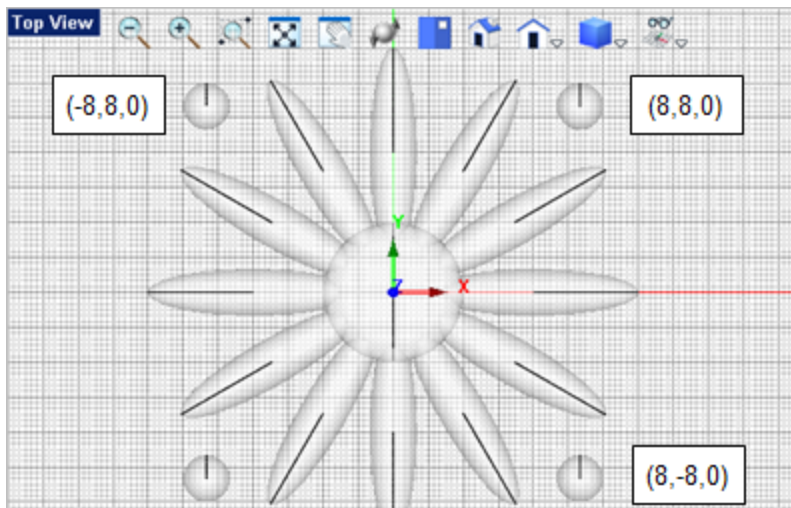
1. Activate the [Top View](#) **Top View** tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.

2. Form the [Solid Modeling](#) **Solid Modeling** tab select the [Sphere](#)  command.

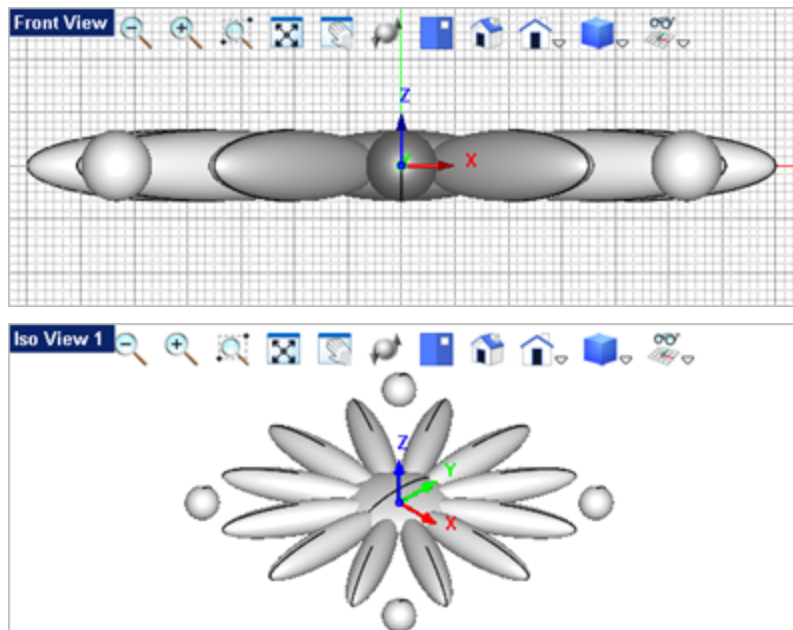
3. In the [Status Bar](#) make sure the [Grid Snap](#) is On .
4. For the center point select the grid point at $(-8,-8,0)$ or just enter the coordinates $-8,-8,0$ in command input bar  and press **<Enter>**.
5. For the sphere radius, enter 1.0 in the command input bar  and press **<Enter>** or select the grid point located at $-8,-8,0$ shown below.



6. Press **<Enter>** to repeat the [Solid Sphere](#) command.
7. Create the three additional spheres located at the coordinates shown in the illustration below.



Your drawing should look like this:



7.7.7 Create & Trim Section Curves



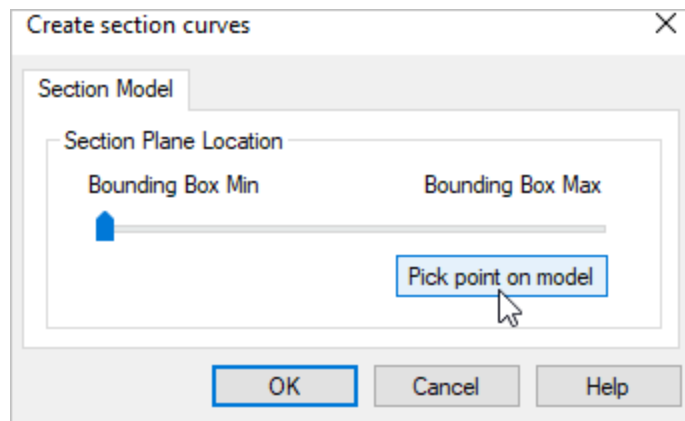
Create Section Curves

In this step we will create section curves that lie on the **XY plane**. Section curves are useful for creating offset boundaries which in turn can be used for toolpath containment.

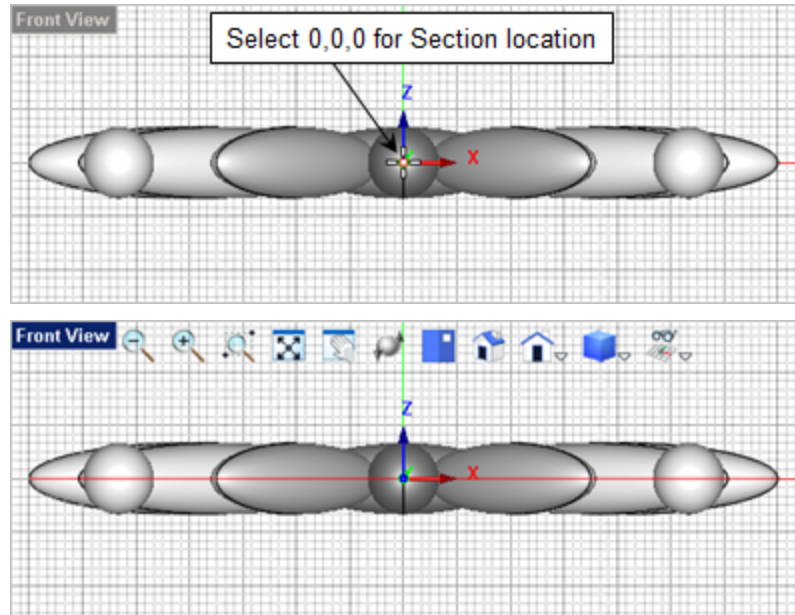
1. Open the [Layer Manager](#)  and set the **Active Layer** to **Sections**. Refer to the previous steps for displaying and using the [Layer Manager](#).

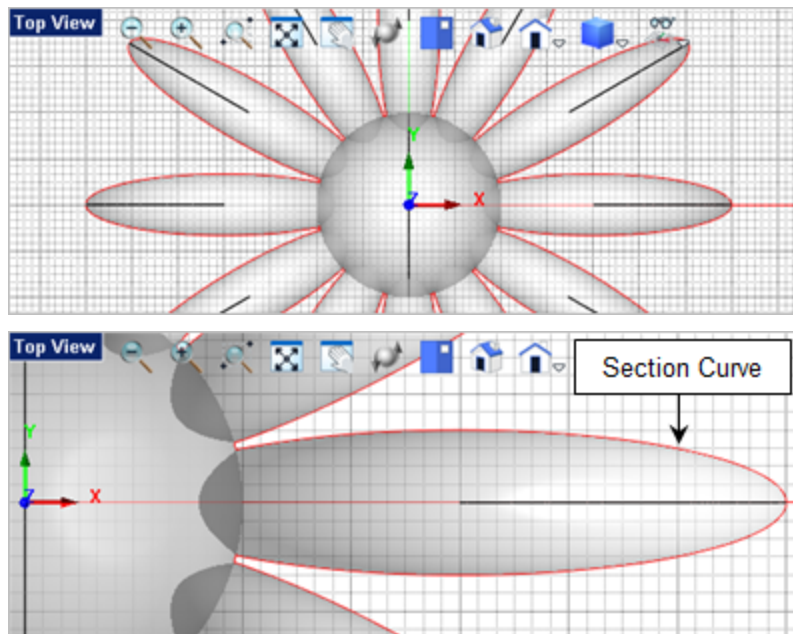
Layers					
    					
Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☒	0		☐
Curves	☐	☒	0		☐
Sections	☒	☒	0		☐
Stock	☐	☒	0		☐

2. Section curve are created in the plane of the active layer. We want the section curves to be generated on the **XY plane** so activate the **Top View** **Top View** tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.
3. Form the [Curve Modeling](#) [Curve Modeling](#) tab select the [Section Curve](#)  command. The [Create section curves](#) dialog will display.



4. If you move the slider you will see dynamically where the section curves lie. In this case, with the **Top View** active, moving the slider will display section curves dynamically in the **XY plane** and in the **Z Axis**.
5. We want to precisely locate the section plane so select the **Pick point on model** button from the dialog.
6. Then in the **Front View** pick the **Z 0** grid point or simply enter **0,0,0** in the command input bar **Command** and press **<Enter>**. The section curves will be created and displayed in all four viewports.



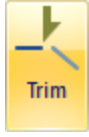


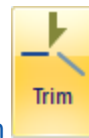
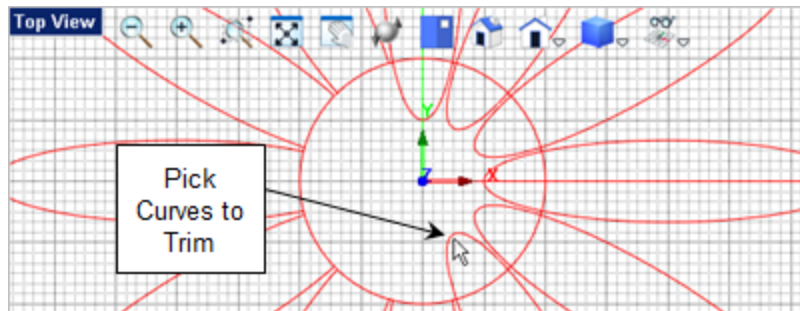
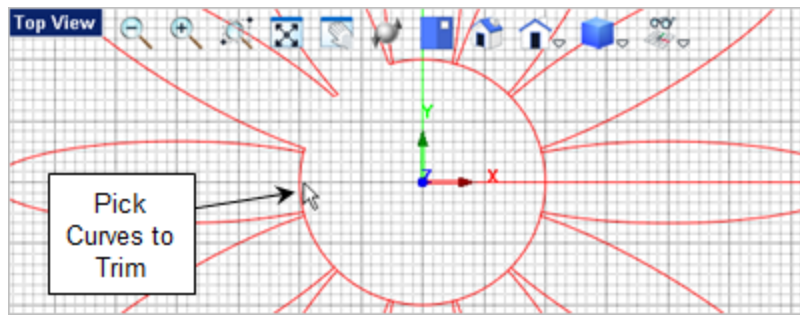
7. Open the [Layer Manager](#) and set the [Active Layer](#) to [Sections](#). Refer to the previous steps for displaying and using the [Layer Manager](#) .

Layers					
Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☐	17		☐
Curves	☐	☐	5		☐
Sections	☒	☒	5		☐
Stock	☐	☐	1		☐

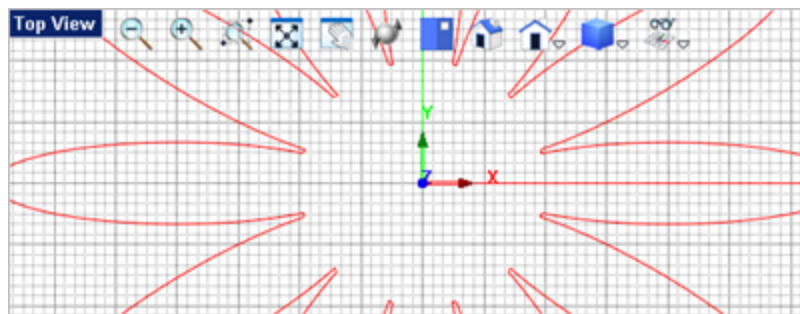
In the following steps we will trim our section curves and merge them.

8. From the [Top View](#) **Top View**, scroll to zoom in on the center where the section curves from the body and the pedals overlap each other.

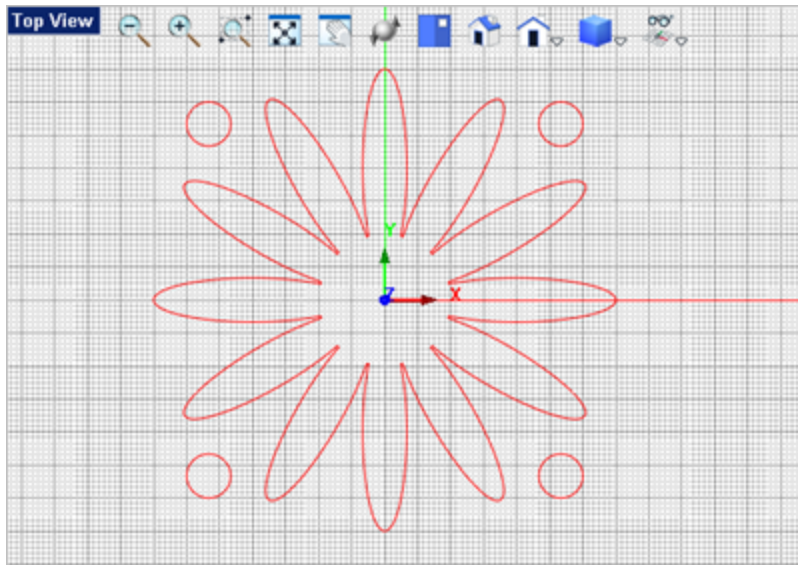
9. From the [Curve Modeling](#) **Curve Modeling** tab, select the [Trim](#)  command.
10. Pick on the curve where you want it to be trimmed away.



11. Press the <Enter> to repeat the Trim command and then pick another location to trim.
12. Repeat this procedure until all of the curves are trimmed as shown below.



13. Now scroll to zoom out to see all of the curves.



14. Press **<Ctrl+A>** to select all of the curves.



15. Now from the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Merge Curves** command. This will merge all of the curves into one curve. This makes it easier to work with. Only curves that are joined end to end will be merged. Separate curves such as those created from the section of the outer spheres will remain separate curves.

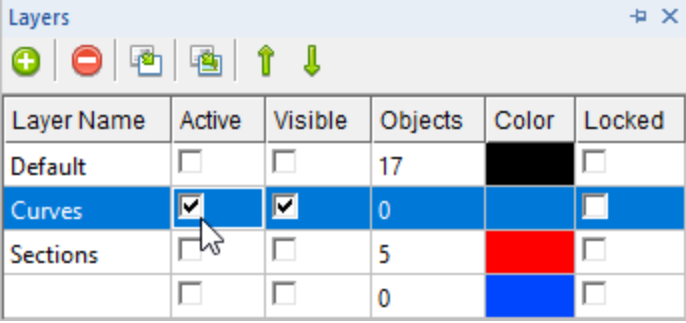
7.7.8 Create Offset Curves



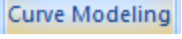
Create Offset Curves

1. In the following steps you will create **Offset** curves from your **Section Curves**. Creating offset curves will also aid you during machining. For example, if you do not want to rough the entire stock, you can use section, offset or any other curve boundaries to limit/contain your toolpaths.

2. Open the [Layer Manager](#)  and set the **Active Layer** to **Curves** and then make all other layers hidden. Refer to the previous steps for displaying and using the [Layer Manager](#).



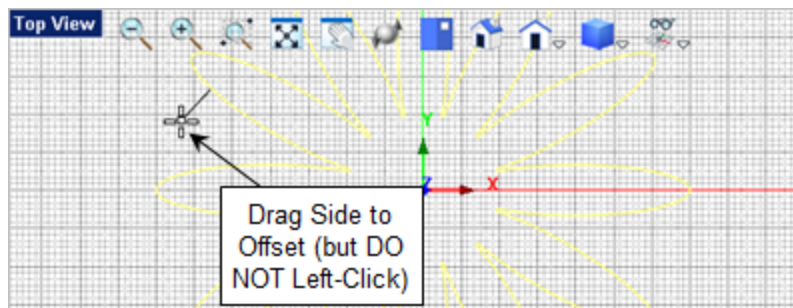
Layer Name	Active	Visible	Objects	Color	Locked
Default	☐	☐	17	Black	☐
Curves	☒	☒	0	Blue	☐
Sections	☐	☐	5	Red	☐
	☐	☐	0	Blue	☐

3. Now, select the main section curve, then go to the [Curve Modeling](#) 

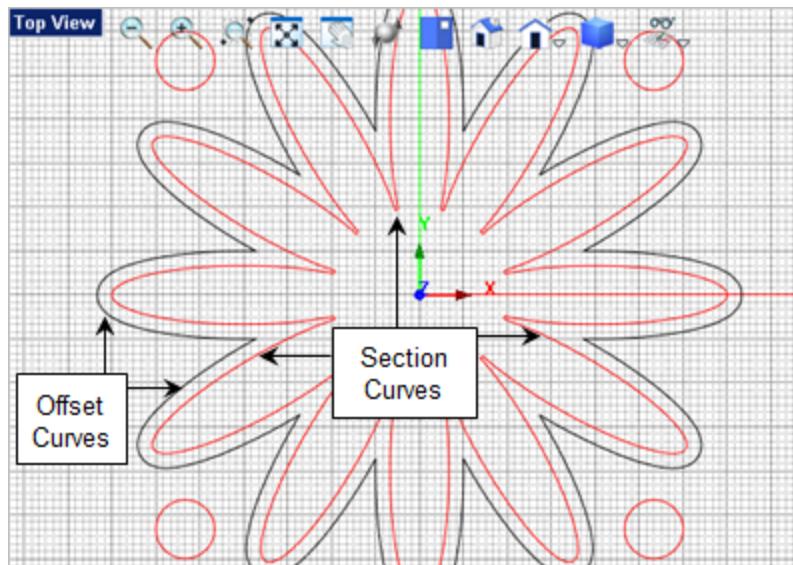


tab and select the [Offset](#) command.

4. From the [Top View](#)  move the cursor towards the outside of the curve so that you see the offset direction indicator point toward the outside. DO NOT pick a point!



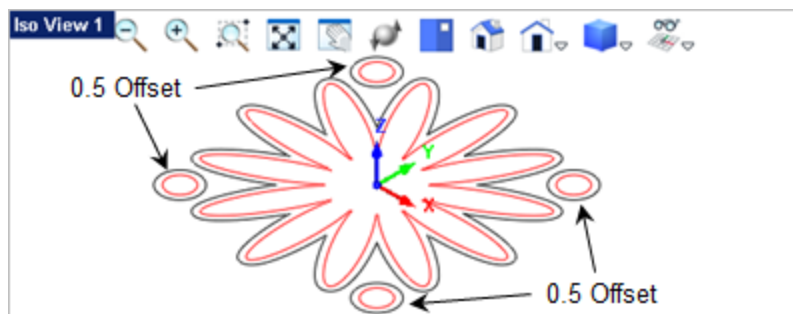
5. Now with the curve offset direction displayed enter **0.5** in the command input bar  and press the **<Enter>** key. The curve will be offset toward the outside by **0.5** inches.



6. Press the <Enter> key to repeat the **Offset** command. This time select the section curves from one of the outer spheres, drag the cursor to indicate the offset direction and press <Enter> again. The offset value will default to the last value entered.



7. Repeat the **Offset** command to create offset curves for the other 3 remaining section curves.



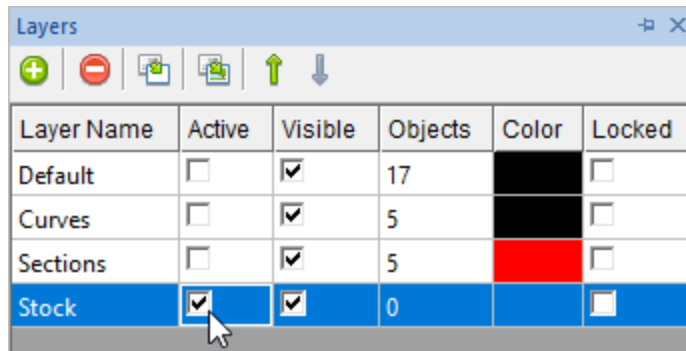
7.7.9 Create the Stock Boundary



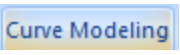
Create the Stock Boundary Rectangle

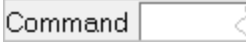
In this step you will create a 24" x 24" rectangle around the part. This can be used later during machining to help define the stock dimensions.

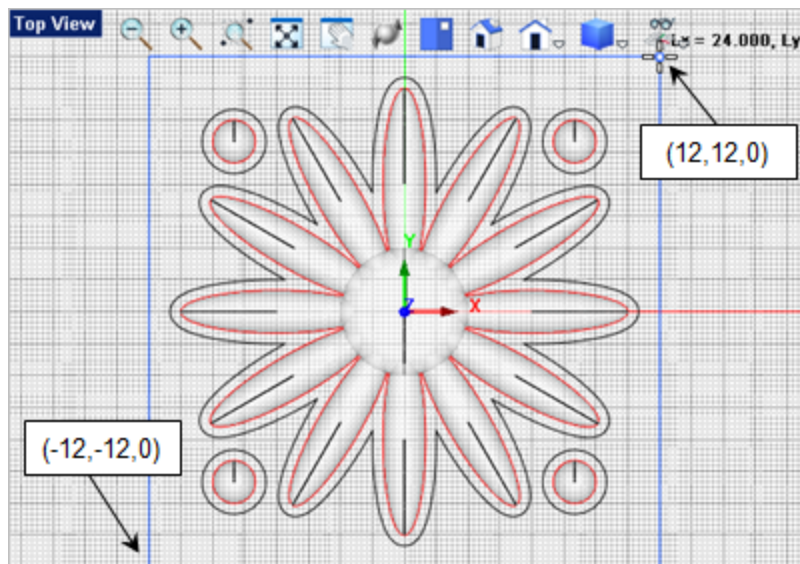
1. Open the [Layer Manager](#)  and set the **Active Layer** to **Stock**. Refer to the previous steps for displaying and using the [Layer Manager](#).



2. Activate the **Top View**  tab by selecting anywhere in the viewport.

3. From the **Curve Modeling**  tab select the **Rectangle**  command.

4. For the first corner of the rectangle, you can select the grid point shown below or enter **-12,-12,0** in the command input bar  and press **<Enter>**.

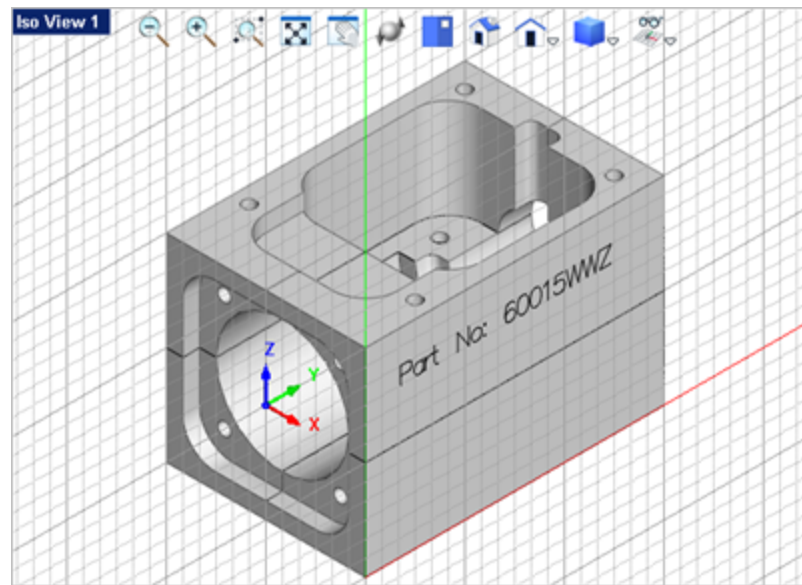


5. For the second corner of the rectangle, you can select the grid point shown below or enter **12,12,0** in the command input bar  and press **<Enter>**.
6. Save the file as [Daisy_Decor_Completed.vcp](#).

Congratulations, you have completed this exercise!

7.8 #8: Using Construction Planes

In this exercise you will learn how to use [Construction Planes \(C-Planes\)](#) to navigate and add features and text to your 3D models. [C-Planes](#) are also critical in learning how to orient imported parts for machining. Thus learning how to orient [C-Planes](#) and how to orient parts with the use of [C-planes](#) is critical knowledge for all [VisualCAD](#) users.



Using Construction Planes



What you will learn:

In this exercise you will perform the following [VisualCAD](#) tasks:

1. [Orient the C-Plane.](#)
2. [Draw on a Face.](#)
3. [Other C-Plane Options.](#)
4. [Orient the Part.](#)

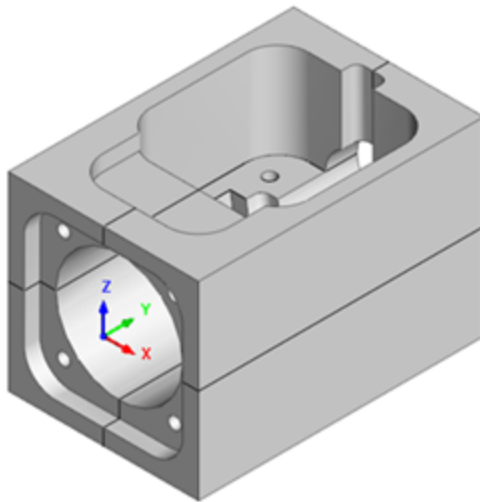
7.8.1 Orient the C-Plane



Orient the C-Plane

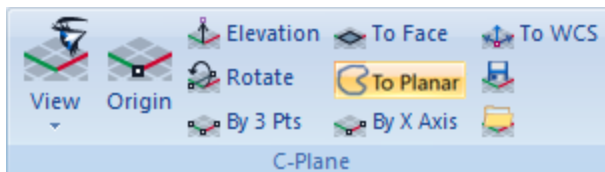
In this step we'll show you how to orient the [Construction Plane \(C-Plane\)](#).

1. First if you have completed and save the part model from [Exercise #5 Connector Block](#), open that part now. It is shown below:



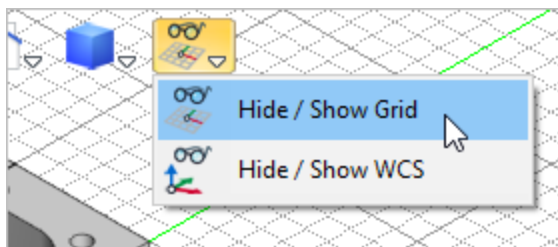
Connector Block

- Now select the **Modeling Aids** tab. On the very right end of the ribbon bar you will find the **C-Plane** pane.



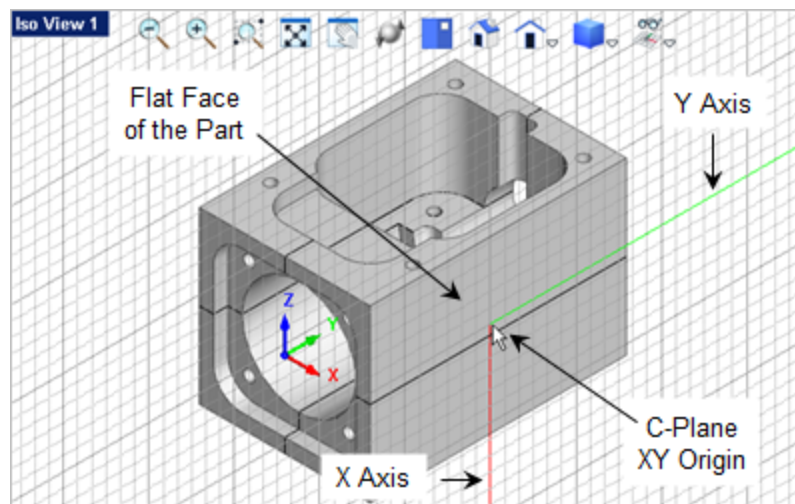
- From the **Modeling Aids** **Modeling Aids** tab select the **C-Plane to 3D Face** **To Face** command.
- The command prompt says: "Pick a flat area". Select the right side face of the part and you will see that the **C-Plane** snaps to that face.

If the **Grid** is not visible, select **Hide / Show Grid** from the **View Toolbar**.



💡 It is best to have the **Construction Plane Grid** visible. This allows you to better keep track of where the **C-Plane** is located and oriented.

- You can now see that the **C-Plane** and the **Grid** is alined with the right side flat face of the part. You will notice that the **C-Plane** origin is position at the point on the flat face you selected.

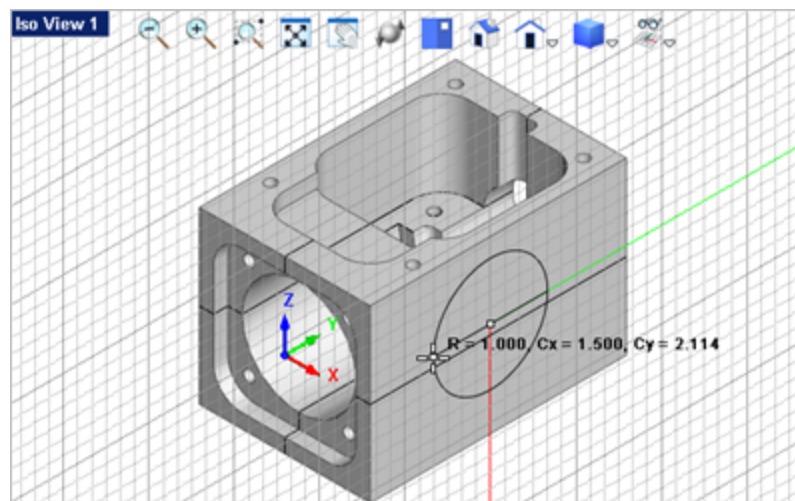


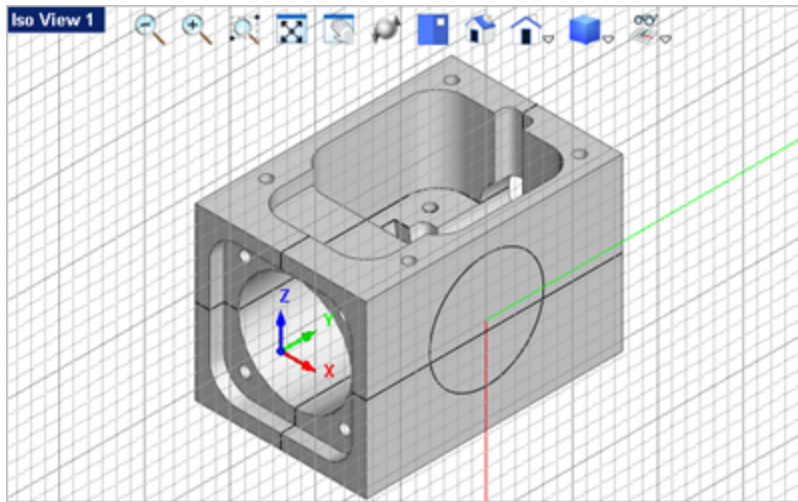
6. You can now draw on the C-Plane (see [Text on a Part Face](#) for more information).



From the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab select the **Circle** **Circle on Point** command.

7. For the center point, toggle on the **Grid Object Snap**  and select the origin point or simply enter **0,0** in the command window and press **<Enter>**.
8. Now select a point on the diameter of the circle.





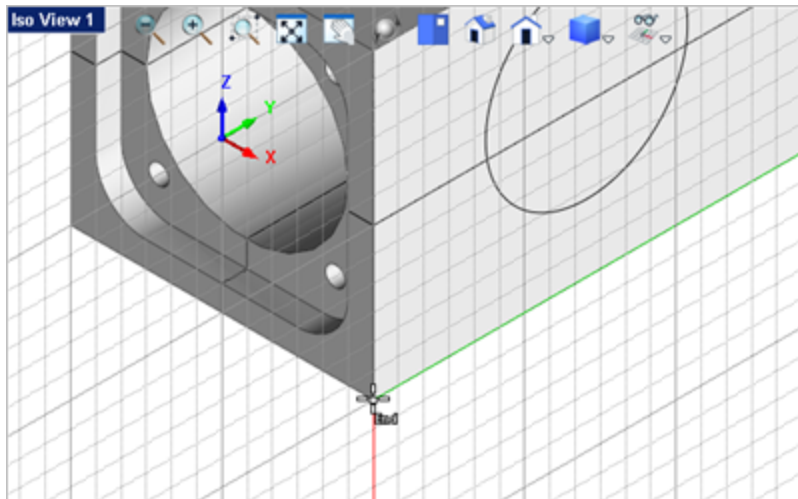
9. You can also move the C-Plane origin. From the **Modeling Aids** **Modeling Aids** tab



select the **C-Plane Origin** command.

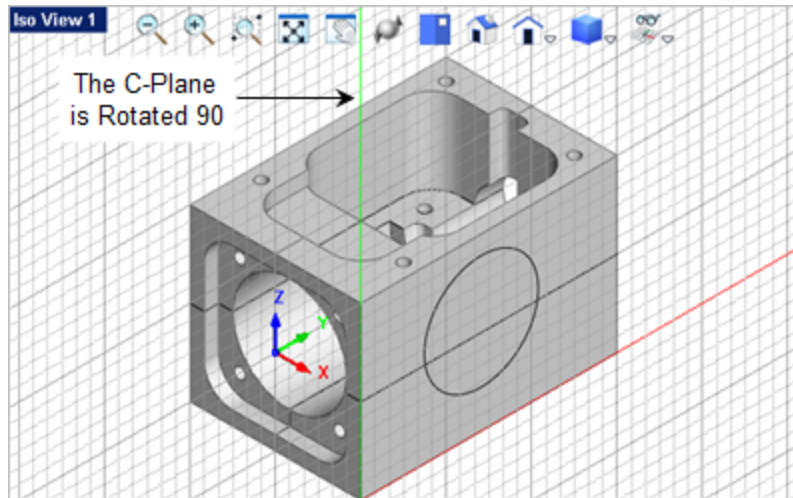
10. The command prompt says: "Pick origin point or enter coordinates x,y and Z" Enable the **End Point Snap**  from the **Status Toolbar** and then select the bottom right end point of the face.

You will see that the **C-Plane** origin and the **Grid** is moved to this point.

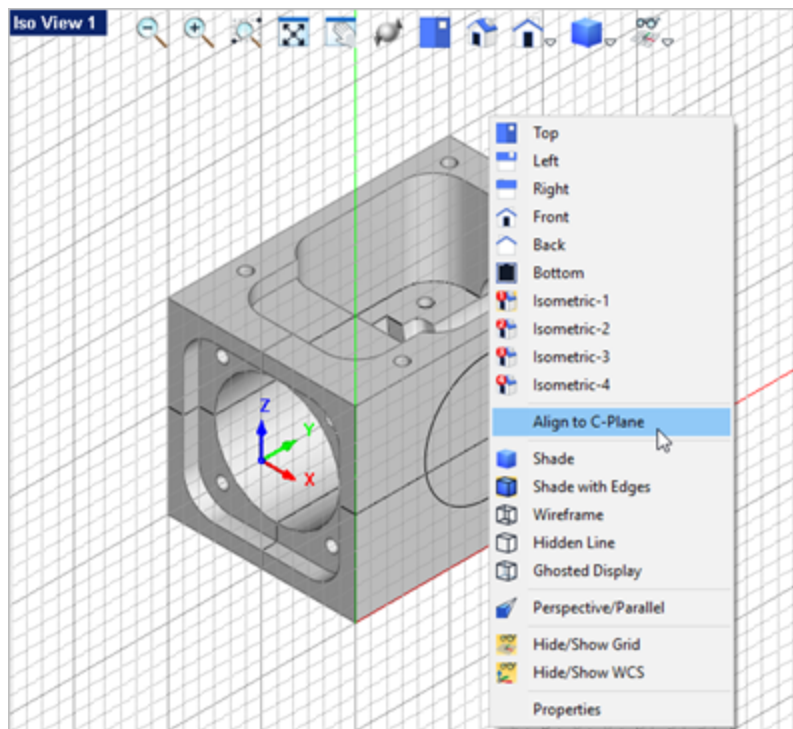


11. If you need the **X Axis** of the **C-Plane** aligned horizontally across the bottom of the part you can select the **Rotate C-Plane about Axis**  **Rotate** command. It is also located on the **Modeling Aids** **Modeling Aids** tab.

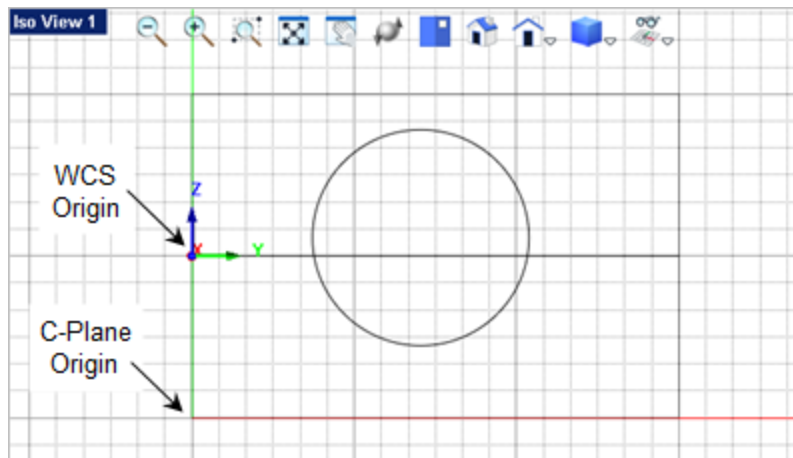
12. The command prompt says: "Enter axis to rotate about and angle to rotate by (eg: X,45)" We want to rotate the Z Axis 90 degrees so enter Z,90 in the command window and press <Enter>.



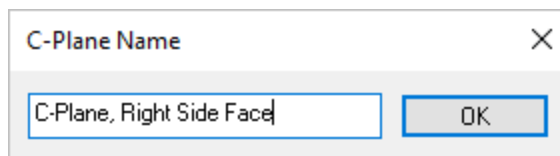
13. Now what if you want the view orientation aligned with the C-Plane?
14. Just right-click anywhere in the view to display the View pop-up menu and select the **Align to C-Plane** command. This menu contains many Viewport related commands.



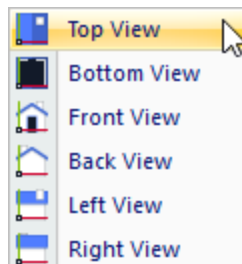
15. With the **C-Plane** aligned with the active **Viewport** pay close attention to where the origin of the **C-Plane** is:

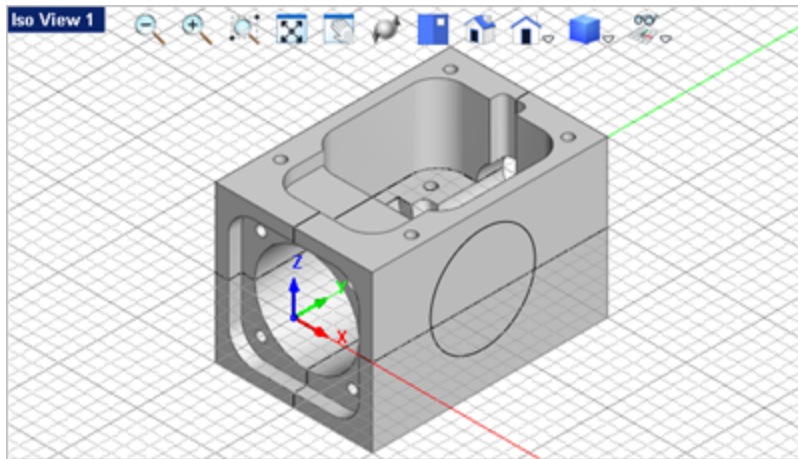


16. Now you may want to come back to the **C-Plane** later so let's save it. From the **Modeling Aids** **Modeling Aids** tab select the **Save C-Plane**  command.
17. In the **C-Plane Name** dialog enter a unique name for the active **C-Plane** and then pick **OK**.

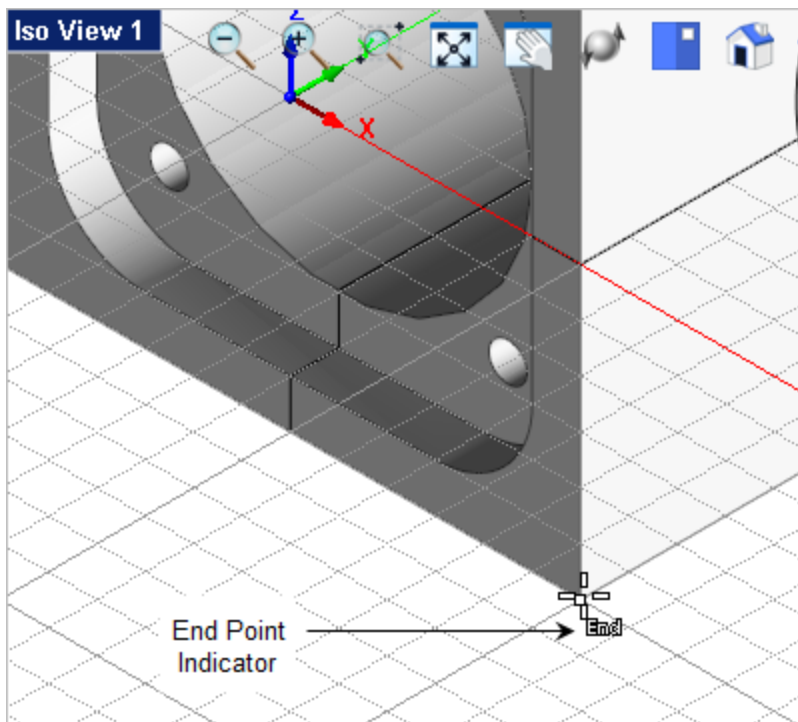


18. The active **C-Plane** is now saved with the part file.
19. Now let's change the **C-Plane** back to the default top view. From the **Modeling Aids**



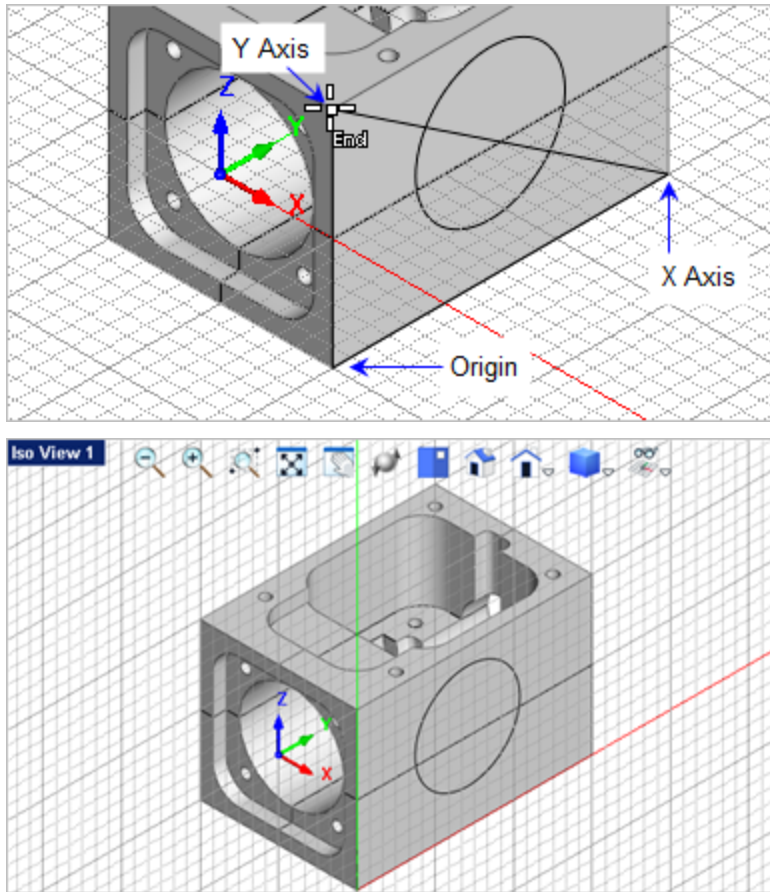


20. Here is an easier way to align the **C-Plane** to the face AND align the **XY Axis** of the **C-Plane** at the same time. From the **Modeling Aids** **Modeling Aids** tab select the **C-Plane by 3 Points** **By 3 Pts** command.
21. The first point selected will be the origin, so make sure the **End Point Snap**  is toggled on.
22. Then select the bottom left corner end point of the right side face of the part. **Note:** Do Not pick until you see the "End" indicated at the cursor location.



23. For the **X Axis** point select the end point at the back end of the part on the right side face.

24. For the **Y Axis** point select the end point at the top of the part on the right side face.

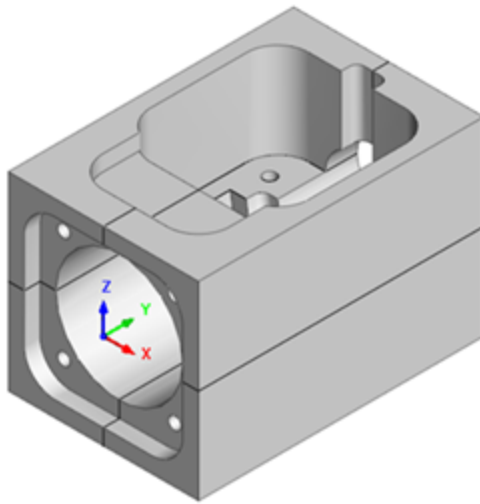


7.8.2 Text on a Part Face

Drawing on a Face

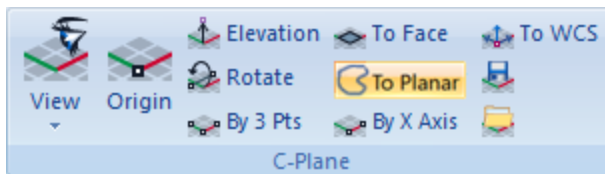
In the last step (see [Orient the C-Plane](#)) we discussed different ways to orient the **C-Plane**. In this step we'll show you how to draw on a selected part face. This will come in handy if you want to identify your 3D parts or for modifying them.

1. First if you have completed and save the part model from [Exercise #5 Connector Block](#), open that part now. It is shown below:

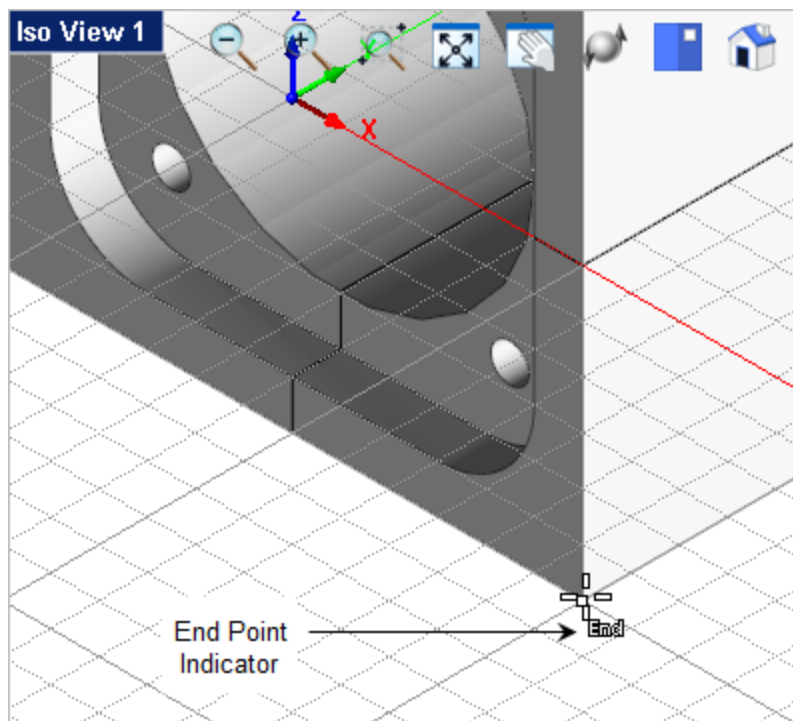


Connector Block

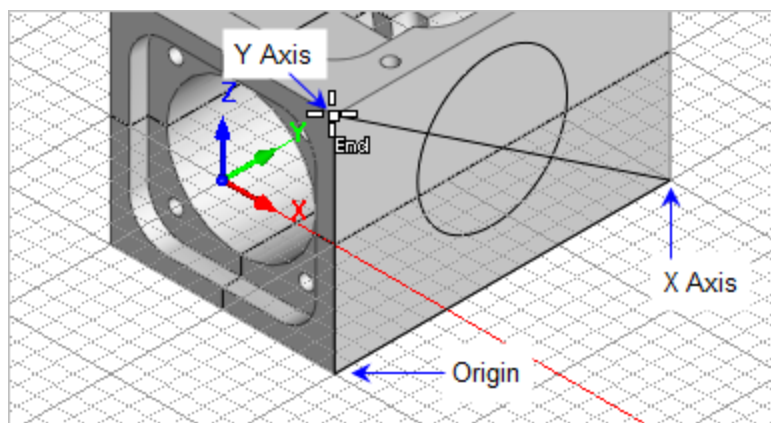
2. Now select the **Modeling Aids** **Modeling Aids** tab. On the very right end of the ribbon bar you will find the **C-Plane** pane.

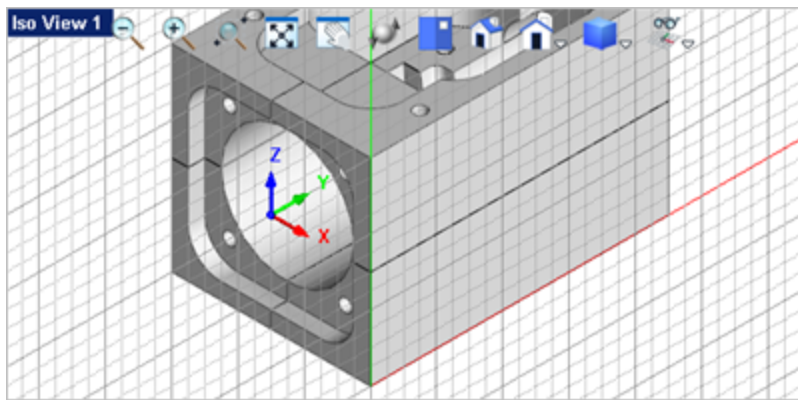


3. From the **Modeling Aids** **Modeling Aids** tab select the **C-Plane by 3 Points** **By 3 Pts** command.
4. The first point selected will be the origin, so make sure the **End Point Snap**  is toggled on.
5. Then select the bottom left corner end point of the right side face of the part. **Note:** Do Not pick until you see the "End" indicated at the cursor location.

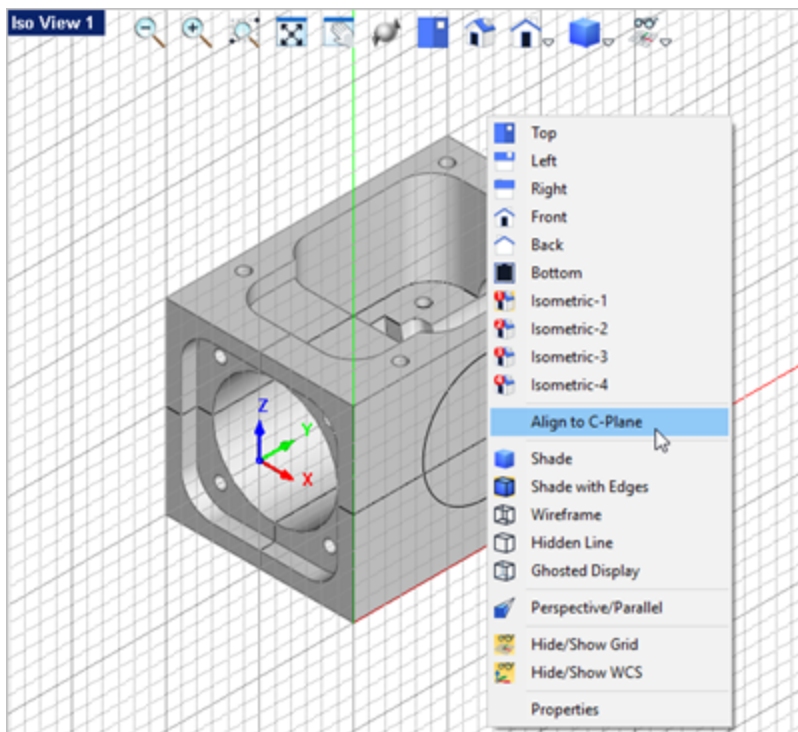


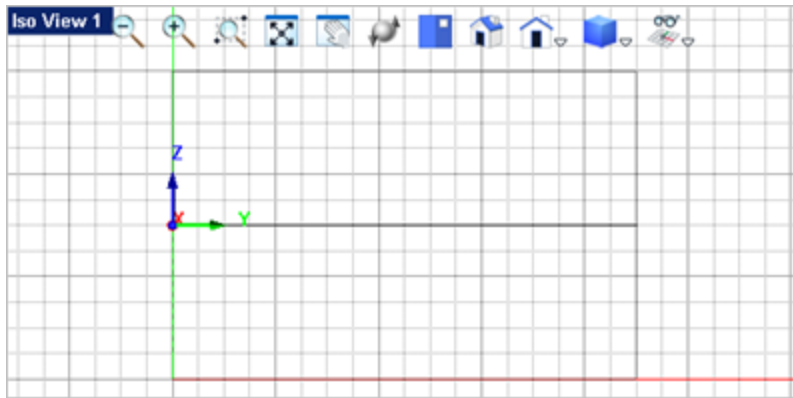
6. For the **X Axis** point select the end point at the back end of the part on the right side face.
7. For the **Y Axis** point select the end point at the top of the part on the right side face.



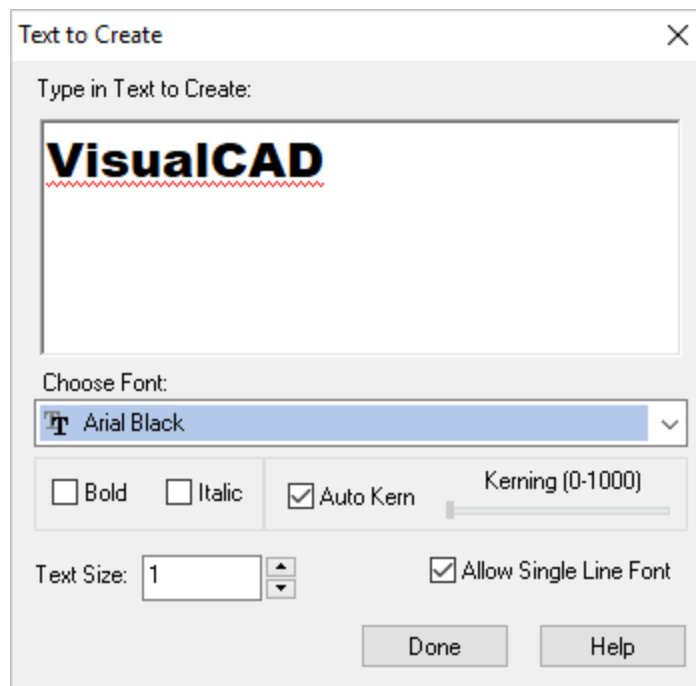


8. Now right-click anywhere in the view to display the **Viewpoint** pop-up menu and select the **Align to C-Plane** command. This menu contains the **Viewport** related commands.

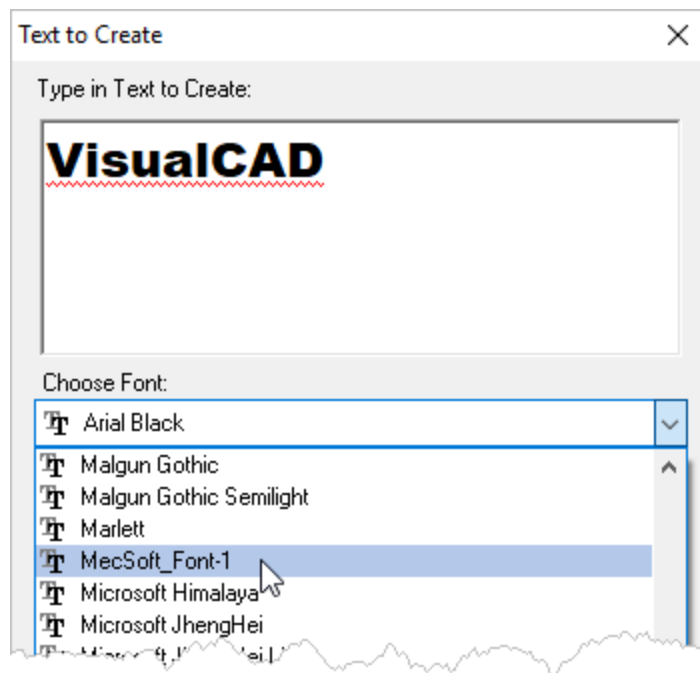




9. If you want to simply label your part you can add dimension text that will lie on the [C-Plane](#). See [Drawing & Dimensioning](#) for that exercise.
10. In this exercise we will create text curves that you can engrave with the [2-1/2 Engraving](#) toolpath strategy, go to the [Curve Modeling](#) **Curve Modeling** tab and select the [Create Text](#)  command.
11. This will display the [Text to Create](#) dialog.



12. For engraving text you may want to use a single stroke font. From the Font drop-down menu select the text font named [MecSoft_Font-1](#).



💡 If you do not see the MecSoft Font, close VisualCAD and [click here to Download the single stroke font](#). Unzip and copy the file `MecSoft_Font_1.ttf` to the `C:\Windows\Fonts` folder.

13. The text preview will now look like this.



14. Make the following adjustments to the dialog:

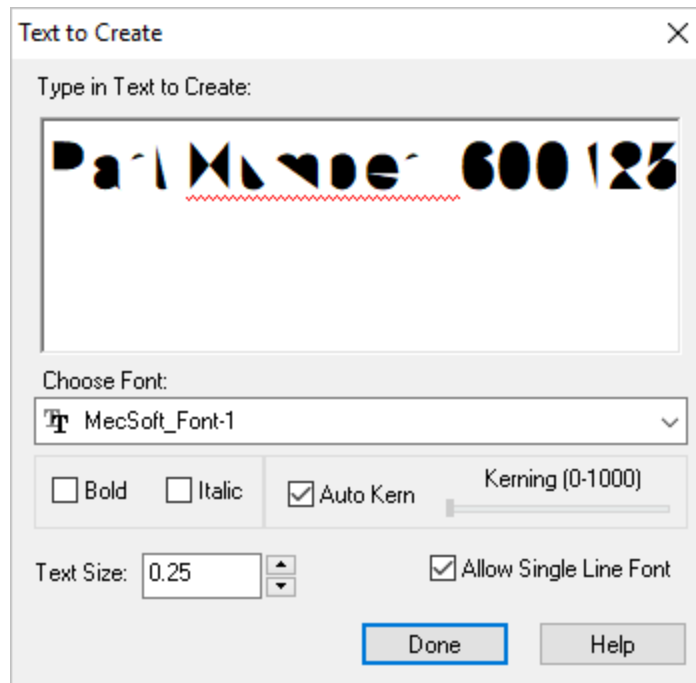
Allow Single Line Font: Checked

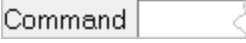
Text Size: 0.25

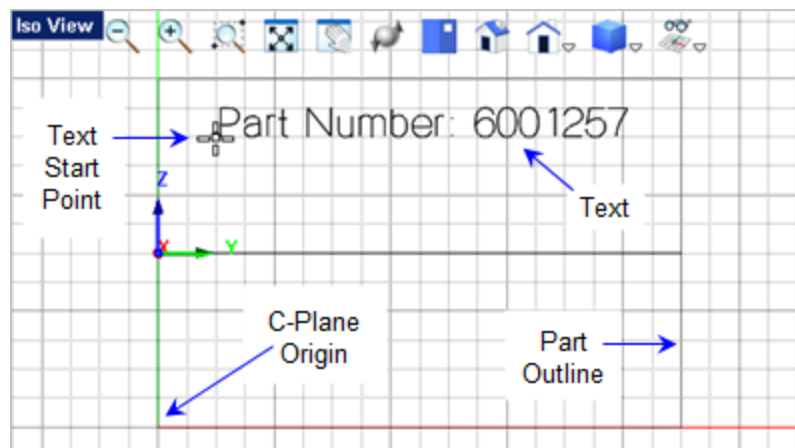
15. Now place in the **Type in Text to Create** window, replace the text **VisualCAD** with the following text:

Part Number: 6001257

16. The dialog should look like this:

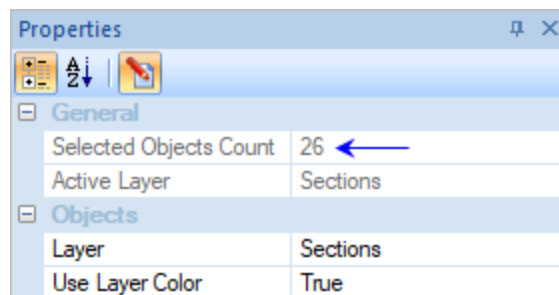


17. Now pick the **Done** button. The dialog will close and command prompt says: **Enter start point of text.**
18. You will see the text as you move the cursor around the **Viewport**.
19. Enable the **Grid Snap**  and then select the grid point to position the text, or **0.5,2.5** in the command window  and press **<Enter>**. The text should appear like this:



The text is actually individual curves that you can select as [Control Geometry](#) in your machining operations.

20. To select the curves, first make sure that the option [Use Preselection Highlight](#) is unchecked. It is located on the [System](#) section of the [Options](#) dialog ([Home tab > Options > System](#)). This was covered in the [Set System Options](#) section of [Exercise #1](#).
21. Now select one of the curves in the text or window select all of the curves in the text and then pick the [Properties](#)  icon from the [Status Bar](#) to display the [Properties](#) dialog.
22. You will see that the text is actually 26 individual objects.



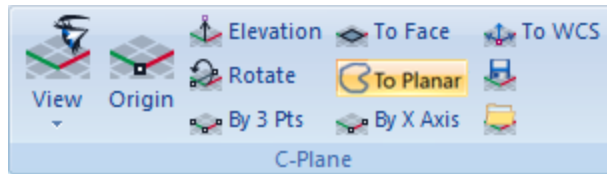
7.8.3 Other C-Plane Commands

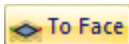
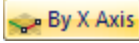
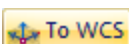


Other C-Plane Commands

Be sure review the other [C-Plane](#) commands listed below.

1. Select the [Modeling Aids](#) [Modeling Aids](#) tab.
2. The [C-Plane](#) command pane is located on the right side of the ribbon bar:



Icon	Command
	Immediately sets the orientation of the C-Plane to be parallel to the plane of the currently active view. The origin remains the same.
	Moves the origin of the C-Plane to a selected point or entered coordinates. The current configuration of the construction plane is saved whenever the model is saved.
	Moves the elevation of the C-Plane along its normal (perpendicular to the plane). Input is a single distance and may be positive or negative. A positive number moves the plane towards the positive end of the coordinate axes even if the viewing location is along the negative axis. All input values are treated as an incremental distance relative to the current location of the plane.
	Rotates the C-Plane about one of the principle axes of the current C-Plane , X, Y, or Z. The center of rotation is the center of the plane and not necessarily the origin. Input is 'axis,degrees'.
	Three points are selected (origin, x-axis and y-axis) or entered to re-orient the C-Plane . The y-axis point defines the C-Plane and the general direction of the positive y-axis.
	The C-Plane will be oriented to a selected flat plane of a geometry object. The pick point will become the C-Plane origin.
	Two points are entered to re-orient the x-axis of the C-Plane :
	Resets the C-Plane back to its default orientation relative to the WCS and the currently active viewport. The origin will be the WCS origin.
	This option saves the C-Plane orientation from the currently active view. A name must be provided for later reference when loading.
	This option allows the retrieval of a saved C-Plane into the currently active view. A list of previously saved C-Planes is

presented. These saved [C-Planes](#) may also be deleted in this option or renamed.

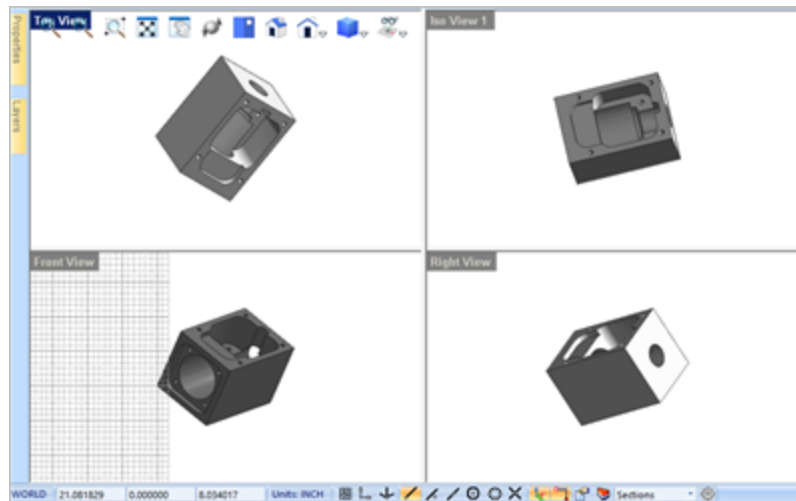
7.8.4 Orient the Part



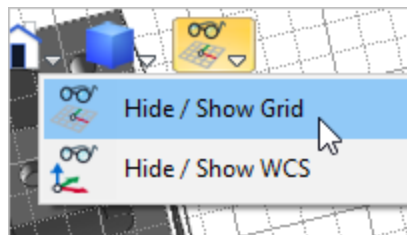
Orient the Part

There may be times when you need to re-orient the part. This can happen at times when a part that you import into [VisualCAD](#) has it's [WCS](#) position skewed. In order to work with the part it has be oriented.

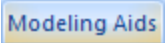
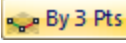
We have deliberately skewed the part from [Exercise #5 Connector Block](#) so that it no longer lies parallel to any view. Here is what it looks like:

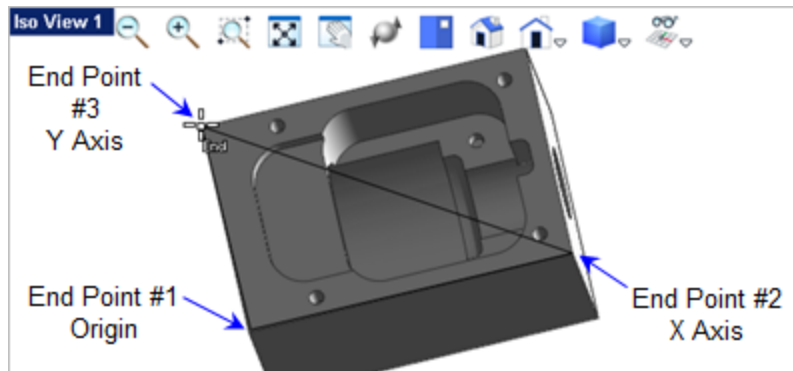


1. The first step toward to orienting this part is to define the [C-Plane](#). For more about this see the topics [Orient the C-Plane](#) and [Text on a Part Face](#) in this exercise.
2. First make sure the [Grid](#) is visible. You can toggle the [Grid](#) on/off by selecting [Hide / Show Grid](#) from the [View Toolbar](#).

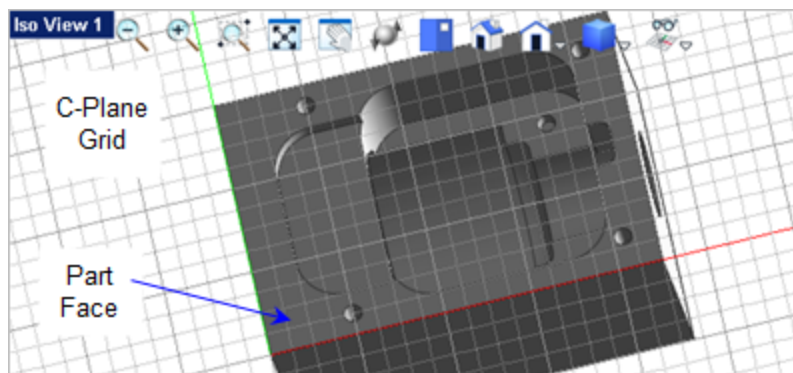


3. Now activate the view that allows you to see the planar face that you want to use to orient the part by. In this example it is [Iso View 1](#) **Iso View 1**.

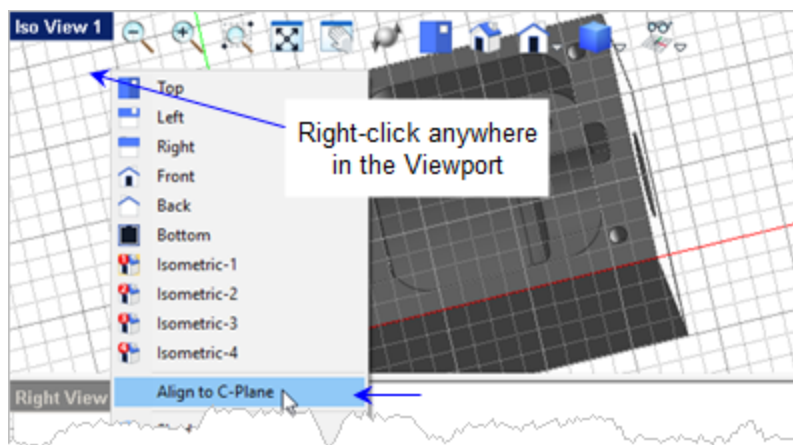
4. Go to the **Modeling Aids**  tab and select the **C-Plane by 3 Points**  command.
5. Activate the **End Point Snap**  from the **Status Toolbar** and select the end points in the order shown below:



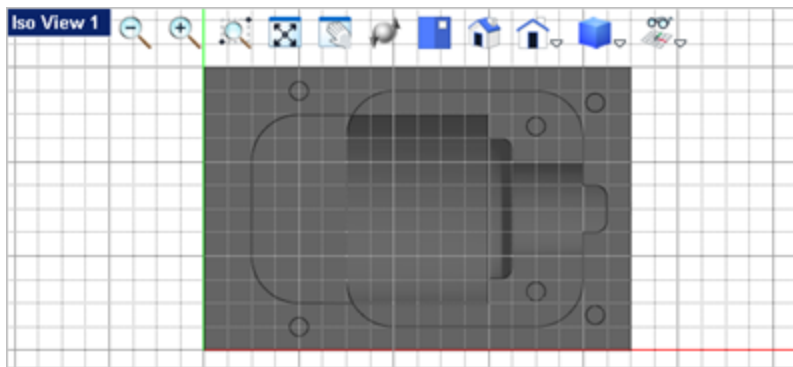
The **C-Plane** will orient to the 3 points selected.



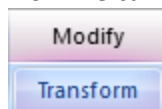
6. Now right-click anywhere in the **Viewport** (do not select any geometry) and select **Align to C-Plane**. This will align **Iso View 1**  parallel to the **C-Plane**.



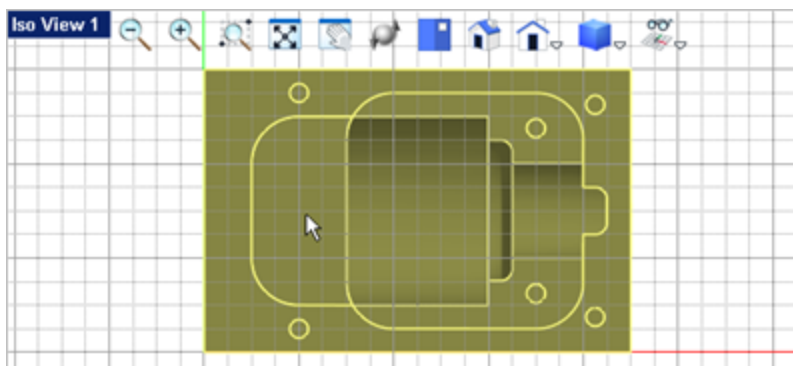
The **C-Plane** will align to the **Viewport**.



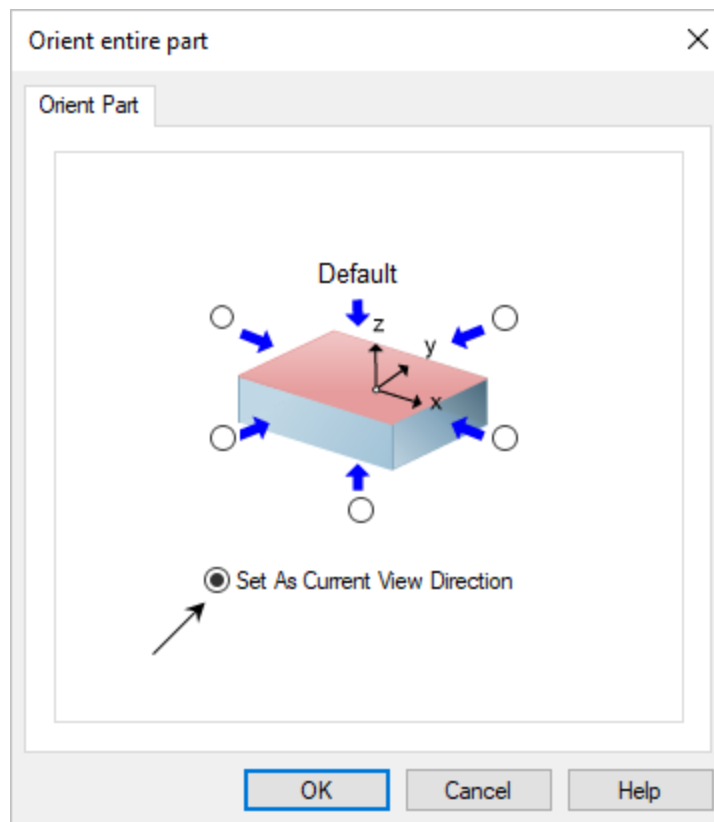
7. Now we can orient the part. Select the part and go to the **Modify / Transform**



tab and select the **Part Orient ...** **Part Orient ...** command.



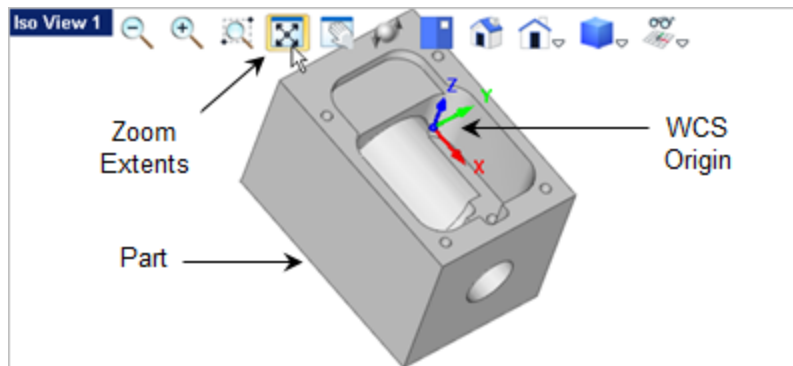
8. This will display the **Orient entire part** dialog. Pick the option to **Set as current view direction**.



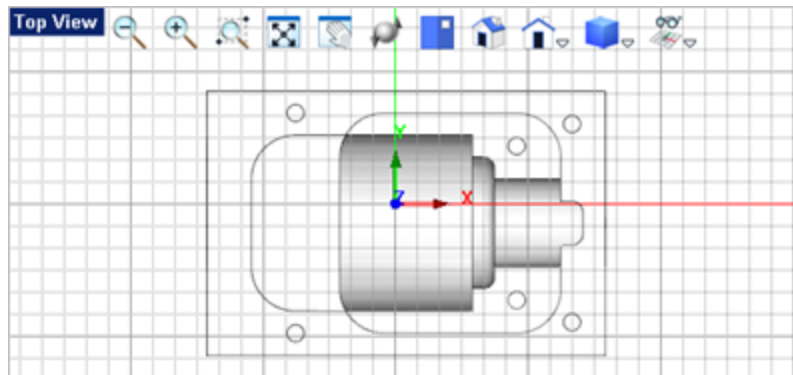
9. Pick **OK** and the part appears to disappear from the **Viewport**.



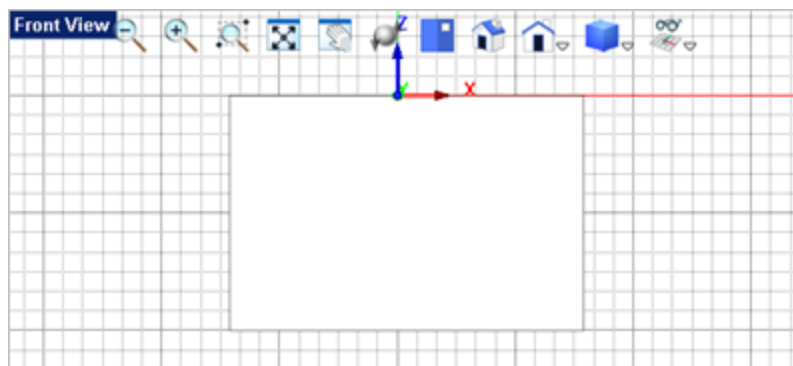
10. Now pick the **Fit View**  icon from the **View Toolbar**. The part will appear with the **WCS** oriented in/on the center of the face that we used to align the **C-Plane**

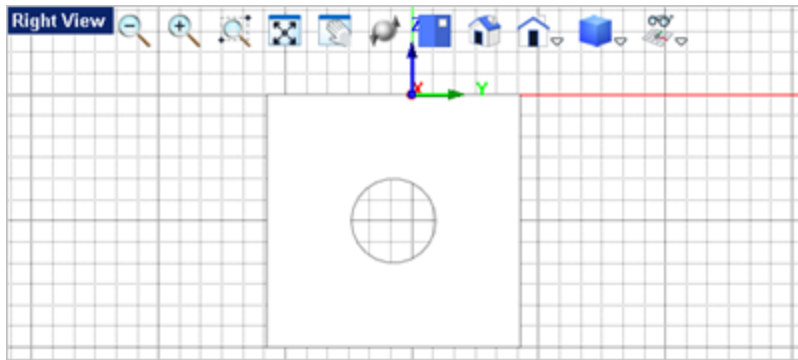


11. Now activate the **Top View** **Top View** and pick the **Fit View**  icon from the **View Toolbar**.

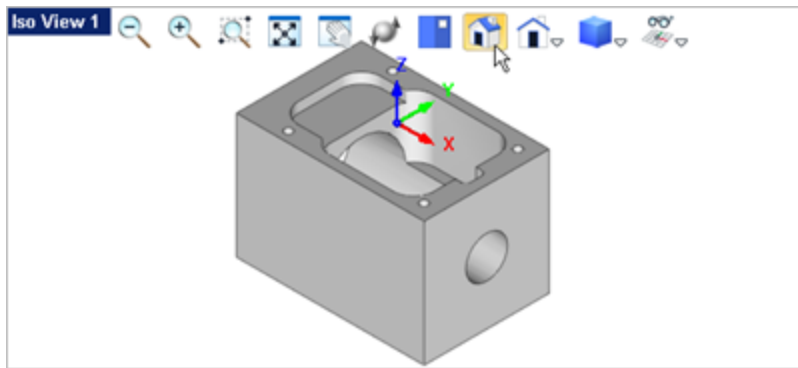


12. Repeat this for the **Front View** **Front View** and the **Right View** **Right View**. Remember that you have to activate the **Viewport** before the **View Toolbar** will display. Left-click anywhere within the **Viewport** to activate it.



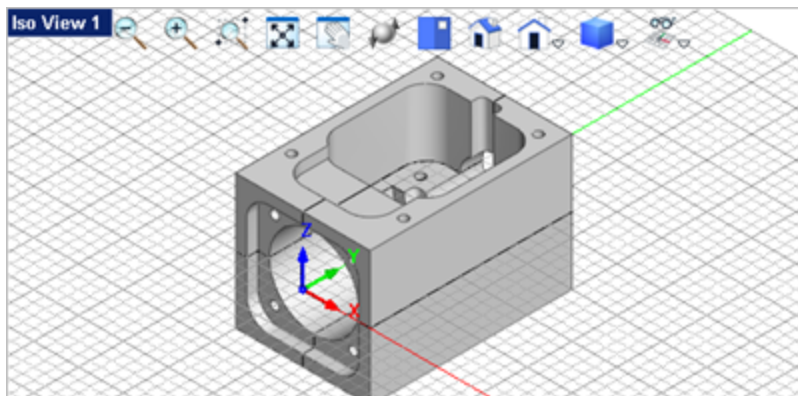


13. Activate **Iso View 1** again and this time select the **Iso View** icon from the **View Toolbar** to orient this **Viewport**.

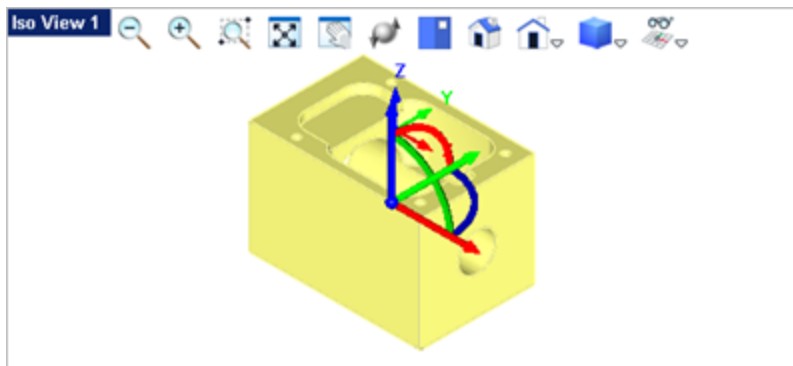


Great! You have the part oriented orthographically (i.e., **Top**, **Front**, **Right**).

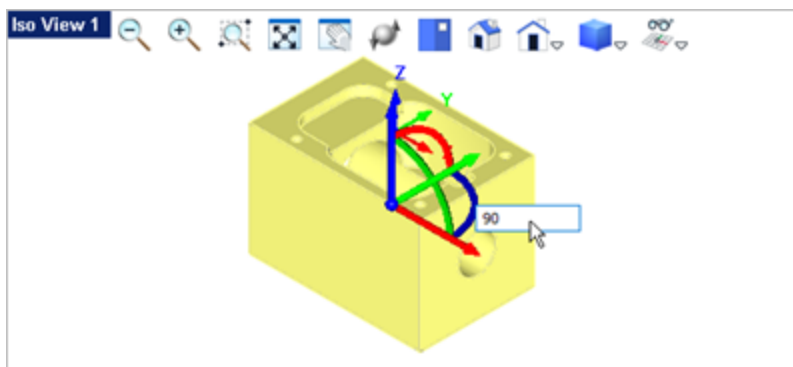
14. However, the part is still not oriented like the original part as shown below. You see that the length of the part was oriented along the **Y Axis** and the **WCS** was positioned at the center of the front view. Let's show you some additional commands to fix that.



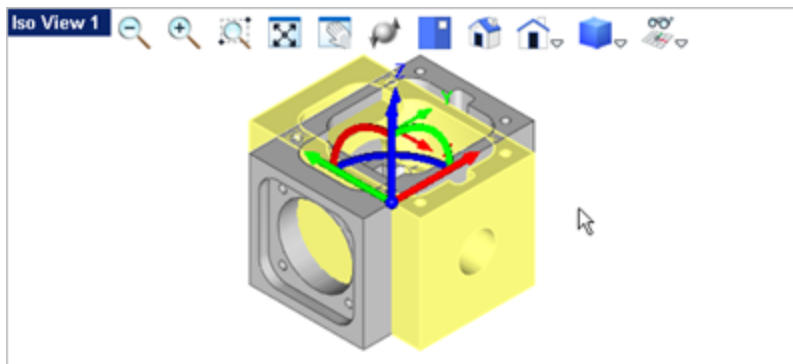
15. Activate **Iso View 1** and then from the **Status Toolbar**, toggle the **Graphic Manipulator** On.
16. Now select the part to see the **Graphic Manipulator** displayed.

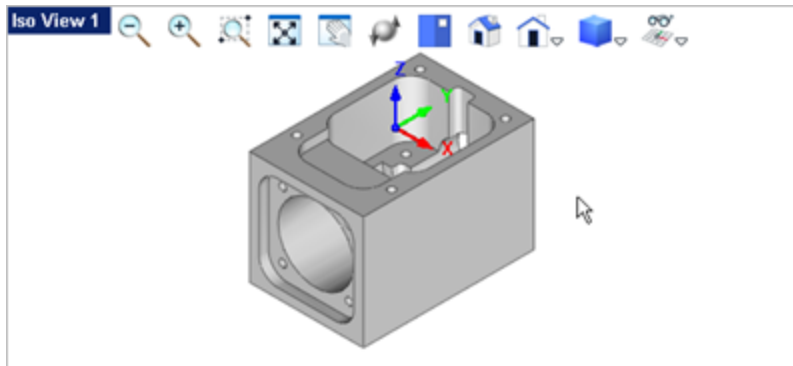


17. Pick the **Z Rotation** arc of the **Graphic Manipulator**  to display the input window, enter **90** and then press **<Enter>**.



18. Now you see the part is rotated so press **<Enter>** to accept the rotation.

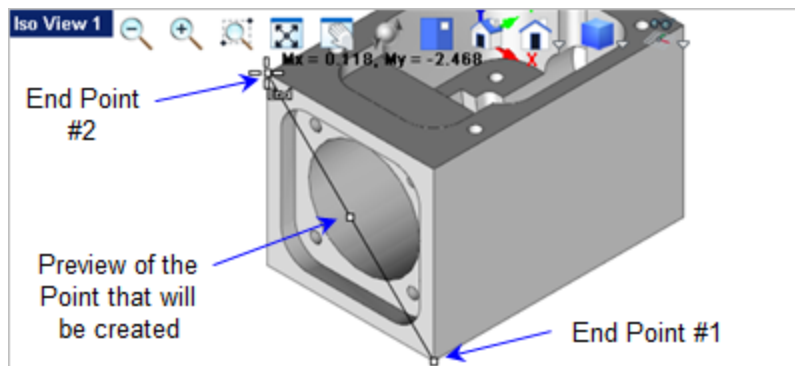




Great where almost there!

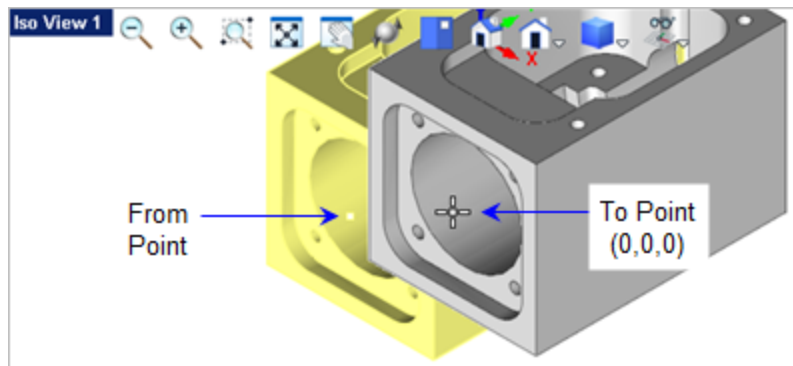
To move the **WCS** to the original location which was centered on the front face of the part we need to create a point there to move from.

19. Zoom in on the front face of the part.
20. From the **Curve Modeling** **Curve Modeling** tab select the command **Create mid point between two points** .
21. Activate the **End Point Snap**  from the **Status toolbar**.
22. Select the two diagonal end points on the front face of the part as shown.



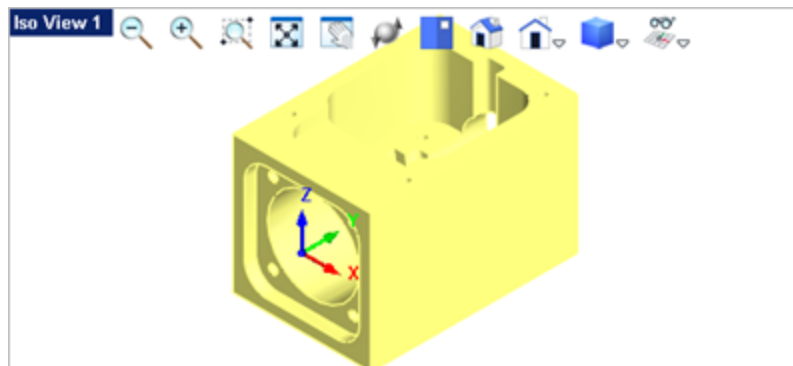
23. You can now toggle the **Graphic Manipulator**  off.
24. With the point created, window select the entire part (and point) or simply press **<Ctrl+A>**.

25. From the **Modify / Transform** **Transform**  tab select the **Move by mouse** command.
26. The command prompt says: **Pick from point or enter coordinates x,y and z**. Make sure the **End Point Snap**  is active from the **Status Toolbar** and select the point you just created.



27. Now the command prompt says: **Pick to point or enter coordinates x,y and z.** In the command window enter **0,0,0** and then press **<Enter>**.

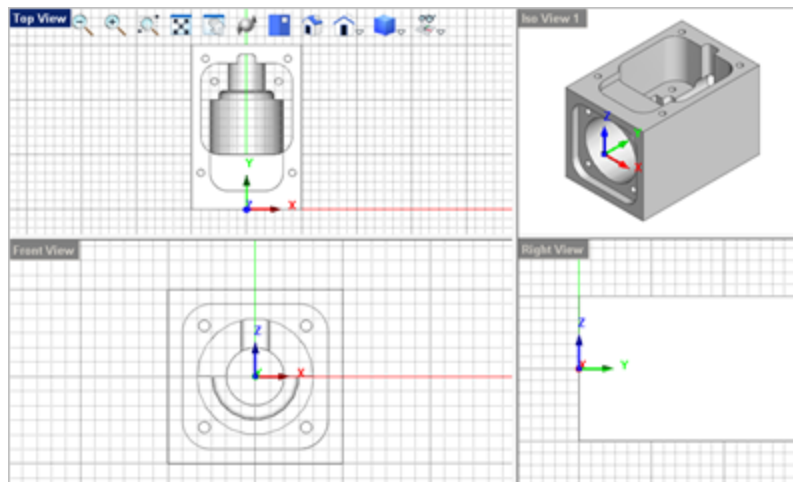
You will see that the part moved to the **WCS** origin. Now press **<Enter>** again to accept the move.



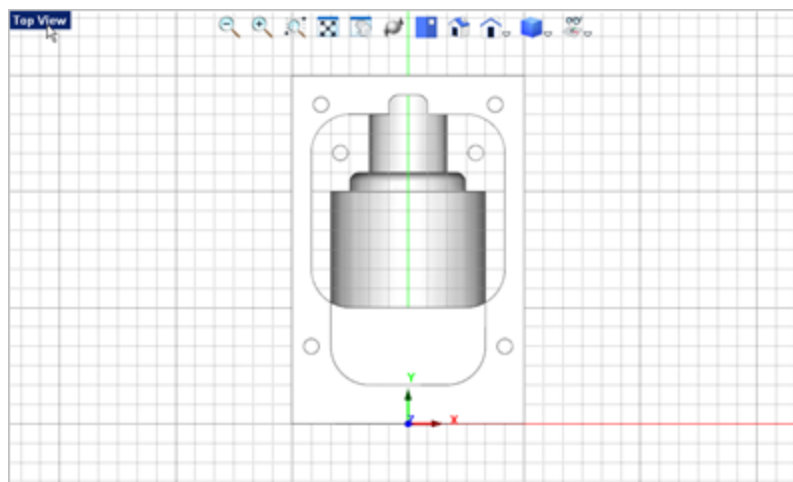
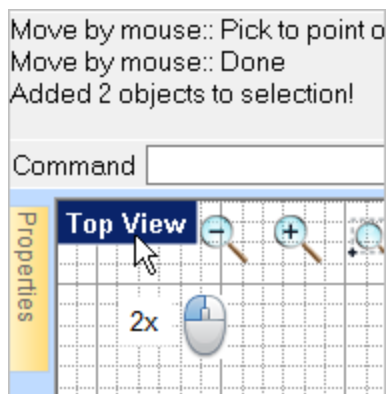
28. Now the part is aligned correctly except for the **C-Plane**. Previously the **C-Plane** was aligned to the **XY** plane of **WCS**.

Here is a neat trick to fix that:

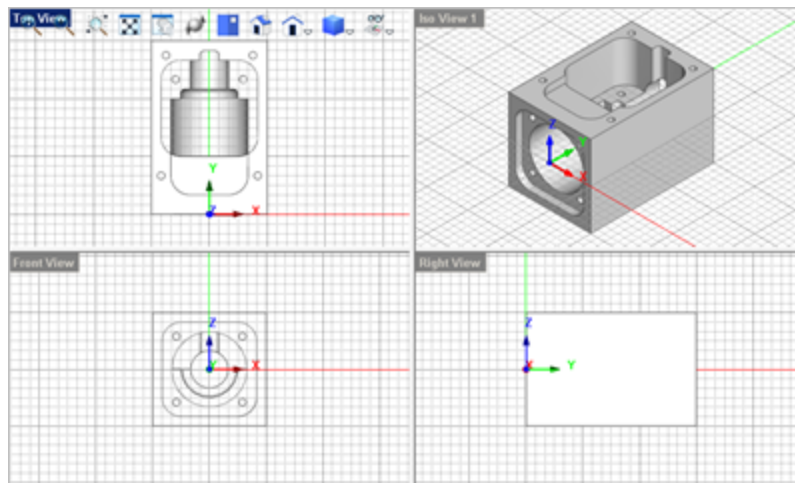
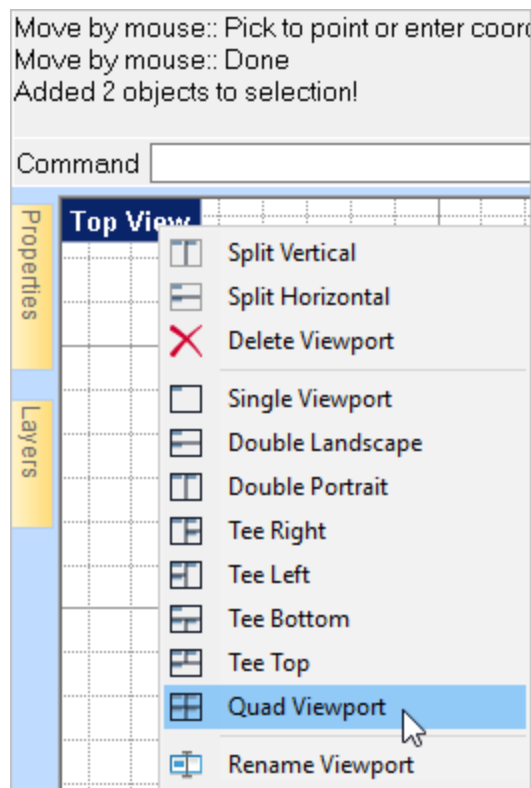
29. Activate the **Top View** .



30. Now double-left-click on the **Top View** **Top View** tab. This will change the display to one **Viewport** set to the **Top View**.



31. Now right-click on the **Top View** **Top View** tab and select **Quad Viewport**.



You see that **Iso View 1** inherited the **C-Plane** of the **Top View** because that was the active **View** when you selected **Quad Viewport**.

32. Save the file as **Construction_Planes_Completed.vcp**.

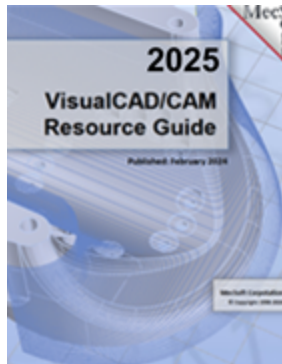
Congratulations on completing this exercise!

Find More Resources

Download this PDF Guide for a list of the available [VisualCAD Resources](#).



2025 VisualCAD Resource Guide



The 2025 VisualCAD Resource Guide!

18 Pages

Lists PDF downloads and Online resources including [Quick Start Guides](#), [Reference Guides](#), [Exercise Guides](#), [Tutorials](#) and [More](#).

[Prefer Printed Documentation? Click Here!](#)

[What's New](#) | [Quick Start Play List](#)

Index

- 3 -

3Dconnexion® 41

- A -

About VisualCAD® 99

Accelerator <Alt> Keys 46

Align

 C-Plane with Axis 178

 C-Plane with CSYS 179

All Flat Areas 242

Alt Keys 46

Ambient Lighting 33, 91, 131

Analyze

 Analyze Ribbon Bar Pane 366

 Bounding Box 368

 Part Center 369

 Part Information 366

 Surface Normals 369

Analyze Ribbon Bar

 Analyze 366

 Measure 360

Angle

 Measure 364

Angular Dimensions

 Dimensions Ribbon Bar Pane 350

Annotations 357

 at Point 357

 Dimensions Ribbon Bar Pane 354

 Dot 359

 Edit Font Height 357

 Leader Line 354

Appearance

 Themes 55

Application Plug-ins ... 114

Arc

 3 Pts 226

 Center, Start, Angle Pts 225

 Dia. Dimension 347

 Fit Curves 264

 Measure Diameter of 364

 Rad. Dimension 348

 Start, End, On 227

Arcs/Circles

 Select 158

 Select Dialog Box 158

Array

 Objects 391

 Objects XYZ 391

 Polar 392

AutoSave 20, 77, 118

- B -

Back View 140

 Set C-Plane to 176

Background Image

 Delete 189

 Make Grayscale 186

 Menu 180

 Move 182

 Place 181

 Scale 184

 Toggle On/Off 185

 Transparency 188

Background Properties 422

Boolean Curves 255

Bottom View 140

 Set C-Plane to 175

Bounding

 Analyze Box 368

 Create Box Mesh 316

 Rectangle Curves 245

Bounding Box Mesh 327

Box Mesh 316

Break Curves 270

- C -

Center Point Snap 409

Chain Curves 268

Chamfer Curves 260

Check for Updates ... 98

Circle

 3 Pts 222

 Center, On Pt 220

 Dia. Dimension 343

 Rad. Dimension 345

 Start, Diameter Pt 221

Circle

Tangent to 3 223

Circular Tube Mesh 324

Clipboard

Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar Pane 154

Close Curve 260

Color

Construction Visual Aids 29, 87, 127

C-Plane 29, 87, 127

C-Plane Gris Axis 29, 87, 127

New Layer 29, 87, 127

Options 29, 87, 127

Screen Background 29, 87, 127

Screen Gradient 29, 87, 127

Select by 163

Selection 29, 87, 127

Command Recall 20, 77, 118, 172

Commands

Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar Pane 169

Cone Mesh 319

Continuous Command Recall 172

Coordinate input 404

Copy

Layer 421

Layer with Objects 421

Objects 154

C-Plane

Align with Axis 178

Align with CSYS 179

Load ... 180

Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar Pane 174

Rotate 177

Save ... 179

Set by 3 Pts 177

Set Color of 29, 87, 127

Set Elevation 176

Set Gris Axis Color of 29, 87, 127

Set Origin 176

Set to Back View 176

Set to Bottom View 175

Set to Front View 175

Set to Left View 176

Set to Object 178

Set to Planar Curve 178

Set to Right View 176

Set to Top View 175

Set to View 175

Current Position 406

Curve

All Flat Areas 242

Arc Fit 264

Auto Fillet 263

Boolean 255

Bounding Rect. 245

Break 270

Chain 268

Chamfer 260

Change Start 255

Close 260

Create Text on 235

Display Style 24, 82, 122

Explode 272

Extend 253

Extend by Dist 262

Extract from Surface Edge 247

Fillet 249

Flat Area 241

from Text 233

Helix 239

Line Width 413

Merge 253

NURBS 232

Offset 251

Point on 198

Project onto Surface 290

Project to CPlane 266

Reduce 272

Reverse 263

Section Curves 246

Silhouette 243

Smooth 265

Spiral 238

Split 269

Split by Curve 258

Surface Boundary 244

Trim 252

Wrap 273

Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar

Curves Pane 190

Edit Curves Pane 248

Curves

Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 190

Select Open 160

Customize

Add/Remove Cammands to the Quick Access

Toolbar 42

Customize
 Display 42
 Display Themes 55
 Keyboard 53
 Minimize the Ribbon Bar 42, 46
 Show Quick Access Toolbar below Ribbon Bar 42
 Show/Hide Quick Access Toolbar 42
 Show/Hide Quick Access Toolbar Commands 42
 The Customize Quick Access Toolbar Menu 42
 Cut
 Object 154
 Cylinder Mesh 318

- D -

Delete
 Hole on Surface 289
 Layer 421
 Object 154
 Viewport 152
 Dialog Box
 Application Plug-ins Manager 114
 Array Objects 391
 Color Options 29, 87, 127
 Dimension Options 36, 94, 134
 Display Options 24, 82, 122
 File Browser 65, 105
 File Open 63, 103
 Grid Options 30, 88, 128
 Lighting Options 33, 91, 131
 Load C-Planes 180
 Loaded Translator Plug-ins 115
 Mecsoft Product Updates Checker 98
 Mirror Objects 389
 Modeling Aids 20, 77, 118
 Move Objects 381
 Part Information 366
 Part Orient 384
 Polar Array Objects 392
 Properties 412
 Rotate Objects 383
 Save As 68, 108
 Save C-Planes 179
 Scale Objects 387
 System 20, 77, 118
 System Options 20, 77, 118

Tolerance and Units Options 37, 95, 135
 Diffuse Lighting 33, 91, 131
 Dimension
 Angle 350
 Arc/Circle Diameter 341
 Arc/Circle Radius 342
 Horizontal 334
 Leader Line 354
 Oblique 339
 Options 36, 94, 134
 Pt Angle 352
 Pt Arc Diameter 347
 Pt Arc Radius 348
 Pt Circle Dia 343
 Pt Circle Rad 345
 Ribbon Bar 333
 Select all 160
 Vertical 337
 Dimensions Ribbon Bar
 Angular Dimensions Pane 350
 Annotations Pane 354
 Linear Dimensions Pane 334
 Radial Dimensions Pane 341
 Display
 Construction Visual Aids 24, 82, 122
 Curve Style 24, 82, 122
 Ghosed 147
 Grid 148
 Mesh Edges Style 24, 82, 122
 Options 24, 82, 122
 Rendering Options 24, 82, 122
 Shaded 145
 Shading Style 24, 82, 122
 Toggle Shaded + Edges 145
 View Change Animation 24, 82, 122
 Wireframe 146
 Display Ribbon Bar
 Modes Pane 143
 Orient Pane 139
 View Modify Pane 137
 Viewport Pane 149
 Visibility Pane 148
 Dot Annotation 359
 Duplicate
 Layer 421
 Layer with Objects 421
 DXF File Format
 Exporting to 69, 109

Dynamic

- Pan 137
- Rotate 138
- Zoom 138

- E -

Edit

- Copy 154
- Cut 154
- Hide 173
- Hide Non-Selected 173
- Line Width 413
- Lock 173
- Mode 413
- Paste 155
- Properties ... 412
- Redo 170
- Redo Multiple 171
- Show 174
- Undo 170
- Undo Multiple 170
- Unlock 173

Edit Curves

- Curve Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 248

Edit Meshes

- Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 329

Edit Solids

- Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 311

Edit Surfaces

- Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 287

Elevation

- set C-Plane to 176

Ellipse

- 3 Pt Diameter 228
- by Focus 231

End Point Snap 408

Exercise #1: VisualCAD Preferences 423

- Auto Backup 424
- Auto Save 424
- Online Help 423
- Set Systems Options 424
- Set the Display Style 423
- Set the Units to Inches 424
- Set to Quad Viewports 429
- The Quick Access Toolbar 431
- The Status Bar 433
- Tolerance & Units 424

Use Preselection Highlight 424

Viewing the Command Prompts 432

Exercise #2: 2D Drawing & Dimensioning 434

- Active Layer 452
- Annotation 452
- Arc Center, Start, Angle 445
- Auto-Hiding Layer Manager 435
- Center Point 445
- Chamfer 437
- Circle on Point 443, 445
- Curve Drawing 437
- Cut Object 437
- Dimensioning 452
- Explode Curves 437
- Extend Curves 437
- Fillet 437
- Grid Snap 445
- Hide / Show Grid 437
- Horizontal Dimension 452
- Layer Manager 435, 452
- Leader Line 452
- Line 445
- Mid Point 445
- Modify / Transform Tab 445
- More Drawing Tools 445
- Object Snaps 452
- Object Snaps & Visual Aids 443
- Pan 452
- Polar Array 445
- Polar Grid of Points 445
- Polyline 437
- Quick Access Toolbar 437
- Save 437
- Save As 437
- Status Bar 445
- Status Toolbar 443
- Trim Curves 437
- Undo 445
- Using Visual Aids 443
- Vertical Dimension 452
- Viewports 437
- Visual Aids 443, 445
- Zoom Out 452

Exercise #3: Model a Spanner Plate 458

- Arcs Center, Start, Angle Pts 469
- Circle Center, Center, On Pt 460
- Create Inner Cutouts 460
- Create Point 459, 469

- Exercise #3: Model a Spanner Plate 458
- Create Rectangle 469
 - Create Reference Points 459
 - Create Single Line 460
 - Edit Curves 464
 - Explode Curve 469
 - Extend Curve 464
 - Extrude Curves 479
 - Fillet Curve 469
 - Grid Snap 460
 - Merge Curves 477
 - Mirror 474
 - Offset Curves 464, 469
 - Quad Point Snap 460
 - Set to the Top View 459
 - Transform Ribbon Bar 474
 - Trim Curves 463, 464, 469
 - View Toolbar 479
- Exercise #4: Model a Base Plate 481
- Circle on Point 487
 - Circle on Pt 481
 - Create a New Layer 493
 - Curve Modeling 481
 - Draw the Base Plate Profile 481
 - Edit Properties of Geometry 495
 - Extrude Mesh 485, 487
 - Extrude the Base Plate 485
 - Fillet 481
 - Graphic Manipulator 487
 - Layer Manager 493, 495
 - Mesh Modeling tab 485
 - New Layer 493
 - Object Selection Filters 495
 - Properties 495
 - Properties Manager 495
 - Quick Access toolbar 481
 - Rectangle 481
 - Save 485
 - Select by Type 495
 - Status Bar 487
 - Status Toolbar 493, 495
 - Subtract Mesh 487
 - Undo 481
 - View Toolbar 487
 - Wireframe Display 487
- Exercise #5: Model a Mold Insert 497
- Arc Center, Start, Angle 498, 509
 - Change Geometry Layer 533
 - Circle on Point 523, 528
 - Create Section Curves 536
 - Display Menu 515, 520, 523
 - Extrude Mesh 498, 501, 505, 520, 523, 528
 - Extrude the Body 498
 - Extrude the Connection Bar 520
 - Extrude the Connection Wall 523
 - Extrude the Ejector Pin Holes 528
 - Extrude the Flange 501
 - Extrude the Upper Pocket 505, 509
 - Fillet Curves 509
 - Graphic Manipulator 501, 505, 509, 515, 520, 523, 528
 - Grid Snap 498
 - Layer Manager 533, 536
 - Line command 498
 - Merge Curves 498, 509
 - Mirror 515
 - Modify / Transform 515
 - Offset Curves 501, 505
 - Polyline 515, 523
 - Properties 533
 - Properties Manager 533
 - Quad Point Snap 523
 - Rectangle 520
 - Revolve Mesh 515
 - Revolve the Center Bosses 515
 - Section Curve 536
 - Select By Type 533
 - Subtract 505
 - Subtract Mesh 509, 528
 - Unite Mesh 501, 515, 520, 523
 - View Toolbar 505
- Exercise #6: Model a Connector Block 538
- Circle 553
 - Create Section Curves 565
 - Extrude Mesh 539, 541, 547, 553, 562
 - Fillet Curves 562
 - Graphic Manipulator 541, 547, 553
 - Grid Object Snap 553
 - Grid snap 539
 - Intersect Object Snap 553
 - Layer Manager 565
 - Line 553
 - Mid Point Object Snap 553
 - Mirror 553
 - Model the Front Access 541
 - Model the Main Body 539

- Exercise #6: Model a Connector Block 538
- Model the Mounting Holes 553
 - Model the Top Access 547
 - Modify / Transform Menu 553
 - Modify the Top Access 562
 - Polyline 541
 - Properties Manager 565
 - Rectangle 539, 562
 - Revolve Mesh 541, 562
 - Rounded Rectangle 541, 562
 - Rounded Rectangle 547
 - Section Curves 565
 - Select by Type 565
 - Subtract Mesh 541, 547, 553, 562
 - View Menu 541
- Exercise #7: Model a Daisy Decor 570
- Active Layer 585
 - Additional Sphere Accents 583
 - Create & Trim Section Curves 585
 - Create new Layers 570
 - Create Offset Curves 589
 - Create the Stock Boundary 591
 - Ghosted Display Mode 579
 - Graphic Manipulator 573, 576
 - Layer Manager 570, 585, 589, 591
 - Merge Curves 585
 - Model & Scale the Body 573
 - Model & Scale the Pedal 576
 - Offset Curve 589
 - Polar Array 580
 - Polar Array the Pedal 580
 - Rectangle 591
 - Scale 573, 576
 - Section Curve 585
 - Sphere Solid 573, 576, 583
 - Status Bar 583
 - Transform 573, 576, 580
 - Trim Curves 585
 - Undo 580
 - View Menu 579
- Exercise #8: Using Construction Planes 593
- Align to C-Plane 609
 - Align View to C-Plane 600
 - Align Viewport to C-Plane 593
 - Circle on Point 593
 - Construction Planes 593
 - C-Plane by 3 Points 593, 600, 607, 609
 - C-Plane by X Axis 607
 - C-Plane Load 607
 - C-Plane Origin 593, 607
 - C-Plane Rotate 607
 - C-Plane Save 607
 - C-Plane to 3D Face 593
 - C-Plane to Face 607
 - C-Plane to View 593, 607
 - C-Plane to WCS 607
 - Create mid point between two points 609
 - Create Text 600
 - End Point Snap 609
 - Fit View 609
 - Graphic Manipulator 609
 - Hide / Show Grid 593, 609
 - Iso View 609
 - Modify / Transform Tab 609
 - Move by mouse 609
 - Orient the C-Plane 593
 - Orient the Part 609
 - Other C-Plane Commands 607
 - Part Orient 609
 - Properties 600
 - Rotate C-Plane about Axis 593
 - Save C-Plane 593
 - Set System Options 600
 - Single Line Font 600
 - Text on a Part Face 600
 - View Toolbar 609
- Exit File 100
- Explode
- Curves 272
 - Surface 312
- Export ...
- IGES (igs) 69, 109
 - Region Files (mrg) 69, 109
 - Rhino (3dm) 69, 109
 - SAT Files (*.sat) 69, 109
 - Selected 111
 - STEP Files (STP, STEP) 69, 109
 - Stereo-Lithography ASCII (*.sla) 69, 109
 - Stereo-Lithography Binary (*.stl) 69, 109
 - to DXF Format 69, 109
- Extend
- Curves 253
- Extrude Mesh 325

- F -

Features Overview 11

File

- Browse ... 65, 105
- Exit 100
- Export ... 69, 109
- Export Selected 111
- Home Ribbon Bar Pane 102
- Import ... 65, 105
- New 63, 102
- Open ... 63, 103
- Print ... 73, 113
- Print Preview 73, 111
- Print Setup ... 75
- Recovery 20, 77, 118
- Save 68, 108
- Save As ... 68, 108
- Save as Template 69, 109
- Types supported 63, 65, 103, 105

Fillet

- 2 Curves 249
- Curves, Auto 263

Fit View 138

- Fit All 138
- Fit Selected 138

Flat Area Curves 241

Front View 140

- Set C-Plane to 175

- G -

Geometry Ribbon Bar 101

Ghosted Display 147

Graphical Manipulator 397

Graphical Scale 376

Grid 148

- # Divisions between 30, 88, 128
- On Curve 198
- Options 30, 88, 128
- Point on 195
- Polar Point on 197
- Set XY Extents 30, 88, 128
- Snap 407
- Spacing between 30, 88, 128

- H -

Helix Curve 239

Help

- About VisualCAD® 99
- Check for Updates ... 98
- Go To Website 99
- Menu 96
- Topics ... 98

Hidden Lines 147

Hide

- Grid 148
- Non-Selected 173
- Objects 173
- WCS 148

Hole, Delete on Surface 289

Home Ribbon Bar

- File Pane 102
- Options Pane 18, 76, 116
- Plugins Pane 114

Horizontal Dimension 334

- I -

Import ...

- 3D Studio Files (*.3ds) 65, 105
- Adobe Illustrator Files (*.ai) 65, 105
- AutoCAD (*.dxf;*.dwg) 65, 105
- IGES Files (*.igs;*.iges) 65, 105
- LightWave Files (*.lwo) 65, 105
- MecSoft Region Files (*.mrg) 65, 105
- OBJ Files (*.obj) 65, 105
- Parasolid Files (*.x_t;*.x_b) 65, 105
- Point Cloud Files (*.cvs;*.txt;*.asc) 65, 105
- RAW Triangle Files (*.raw) 65, 105
- RHINO 3DM Files (*.3dm) 65, 105
- SAT Files (*.sat) 65, 105
- SLC Files (*.slc) 65, 105
- STEP Files (*.stp;*.step) 65, 105
- Stereo-lithography files (*.sla;*.stl) 65, 105
- Universal 3D Files (*.u3d) 65, 105
- VisualMILL Part Files (*.vmp) 65, 105
- VisualTurn Part Files (*.vct) 65, 105
- VRML Files (*.vrl) 65, 105

Intersect Mesh 332

Intersection Point Snap 410

Iso View 141

- K -

Keyboard

- <Shift> to Select Chain 167
- Customize 53
- Preset <Alt> Keys 46
- Shortcuts 16

- L -

Layer

- Delete 421
- Duplicate 421
- Duplicate with Objects 421
- Lock 420
- Manager 418
- Move Up/Down 421
- New 420
- Select by 164
- Set Color of New 29, 87, 127
- Visibility 419

Leader Line 354

Left View 140

- Set C-Plane to 176

Lighting

- Options 33, 91, 131
- Set Ambient, Diffuse, Specular 33, 91, 131
- Set Position of 33, 91, 131

Line

- 2 Points 199
- at Angle 212
- From Mid-Point 213
- Normal 214
- Normal & Tangent 217
- Normal to 2 215
- Polyline 208
- Rectangle, 2 Points 200, 203
- Rectangle, 2 Points, Length 205
- Rectangle, Center 202
- Rectangle, Vertical 206
- Rounded Rect. 210
- Select 157
- Tangent 218
- Tangent to 2 219

Linear Dimensions

Dimensions Ribbon Bar Pane 334

Load

- C-Plane 180
- File 63, 103

Lock 173

- M -

Mask

- Selection 165

Measure

- Analyze Ribbon Bar Pane 360
- Angle 364
- Arc Diameter 364
- Co-ordinates 361
- Distance 361
- Vertex Diameter 362

Menu

- Select 157

Merge Curves 253

Mesh

- Bounding Box 327
- Box 316
- Circular Tube 324
- Cone 319
- Cylinder 318
- Extract Curve from Edge 247
- Extrude 325
- Intersect 332
- Rectangular Tube 321
- Revolve 326
- Sphere 317
- Subtract 330
- Torus 320
- Unite 329

Mesh Edges Display Style 24, 82, 122

Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar

- Edit Meshes Pane 329
- Meshes Pane 316

Meshes

- Mesh Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 316
- Select 160

Mid Point Snap 409

Mirror Objects 389

Modeling Aids 20, 77, 118

Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar

- Clipboard Pane 154
- Commands Pane 169

Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar

C-Plane Pane 174

Objects Pane 172

Selections Pane 155

Modes

Display Ribbon Bar Pane 143

Mouse

3Dconnexion® 41

Settings 20, 77, 118

Move 372

by Mouse dialog box 381

Layer 421

Orient by 3 Points 386

Orient Part 384

- N -

Name

Select by 163

Near Point Snap 409

New

File 63, 102

Layer 420

NURBS

Create Curve 232

Nurbs Curves

Select 159

- O -

Object

Selection Filter dialog box 163

Snap Control 407

Objects

Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar Pane 172

Oblique Dimension 339

Offset Curves 251

Online Help 98

Open

File Dialog Box 63, 103

Options

AutoSave 20, 77, 118

Color 29, 87, 127

Command Recall 20, 77, 118

Dimension 36, 94, 134

Display 24, 82, 122

File Recovery 20, 77, 118

Grid 30, 88, 128

Home Ribbon Bar Pane 18, 76, 116

Lighting 33, 91, 131

Tolerance and Units 37, 95, 135

Orient

by 3 Points 386

Display Ribbon Bar Pane 139

Part 386

Origin Point Snap 408

Ortho Snap 408

- P -

Pan 137

Parallel View 144

Part

Center 369

Orient ... 384

Orient by 3 Points 386

Units 406

Parting Plane 285

Paste

Objects 155

Perspective View 144

Plugins

Home Ribbon Bar Pane 114

Plug-ins

Applications 114

Translator 115

Point

Center 194

Grid 195

Mid 193

Pick 192

Polar Grid 197

Select 157

Snap near 409

Snap to End 408

Snap to Midpoint 409

Point Clouds 159

Polar Array 392

PolyCurves

Select 159

Polyline 208

Polylines

Select 157

Print 73, 113

Menu 71

Print 73, 113
 Preview 73, 111
 Preview Ribbon Bar 403
 Setup 75
 Project
 Curves onto Surface 290
 Curves to CPlane 266
 Project to C-Plane Snap 410
 Properties 413
 Edit Mode 413
 Line Width 413
 Properties Dialog Box 412

- Q -

Quad
 Point Snap 409

- R -

Radial Dimensions
 Arc/Circle Diameter 341
 Arc/Circle Radius 342
 Dimensions Ribbon Bar Pane 341
 Pt Arc Diameter 347
 Pt Arc Radius 348
 Pt Circle Dia 343
 Pt Circle Rad 345
 Rectangle
 2 Points 200, 203
 2 Points. length 205
 Center 202
 Rounded 210
 Scale by 379
 Tube Mesh 321
 Vertical 206
 Redo
 Multiple 171
 Once 170
 Reduce Curves 272
 Rename Viewport 152
 Rendering Options 24, 82, 122
 Reverse Curves 263
 Revolve Mesh 326
 Ribbon Bar 101
 Analyze 360
 Curve Modeling 190

Dimensions 333
 Display 136
 Home 101
 Mesh Modeling 315
 Minimize 42, 46
 Modeling Aids 153
 Solid Modeling 294
 Surface Modeling 276
 Transform 370
 Right View 141
 Set C-Plane to 176
 Rotate
 2D Objects 373
 3D Objects 375
 C-Plane 177
 Dynamically 138
 Selected Objects dialog box 383
 using Graphical Manipulator 397

- S -

Save
 as Template 69, 109
 C-Plane 179
 File 68, 108
 File As 68, 108
 Scale
 Objects dialog box 387
 Objects Graphically 376
 Rectangular 379
 Using Graphical Manipulator 397
 Screen Layout 14
 Section Curves 246
 Select
 All 161
 All Dimensions 160
 Arcs/Circles 158
 Arcs/Circles... 158
 by Color 163
 by Layer 164
 by Name 163
 by Type 163
 Chain using <Shift> key 167
 Duplicates 162
 Invert 162
 Last Created 162
 Lines/Polylines 157
 Mask 165

- Select
 - Menu 157
 - Meshes 160
 - Multi-Selection Dialog 168
 - None 162
 - Nurbs Curves 159
 - Open Curves 160
 - Point Clouds 159
 - Points 157
 - PolyCurves 159
 - Pre-Selection Highlights 167
 - Previous 162
 - Set Selection Color 29, 87, 127
 - Shells 159
 - Surface from Solid 169
- Selections
 - Modeling Aids Ribbon Bar Pane 155
- Shading
 - Display 145
 - Style 24, 82, 122
 - Toggle + Edges 145
- Shells
 - Select 159
- Shortcut Keys 16
- Show
 - All Objects 174
 - Grid 148
 - Surface Normals 369
 - WCS 148
- Silhouette Curves 243
- Smooth Curves 265
- Snap
 - Center Point 409
 - Controls 407
 - End Point 408
 - Grid 407
 - Intersection Point 410
 - Mid Point 409
 - Near Point 409
 - Origin Point 408
 - Ortho 408
 - Project to C-Plane 410
 - Quad Point 409
 - Vertex Point 410
- Solid
 - Bounding Box 309
 - Box 296
 - Circular Tube 308
 - Cone 300
 - Cylinder 299
 - Explode 312
 - Extract Curve from Edge 247
 - Extruded 304
 - Rectangular Tube 306
 - Revolved 305
 - Sphere 297
 - Stitch 313
 - Torus 302
 - Unify Normals of 311
- Solid Modeling
 - Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 295
- Solid Modeling Ribbon Bar
 - Edit Solids Pane 311
 - Solid Modeling Pane 295
- Specular Lighting 33, 91, 131
- Sphere Mesh 317
- Spiral Curve 238
- Split
 - Curves 269
 - Viewport 151
- Split by Curve 258
- Status Toolbar
 - Visual Aids 411
- Stitch Surfaces 313
- Subtract Mesh 330
- Surface
 - Bilinear from 4 Points 284
 - Boundary Curves 244
 - by 2 Curves 280
 - by 4 Curves 279
 - Delete Holes on 289
 - Explode 312
 - Extract Curve from Edge 247
 - from Curves 278
 - of Extrusion 281
 - of Revolution 282
 - Parting Plane 285
 - Project Curves onto 290
 - Rectangular Plane 277
 - Reverse Normals of 291
 - Show Normals 369
 - Stitch 313
 - Trim 287
 - Unify Normals of 311
 - Wrap 292
- Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar

Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar
 Edit Surfaces Pane 287
 Surfaces Pane 276
 Surfaces
 Surface Modeling Ribbon Bar Pane 276
 System Options 20, 77, 118

- T -

Tangent Line 218
 Template, save as 69, 109
 Text
 at Point 357
 Curves from 233
 Dot 359
 Edit Font Height 357
 on Curve 235
 Themes, Set Display of 55
 Tolerances
 Curve Hookup 37, 95, 135
 Part Facing 37, 95, 135
 Toolbar
 Status 404
 View Commands 38
 Toolbars
 Customize 42
 Quick Access Toolbar 42
 Tools
 Application Plug-ins ... 114
 Translator Plug-ins ... 115
 Top View 139, 175
 Torus Mesh 320
 Transform
 Along Path ... 394
 Array ... 391
 Graphical Manipulator 397
 Graphical Scale 376
 Mirror ... 389
 Move 372
 Move ... 381
 Orient by 3 Points 386
 Part Orient ... 384
 Polar Array ... 392
 Rectangular Scale 379
 Rotate ... 383
 Rotate 2D 373
 Rotate 3D 375
 Scale ... 387

Translator Plug-ins ... 115
 Trim
 Curves 252
 Surface 287
 Tube
 Circular 324
 Rectangular 321

- U -

Undo
 Multiple 170
 Once 170
 Unite Mesh 329
 Units
 Display 406
 Set default 37, 95, 135
 Unlock 173
 User Interface
 Geometry Ribbon Bar 101
 Help & Info Menu 96
 Status Toolbar 404
 Viewport Menu 150
 VisualCAD® Screen Layout 14

- V -

Vertex Point Snap 410
 Vertical Dimension 337
 View
 Change Animation 24, 82, 122
 Display Next 38
 Display Previous 38
 Dynamic Pan 137
 Dynamic Rotate 138
 Fit 138
 Ghosted Display 147
 Hide/Show Grid 148
 Hide/Show WCS 148
 Perspective/Parallel 144
 Set C-Plane to 175
 Set to Back 140
 Set to Bottom 140
 Set to Front 140
 Set to Iso 141
 Set to Left 140
 Set to Right 141

View

- Set to Top 139
- Shade 145
- Toggle Hidden Lines 147
- Toolbar Commands 38
- Wireframe Display 146

View Modify

- Display Ribbon Bar Pane 137

Viewport

- Delete 152
- Display Ribbon Bar Pane 149
- Layouts 149
- Rename 152
- Split 151

Visibility

- Display Ribbon Bar Pane 148

Visual Aids 411**VisualCAD® Menu 62**

- W -

WCS

- Hide/Show 148

Welcome to VisualCAD 11**Wireframe 146****Wrap**

- Curves 273
- Surface 292

- Z -

Zoom

- Box 139
- Dynamic 138
- In 139
- Out 138